

---

# The J2EE™ 1.4 Tutorial

Eric Armstrong  
Stephanie Bodoff  
Debbie Carson  
Ian Evans  
Maydene Fisher  
Dale Green  
Kim Haase  
Eric Jendrock  
Monica Pawlan  
Beth Stearns

May 30, 2003

Copyright © 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved. U.S. Government Rights - Commercial software. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, Java, J2EE, JavaServer Pages, Enterprise JavaBeans, Java Naming and Directory Interface, EJB, JSP, J2EE, J2SE and the Java Coffee Cup logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Unless otherwise licensed, software code in all technical materials herein (including articles, FAQs, samples) is provided under this License.

Products covered by and information contained in this service manual are controlled by U.S. Export Control laws and may be subject to the export or import laws in other countries. Nuclear, missile, chemical biological weapons or nuclear maritime end uses or end users, whether direct or indirect, are strictly prohibited. Export or reexport to countries subject to U.S. embargo or to entities identified on U.S. export exclusion lists, including, but not limited to, the denied persons and specially designated nationals lists is strictly prohibited.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

Copyright © 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, États-Unis. Tous droits réservés.

Droits du gouvernement américain, utilisateurs gouvernementaux - logiciel commercial. Les utilisateurs gouvernementaux sont soumis au contrat de licence standard de Sun Microsystems, Inc., ainsi qu'aux dispositions en vigueur de la FAR [ (Federal Acquisition Regulations) et des suppléments à celles-ci.

Cette distribution peut comprendre des composants développés par des tiers.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, Java, JavaServer Pages, Enterprise JavaBeans, Java Naming and Directory Interface, EJB, JSP, J2EE, J2SE et le logo Java Coffee Cup sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc. aux États-Unis et dans d'autres pays.

A moins qu'autrement autorisé, le code de logiciel en tous les matériaux techniques dans le présent (articles y compris, FAQs, échantillons) est fourni sous ce permis.

Les produits qui font l'objet de ce manuel d'entretien et les informations qu'il contient sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et peuvent être soumis au droit d'autres pays dans le domaine des exportations et importations. Les utilisations finales, ou utilisateurs finaux, pour des armes nucléaires, des missiles, des armes biologiques et chimiques ou du nucléaire maritime, directement ou indirectement, sont strictement interdites. Les exportations ou réexportations vers des pays sous embargo des États-Unis, ou vers des entités figurant sur les listes d'exclusion d'exportation américaines, y compris, mais de manière non exclusive, la liste de personnes qui font objet d'un ordre de ne pas participer, d'une façon directe ou indirecte, aux exportations des produits ou des services qui sont régi par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations ("U.S. Commerce Department's Table of Denial Orders" et la liste de ressortissants spécifiquement désignés ("U.S. Treasury Department of Specially Designated Nationals and Blocked Persons")), sont rigoureusement interdites.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ÉTAT" ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DÉCLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISÉE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE À LA QUALITÉ MARCHANDE, À L'APTITUDE À UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIÈRE OU À L'ABSENCE DE CONTREFAÇON.

---

# Contents

	<b>About This Tutorial. . . . .</b>	<b>xix</b>
	<b>Who Should Use This Tutorial</b>	<b>xix</b>
	<b>How to Read This Tutorial</b>	<b>xix</b>
	<b>About the Examples</b>	<b>xxi</b>
	<b>How to Print This Tutorial</b>	<b>xxiii</b>
	<b>Typographical Conventions</b>	<b>xxiii</b>
<b>Chapter 1:</b>	<b>Overview. . . . .</b>	<b>1</b>
	<b>Web Services Support</b>	<b>2</b>
	Extensible Markup Language	2
	HTTP-SOAP Transport Protocol	3
	WSDL Standard Format	3
	UDDI and ebXML Standard Formats	4
	<b>Distributed Multitiered Applications</b>	<b>4</b>
	J2EE Components	5
	J2EE Clients	6
	Web Components	8
	Business Components	8
	Enterprise Information System Tier	10
	<b>J2EE Containers</b>	<b>10</b>
	Container Services	10
	Container Types	11
	<b>Packaging</b>	<b>12</b>
	<b>Development Roles</b>	<b>13</b>
	J2EE Product Provider	14
	Tool Provider	14
	Application Component Provider	14
	Application Assembler	15
	Application Deployer and Administrator	16

<b>J2EE APIs</b>	<b>16</b>
Enterprise JavaBeans Technology	16
JDBC API	17
Java Servlet Technology	17
JavaServer Pages Technology	17
Java Message Service	18
Java Naming and Directory Interface	18
Java Transaction API	18
JavaMail API	19
JavaBeans Activation Framework	19
Java API for XML Processing	19
Java API for XML Registries	19
Java API for XML-Based RPC	20
SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ)	20
J2EE Connector Architecture	21
Java Authentication and Authorization Service	21
Simplified Systems Integration	21
 <b>Chapter 2: Understanding XML</b>	 <b>23</b>
<b>Introduction to XML</b>	<b>23</b>
What Is XML?	23
Why Is XML Important?	28
How Can You Use XML?	31
<b>XML and Related Specs: Digesting the Alphabet Soup</b>	<b>33</b>
Basic Standards	34
Schema Standards	38
Linking and Presentation Standards	40
Knowledge Standards	42
Standards That Build on XML	43
Summary	45
<b>Generating XML Data</b>	<b>45</b>
Writing a Simple XML File	45
Defining the Root Element	46
Writing Processing Instructions	50
Introducing an Error	52
Substituting and Inserting Text	53
Creating a Document Type Definition (DTD)	56
Documents and Data	62
Defining Attributes and Entities in the DTD	62
Referencing Binary Entities	69

Defining Parameter Entities and Conditional Sections	71
Resolving A Naming Conflict	74
Using Namespaces	76
<b>Designing an XML Data Structure</b>	<b>79</b>
Saving Yourself Some Work	79
Attributes and Elements	79
Normalizing Data	82
Normalizing DTDs	83
Summary	84

## Chapter 3:    **Getting Started with Web Applications . . . . . 85**

<b>Web Application Life Cycle</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>J2EE 1.4 Application Server</b>	<b>88</b>
Components	88
Setting Up To Build and Deploy Tutorial Examples	89
Starting and Stopping the J2EE Application Server	90
Starting the deploytool Utility	91
<b>Web Modules</b>	<b>91</b>
Creating a Web Module	92
<b>Configuring Web Modules</b>	<b>93</b>
Mapping URLs to Web Components	94
Declaring Welcome Files	95
Setting Initialization Parameters	96
Specifying Error Mappings	96
Declaring References to Environment Entries, Resource Environment Entries, or Resources	97
<b>Deploying Web Modules</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>Listing Deployed Web Modules</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>Running Web Applications</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>Updating Web Modules</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>Undeploying Web Modules</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>Duke's Bookstore Examples</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>Accessing Databases from Web Applications</b>	<b>102</b>
Starting the PointBase Database Server	103
Populating the Example Database	104
Defining a Data Source in the J2EE Server	105
Configuring the Web Application to Reference a Data Source with JNDI	106
Mapping the Web Application JNDI Name to a Data Source	107
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>107</b>

<b>Chapter 4:</b>	<b>Java API for XML Processing . . . . .</b>	<b>109</b>
	<b>The JAXP APIs</b>	<b>109</b>
	<b>An Overview of the Packages</b>	<b>110</b>
	<b>The Simple API for XML (SAX) APIs</b>	<b>111</b>
	The SAX Packages	114
	<b>The Document Object Model (DOM) APIs</b>	<b>114</b>
	The DOM Packages	116
	<b>The XML Stylesheet Language for Transformation (XSLT) APIs</b>	<b>117</b>
	The XSLT Packages	118
	<b>Compiling and Running the Programs</b>	<b>118</b>
	<b>Where Do You Go from Here?</b>	<b>118</b>
 <b>Chapter 5:</b>	 <b>Simple API for XML . . . . .</b>	 <b>121</b>
	<b>When to Use SAX</b>	<b>122</b>
	<b>Echoing an XML File with the SAX Parser</b>	<b>123</b>
	Creating the Skeleton	123
	Importing Classes	124
	Setting up for I/O	124
	Implementing the ContentHandler Interface	125
	Setting up the Parser	126
	Writing the Output	127
	Spacing the Output	128
	Handling Content Events	128
	Compiling and Running the Program	133
	Checking the Output	134
	Identifying the Events	135
	Compressing the Output	137
	Inspecting the Output	140
	Documents and Data	141
	<b>Adding Additional Event Handlers</b>	<b>141</b>
	Identifying the Document's Location	142
	Handling Processing Instructions	144
	Summary	145
	<b>Handling Errors with the Nonvalidating Parser</b>	<b>145</b>
	<b>Displaying Special Characters and CDATA</b>	<b>153</b>
	Handling Special Characters	153
	Handling Text with XML-Style Syntax	154
	Handling CDATA and Other Characters	155
	<b>Parsing with a DTD</b>	<b>156</b>
	DTD's Effect on the Nonvalidating Parser	156

Tracking Ignorable Whitespace	158
Cleanup	159
Empty Elements, Revisited	160
Echoing Entity References	160
Echoing the External Entity	160
Summarizing Entities	161
<b>Choosing your Parser Implementation</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>Using the Validating Parser</b>	<b>162</b>
Configuring the Factory	162
Validating with XML Schema	163
Experimenting with Validation Errors	166
Error Handling in the Validating Parser	168
<b>Parsing a Parameterized DTD</b>	<b>169</b>
DTD Warnings	170
<b>Handling Lexical Events</b>	<b>171</b>
How the LexicalHandler Works	172
Working with a LexicalHandler	172
<b>Using the DTDHandler and EntityResolver</b>	<b>178</b>
The DTDHandler API	178
The EntityResolver API	179
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>180</b>
 <b>Chapter 6: Document Object Model . . . . .</b>	 <b>181</b>
<b>When to Use DOM</b>	<b>182</b>
Documents vs. Data	182
Mixed Content Model	183
A Simpler Model	184
Increasing the Complexity	185
Choosing Your Model	187
<b>Reading XML Data into a DOM</b>	<b>188</b>
Creating the Program	188
Additional Information	193
Looking Ahead	195
<b>Displaying a DOM Hierarchy</b>	<b>195</b>
Echoing Tree Nodes	195
Convert DomEcho to a GUI App	195
Create Adapters to Display the DOM in a JTree	201
Finishing Up	211
<b>Examining the Structure of a DOM</b>	<b>211</b>
Displaying A Simple Tree	212

Displaying a More Complex Tree	214
Finishing Up	221
<b>Constructing a User-Friendly JTree from a DOM</b>	<b>222</b>
Compressing the Tree View	222
Acting on Tree Selections	228
Handling Modifications	238
Finishing Up	238
<b>Creating and Manipulating a DOM</b>	<b>238</b>
Obtaining a DOM from the Factory	239
Normalizing the DOM	242
Other Operations	244
Finishing Up	247
<b>Validating with XML Schema</b>	<b>247</b>
Overview of the Validation Process	248
Configuring the DocumentBuilder Factory	248
Validating with Multiple Namespaces	250
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>253</b>
 Chapter 7: XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations. . .	<b>255</b>
<b>Introducing XSLT and XPath</b>	<b>255</b>
The JAXP Transformation Packages	256
<b>How XPath Works</b>	<b>257</b>
XPATh Expressions	257
The XSLT/XPATh Data Model	258
Templates and Contexts	259
Basic XPATh Addressing	259
Basic XPATh Expressions	260
Combining Index Addresses	261
Wildcards	261
Extended-Path Addressing	262
XPATh Data Types and Operators	263
String-Value of an Element	263
XPATh Functions	264
Summary	267
<b>Writing Out a DOM as an XML File</b>	<b>268</b>
Reading the XML	268
Creating a Transformer	270
Writing the XML	272
Writing Out a Subtree of the DOM	273
Summary	274



<b>Generating XML from an Arbitrary Data Structure</b>	<b>275</b>
Creating a Simple File	275
Creating a Simple Parser	277
Modifying the Parser to Generate SAX Events	279
Using the Parser as a SAXSource	286
Doing the Conversion	288
<b>Transforming XML Data with XSLT</b>	<b>289</b>
Defining a Simple <article> Document Type	289
Creating a Test Document	291
Writing an XSLT Transform	292
Processing the Basic Structure Elements	293
Writing the Basic Program	297
Trimming the Whitespace	299
Processing the Remaining Structure Elements	302
Process Inline (Content) Elements	306
Printing the HTML	311
What Else Can XSLT Do?	311
<b>Transforming from the Command Line with Xalan</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>Concatenating Transformations with a Filter Chain</b>	<b>314</b>
Writing the Program	314
Understanding How the Filter Chain Works	317
Testing the Program	318
Conclusion	321
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>321</b>
 <b>Chapter 8: Building Web Services With JAX-RPC . . . . .</b>	 <b>323</b>
<b>Types Supported By JAX-RPC</b>	<b>324</b>
J2SE SDK Classes	324
Primitives	325
Arrays	325
Value Types	326
JavaBeans Components	326
<b>Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC</b>	<b>326</b>
Building the Service	328
Packaging the Service	330
Specifying the Endpoint Address	331
Deploying the Service	332
<b>Creating Web Service Clients with JAX-RPC</b>	<b>332</b>
Static Stub Client Example	332
Dynamic Proxy Client Example	335

Dynamic Invocation Interface (DII) Client Example	338
J2EE Application Client Example	342
Other JAX-RPC Client Examples	346
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>346</b>
 <b>Chapter 9: SOAP with Attachments API for Java . . . . .</b>	 <b>347</b>
<b>Overview of SAAJ</b>	<b>348</b>
Messages	348
Connections	352
<b>Tutorial</b>	<b>353</b>
Creating and Sending a Simple Message	354
Adding Content to the Header	362
Adding Content to the SOAP Body	363
Adding Content to the SOAPPart Object	364
Adding a Document to the SOAP Body	366
Manipulating Message Content Using SAAJ or DOM APIs	366
Adding Attachments	367
Adding Attributes	369
Using SOAP Faults	375
<b>Code Examples</b>	<b>380</b>
Request.java	380
MyUddiPing.java	381
HeaderExample.java	389
SOAPFaultTest.java	390
DOMExample.java	391
Conclusion	393
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>394</b>
 <b>Chapter 10: Java API for XML Registries . . . . .</b>	 <b>395</b>
<b>Overview of JAXR</b>	<b>395</b>
What Is a Registry?	395
What Is JAXR?	396
JAXR Architecture	397
<b>Implementing a JAXR Client</b>	<b>399</b>
Establishing a Connection	400
Querying a Registry	405
Managing Registry Data	410
Using Taxonomies in JAXR Clients	416
<b>Running the Client Examples</b>	<b>421</b>

Before You Compile the Examples	422
Compiling the Examples	424
Running the Examples	425
<b>Using JAXR Clients in J2EE Applications</b>	<b>429</b>
Coding the Application Client: MyAppClient.java	430
Coding the PubQuery Session Bean	430
Compiling the Source Files	431
Starting the J2EE Application Server	431
Creating JAXR Resources	431
Creating and Packaging the Application	432
Deploying the Application	435
Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application	435
Undeploying and Removing the Application	436
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>436</b>
 <b>Chapter 11: Java Servlet Technology . . . . .</b>	 <b>439</b>
<b>What is a Servlet?</b>	<b>439</b>
<b>The Example Servlets</b>	<b>440</b>
Troubleshooting	445
<b>Servlet Life Cycle</b>	<b>445</b>
Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events	446
Handling Errors	448
<b>Sharing Information</b>	<b>448</b>
Using Scope Objects	448
Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources	450
Accessing Databases	451
<b>Initializing a Servlet</b>	<b>452</b>
<b>Writing Service Methods</b>	<b>453</b>
Getting Information from Requests	454
Constructing Responses	456
<b>Filtering Requests and Responses</b>	<b>458</b>
Programming Filters	459
Programming Customized Requests and Responses	461
Specifying Filter Mappings	463
<b>Invoking Other Web Resources</b>	<b>465</b>
Including Other Resources in the Response	466
Transferring Control to Another Web Component	468
<b>Accessing the Web Context</b>	<b>469</b>
<b>Maintaining Client State</b>	<b>470</b>
Accessing a Session	470

Associating Attributes with a Session	470
Session Management	471
Session Tracking	472
<b>Finalizing a Servlet</b>	<b>473</b>
Tracking Service Requests	474
Notifying Methods to Shut Down	474
Creating Polite Long-Running Methods	475
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>476</b>
 <b>Chapter 12: JavaServer Pages Technology . . . . .</b>	<b>477</b>
<b>What Is a JSP Page?</b>	<b>477</b>
Example	478
<b>The Example JSP Pages</b>	<b>482</b>
<b>The Life Cycle of a JSP Page</b>	<b>489</b>
Translation and Compilation	489
Execution	490
<b>Creating Static Content</b>	<b>492</b>
Response and Page Encoding	493
<b>Creating Dynamic Content</b>	<b>493</b>
Using Objects within JSP Pages	493
<b>Expression Language</b>	<b>495</b>
Deactivating Expression Evaluation	496
Using Expressions	496
Variables	497
Implicit Objects	498
Literals	499
Operators	500
Reserved Words	500
Examples	501
Functions	502
<b>JavaBeans Components</b>	<b>503</b>
JavaBeans Component Design Conventions	503
Creating and Using a JavaBeans Component	505
Setting JavaBeans Component Properties	506
Retrieving JavaBeans Component Properties	508
<b>Using Custom Tags</b>	<b>509</b>
Declaring Tag Libraries	509
Including the Tag Library Implementation	512
<b>Reusing Content in JSP Pages</b>	<b>513</b>
<b>Transferring Control to Another Web Component</b>	<b>514</b>

jsp:param Element	514
<b>Including an Applet</b>	<b>515</b>
<b>Setting Properties for Groups of JSP Pages</b>	<b>517</b>
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>520</b>
 <b>Chapter 13: JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library . . . . .</b>	 <b>521</b>
<b>The Example JSP Pages</b>	<b>521</b>
<b>Using JSTL</b>	<b>525</b>
Tag Collaboration	526
<b>Core Tags</b>	<b>528</b>
Variable Support Tags	528
Flow Control Tags	529
URL Tags	532
Miscellaneous Tags	533
<b>XML Tags</b>	<b>534</b>
Core Tags	536
Flow Control Tags	537
Transformation Tags	538
<b>Internationalization Tags</b>	<b>538</b>
Setting the Locale	539
Messaging Tags	540
Formatting Tags	540
<b>SQL Tags</b>	<b>541</b>
query Tag Result Interface	543
<b>Functions</b>	<b>546</b>
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>547</b>
 <b>Chapter 14: Custom Tags in JSP Pages . . . . .</b>	 <b>549</b>
<b>What Is a Custom Tag?</b>	<b>550</b>
<b>The Example JSP Pages</b>	<b>550</b>
<b>Types of Tags</b>	<b>555</b>
Tags with Attributes	555
Tags with Bodies	558
Tags That Define Variables	559
Communication Between Tags	559
<b>Encapsulating Reusable Content using Tag Files</b>	<b>560</b>
Tag File Location	562
Tag File Directives	562
Evaluating Fragments Passed to Tag Files	571

Examples	572
<b>Tag Library Descriptors</b>	<b>576</b>
Declaring Tag Files	578
Declaring Tag Handlers	581
Declaring Tag Attributes for Tag Handlers	582
Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers	584
<b>Programming Simple Tag Handlers</b>	<b>586</b>
Basic Tags	587
Tags with Attributes	588
Tags with Bodies	590
Tags That Define Variables	591
Cooperating Tags	594
Examples	596
 <b>Chapter 15: Scripting in JSP Pages . . . . .</b>	 <b>605</b>
<b>The Example JSP Pages</b>	<b>605</b>
<b>Using Scripting</b>	<b>607</b>
<b>Disabling Scripting</b>	<b>607</b>
<b>Declarations</b>	<b>608</b>
Initializing and Finalizing a JSP Page	608
<b>Scriptlets</b>	<b>609</b>
<b>Expressions</b>	<b>610</b>
<b>Programming Tags That Accept Scripting Elements</b>	<b>611</b>
TLD Elements	611
Tag Handlers	611
Tags with Bodies	614
Cooperating Tags	615
Tags That Define Variables	617
 <b>Chapter 16: Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications .</b>	 <b>619</b>
<b>Java Platform Localization Classes</b>	<b>619</b>
<b>Providing Localized Messages and Labels</b>	<b>620</b>
<b>Date and Number Formatting</b>	<b>622</b>
<b>Character Sets and Encodings</b>	<b>622</b>
Character Sets	622
Character Encoding	623
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>626</b>

**Chapter 17: New Features for EJB 2.1 Technology. . . . . 627**

<b>Overview</b>	<b>627</b>
<b>Web Service Endpoints</b>	<b>628</b>
Web Service Example: HelloServiceEJB	628
Source Code for HelloServiceEJB	628
Building HelloServiceEJB	630
Building the Web Service Client	633
Running the Web Service Client	633
<b>Timer Service</b>	<b>634</b>
Creating Timers	634
Cancelling and Saving Timers	635
Getting Timer Information	636
Transactions and Timers	636
The TimerSessionEJB Example	636
Building TimerSessionEJB	638

**Chapter 18: Security . . . . . 645**

<b>Overview</b>	<b>645</b>
<b>Users, Realms, and Groups</b>	<b>646</b>
<b>Security Roles</b>	<b>647</b>
Declaring and Linking Role References	648
Mapping Roles to Users and Groups	649
<b>Web-Tier Security</b>	<b>650</b>
Protecting Web Resources	651
Authenticating Users of Web Resources	656
Using Programmatic Security in the Web Tier	660
Protecting Web Resources	661
<b>Installing and Configuring SSL Support</b>	<b>662</b>
Setting Up Digital Certificates	663
<b>EJB-Tier Security</b>	<b>668</b>
Declaring Method Permissions	668
Using Programmatic Security in the EJB Tier	669
Unauthenticated User Name	670
<b>Application Client-Tier Security</b>	<b>670</b>
<b>EIS-Tier Security</b>	<b>671</b>
Container-Managed Sign-On	671
Component-Managed Sign-On	672
Configuring Resource Adapter Security	672
<b>Propagating Security Identity</b>	<b>673</b>
Configuring a Component's Propagated Security Identity	673

Configuring Client Authentication	674
<b>Using Java Authorization Contract for Containers</b>	<b>675</b>
<b>Chapter 19: J2EE Connector Architecture . . . . .</b>	<b>677</b>
<b>About Resource Adapters</b>	<b>677</b>
Resource Adapter Contracts	678
Connector 1.5 Resource Adapters	680
<b>Common Client Interface</b>	<b>682</b>
<b>Chapter 20: The Java Message Service API . . . . .</b>	<b>685</b>
<b>Overview</b>	<b>685</b>
What Is Messaging?	686
What Is the JMS API?	686
When Can You Use the JMS API?	687
How Does the JMS API Work with the J2EE Platform?	688
<b>Basic JMS API Concepts</b>	<b>689</b>
JMS API Architecture	690
Messaging Domains	690
Message Consumption	693
<b>The JMS API Programming Model</b>	<b>694</b>
Administered Objects	695
Connections	697
Sessions	698
Message Producers	699
Message Consumers	699
Messages	702
Exception Handling	705
<b>Writing Simple JMS Client Applications</b>	<b>705</b>
Setting Your Environment for Running Applications	707
A Simple Example of Synchronous Message Receives	707
A Simple Example of Asynchronous Message Consumption	715
Running JMS Client Programs on Multiple Systems	720
<b>Creating Robust JMS Applications</b>	<b>722</b>
Using Basic Reliability Mechanisms	724
Using Advanced Reliability Mechanisms	731
<b>Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application</b>	<b>743</b>
Using Session and Entity Beans to Produce and to Synchronously Re-	
ceive Messages	744
Using Message-Driven Beans	745



Managing Distributed Transactions	748
Using the JMS API with Application Clients and Web Components	751
Specifying Deployment Descriptors	751
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>758</b>

## Chapter 21: J2EE Examples Using the JMS API . . . . . 759

<b>A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API</b>	<b>760</b>
Writing the Application Components	761
Creating and Packaging the Application	762
Deploying the Application	766
Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application	766
Undeploying and Removing the Application	767
<b>A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean</b>	<b>767</b>
Writing the Application Components	768
Creating and Packaging the Application	770
Deploying the Application	775
Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application	775
Undeploying and Removing the Application	776
<b>A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with an Entity Bean</b>	<b>777</b>
Overview of the Human Resources Application	777
Writing the Application Components	779
Creating and Packaging the Application	781
Deploying the Application	788
Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application	788
Undeploying and Removing the Application	790
<b>An Application Example that Consumes Messages from a Remote J2EE Server</b>	<b>790</b>
Overview of the Applications	791
Writing the Application Components	792
Creating and Packaging the Applications	792
Deploying the Applications	797
Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client	797
Undeploying and Removing the Applications	798
<b>An Application Example that Deploys a Message-Driven Bean on Two J2EE Servers</b>	<b>799</b>
Overview of the Applications	800
Writing the Application Components	801
Creating and Packaging the Applications	802
Deploying the Applications	807

Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client	808
Undeploying and Removing the Applications	810
<b>Appendix A: Java Encoding Schemes . . . . .</b>	<b>811</b>
<b>Further Information</b>	<b>812</b>
<b>Appendix B: HTTP Overview . . . . .</b>	<b>813</b>
<b>HTTP Requests</b>	<b>814</b>
<b>HTTP Responses</b>	<b>814</b>
<b>Glossary . . . . .</b>	<b>815</b>
<b>About the Authors . . . . .</b>	<b>849</b>
<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>853</b>

---

# About This Tutorial

**T**HIS tutorial is a beginner's guide to developing enterprise applications using the Java™ 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE™) version 1.4. Here we cover all the things you need to know to make the best use of this tutorial.

## Who Should Use This Tutorial

This tutorial is intended for programmers interested in developing and deploying J2EE applications on the J2EE 1.4 Application Server Beta 2.

## How to Read This Tutorial

This tutorial is organized into six parts:

- Introduction

The first three chapters introduce basic J2EE concepts and technologies and we suggest that you read these first in their entirety.

- Java XML technology

These chapters cover the technologies for developing applications that process XML documents and provide Web services:

- The Java API for XML Processing (JAXP)
- The Java API for XML-based RPC (JAX-RPC)
- SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ)
- The Java API for XML Registries (JAXR)

- Web technology

These chapters cover the component technologies used in developing the presentation layer of a J2EE application or a standalone Web application.

- Java Servlets
- JavaServer Pages
- JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library

- Enterprise JavaBeans technology

These chapters cover the component technologies used in developing the business logic of a J2EE application.

- Session beans
- Entity beans
- Enterprise JavaBeans Query Language
- Timer beans

---

**Note:** With the exception of timer beans, Enterprise JavaBeans technology will be covered in the next release of the tutorial.

---

- Platform Services

These chapters cover the J2EE platform services used by all the J2EE component technologies.

- Security
- Transactions
- Resources
- Connectors
- Java Message Service

---

**Note:** Transactions and Resources will be covered in the next release of the tutorial.

---

- Appendixes

- Java encoding schemes
- HTTP overview

# About the Examples

## Prerequisites for the Examples

To understand the examples you will need a good knowledge of the Java programming language, SQL, and relational database concepts. The topics listed in Table P–1 *The Java™ Tutorial* are particularly relevant:

**Table P–1** Relevant Topics in *The Java™ Tutorial*

Topic	Web Page
JDBC™	<a href="http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/jdbc">http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/jdbc</a>
Threads	<a href="http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/essential/threads">http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/essential/threads</a>
JavaBeans™	<a href="http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/javabeans">http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/javabeans</a>
Security	<a href="http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/security1.2">http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/security1.2</a>

## Building and Running the Examples

This section tells you everything you need to know to obtain, build, and run the examples.

## Required Software

If you are viewing this online, you need to download *The J2EE™ 1.4 Tutorial* from:

<http://java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/download.html#tutorial>

Once you have installed the tutorial bundle, the example source code is in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/` directory, with subdirectories for each of the technologies discussed in the tutorial.

To build, deploy, and run the examples you need a copy of the J2EE 1.4 Application Server Beta 2 and the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE™) SDK 1.4.1. You download this version of the J2EE 1.4 Application Server from:

<http://java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/download.html#sdk>

the J2SE 1.4.1 SDK from

<http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.1/download.html>

## Building the Examples

Most of the tutorial examples are distributed with a configuration file for `asant`, a portable build tool contained in the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, that is an extension of the Ant tool developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<http://www.apache.org>). `asant` contains additional tasks that interact with the J2EE 1.4 Application Server administration utility `asadmin`. Directions for building the examples are provided in each chapter.

In order to run the `asant` scripts, you must configure your environment and properties files as follows:

- Add `<JAVA_HOME>/bin` to the front of your path.
- Add `<J2EE_HOME>/bin` and `<J2EE_HOME>/share/bin` to the front of your path so that J2EE 1.4 Application Server scripts (`asadmin`, `asant`, `deploytool`, and `wscompile`) overrides other installations.
- Set the `j2ee.home` property in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/common/build.properties` to the location of your J2EE Application Server installation. The build process uses the `j2ee.home` property to include the J2EE library archive, `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/j2ee.jar`, in the classpath. If you wish to use an IDE or the `javac` compiler to build J2EE applications, you must add this JAR to your classpath.
- Set the `admin.user` and `admin.password` properties in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/common/build.properties` to the values you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server. The build scripts use these values when you invoke an administration task such as creating a database pool. The default value for `admin.user` is set to the installer's default value, which is `admin`.

## Tutorial Example Directory Structure

To facilitate iterative development and keep application source separate from compiled files, the source code for the tutorial examples is stored in the following structure under each application directory:

- `build.xml` - asant build file
- `src` - Java source of servlets and JavaBeans components, and tag libraries
- `web` - JSP pages and HTML pages, tag files, images

The asant build files (`build.xml`) distributed with the examples contain targets to create a `build` subdirectory and copy and compile files into that directory and perform administrative functions on the application server. Build properties and targets common to a particular technology are specified in the files `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/technology/common/build.properties` and `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/technology/common/targets.xml`.

## How to Print This Tutorial

To print this tutorial, follow these steps:

1. Ensure that Adobe Acrobat Reader is installed on your system.
2. Open the PDF version of this book.
3. Click the printer icon in Adobe Acrobat Reader.

## Typographical Conventions

Table P–2 lists the typographical conventions used in this tutorial.

**Table P–2** Typographical Conventions

Font Style	Uses
<i>italic</i>	Emphasis, titles, first occurrence of terms
<code>monospace</code>	URLs, code examples, file names, command names, programming language keywords
<i>italic monospace</i>	Variable names

**Table P-2** Typographical Conventions

Font Style	Uses
<i>&lt;italic monospace&gt;</i>	Environment variables

Menu selections indicated with the right-arrow character →, for example, First→Second, should be interpreted as: select the First menu, then choose Second from the First submenu.



---

# Overview

*Monica Pawlan*

**T**ODAY, more and more developers want to write distributed transactional applications for the enterprise and leverage the speed, security, and reliability of server-side technology. If you are already working in this area, you know that in today's fast-moving and demanding world of e-commerce and information technology, enterprise applications have to be designed, built, and produced for less money, with greater speed, and with fewer resources than ever before.

To reduce costs and fast-track application design and development, Java™ 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE™) provides a component-based approach to the design, development, assembly, and deployment of enterprise applications. The J2EE platform offers a multitiered distributed application model, reusable components, a unified security model, flexible transaction control, and Web services support through integrated data interchange on Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based open standards and protocols.

Not only can you deliver innovative business solutions to market faster than ever, but your platform-independent J2EE component-based solutions are not tied to the products and application programming interfaces (APIs) of any one vendor. Vendors and customers enjoy the freedom to choose the products and components that best meet their business and technological requirements.

This tutorial takes an examples-based approach to describing the features and functionalities available in J2EE version 1.4 for developing enterprise applications. Whether you are a new or an experienced developer, you should find the examples and accompanying text a valuable and accessible knowledge base for creating your own solutions.

If you are new to J2EE enterprise application development, this chapter is a good place to start. Here you will learn development basics, be introduced to the J2EE architecture and APIs, become acquainted with important terms and concepts, and find out how to approach J2EE application programming, assembly, and deployment.

## Web Services Support

Web services are Web-based enterprise applications that use open, Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based standards and transport protocols to exchange data with calling clients. The J2EE platform provides the XML APIs and tools you need to quickly design, develop, test, and deploy Web services and clients that fully interoperate with other Web services and clients running on Java-based or non-Java-based platforms.

It is easy to write Web services and clients with the J2EE XML APIs. All you do is pass parameter data to the method calls and process the data returned, or for document-oriented web services, send documents containing the service data back and forth. No low-level programming is needed because the XML API implementations do the work of translating the application data to and from an XML-based data stream that is sent over the standardized XML-based transport protocols. These XML-based standards and protocols are introduced in the next sections.

The translation of data to a standardized XML-based data stream is what makes Web services and clients written with the J2EE XML APIs fully interoperable. This does not necessarily mean the data being transported includes XML tags because the transported data can itself be plain text, XML data, or any kind of binary data such as audio, video, maps, program files, CAD documents or the like. The next section, introduces XML and explains how parties doing business can use XML tags and schemas to exchange data in a meaningful way.

## Extensible Markup Language

Extensible Markup Language is a cross-platform, extensible, and text-based standard for representing data. When XML data is exchanged between parties, the parties are free to create their own tags to describe the data, set up schemas to specify which tags can be used in a particular kind of XML document, and use XML style sheets to manage the display and handling of the data.

For example, a Web service can use XML and a schema to produce price lists, and companies that receive the price lists and schema can have their own style sheets to handle the data in a way that best suits their needs.

- One company might put the XML pricing information through a program to translate the XML to HTML so it can post the price lists to its Intranet.
- A partner company might put the XML pricing information through a tool to create a marketing presentation.
- Another company might read the XML pricing information into an application for processing.

## HTTP-SOAP Transport Protocol

Client requests and Web service responses are transmitted as Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) messages over HTTP to enable a completely interoperable exchange between clients and Web services all running on different platforms and at various locations on the Internet. HTTP is a familiar request and response standard for sending messages over the Internet, and SOAP is an XML-based protocol that follows the HTTP request and response model.

The SOAP portion of a transported message handles the following:

- Defines an XML-based envelope to describe what is in the message and how to process the message.
- Includes XML-based encoding rules to express instances of application-defined data types within the message.
- Defines an XML-based convention for representing the request to the remote service and the resulting response.

## WSDL Standard Format

The Web Services Description Language (WSDL) is a standardized XML format for describing network services. The description includes the name of the service, the location of the service, and how to communicate with the service. WSDLs can be stored in UDDI registries and/or published on the Web. The J2EE platform provides a tool for generating the WSDL for a Web service that uses remote procedure calls to communicate with clients.

## UDDI and ebXML Standard Formats

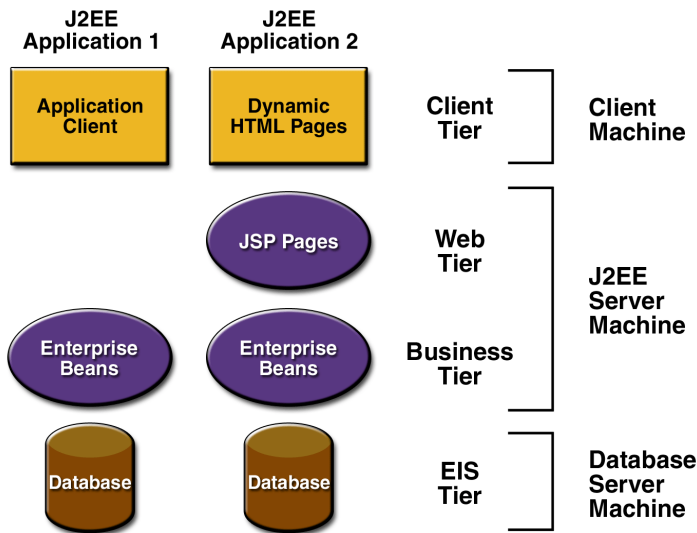
Other XML-based standards such as Universal Description, Discovery, and Integration (UDDI) and ebXML make it possible for businesses to publish information on the Internet about their products and Web services where the information can be readily and globally accessed by clients who want to do business.

## Distributed Multitiered Applications

The J2EE platform uses a multitiered distributed application model for both enterprise applications. Application logic is divided into components according to function, and the various application components that make up a J2EE application are installed on different machines depending on the tier in the multitiered J2EE environment to which the application component belongs. Figure 1–1 shows two multitiered J2EE applications divided into the tiers described in the following list. The J2EE application parts shown in Figure 1–1 are presented in J2EE Components (page 5).

- Client-tier components run on the client machine.
- Web-tier components run on the J2EE server.
- Business-tier components run on the J2EE server.
- Enterprise information system (EIS)-tier software runs on the EIS server.

Although a J2EE application can consist of the three or four tiers shown in Figure 1–1, J2EE multitiered applications are generally considered to be three-tiered applications because they are distributed over three different locations: client machines, the J2EE server machine, and the database or legacy machines at the back end. Three-tiered applications that run in this way extend the standard two-tiered client and server model by placing a multithreaded application server between the client application and back-end storage.



**Figure 1–1** Multitiered Applications

## J2EE Components

J2EE applications are made up of components. A *J2EE component* is a self-contained functional software unit that is assembled into a J2EE application with its related classes and files and that communicates with other components. The J2EE specification defines the following J2EE components:

- Application clients and applets are components that run on the client.
- Java Servlet and JavaServer Pages™ (JSP™) technology components are Web components that run on the server.
- Enterprise JavaBeans™ (EJB™) components (enterprise beans) are business components that run on the server.

J2EE components are written in the Java programming language and are compiled in the same way as any program in the language. The difference between J2EE components and “standard” Java classes is that J2EE components are assembled into a J2EE application, verified to be well formed and in compliance with the J2EE specification, and deployed to production, where they are run and managed by the J2EE server.

## J2EE Clients

A J2EE client can be a Web client or an application client.

### Web Clients

A Web client consists of two parts: dynamic Web pages containing various types of markup language (HTML, XML, and so on), which are generated by Web components running in the Web tier, and a Web browser, which renders the pages received from the server.

A Web client is sometimes called a *thin client*. Thin clients usually do not do things like query databases, execute complex business rules, or connect to legacy applications. When you use a thin client, heavyweight operations like these are off-loaded to enterprise beans executing on the J2EE server where they can leverage the security, speed, services, and reliability of J2EE server-side technologies.

### Applets

A Web page received from the Web tier can include an embedded applet. An applet is a small client application written in the Java programming language that executes in the Java virtual machine installed in the Web browser. However, client systems will likely need the Java Plug-in and possibly a security policy file in order for the applet to successfully execute in the Web browser.

Web components are the preferred API for creating a Web client program because no plug-ins or security policy files are needed on the client systems. Also, Web components enable cleaner and more modular application design because they provide a way to separate applications programming from Web page design. Personnel involved in Web page design thus do not need to understand Java programming language syntax to do their jobs.

### Application Clients

A J2EE application client runs on a client machine and provides a way for users to handle tasks that require a richer user interface than can be provided by a markup language. It typically has a graphical user interface (GUI) created from Swing or Abstract Window Toolkit (AWT) APIs, but a command-line interface is certainly possible.

Application clients directly access enterprise beans running in the business tier. However, if application requirements warrant it, a J2EE application client can open an HTTP connection to establish communication with a servlet running in the Web tier.

## JavaBeans™ Component Architecture

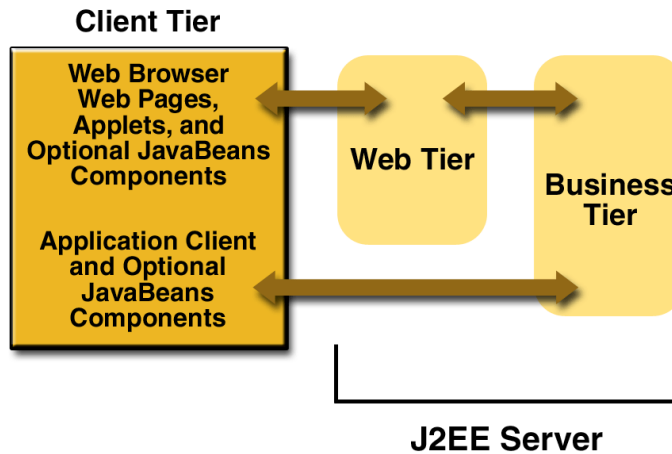
The server and client tiers might also include components based on the JavaBeans component architecture (JavaBeans component) to manage the data flow between an application client or applet and components running on the J2EE server or between server components and a database. JavaBeans components are not considered J2EE components by the J2EE specification.

JavaBeans components have instance variables and get and set methods for accessing the data in the instance variables. JavaBeans components used in this way are typically simple in design and implementation, but should conform to the naming and design conventions outlined in the JavaBeans component architecture.

## J2EE Server Communications

Figure 1–2 shows the various elements that can make up the client tier. The client communicates with the business tier running on the J2EE server either directly or, as in the case of a client running in a browser, by going through JSP pages or servlets running in the Web tier.

Your J2EE application uses a thin browser-based client or thick application client. In deciding which one to use, you should be aware of the trade-offs between keeping functionality on the client and close to the user (thick client) and off-loading as much functionality as possible to the server (thin client). The more functionality you off-load to the server, the easier it is to distribute, deploy, and manage the application; however, keeping more functionality on the client can make for a better perceived user experience.



**Figure 1–2** Server Communications

## Web Components

J2EE Web components can be either servlets or JSP pages. *Servlets* are Java programming language classes that dynamically process requests and construct responses. *JSP pages* are text-based documents that execute as servlets but allow a more natural approach to creating static content.

Static HTML pages and applets are bundled with Web components during application assembly, but are not considered Web components by the J2EE specification. Server-side utility classes can also be bundled with Web components and, like HTML pages, are not considered Web components.

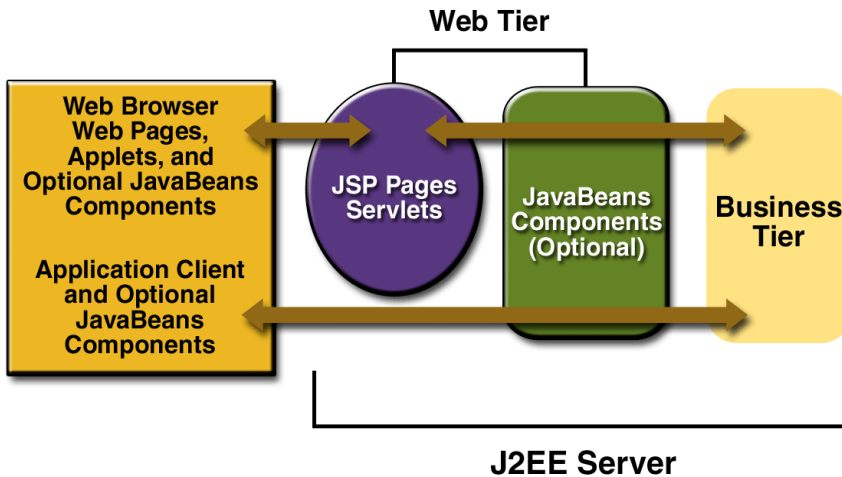
Like the client tier and as shown in Figure 1–3, the Web tier might include a JavaBeans component to manage the user input and send that input to enterprise beans running in the business tier for processing.

## Business Components

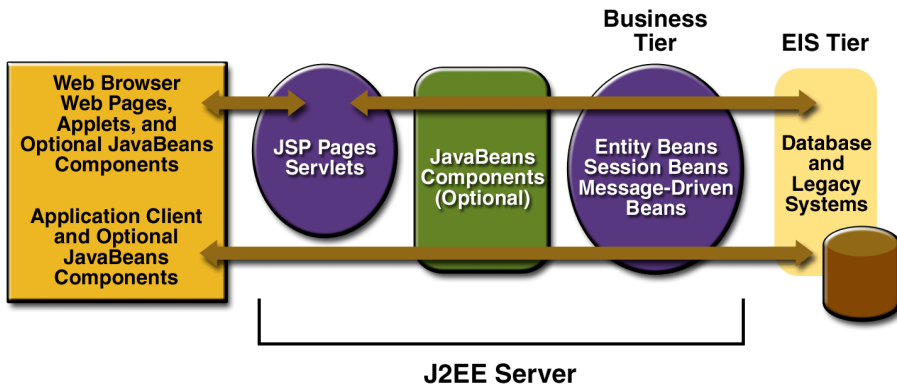
Business code, which is logic that solves or meets the needs of a particular business domain such as banking, retail, or finance, is handled by enterprise beans running in the business tier. Figure 1–4 shows how an enterprise bean receives data from client programs, processes it (if necessary), and sends it to the enter-



prise information system tier for storage. An enterprise bean also retrieves data from storage, processes it (if necessary), and sends it back to the client program.



**Figure 1–3** Web Tier and J2EE Applications



**Figure 1–4** Business and EIS Tiers

There are three kinds of enterprise beans: session beans, entity beans, and message-driven beans. A *session bean* represents a transient conversation with a client. When the client finishes executing, the session bean and its data are gone. In contrast, an *entity bean* represents persistent data stored in one row of a database

table. If the client terminates or if the server shuts down, the underlying services ensure that the entity bean data is saved.

A *message-driven bean* combines features of a session bean and a Java Message Service (JMS) message listener, allowing a business component to receive JMS messages asynchronously.

## Enterprise Information System Tier

The enterprise information system tier handles enterprise information system software and includes enterprise infrastructure systems such as enterprise resource planning (ERP), mainframe transaction processing, database systems, and other legacy information systems. J2EE application components might need access to enterprise information systems for database connectivity, for example.

## J2EE Containers

Normally, thin-client multitiered applications are hard to write because they involve many lines of intricate code to handle transaction and state management, multithreading, resource pooling, and other complex low-level details. The component-based and platform-independent J2EE architecture makes J2EE applications easy to write because business logic is organized into reusable components. In addition, the J2EE server provides underlying services in the form of a container for every component type. Because you do not have to develop these services yourself, you are free to concentrate on solving the business problem at hand.

## Container Services

*Containers* are the interface between a component and the low-level platform-specific functionality that supports the component. Before a Web, enterprise bean, or application client component can be executed, it must be assembled into a J2EE application and deployed into its container.

The assembly process involves specifying container settings for each component in the J2EE application and for the J2EE application itself. Container settings customize the underlying support provided by the J2EE server, which includes services such as security, transaction management, Java Naming and Directory

Interface™ (JNDI) lookups, and remote connectivity. Here are some of the highlights:

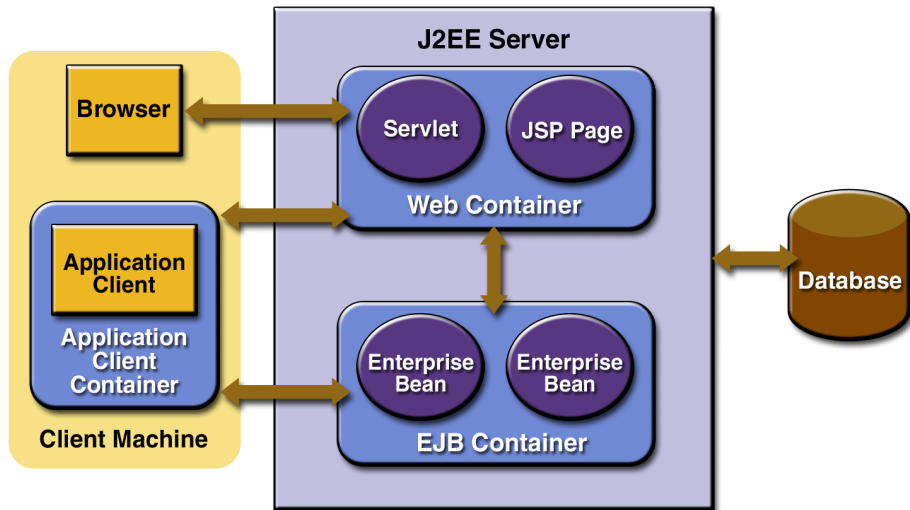
- The J2EE security model lets you configure a Web component or enterprise bean so that system resources are accessed only by authorized users.
- The J2EE transaction model lets you specify relationships among methods that make up a single transaction so that all methods in one transaction are treated as a single unit.
- JNDI lookup services provide a unified interface to multiple naming and directory services in the enterprise so that application components can access naming and directory services.
- The J2EE remote connectivity model manages low-level communications between clients and enterprise beans. After an enterprise bean is created, a client invokes methods on it as if it were in the same virtual machine.

The fact that the J2EE architecture provides configurable services means that application components within the same J2EE application can behave differently based on where they are deployed. For example, an enterprise bean can have security settings that allow it a certain level of access to database data in one production environment and another level of database access in another production environment.

The container also manages nonconfigurable services such as enterprise bean and servlet life cycles, database connection resource pooling, data persistence, and access to the J2EE platform APIs described in the section J2EE APIs (page 16). Although data persistence is a nonconfigurable service, the J2EE architecture lets you override container-managed persistence by including the appropriate code in your enterprise bean implementation when you want more control than the default container-managed persistence provides. For example, you might use bean-managed persistence to implement your own finder (search) methods or to create a customized database cache.

## Container Types

The deployment process installs J2EE application components in the J2EE containers illustrated in Figure 1–5.



**Figure 1–5** J2EE Server and Containers

### **J2EE server**

The runtime portion of a J2EE product. A J2EE server provides EJB and Web containers.

### **Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) container**

Manages the execution of enterprise beans for J2EE applications. Enterprise beans and their container run on the J2EE server.

### **Web container**

Manages the execution of JSP page and servlet components for J2EE applications. Web components and their container run on the J2EE server.

### **Application client container**

Manages the execution of application client components. Application clients and their container run on the client.

### **Applet container**

Manages the execution of applets. Consists of a Web browser and Java Plug-in running on the client together.

## Packaging

A J2EE application is delivered in an Enterprise Archive (EAR) file. An EAR file is a standard Java Archive (JAR) file with an .ear extension. The EAR file

contains J2EE modules. Using EAR files and modules makes it possible to assemble a number of different J2EE applications using some of the same components. No extra coding is needed; it is just a matter of assembling various J2EE modules into J2EE EAR files.

A *J2EE module* consists of one or more J2EE components for the same container type and one component deployment descriptor of that type. A *deployment descriptor* is an XML document with an `.xml` extension that describes a component's deployment settings. An enterprise bean module deployment descriptor, for example, declares transaction attributes and security authorizations for an enterprise bean. Because deployment descriptor information is declarative, it can be changed without modifying the bean source code. At run time, the J2EE server reads the deployment descriptor and acts upon the component accordingly. A J2EE module without an application deployment descriptor can be deployed as a *stand-alone* module. The four types of J2EE modules are:

- Enterprise JavaBeans modules contain class files for enterprise beans and an EJB deployment descriptor. EJB modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.jar` extension.
- Web modules contain JSP files, class files for servlets, GIF and HTML files, and a Web deployment descriptor. Web modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.war` (Web ARchive) extension.
- Resource adapter modules contain all Java interfaces, classes, native libraries, and other documentation, along with the resource adapter deployment descriptor. Together, these implement the Connector architecture (see J2EE Connector Architecture, page 21) for a particular EIS. Resource adapter modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.rar` (Resource adapter ARchive) extension.
- Application client modules contain class files and an application client deployment descriptor. Application client modules are packaged as JAR files with a `.jar` extension.

## Development Roles

Reusable modules make it possible to divide the application development and deployment process into distinct roles so that different people or companies can perform different parts of the process.

The first two roles involve purchasing and installing the J2EE product and tools. Once software is purchased and installed, J2EE components can be developed by

application component providers, assembled by application assemblers, and deployed by application deployers. In a large organization, each of these roles might be executed by different individuals or teams. This division of labor works because each of the earlier roles outputs a portable file that is the input for a subsequent role. For example, in the application component development phase, an enterprise bean software developer delivers EJB JAR files. In the application assembly role, another developer combines these EJB JAR files into a J2EE application and saves it in an EAR file. In the application deployment role, a system administrator at the customer site uses the EAR file to install the J2EE application into a J2EE server.

The different roles are not always executed by different people. If you work for a small company, for example, or if you are prototyping a sample application, you might perform the tasks in every phase.

## J2EE Product Provider

The J2EE product provider is the company that designs and makes available for purchase the J2EE platform, APIs, and other features defined in the J2EE specification. Product providers are typically operating system, database system, application server, or Web server vendors who implement the J2EE platform according to the Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition Specification.

## Tool Provider

The tool provider is the company or person who creates development, assembly, and packaging tools used by component providers, assemblers, and deployers.

## Application Component Provider

The application component provider is the company or person who creates Web components, enterprise beans, applets, or application clients for use in J2EE applications.

## Enterprise Bean Developer

An enterprise bean developer performs the following tasks to deliver an EJB JAR file that contains the enterprise bean:

- Writes and compiles the source code
- Specifies the deployment descriptor
- Bundles the `.class` files and deployment descriptor into an EJB JAR file

## Web Component Developer

A Web component developer performs the following tasks to deliver a WAR file containing the Web component:

- Writes and compiles servlet source code
- Writes JSP and HTML files
- Specifies the deployment descriptor for the Web component
- Bundles the `.class`, `.jsp`, `.html`, and deployment descriptor files in the WAR file

## J2EE Application Client Developer

An application client developer performs the following tasks to deliver a JAR file containing the J2EE application client:

- Writes and compiles the source code
- Specifies the deployment descriptor for the client
- Bundles the `.class` files and deployment descriptor into the JAR file

## Application Assembler

The application assembler is the company or person who receives application component JAR files from component providers and assembles them into a J2EE application EAR file. The assembler or deployer can edit the deployment descriptor directly or use tools that correctly add XML tags according to interactive selections. A software developer performs the following tasks to deliver an EAR file containing the J2EE application:

- Assembles EJB JAR and WAR files created in the previous phases into a J2EE application (EAR) file

- Specifies the deployment descriptor for the J2EE application
- Verifies that the contents of the EAR file are well formed and comply with the J2EE specification

## Application Deployer and Administrator

The application deployer and administrator is the company or person who configures and deploys the J2EE application, administers the computing and networking infrastructure where J2EE applications run, and oversees the runtime environment. Duties include such things as setting transaction controls and security attributes and specifying connections to databases.

During configuration, the deployer follows instructions supplied by the application component provider to resolve external dependencies, specify security settings, and assign transaction attributes. During installation, the deployer moves the application components to the server and generates the container-specific classes and interfaces.

A deployer/system administrator performs the following tasks to install and configure a J2EE application:

- Adds the J2EE application (EAR) file created in the preceding phase to the J2EE server
- Configures the J2EE application for the operational environment by modifying the deployment descriptor of the J2EE application
- Verifies that the contents of the EAR file are well formed and comply with the J2EE specification
- Deploys (installs) the J2EE application EAR file into the J2EE server

## J2EE APIs

The Sun ONE Application Server provides the following APIs to be used in J2EE applications.

## Enterprise JavaBeans Technology

An Enterprise JavaBeans™ (EJB™) component or *enterprise bean* is a body of code with fields and methods to implement modules of business logic. You can



think of an enterprise bean as a building block that can be used alone or with other enterprise beans to execute business logic on the J2EE server.

There are three kinds of enterprise beans: session beans, entity beans, and message-driven beans. Enterprise beans often interact with databases. One of the benefits of entity beans is that you do not have to write any SQL code or use the JDBC™ API directly to perform database access operations; the EJB container handles this for you. However, if you override the default container-managed persistence for any reason, you will need to use the JDBC API. Also, if you choose to have a session bean access the database, you have to use the JDBC API.

## JDBC API

The JDBC™ API lets you invoke SQL commands from Java programming language methods. You use the JDBC API in an enterprise bean when you override the default container-managed persistence or have a session bean access the database. With container-managed persistence, database access operations are handled by the container, and your enterprise bean implementation contains no JDBC code or SQL commands. You can also use the JDBC API from a servlet or JSP page to access the database directly without going through an enterprise bean.

The JDBC API has two parts: an application-level interface used by the application components to access a database, and a service provider interface to attach a JDBC driver to the J2EE platform.

## Java Servlet Technology

Java Servlet technology lets you define HTTP-specific servlet classes. A servlet class extends the capabilities of servers that host applications accessed by way of a request-response programming model. Although servlets can respond to any type of request, they are commonly used to extend the applications hosted by Web servers.

## JavaServer Pages Technology

JavaServer Pages™ (JSP™) technology lets you put snippets of servlet code directly into a text-based document. A JSP page is a text-based document that

contains two types of text: static template data, which can be expressed in any text-based format such as HTML, WML, and XML, and JSP elements, which determine how the page constructs dynamic content.

## Java Message Service

The Java Message Service (JMS) is a messaging standard that allows J2EE application components to create, send, receive, and read messages. It enables distributed communication that is loosely coupled, reliable, and asynchronous. For more information on JMS, see the online Java Message Service Tutorial:

<http://java.sun.com/products/jms/tutorial/index.html>

## Java Naming and Directory Interface

The Java Naming and Directory Interface™ (JNDI) provides naming and directory functionality. It provides applications with methods for performing standard directory operations, such as associating attributes with objects and searching for objects using their attributes. Using JNDI, a J2EE application can store and retrieve any type of named Java object.

Because JNDI is independent of any specific implementations, applications can use JNDI to access multiple naming and directory services, including existing naming and directory services such as LDAP, NDS, DNS, and NIS. This allows J2EE applications to coexist with legacy applications and systems. For more information on JNDI, see the online JNDI Tutorial:

<http://java.sun.com/products/jndi/tutorial/index.html>

## Java Transaction API

The Java Transaction API (JTA) provides a standard interface for demarcating transactions. The J2EE architecture provides a default auto commit to handle transaction commits and rollbacks. An auto commit means that any other applications viewing data will see the updated data after each database read or write operation. However, if your application performs two separate database access operations that depend on each other, you will want to use the JTA API to demarcate where the entire transaction, including both operations, begins, rolls back, and commits.

## JavaMail API

J2EE applications can use the JavaMail™ API to send e-mail notifications. The JavaMail API has two parts: an application-level interface used by the application components to send mail, and a service provider interface. The J2EE platform includes JavaMail with a service provider that allows application components to send Internet mail.

## JavaBeans Activation Framework

The JavaBeans Activation Framework (JAF) is included because JavaMail uses it. It provides standard services to determine the type of an arbitrary piece of data, encapsulate access to it, discover the operations available on it, and create the appropriate JavaBeans component to perform those operations.

## Java API for XML Processing

The Java API for XML Processing (JAXP) supports the processing of XML documents using Document Object Model (DOM), Simple API for XML Parsing (SAX), and XML Stylesheet Language Transformation (XSLT). JAXP enables applications to parse and transform XML documents independent of a particular XML processing implementation.

JAXP also provides namespace support, which lets you work with schemas that might otherwise have naming conflicts. Designed to be flexible, JAXP lets you use any XML-compliant parser or XSL processor from within your application and supports the W3C schema. You can find information on the W3C schema at this URL: <http://www.w3.org/XML/Schema>.

## Java API for XML Registries

The Java API for XML Registries (JAXR) lets you access business and general-purpose registries over the Web. JAXR supports the ebXML Registry/Repository standards and the emerging UDDI specifications. By using JAXR, developers can learn a single API and get access to both of these important registry technologies.

Additionally, businesses submit material to be shared and search for material that others have submitted. Standards groups have developed schemas for partic-

ular kinds of XML documents, and two businesses might, for example, agree to use the schema for their industry's standard purchase order form. Because the schema is stored in a standard business registry, both parties can use JAXR to access it.

## Java API for XML-Based RPC

The Java API for XML-based RPC (JAX-RPC) uses the SOAP standard and HTTP so client programs can make XML-based remote procedure calls (RPCs) over the Internet. JAX-RPC also supports WSDL so you can import and export WSDL documents. With JAX-RPC and a WSDL, you can easily interoperate with clients and services running on Java-based or non-Java-based platforms such as .NET. For example, based on the WSDL document, a Visual Basic .NET client can be configured to use a Web service implemented in Java technology or a Web service can be configured to recognize a Visual Basic .NET client.

JAX-RPC relies on the HTTP transport protocol. Taking that a step further, JAX-RPC lets you create service applications that combine HTTP with a Java technology version of the Secure Socket Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocols to establish basic or mutual authentication. SSL and TLS ensure message integrity by providing data encryption with client and server authentication capabilities.

Authentication is a measured way to verify whether a party is eligible and able to access certain information as a way to protect against the fraudulent use of a system and/or the fraudulent transmission of information. Information transported across the Internet is especially vulnerable to being intercepted and misused, so configuring a JAX-RPC Web service to protect data in transit is very important.

## SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ)

The SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ) is a low-level API upon which JAX-RPC depends. It enables the production and consumption of messages that conform to the SOAP 1.1 specification and SOAP with Attachments note. Most developers will not use the SAAJ API, but will use the higher-level JAX-RPC API instead.

## J2EE Connector Architecture

The J2EE Connector architecture is used by J2EE tools vendors and system integrators to create resource adapters that support access to enterprise information systems that can be plugged into any J2EE product. A *resource adapter* is a software component that allows J2EE application components to access and interact with the underlying resource manager. Because a resource adapter is specific to its resource manager, there is typically a different resource adapter for each type of database or enterprise information system.

JAX-RPC and the J2EE Connector Architecture are complementary technologies for enterprise application integration (EAI) and end-to-end business integration.

The J2EE Connector Architecture also provides a performance-oriented, secure, scalable, and message-based transactional integration of J2EE-based Web services with existing EISs that can be either synchronous or asynchronous. Existing applications and EISs integrated through the J2EE Connector Architecture into the J2EE platform can be exposed as XML-based Web services using JAX-RPC and J2EE component models.

## Java Authentication and Authorization Service

The Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) provides a way for a J2EE application to authenticate and authorize a specific user or group of users to run it.

JAAS is a Java programming language version of the standard Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM) framework that extends the Java 2 Platform security architecture to support user-based authorization.

## Simplified Systems Integration

The J2EE platform is a platform-independent, full systems integration solution that creates an open marketplace in which every vendor can sell to every customer. Such a marketplace encourages vendors to compete, not by trying to lock customers into their technologies but by trying to outdo each other by providing products and services that benefit customers, such as better performance, better tools, or better customer support.

The J2EE APIs enable systems and applications integration through the following:

- Unified application model across tiers with enterprise beans
- Simplified response and request mechanism with JSP pages and servlets
- Reliable security model with JAAS
- XML-based data interchange integration with JAXP
- Simplified interoperability with the J2EE Connector Architecture
- Easy database connectivity with the JDBC API
- Enterprise application integration with message-driven beans and JMS, JTA, and JNDI

You can learn more about using the J2EE platform to build integrated business systems by reading *J2EE Technology in Practice*:

<http://java.sun.com/j2ee/inpractice/aboutthebook.html>

---

# Understanding XML

*Eric Armstrong*

**T**HIS chapter describes the Extensible Markup Language (XML) and its related specifications. It also gives you practice in writing XML data, so you become comfortably familiar with XML syntax.

---

**Note:** The XML files mentioned in this chapter can be found in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/xml/samples`.

---

## Introduction to XML

This section covers the basics of XML. The goal is to give you just enough information to get started, so you understand what XML is all about. (You'll learn about XML in later sections of the tutorial.) We then outline the major features that make XML great for information storage and interchange, and give you a general idea of how XML can be used.

## What Is XML?

XML is a text-based markup language that is fast becoming the standard for data interchange on the Web. As with HTML, you identify data using tags (identifiers enclosed in angle brackets, like this: `< . . >`). Collectively, the tags are known as “markup”.

But unlike HTML, XML tags *identify* the data, rather than specifying how to display it. Where an HTML tag says something like “display this data in bold font” (`<b>...</b>`), an XML tag acts like a field name in your program. It puts a label on a piece of data that identifies it (for example: `<message>...</message>`).

---

**Note:** Since identifying the data gives you some sense of what *means* (how to interpret it, what you should do with it), XML is sometimes described as a mechanism for specifying the *semantics* (meaning) of the data.

---

In the same way that you define the field names for a data structure, you are free to use any XML tags that make sense for a given application. Naturally, though, for multiple applications to use the same XML data, they have to agree on the tag names they intend to use.

Here is an example of some XML data you might use for a messaging application:

```
<message>
  <to>you@yourAddress.com</to>
  <from>me@myAddress.com</from>
  <subject>XML Is Really Cool</subject>
  <text>
    How many ways is XML cool? Let me count the ways...
  </text>
</message>
```

---

**Note:** Throughout this tutorial, we use boldface text to highlight things we want to bring to your attention. XML does not require anything to be in bold!

---

The tags in this example identify the message as a whole, the destination and sender addresses, the subject, and the text of the message. As in HTML, the `<to>` tag has a matching end tag: `</to>`. The data between the tag and its matching end tag defines an element of the XML data. Note, too, that the content of the `<to>` tag is entirely contained within the scope of the `<message>...</message>` tag. It is this ability for one tag to contain others that gives XML its ability to represent hierarchical data structures.

Once again, as with HTML, whitespace is essentially irrelevant, so you can format the data for readability and yet still process it easily with a program. Unlike HTML, however, in XML you could easily search a data set for messages con-



taining “cool” in the subject, because the XML tags identify the content of the data, rather than specifying its representation.

## Tags and Attributes

Tags can also contain attributes—additional information included as part of the tag itself, within the tag’s angle brackets. The following example shows an email message structure that uses attributes for the “to”, “from”, and “subject” fields:

```
<message to="you@yourAddress.com" from="me@myAddress.com"
  subject="XML Is Really Cool">
  <text>
    How many ways is XML cool? Let me count the ways...
  </text>
</message>
```

As in HTML, the attribute name is followed by an equal sign and the attribute value, and multiple attributes are separated by spaces. Unlike HTML, however, in XML commas between attributes are not ignored—if present, they generate an error.

Since you could design a data structure like `<message>` equally well using either attributes or tags, it can take a considerable amount of thought to figure out which design is best for your purposes. Designing an XML Data Structure (page 79), includes ideas to help you decide when to use attributes and when to use tags.

## Empty Tags

One really big difference between XML and HTML is that an XML document is always constrained to be well formed. There are several rules that determine when a document is well-formed, but one of the most important is that every tag has a closing tag. So, in XML, the `</to>` tag is not optional. The `<to>` element is never terminated by any tag other than `</to>`.

---

**Note:** Another important aspect of a well-formed document is that all tags are completely nested. So you can have `<message>...<to>...</to>...</message>`, but never `<message>...<to>...</message>...</to>`. A complete list of requirements is contained in the list of XML Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) at

<http://www.ucc.ie/xml/#FAQ-VALIDWF>. (This FAQ is on the w3c “Recommended Reading” list at <http://www.w3.org/XML/>.)

---

Sometimes, though, it makes sense to have a tag that stands by itself. For example, you might want to add a “flag” tag that marks message as important. A tag like that doesn’t enclose any content, so it’s known as an “empty tag”. You can create an empty tag by ending it with `</>` instead of `>`. For example, the following message contains such a tag:

```
<message to="you@yourAddress.com" from="me@myAddress.com"
  subject="XML Is Really Cool">
  <flag/>
  <text>
    How many ways is XML cool? Let me count the ways...
  </text>
</message>
```

---

**Note:** The empty tag saves you from having to code `<flag></flag>` in order to have a well-formed document. You can control which tags are allowed to be empty by creating a Document Type Definition, or DTD. We’ll talk about that in a few moments. If there is no DTD, then the document can contain any kinds of tags you want, as long as the document is well-formed.

---

## Comments in XML Files

XML comments look just like HTML comments:

```
<message to="you@yourAddress.com" from="me@myAddress.com"
  subject="XML Is Really Cool">
  <!-- This is a comment -->
  <text>
    How many ways is XML cool? Let me count the ways...
  </text>
</message>
```

## The XML Prolog

To complete this journeyman's introduction to XML, note that an XML file always starts with a prolog. The minimal prolog contains a declaration that identifies the document as an XML document, like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
```

The declaration may also contain additional information, like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" standalone="yes"?>
```

The XML declaration is essentially the same as the HTML header, `<html>`, except that it uses `<?..?>` and it may contain the following attributes:

### **version**

Identifies the version of the XML markup language used in the data. This attribute is not optional.

### **encoding**

Identifies the character set used to encode the data. "ISO-8859-1" is "Latin-1" the Western European and English language character set. (The default is compressed Unicode: UTF-8.)

### **standalone**

Tells whether or not this document references an external entity or an external data type specification (see below). If there are no external references, then "yes" is appropriate

The prolog can also contain definitions of entities (items that are inserted when you reference them from within the document) and specifications that tell which tags are valid in the document, both declared in a Document Type Definition (DTD) that can be defined directly within the prolog, as well as with pointers to external specification files. But those are the subject of later tutorials. For more information on these and many other aspects of XML, see the Recommended Reading list of the w3c XML page at <http://www.w3.org/XML/>.

---

**Note:** The declaration is actually optional. But it's a good idea to include it whenever you create an XML file. The declaration should have the version number, at a minimum, and ideally the encoding as well. That standard simplifies things if the XML standard is extended in the future, and if the data ever needs to be localized for different geographical regions.

---

Everything that comes after the XML prolog constitutes the document's *content*.

## Processing Instructions

An XML file can also contain *processing instructions* that give commands or information to an application that is processing the XML data. Processing instructions have the following format:

`<?target instructions?>`

where the *target* is the name of the application that is expected to do the processing, and *instructions* is a string of characters that embodies the information or commands for the application to process.

Since the instructions are application specific, an XML file could have multiple processing instructions that tell different applications to do similar things, though in different ways. The XML file for a slideshow, for example, could have processing instructions that let the speaker specify a technical or executive-level version of the presentation. If multiple presentation programs were used, the program might need multiple versions of the processing instructions (although it would be nicer if such applications recognized standard instructions).

---

**Note:** The target name “xml” (in any combination of upper or lowercase letters) is reserved for XML standards. In one sense, the declaration is a processing instruction that fits that standard. (However, when you’re working with the parser later, you’ll see that the method for handling processing instructions never sees the declaration.)

---

## Why Is XML Important?

There are a number of reasons for XML’s surging acceptance. This section lists a few of the most prominent.

### Plain Text

Since XML is not a binary format, you can create and edit files with anything from a standard text editor to a visual development environment. That makes it easy to debug your programs, and makes it useful for storing small amounts of data. At the other end of the spectrum, an XML front end to a database makes it possible to efficiently store large amounts of XML data as well. So XML provides scalability for anything from small configuration files to a company-wide data repository.

## Data Identification

XML tells you what kind of data you have, not how to display it. Because the markup tags identify the information and break up the data into parts, an email program can process it, a search program can look for messages sent to particular people, and an address book can extract the address information from the rest of the message. In short, because the different parts of the information have been identified, they can be used in different ways by different applications.

## Stylability

When display is important, the stylesheet standard, XSL (page 37), lets you dictate how to portray the data. For example, the stylesheet for:

```
<to>you@yourAddress.com</to>
```

can say:

1. Start a new line.
2. Display “To:” in bold, followed by a space
3. Display the destination data.

Which produces:

**To:** you@yourAddress

Of course, you could have done the same thing in HTML, but you wouldn’t be able to process the data with search programs and address-extraction programs and the like. More importantly, since XML is inherently style-free, you can use a completely different stylesheet to produce output in postscript, TEX, PDF, or some new format that hasn’t even been invented yet. That flexibility amounts to what one author described as “future-proofing” your information. The XML documents you author today can be used in future document-delivery systems that haven’t even been imagined yet.

## Inline Reusability

One of the nicer aspects of XML documents is that they can be composed from separate entities. You can do that with HTML, but only by linking to other documents. Unlike HTML, XML entities can be included “in line” in a document. The included sections look like a normal part of the document—you can search

the whole document at one time or download it in one piece. That lets you modularize your documents without resorting to links. You can single-source a section so that an edit to it is reflected everywhere the section is used, and yet a document composed from such pieces looks for all the world like a one-piece document.

## Linkability

Thanks to HTML, the ability to define links between documents is now regarded as a necessity. The next section of this tutorial, *XML and Related Specs: Digesting the Alphabet Soup* (page 33), discusses the link-specification initiative. This initiative lets you define two-way links, multiple-target links, “expanding” links (where clicking a link causes the targeted information to appear inline), and links between two existing documents that are defined in a third.

## Easily Processed

As mentioned earlier, regular and consistent notation makes it easier to build a program to process XML data. For example, in HTML a `<dt>` tag can be delimited by `</dt>`, another `<dt>`, `<dd>`, or `</dl>`. That makes for some difficult programming. But in XML, the `<dt>` tag must always have a `</dt>` terminator, or else it will be defined as a `<dt/>` tag. That restriction is a critical part of the constraints that make an XML document well-formed. (Otherwise, the XML parser won’t be able to read the data.) And since XML is a vendor-neutral standard, you can choose among several XML parsers, any one of which takes the work out of processing XML data.

## Hierarchical

Finally, XML documents benefit from their hierarchical structure. Hierarchical document structures are, in general, faster to access because you can drill down to the part you need, like stepping through a table of contents. They are also easier to rearrange, because each piece is delimited. In a document, for example, you could move a heading to a new location and drag everything under it along with the heading, instead of having to page down to make a selection, cut, and then paste the selection into a new location.

## How Can You Use XML?

There are several basic ways to make use of XML:

- Traditional data processing, where XML encodes the data for a program to process
- Document-driven programming, where XML documents are containers that build interfaces and applications from existing components
- Archiving—the foundation for document-driven programming, where the customized version of a component is saved (archived) so it can be used later
- Binding, where the DTD or schema that defines an XML data structure is used to automatically generate a significant portion of the application that will eventually process that data

## Traditional Data Processing

XML is fast becoming the data representation of choice for the Web. It's terrific when used in conjunction with network-centric Java-platform programs that send and retrieve information. So a client/server application, for example, could transmit XML-encoded data back and forth between the client and the server.

In the future, XML is potentially the answer for data interchange in all sorts of transactions, as long as both sides agree on the markup to use. (For example, should an e-mail program expect to see tags named <FIRST> and <LAST>, or <FIRSTNAME> and <LASTNAME>?) The need for common standards will generate a lot of industry-specific standardization efforts in the years ahead. In the meantime, mechanisms that let you “translate” the tags in an XML document will be important. Such mechanisms include projects like the RDF (page 42) initiative, which defines “meta tags”, and the XSL (page 37) specification, which lets you translate XML tags into other XML tags.

## Document-Driven Programming (DDP)

The newest approach to using XML is to construct a document that describes how an application page should look. The document, rather than simply being displayed, consists of references to user interface components and business-logic components that are “hooked together” to create an application on the fly.

Of course, it makes sense to utilize the Java platform for such components. Both Java Beans<sup>TM</sup> for interfaces and Enterprise Java Beans<sup>TM</sup> for business logic can

be used to construct such applications. Although none of the efforts undertaken so far are ready for commercial use, much preliminary work has already been done.

---

**Note:** The Java programming language is also excellent for writing XML-processing tools that are as portable as XML. Several Visual XML editors have been written for the Java platform. For a listing of editors, processing tools, and other XML resources, see the “Software” section of Robin Cover’s SGML/XML Web Page at <http://www.oasis-open.org/cover/>.

---

## Binding

Once you have defined the structure of XML data using either a DTD or the one of the schema standards, a large part of the processing you need to do has already been defined. For example, if the schema says that the text data in a `<date>` element must follow one of the recognized date formats, then one aspect of the validation criteria for the data has been defined—it only remains to write the code. Although a DTD specification cannot go the same level of detail, a DTD (like a schema) provides a grammar that tells which data structures can occur, in what sequences. That specification tells you how to write the high-level code that processes the data elements.

But when the data structure (and possibly format) is fully specified, the code you need to process it can just as easily be generated automatically. That process is known as *binding*—creating classes that recognize and process different data elements by processing the specification that defines those elements. As time goes on, you should find that you are using the data specification to generate significant chunks of code, so you can focus on the programming that is unique to your application.

## Archiving

The Holy Grail of programming is the construction of reusable, modular components. Ideally, you’d like to take them off the shelf, customize them, and plug them together to construct an application, with a bare minimum of additional coding and additional compilation.

The basic mechanism for saving information is called *archiving*. You archive a component by writing it to an output stream in a form that you can reuse later. You can then read it in and instantiate it using its saved parameters. (For exam-



ple, if you saved a table component, its parameters might be the number of rows and columns to display.) Archived components can also be shuffled around the Web and used in a variety of ways.

When components are archived in binary form, however, there are some limitations on the kinds of changes you can make to the underlying classes if you want to retain compatibility with previously saved versions. If you could modify the archived version to reflect the change, that would solve the problem. But that's hard to do with a binary object. Such considerations have prompted a number of investigations into using XML for archiving. But if an object's state were archived in text form using XML, then anything and everything in it could be changed as easily as you can say, "search and replace".

XML's text-based format could also make it easier to transfer objects between applications written in different languages. For all of these reasons, XML-based archiving is likely to become an important force in the not-too-distant future.

## Summary

XML is pretty simple, and very flexible. It has many uses yet to be discovered—we are just beginning to scratch the surface of its potential. It is the foundation for a great many standards yet to come, providing a common language that different computer systems can use to exchange data with one another. As each industry-group comes up with standards for what they want to say, computers will begin to link to each other in ways previously unimaginable.

For more information on the background and motivation of XML, see this great article in Scientific American at

<http://www.sciam.com/1999/0599issue/0599bosak.html>

# XML and Related Specs: Digesting the Alphabet Soup

Now that you have a basic understanding of XML, it makes sense to get a high-level overview of the various XML-related acronyms and what they mean. There is a lot of work going on around XML, so there is a lot to learn.

The current APIs for accessing XML documents either serially or in random access mode are, respectively, SAX (page 35) and DOM (page 35). The specifications for ensuring the validity of XML documents are DTD (page 36) (the

original mechanism, defined as part of the XML specification) and various Schema Standards (page 38) proposals (newer mechanisms that use XML syntax to do the job of describing validation criteria).

Other future standards that are nearing completion include the XSL (page 37) standard—a mechanism for setting up translations of XML documents (for example to HTML or other XML) and for dictating how the document is rendered. The transformation part of that standard, XSLT (+XPATH) (page 37), is completed and covered in this tutorial. Another effort nearing completion is the XML Link Language specification (XML Linking, page 40), which enables links between XML documents.

Those are the major initiatives you will want to be familiar with. This section also surveys a number of other interesting proposals, including the HTML-lookalike standard, XHTML (page 41), and the meta-standard for describing the information an XML document contains, RDF (page 42). There are also standards efforts that extend XML's capabilities, such as XLink and XPointer.

Finally, there are a number of interesting standards and standards-proposals that build on XML, including Synchronized Multimedia Integration Language (SMIL, page 43), Mathematical Markup Language (MathML, page 43), Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG, page 43), and DrawML (page 44), as well as a number of eCommerce standards.

The remainder of this section gives you a more detailed description of these initiatives. To help keep things straight, it's divided into:

- Basic Standards (page 34)
- Schema Standards (page 38)
- Linking and Presentation Standards (page 40)
- Knowledge Standards (page 42)
- Standards That Build on XML (page 43)

Skim the terms once, so you know what's here, and keep a copy of this document handy so you can refer to it whenever you see one of these terms in something you're reading. Pretty soon, you'll have them all committed to memory, and you'll be at least "conversant" with XML!

## Basic Standards

These are the basic standards you need to be familiar with. They come up in pretty much any discussion of XML.

## SAX

### Simple API for XML

This API was actually a product of collaboration on the XML-DEV mailing list, rather than a product of the W3C. It's included here because it has the same “final” characteristics as a W3C recommendation.

You can also think of this standard as the “serial access” protocol for XML. This is the fast-to-execute mechanism you would use to read and write XML data in a server, for example. This is also called an event-driven protocol, because the technique is to register your handler with a SAX parser, after which the parser invokes your callback methods whenever it sees a new XML tag (or encounters an error, or wants to tell you anything else).

## DOM

### Document Object Model

The Document Object Model protocol converts an XML document into a collection of objects in your program. You can then manipulate the object model in any way that makes sense. This mechanism is also known as the “random access” protocol, because you can visit any part of the data at any time. You can then modify the data, remove it, or insert new data.

## JDOM and dom4j

While the Document Object Model (DOM) provides a lot of power for document-oriented processing, it doesn't provide much in the way of object-oriented simplification. Java developers who are processing more data-oriented structures—rather than books, articles, and other full-fledged documents—frequently find that object-oriented APIs like JDOM and dom4j are easier to use and more suited to their needs.

Here are the important differences to understand when choosing between the two:

- JDOM is somewhat cleaner, smaller API. Where “coding style” is an important consideration, JDOM is a good choice.
- JDOM is a Java Community Process (JCP) initiative. When completed, it will be an endorsed standard.
- dom4j is a smaller, faster implementation that has been in wide use for a number of years.
- dom4j is a factory-based implementation. That makes it easier to modify for complex, special-purpose applications. At the time of this writing, JDOM does not yet use a factory to instantiate an instance of the parser (although the standard appears to be headed in that direction). So, with JDOM, you always get the original parser. (That’s fine for the majority of applications, but may not be appropriate if your application has special needs.)

For more information on JDOM, see <http://www.jdom.org/>.

For more information on dom4j, see <http://dom4j.org/>.

## DTD

### Document Type Definition

The DTD specification is actually part of the XML specification, rather than a separate entity. On the other hand, it is optional—you can write an XML document without it. And there are a number of Schema Standards (page 38) proposals that offer more flexible alternatives. So it is treated here as though it were a separate specification.

A DTD specifies the kinds of tags that can be included in your XML document, and the valid arrangements of those tags. You can use the DTD to make sure you don’t create an invalid XML structure. You can also use it to make sure that the XML structure you are reading (or that got sent over the net) is indeed valid.

Unfortunately, it is difficult to specify a DTD for a complex document in such a way that it prevents all invalid combinations and allows all the valid ones. So constructing a DTD is something of an art. The DTD can exist at the front of the document, as part of the prolog. It can also exist as a separate entity, or it can be split between the document prolog and one or more additional entities.

However, while the DTD mechanism was the first method defined for specifying valid document structure, it was not the last. Several newer schema specifications have been devised. You'll learn about those momentarily.

## Namespaces

The namespace standard lets you write an XML document that uses two or more sets of XML tags in modular fashion. Suppose for example that you created an XML-based parts list that uses XML descriptions of parts supplied by other manufacturers (online!). The “price” data supplied by the subcomponents would be amounts you want to total up, while the “price” data for the structure as a whole would be something you want to display. The namespace specification defines mechanisms for qualifying the names so as to eliminate ambiguity. That lets you write programs that use information from other sources and do the right things with it.

The latest information on namespaces can be found at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names>.

## XSL

### Extensible Stylesheet Language

The XML standard specifies how to identify data, not how to display it. HTML, on the other hand, told how things should be displayed without identifying what they were. The XSL standard has two parts, XSLT (the transformation standard, described next) and XSL-FO (the part that covers *formatting objects*, also known as *flow objects*). XSL-FO gives you the ability to define multiple areas on a page and then link them together. When a text stream is directed at the collection, it fills the first area and then “flows” into the second when the first area is filled. Such objects are used by newsletters, catalogs, and periodical publications.

The latest W3C work on XSL is at <http://www.w3.org/TR/WD-xsl>.

## XSLT (+XPATH)

### Extensible Stylesheet Language for Transformations

The XSLT transformation standard is essentially a translation mechanism that lets you specify what to convert an XML tag into so that it can be displayed—for example, in HTML. Different XSL formats can then be used to display the same data in different ways, for different uses. (The XPATH standard is an addressing

mechanism that you use when constructing transformation instructions, in order to specify the parts of the XML structure you want to transform.)

## Schema Standards

A DTD makes it possible to validate the structure of relatively simple XML documents, but that’s as far as it goes.

A DTD can’t restrict the content of elements, and it can’t specify complex relationships. For example, it is impossible to specify with a DTD that a `<heading>` for a `<book>` must have both a `<title>` and an `<author>`, while a `<heading>` for a `<chapter>` only needs a `<title>`. In a DTD, once you only get to specify the structure of the `<heading>` element one time. There is no context-sensitivity.

This issue stems from the fact that a DTD specification is not hierarchical. For a mailing address that contained several “parsed character data” (PCDATA) elements, for example, the DTD might look something like this:

```
<!ELEMENT mailAddress (name, address, zipcode)>
<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT address (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT zipcode (#PCDATA)>
```

As you can see, the specifications are linear. That fact forces you to come up with new names for similar elements in different settings. So if you wanted to add another “name” element to the DTD that contained the `<firstName>`, `<middleInitial>`, and `<lastName>`, then you would have to come up with another identifier. You could not simply call it “name” without conflicting with the `<name>` element defined for use in a `<mailAddress>`.

Another problem with the non hierarchical nature of DTD specifications is that it is not clear what comments are meant to explain. A comment at the top like `<!-- Address used for mailing via the postal system -->` would apply to all of the elements that constitute a mailing address. But a comment like `<!-- Addressee -->` would apply to the name element only. On the other hand, a comment like `<!-- A 5-digit string -->` would apply specifically to the `#PCDATA` part of the `zipcode` element, to describe the valid formats. Finally, DTDs do not allow you to formally specify field-validation criteria, such as the 5-digit (or 5 and 4) limitation for the `zipcode` field.

Finally, a DTD uses syntax which substantially different from XML, so it can’t be processed with a standard XML parser. That means you can’t read a DTD into a DOM, for example, modify it, and then write it back out again.

To remedy these shortcomings, a number of proposals have been made for a more database-like, hierarchical “schema” that specifies validation criteria. The major proposals are shown below.

## XML Schema

A large, complex standard that has two parts. One part specifies structure relationships. (This is the largest and most complex part.) The other part specifies mechanisms for validating the content of XML elements by specifying a (potentially very sophisticated) *datatype* for each element. The good news is that XML Schema for Structures lets you specify any kind of relationship you can conceive of. The bad news is that it takes a lot of work to implement, and it takes a bit of learning to use. Most of the alternatives provide for simpler structure definitions, while incorporating the XML Schema datatype standard.

For more information on the XML Schema, see the W3C specs XML Schema (Structures) and XML Schema (Datatypes), as well as other information accessible at <http://www.w3c.org/XML/Schema>.

## RELAX NG

Regular Language description for XML

Simpler than XML Structure Schema, is an emerging standard under the auspices of OASIS (Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Systems). RELAX NG use regular expression patterns to express constraints on structure relationships, and it is designed to work with the XML Schema datatyping mechanism to express content constraints. This standard also uses XML syntax, and it includes a DTD to RELAX converter. (“NG” stands for “Next Generation”. It’s a newer version of the RELAX schema mechanism that integrates TREX.)

For more information on RELAX NG, see <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/relax-ng/>

## TREX

Tree Regular Expressions for XML

A means of expressing validation criteria by describing a *pattern* for the structure and content of an XML document. Now part of the RELAX NG specification.

For more information on TREX, see <http://www.thaiopensource.com/trex/>.

## SOX

Schema for Object-oriented XML

SOX is a schema proposal that includes extensible data types, namespaces, and embedded documentation.

For more information on SOX, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-SOX>.

## Schematron

Schema for Object-oriented XML

An assertion-based schema mechanism that allows for sophisticated validation.

For more information on the Schematron validation mechanism, see <http://www.ascc.net/xml/resource/schematron/schematron.html>.

# Linking and Presentation Standards

Arguably the two greatest benefits provided by HTML were the ability to link between documents, and the ability to create simple formatted documents (and, eventually, very complex formatted documents). The following standards aim at preserving the benefits of HTML in the XML arena, and to adding additional functionality, as well.

## XML Linking

These specifications provide a variety of powerful linking mechanisms, and are sure to have a big impact on how XML documents are used.

### **XLink**

The XLink protocol is a specification for handling links between XML documents. This specification allows for some pretty sophisticated linking, including two-way links, links to multiple documents, “expanding” links that insert the linked information into your document rather than replacing your document with a new page, links between two documents that are created in a third, independent document, and indirect links (so you can point to



an “address book” rather than directly to the target document—updating the address book then automatically changes any links that use it).

### **XML Base**

This standard defines an attribute for XML documents that defines a “base” address, that is used when evaluating a relative address specified in the document. (So, for example, a simple file name would be found in the base-address directory.)

### **XPointer**

In general, the XLink specification targets a document or document-segment using its ID. The XPointer specification defines mechanisms for “addressing into the internal structures of XML documents”, without requiring the author of the document to have defined an ID for that segment. To quote the spec, it provides for “reference to elements, character strings, and other parts of XML documents, whether or not they bear an explicit ID attribute”.

For more information on the XML Linking standards, see <http://www.w3.org/XML/Linking>.

## **XHTML**

The XHTML specification is a way of making XML documents that look and act like HTML documents. Since an XML document can contain any tags you care to define, why not define a set of tags that look like HTML? That’s the thinking behind the XHTML specification, at any rate. The result of this specification is a document that can be displayed in browsers and also treated as XML data. The data may not be quite as identifiable as “pure” XML, but it will be a heck of a lot easier to manipulate than standard HTML, because XML specifies a good deal more regularity and consistency.

For example, every tag in a well-formed XML document must either have an end-tag associated with it or it must end in `</>`. So you might see `<p> . . . </p>`, or you might see `<p/>`, but you will never see `<p>` standing by itself. The upshot of that requirement is that you never have to program for the weird kinds of cases you see in HTML where, for example, a `<dt>` tag might be terminated by `</DT>`, by another `<DT>`, by `<dd>`, or by `</dl>`. That makes it a lot easier to write code!

The XHTML specification is a reformulation of HTML 4.0 into XML. The latest information is at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1>.

## Knowledge Standards

When you start looking down the road five or six years, and visualize how the information on the Web will begin to turn into one huge knowledge base (the “semantic Web”). For the latest on the semantic Web, visit <http://www.w3.org/2001/sw/>.

In the meantime, here are the fundamental standards you’ll want to know about:

### RDF

#### Resource Description Framework

RDF is a standard for defining *meta* data—information that describes what a particular data item is, and specifies how it can be used. Used in conjunction with the XHTML specification, for example, or with HTML pages, RDF could be used to describe the content of the pages. For example, if your browser stored your ID information as FIRSTNAME, LASTNAME, and EMAIL, an RDF description could make it possible to transfer data to an application that wanted NAME and EMAILADDRESS. Just think: One day you may not need to type your name and address at every Web site you visit!

For the latest information on RDF, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-rdf-syntax>.

### RDF Schema

RDF Schema allows the specification of consistency rules and additional information that describe how the statements in a Resource Description Framework (RDF) should be interpreted.

For more information on the RDF Schema recommendation, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/rdf-schema>.

### XTM

#### XML Topic Maps

In many ways a simpler, more readily usable knowledge-representation than RDF, the topic maps standard is one worth watching. So far, RDF is the W3C standard for knowledge representation, but topic maps could possibly become the “developer’s choice” among knowledge representation standards.

For more information on XML Topic Maps, <http://www.topic-maps.org/xtm/index.html>. For information on topic maps and the Web, see <http://www.topicmaps.org/>.

## Standards That Build on XML

The following standards and proposals build on XML. Since XML is basically a language-definition tool, these specifications use it to define standardized languages for specialized purposes.

### Extended Document Standards

These standards define mechanisms for producing extremely complex documents—books, journals, magazines, and the like—using XML.

#### SMIL

Synchronized Multimedia Integration Language

SMIL is a W3C recommendation that covers audio, video, and animations. It also addresses the difficult issue of synchronizing the playback of such elements.

For more information on SMIL, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-smil>.

#### MathML

Mathematical Markup Language

MathML is a W3C recommendation that deals with the representation of mathematical formulas.

For more information on MathML, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-MathML>.

#### SVG

Scalable Vector Graphics

SVG is a W3C working draft that covers the representation of vector graphic images. (Vector graphic images that are built from commands that say things like “draw a line (square, circle) from point *x*<sub>1</sub> to point *m*,*n*” rather than encoding the image as a series of bits. Such images are more easily scalable, although they typically require more processing time to render.)

For more information on SVG, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/WD-SVG>.

## DrawML

Drawing Meta Language

DrawML is a W3C note that covers 2D images for technical illustrations. It also addresses the problem of updating and refining such images.

For more information on DrawML, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-drawml>.

## eCommerce Standards

These standards are aimed at using XML in the world of business-to-business (B2B) and business-to-consumer (B2C) commerce.

## ICE

Information and Content Exchange

ICE is a protocol for use by content syndicators and their subscribers. It focuses on “automating content exchange and reuse, both in traditional publishing contexts and in business-to-business relationships”.

For more information on ICE, see <http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-ice>.

## ebXML

Electronic Business with XML

This standard aims at creating a modular electronic business framework using XML. It is the product of a joint initiative by the United Nations (UN/CEFACT) and the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Systems (OASIS).

For more information on ebXML, see <http://www.ebxml.org/>.

## cxml

Commerce XML

cxml is a RosettaNet ([www.rosettanet.org](http://www.rosettanet.org)) standard for setting up interactive online catalogs for different buyers, where the pricing and product offerings are company specific. Includes mechanisms to handle purchase orders, change orders, status updates, and shipping notifications.

For more information on cxml, see <http://www.cxml.org/>

## **CBL**

Common Business Library

CBL is a library of element and attribute definitions maintained by CommerceNet ([www.commerce.net](http://www.commerce.net)).

For more information on CBL and a variety of other initiatives that work together to enable eCommerce applications, see [http://www.commerce.net/projects/current-projects/eco/wg/eCo\\_Framework\\_Specifications.html](http://www.commerce.net/projects/current-projects/eco/wg/eCo_Framework_Specifications.html).

## **UBL**

Universal Business Language

An OASIS initiative aimed at compiling a standard library of XML business documents (purchase orders, invoices, etc.) that are defined with XML Schema definitions.

For more information on UBL, see <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ubl>.

## **Summary**

XML is becoming a widely-adopted standard that is being used in a dizzying variety of application areas.

# **Generating XML Data**

This section also takes you step by step through the process of constructing an XML document. Along the way, you'll gain experience with the XML components you'll typically use to create your data structures.

## **Writing a Simple XML File**

You'll start by writing the kind of XML data you could use for a slide presentation. In this exercise, you'll use your text editor to create the data in order to become comfortable with the basic format of an XML file. You'll be using this file and extending it in later exercises.

## Creating the File

Using a standard text editor, create a file called `slideSample.xml`.

---

**Note:** Here is a version of it that already exists: `slideSample01.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample01-xml.html`.) You can use this version to compare your work, or just review it as you read this guide.

---

## Writing the Declaration

Next, write the declaration, which identifies the file as an XML document. The declaration starts with the characters “<?”, which is the standard XML identifier for a *processing instruction*. (You’ll see other processing instructions later on in this tutorial.)

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
```

This line identifies the document as an XML document that conforms to version 1.0 of the XML specification, and says that it uses the 8-bit Unicode character-encoding scheme. (For information on encoding schemes, see *Java Encoding Schemes* (page 811).)

Since the document has not been specified as “standalone”, the parser assumes that it may contain references to other documents. To see how to specify a document as “standalone”, see *The XML Prolog* (page 27).

## Adding a Comment

Comments are ignored by XML parsers. A program will never see them in fact, unless you activate special settings in the parser. Add the text highlighted below to put a comment into the file.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>  
  
<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->
```

## Defining the Root Element

After the declaration, every XML file defines exactly one element, known as the root element. Any other elements in the file are contained within that element.

Enter the text highlighted below to define the root element for this file, `slide-show`:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>

<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->

<slideshow>

</slideshow>
```

---

**Note:** XML element names are case-sensitive. The end-tag must exactly match the start-tag.

---

## Adding Attributes to an Element

A slide presentation has a number of associated data items, none of which require any structure. So it is natural to define them as attributes of the `slide-show` element. Add the text highlighted below to set up some attributes:

```
...
<slideshow
  title="Sample Slide Show"
  date="Date of publication"
  author="Yours Truly"
>
</slideshow>
```

When you create a name for a tag or an attribute, you can use hyphens (“-”), underscores (“\_”), colons (“:”), and periods (“.”) in addition to characters and numbers. Unlike HTML, values for XML attributes are always in quotation marks, and multiple attributes are never separated by commas.

---

**Note:** Colons should be used with care or avoided altogether, because they are used when defining the namespace for an XML document.

---

## Adding Nested Elements

XML allows for hierarchically structured data, which means that an element can contain other elements. Add the text highlighted below to define a slide element and a title element contained within it:

```
<slideshow
  ...
>

  <!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
  <slide type="all">
    <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
  </slide>

</slideshow>
```

Here you have also added a type attribute to the slide. The idea of this attribute is that slides could be earmarked for a mostly technical or mostly executive audience with `type="tech"` or `type="exec"`, or identified as suitable for both with `type="all"`.

More importantly, though, this example illustrates the difference between things that are more usefully defined as elements (the `title` element) and things that are more suitable as attributes (the `type` attribute). The visibility heuristic is primarily at work here. The title is something the audience will see. So it is an element. The type, on the other hand, is something that never gets presented, so it is an attribute. Another way to think about that distinction is that an element is a container, like a bottle. The type is a characteristic of the *container* (is it tall or short, wide or narrow). The title is a characteristic of the *contents* (water, milk, or tea). These are not hard and fast rules, of course, but they can help when you design your own XML structures.

## Adding HTML-Style Text

Since XML lets you define any tags you want, it makes sense to define a set of tags that look like HTML. The XHTML standard does exactly that, in fact. You'll see more about that towards the end of the SAX tutorial. For now, type the



text highlighted below to define a slide with a couple of list item entries that use an HTML-style `<em>` tag for emphasis (usually rendered as italicized text):

```
...
<!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
<slide type="all">
  <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
</slide>

<!-- OVERVIEW -->
<slide type="all">
  <title>Overview</title>
  <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
  <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
</slide>

</slideshow>
```

Note that defining a *title* element conflicts with the XHTML element that uses the same name. We'll discuss the mechanism that produces the conflict (the DTD), along with possible solutions, later on in this tutorial.

## Adding an Empty Element

One major difference between HTML and XML, though, is that all XML must be *well-formed* — which means that every tag must have an ending tag or be an empty tag. You're getting pretty comfortable with ending tags, by now. Add the text highlighted below to define an empty list item element with no contents:

```
...
<!-- OVERVIEW -->
<slide type="all">
  <title>Overview</title>
  <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
  <item/>
  <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
</slide>

</slideshow>
```

Note that any element can be empty element. All it takes is ending the tag with `</>` instead of `</>`. You could do the same thing by entering `<item></item>`, which is equivalent.

---

**Note:** Another factor that makes an XML file *well-formed* is proper nesting. So `<b><i>some_text</i></b>` is well-formed, because the `<i>...</i>` sequence is completely nested within the `<b>...</b>` tag. This sequence, on the other hand, is not well-formed: `<b><i>some_text</b></i>`.

---

## The Finished Product

Here is the completed version of the XML file:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>

<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->

<slideshow
  title="Sample Slide Show"
  date="Date of publication"
  author="Yours Truly"
>

  <!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
  <slide type="all">
    <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
  </slide>

  <!-- OVERVIEW -->
  <slide type="all">
    <title>Overview</title>
    <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
    <item/>
    <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
  </slide>
</slideshow>
```

Save a copy of this file as `slideSample01.xml`, so you can use it as the initial data structure when experimenting with XML programming operations.

## Writing Processing Instructions

It sometimes makes sense to code application-specific processing instructions in the XML data. In this exercise, you'll add a processing instruction to your `slideSample.xml` file.

---

**Note:** The file you'll create in this section is `slideSample02.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample02-xml.html`.)

---

As you saw in Processing Instructions (page 28), the format for a processing instruction is `<?target data?>`, where “target” is the target application that is expected to do the processing, and “data” is the instruction or information for it to process. Add the text highlighted below to add a processing instruction for a mythical slide presentation program that will query the user to find out which slides to display (technical, executive-level, or all):

```
<slideshow
...
>

<!-- PROCESSING INSTRUCTION -->
<?my.presentation.Program QUERY="exec, tech, all"?>

<!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
```

Notes:

- The “data” portion of the processing instruction can contain spaces, or may even be null. But there cannot be any space between the initial `<?` and the target identifier.
- The data begins after the first space.
- Fully qualifying the target with the complete Web-unique package prefix makes sense, so as to preclude any conflict with other programs that might process the same data.
- For readability, it seems like a good idea to include a colon (:) after the name of the application, like this:

```
<?my.presentation.Program: QUERY="..."?>
```

The colon makes the target name into a kind of “label” that identifies the intended recipient of the instruction. However, while the w3c spec allows “:” in a target name, some versions of IE5 consider it an error. For this tutorial, then, we avoid using a colon in the target name.

Save a copy of this file as `slideSample02.xml`, so you can use it when experimenting with processing instructions.

## Introducing an Error

The parser can generate one of three kinds of errors: fatal error, error, and warning. In this exercise, you'll make a simple modification to the XML file to introduce a fatal error. Then you'll see how it's handled in the Echo app.

---

**Note:** The XML structure you'll create in this exercise is in `slideSampleBad1.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSampleBad1-xml.html`.)

---

One easy way to introduce a fatal error is to remove the final `/` from the empty `item` element to create a tag that does not have a corresponding end tag. That constitutes a fatal error, because all XML documents must, by definition, be well formed. Do the following:

1. Copy `slideSample02.xml` to `slideSampleBad1.xml`.
2. Edit `slideSampleBad1.xml` and remove the character shown below:

```
...
<!-- OVERVIEW -->
<slide type="all">
  <title>Overview</title>
  <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
  <item/>
  <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
</slide>
...
```

to produce:

```
...
<item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
<item>
<item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
...
```

Now you have a file that you can use to generate an error in any parser, any time. (XML parsers are required to generate a fatal error for this file, because the lack of an end-tag for the `<item>` element means that the XML structure is no longer *well-formed*.)

# Substituting and Inserting Text

In this section, you'll learn about:

- Handling Special Characters (“<”, “&”, and so on)
- Handling Text with XML-style syntax

## Handling Special Characters

In XML, an entity is an XML structure (or plain text) that has a name. Referencing the entity by name causes it to be inserted into the document in place of the entity reference. To create an entity reference, the entity name is surrounded by an ampersand and a semicolon, like this:

```
&entityName;
```

Later, when you learn how to write a DTD, you'll see that you can define your own entities, so that `&yourEntityName;` expands to all the text you defined for that entity. For now, though, we'll focus on the predefined entities and character references that don't require any special definitions.

## Predefined Entities

An entity reference like `&amp;` contains a name (in this case, “amp”) between the start and end delimiters. The text it refers to (&) is substituted for the name, like a macro in a programming language. Table 2–1 shows the predefined entities for special characters.

**Table 2–1** Predefined Entities

Character	Reference
&	&amp;
<	&lt;
>	&gt;
"	&quot;
'	&apos;

## Character References

A character reference like `&#147;` contains a hash mark (#) followed by a number. The number is the Unicode value for a single character, such as 65 for the letter “A”, 147 for the left-curly quote, or 148 for the right-curly quote. In this case, the “name” of the entity is the hash mark followed by the digits that identify the character.

---

**Note:** XML expects values to be specified in decimal. However, the Unicode charts at <http://www.unicode.org/charts/> specify values in hexadecimal! So you’ll need to do a conversion to get the right value to insert into your XML data set.

---

## Using an Entity Reference in an XML Document

Suppose you wanted to insert a line like this in your XML document:

Market Size < predicted

The problem with putting that line into an XML file directly is that when the parser sees the left-angle bracket (<), it starts looking for a tag name, which throws off the parse. To get around that problem, you put `&lt;` in the file, instead of “<”.

---

**Note:** The results of the modifications below are contained in `slideSample03.xml`.

---

Add the text highlighted below to your `slideSample.xml` file, and save a copy of it for future use as `slideSample03.xml`:

```
<!-- OVERVIEW -->
<slide type="all">
  <title>Overview</title>
  ...
</slide>

<slide type="exec">
  <title>Financial Forecast</title>
  <item>Market Size &lt; predicted</item>
  <item>Anticipated Penetration</item>
  <item>Expected Revenues</item>
  <item>Profit Margin </item>
</slide>

</slideshow>
```

When you use an XML parser to echo this data, you will see the desired output:

```
Market Size < predicted
```

You see an angle bracket (“<”) where you coded “&lt;”, because the XML parser converts the reference into the entity it represents, and passes that entity to the application.

## Handling Text with XML-Style Syntax

When you are handling large blocks of XML or HTML that include many of the special characters, it would be inconvenient to replace each of them with the appropriate entity reference. For those situations, you can use a CDATA section.

---

**Note:** The results of the modifications below are contained in `slideSample04.xml`.

---

A CDATA section works like `<pre>...</pre>` in HTML, only more so—all whitespace in a CDATA section is significant, and characters in it are not interpreted as XML. A CDATA section starts with `<![CDATA[` and ends with `]]>`.

Add the text highlighted below to your `slideSample.xml` file to define a CDATA section for a fictitious technical slide, and save a copy of the file as `slideSample04.xml`:

```
...
<slide type="tech">
  <title>How it Works</title>
  <item>First we fizzle the frobmorten</item>
  <item>Then we framboze the staten</item>
  <item>Finally, we frenzle the fuznaten</item>
  <item><![CDATA[Diagram:
    frobmorten <----- fuznaten
      |      <3> ^
      | <1> | <1> = fizzle
      V   | <2> = framboze
    Staten-----+<3> = frenzle
      <2>
  ]]></item>
</slide>
</slideshow>
```

When you echo this file with an XML parser, you'll see the following output:

```
Diagram:
frobmorten <-----fuznaten
  |      <3>      ^
  | <1>          | <1> = fizzle
  V           | <2> = framboze
staten-----+ <3> = frenzle
      <2>
```

The point here is that the text in the CDATA section will have arrived as it was written. Since the parser doesn't treat the angle brackets as XML, they don't generate the fatal errors they would otherwise cause. (Because, if the angle brackets weren't in a CDATA section, the document would not be well-formed.)

## Creating a Document Type Definition (DTD)

After the XML declaration, the document prolog can include a DTD, which lets you specify the kinds of tags that can be included in your XML document. In addition to telling a validating parser which tags are valid, and in what arrangements, a DTD tells both validating and nonvalidating parsers where text is



expected, which lets the parser determine whether the whitespace it sees is significant or ignorable.

## Basic DTD Definitions

To begin learning about DTD definitions, let's start by telling the parser where text is expected and where any text (other than whitespace) would be an error. (Whitespace in such locations is *ignorable*.)

---

**Note:** The DTD defined in this section is contained in `slideshow1a.dtd`. (The browsable version is `slideshow1a-dtd.html`.)

---

Start by creating a file named `slideshow.dtd`. Enter an XML declaration and a comment to identify the file, as shown below:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>

<!--
  DTD for a simple "slide show".
-->
```

Next, add the text highlighted below to specify that a `slideshow` element contains `slide` elements and nothing else:

```
<!-- DTD for a simple "slide show". -->

<!ELEMENT slideshow (slide+)>
```

As you can see, the DTD tag starts with `<!` followed by the tag name (ELEMENT). After the tag name comes the name of the element that is being defined (`slideshow`) and, in parentheses, one or more items that indicate the valid contents for that element. In this case, the notation says that a `slideshow` consists of one or more `slide` elements.

Without the plus sign, the definition would be saying that a `slideshow` consists of a single `slide` element. The qualifiers you can add to an element definition are listed in Table 2–2.

**Table 2–2** DTD Element Qualifiers

Qualifier	Name	Meaning
?	Question Mark	Optional (zero or one)
*	Asterisk	Zero or more
+	Plus Sign	One or more

You can include multiple elements inside the parentheses in a comma separated list, and use a qualifier on each element to indicate how many instances of that element may occur. The comma-separated list tells which elements are valid and the order they can occur in.

You can also nest parentheses to group multiple items. For an example, after defining an `image` element (coming up shortly), you could declare that every `image` element must be paired with a `title` element in a `slide` by specifying `((image, title)+)`. Here, the plus sign applies to the `image/title` pair to indicate that one or more pairs of the specified items can occur.

## Defining Text and Nested Elements

Now that you have told the parser something about where *not* to expect text, let's see how to tell it where text *can* occur. Add the text highlighted below to define the `slide`, `title`, `item`, and `list` elements:

```
<!ELEMENT slideshow (slide+)>
<!ELEMENT slide (title, item*)>
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA | item)* >
```

The first line you added says that a `slide` consists of a `title` followed by zero or more `item` elements. Nothing new there. The next line says that a `title` consists entirely of *parsed character data* (PCDATA). That's known as "text" in most parts of the country, but in XML-speak it's called "parsed character data". (That distinguishes it from CDATA sections, which contain character data that is not

parsed.) The “#” that precedes PCDATA indicates that what follows is a special word, rather than an element name.

The last line introduces the vertical bar (|), which indicates an *or* condition. In this case, either PCDATA or an `item` can occur. The asterisk at the end says that either one can occur zero or more times in succession. The result of this specification is known as a *mixed-content model*, because any number of `item` elements can be interspersed with the text. Such models must always be defined with `#PCDATA` specified first, some number of alternate items divided by vertical bars (|), and an asterisk (\*) at the end.

Save a copy of this DTD as `slideSample1a.dtd`, for use when experimenting with basic DTD processing.

## Limitations of DTDs

It would be nice if we could specify that an `item` contains either text, or text followed by one or more list items. But that kind of specification turns out to be hard to achieve in a DTD. For example, you might be tempted to define an `item` like this:

```
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA | (#PCDATA, item+)) >
```

That would certainly be accurate, but as soon as the parser sees `#PCDATA` and the vertical bar, it requires the remaining definition to conform to the mixed-content model. This specification doesn't, so you get an error that says: `Illegal mixed content model for 'item'. Found &#x28; ...`, where the hex character 28 is the angle bracket that ends the definition.

Trying to double-define the `item` element doesn't work, either. A specification like this:

```
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA) >
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA, item+) >
```

produces a “duplicate definition” warning when the validating parser runs. The second definition is, in fact, ignored. So it seems that defining a mixed content model (which allows `item` elements to be interspersed in text) is about as good as we can do.

In addition to the limitations of the mixed content model mentioned above, there is no way to further qualify the kind of text that can occur where PCDATA has

been specified. Should it contain only numbers? Should be in a date format, or possibly a monetary format? There is no way to say in the context of a DTD.

Finally, note that the DTD offers no sense of hierarchy. The definition for the `title` element applies equally to a `slide` title and to an `item` title. When we expand the DTD to allow HTML-style markup in addition to plain text, it would make sense to restrict the size of an `item` title compared to a `slide` title, for example. But the only way to do that would be to give one of them a different name, such as “`item-title`”. The bottom line is that the lack of hierarchy in the DTD forces you to introduce a “hyphenation hierarchy” (or its equivalent) in your namespace. All of these limitations are fundamental motivations behind the development of schema-specification standards.

## Special Element Values in the DTD

Rather than specifying a parenthesized list of elements, the element definition could use one of two special values: `ANY` or `EMPTY`. The `ANY` specification says that the element may contain any other defined element, or `PCDATA`. Such a specification is usually used for the root element of a general-purpose XML document such as you might create with a word processor. Textual elements could occur in any order in such a document, so specifying `ANY` makes sense.

The `EMPTY` specification says that the element contains no contents. So the DTD for e-mail messages that let you “flag” the message with `<flag/>` might have a line like this in the DTD:

```
<!ELEMENT flag EMPTY>
```

## Referencing the DTD

In this case, the DTD definition is in a separate file from the XML document. That means you have to reference it from the XML document, which makes the DTD file part of the external subset of the full Document Type Definition (DTD) for the XML file. As you’ll see later on, you can also include parts of the DTD within the document. Such definitions constitute the local subset of the DTD.

---

**Note:** The XML written in this section is contained in `slideSample05.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample05-xml.html`.)

---

To reference the DTD file you just created, add the line highlighted below to your `slideSample.xml` file, and save a copy of the file as `slideSample05.xml`:

```
<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->

<!DOCTYPE slideshow SYSTEM "slideshow.dtd">

<slideshow
```

Again, the DTD tag starts with “<!”. In this case, the tag name, DOCTYPE, says that the document is a `slideshow`, which means that the document consists of the `slideshow` element and everything within it:

```
<slideshow>
...
</slideshow>
```

This tag defines the `slideshow` element as the root element for the document. An XML document must have exactly one root element. This is where that element is specified. In other words, this tag identifies the document *content* as a `slideshow`.

The DOCTYPE tag occurs after the XML declaration and before the root element. The SYSTEM identifier specifies the location of the DTD file. Since it does not start with a prefix like `http://` or `file:/`, the path is relative to the location of the XML document. Remember the `setDocumentLocator` method? The parser is using that information to find the DTD file, just as your application would to find a file relative to the XML document. A PUBLIC identifier could also be used to specify the DTD file using a unique name—but the parser would have to be able to resolve it

The DOCTYPE specification could also contain DTD definitions within the XML document, rather than referring to an external DTD file. Such definitions would be contained in square brackets, like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE slideshow SYSTEM "slideshow1.dtd" [
    ...local subset definitions here...
]>
```

You’ll take advantage of that facility in a moment to define some entities that can be used in the document.

## Documents and Data

Earlier, you learned that one reason you hear about XML *documents*, on the one hand, and XML *data*, on the other, is that XML handles both comfortably, depending on whether text is or is not allowed between elements in the structure.

In the sample file you have been working with, the `slideshow` element is an example of a *data element*—it contains only subelements with no intervening text. The `item` element, on the other hand, might be termed a *document element*, because it is defined to include both text and subelements.

As you work through this tutorial, you will see how to expand the definition of the title element to include HTML-style markup, which will turn it into a document element as well.

## Defining Attributes and Entities in the DTD

The DTD you’ve defined so far is fine for use with the nonvalidating parser. It tells where text is expected and where it isn’t, which is all the nonvalidating parser is going to pay attention to. But for use with the validating parser, the DTD needs to specify the valid attributes for the different elements. You’ll do that in this section, after which you’ll define one internal entity and one external entity that you can reference in your XML file.

## Defining Attributes in the DTD

Let’s start by defining the attributes for the elements in the slide presentation.

---

**Note:** The XML written in this section is contained in `slideshow1b.dtd`. (The browsable version is `slideshow1b-dtd.html`.)

---

Add the text highlighted below to define the attributes for the `slideshow` element:

```
<!ELEMENT slideshow (slide+)>
<!ATTLIST slideshow
    title      CDATA      #REQUIRED
    date       CDATA      #IMPLIED
    author     CDATA      "unknown"
>
<!ELEMENT slide (title, item*)>
```

The DTD tag `ATTLIST` begins the series of attribute definitions. The name that follows `ATTLIST` specifies the element for which the attributes are being defined. In this case, the element is the `slideshow` element. (Note once again the lack of hierarchy in DTD specifications.)

Each attribute is defined by a series of three space-separated values. Commas and other separators are not allowed, so formatting the definitions as shown above is helpful for readability. The first element in each line is the name of the attribute: `title`, `date`, or `author`, in this case. The second element indicates the type of the data: `CDATA` is character data—unparsed data, once again, in which a left-angle bracket (`<`) will never be construed as part of an XML tag. Table 2–3 presents the valid choices for the attribute type.

**Table 2–3** Attribute Types

Attribute Type	Specifies...
(value1   value2   ...)	A list of values separated by vertical bars. (Example below)
CDATA	“Unparsed character data”. (For normal people, a text string.)
ID	A name that no other ID attribute shares.
IDREF	A reference to an ID defined elsewhere in the document.
IDREFS	A space-separated list containing one or more ID references.
ENTITY	The name of an entity defined in the DTD.
ENTITIES	A space-separated list of entities.
NMTOKEN	A valid XML name composed of letters, numbers, hyphens, underscores, and colons.
NMTOKENS	A space-separated list of names.
NOTATION	The name of a DTD-specified notation, which describes a non-XML data format, such as those used for image files.*

\*This is a rapidly obsolescing specification which will be discussed in greater length towards the end of this section.

When the attribute type consists of a parenthesized list of choices separated by vertical bars, the attribute must use one of the specified values. For an example, add the text highlighted below to the DTD:

```
<!ELEMENT slide (title, item*)>
<!ATTLIST slide
    type    (tech | exec | all) #IMPLIED
>
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA | item)* >
```

This specification says that the `slide` element's `type` attribute must be given as `type="tech"`, `type="exec"`, or `type="all"`. No other values are acceptable. (DTD-aware XML editors can use such specifications to present a pop-up list of choices.)

The last entry in the attribute specification determines the attribute's default value, if any, and tells whether or not the attribute is required. Table 2–4 shows the possible choices.

**Table 2–4** Attribute-Specification Parameters

Specification	Specifies...
#REQUIRED	The attribute value must be specified in the document.
#IMPLIED	The value need not be specified in the document. If it isn't, the application will have a default value it uses.
"defaultValue"	The default value to use, if a value is not specified in the document.
#FIXED "fixedValue"	The value to use. If the document specifies any value at all, it must be the same.

Finally, save a copy of the DTD as `slideshow1b.dtd`, for use when experimenting with attribute definitions.



## Defining Entities in the DTD

So far, you’ve seen predefined entities like `&amp;`; and you’ve seen that an attribute can reference an entity. It’s time now for you to learn how to define entities of your own.

---

**Note:** The XML you’ll create here is contained in `slideSample06.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample06-xml.html`.)

---

Add the text highlighted below to the DOCTYPE tag in your XML file:

```
<!DOCTYPE slideshow SYSTEM "slideshow.dtd" [  
  <!ENTITY product "WonderWidget">  
  <!ENTITY products "WonderWidgets">  
>
```

The ENTITY tag name says that you are defining an entity. Next comes the name of the entity and its definition. In this case, you are defining an entity named “product” that will take the place of the product name. Later when the product name changes (as it most certainly will), you will only have to change the name one place, and all your slides will reflect the new value.

The last part is the substitution string that replaces the entity name whenever it is referenced in the XML document. The substitution string is defined in quotes, which are not included when the text is inserted into the document.

Just for good measure, we defined two versions, one singular and one plural, so that when the marketing mavens come up with “Wally” for a product name, you will be prepared to enter the plural as “Wallies” and have it substituted correctly.

---

**Note:** Truth be told, this is the kind of thing that really belongs in an external DTD. That way, all your documents can reference the new name when it changes. But, hey, this is an example...

---

Now that you have the entities defined, the next step is to reference them in the slide show. Make the changes highlighted below to do that:

```
<slideshow
  title="WonderWidget&product; Slide Show"
  ...

  <!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
  <slide type="all">
    <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets&products;!/title>
  </slide>

  <!-- OVERVIEW -->
  <slide type="all">
    <title>Overview</title>
    <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets&products;</em> are
great</item>
    <item/>
    <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets&products;</item>
  </slide>
```

The points to notice here are that entities you define are referenced with the same syntax (&entityName;) that you use for predefined entities, and that the entity can be referenced in an attribute value as well as in an element's contents.

When you echo this version of the file with an XML parser, here is the kind of thing you'll see:

```
Wake up to WonderWidgets!
```

Note that the product name has been substituted for the entity reference.

To finish, save a copy of the file as `slideSample06.xml`.

## Additional Useful Entities

Here are several other examples for entity definitions that you might find useful when you write an XML document:

```
<!ENTITY lldquo "&#147;"> <!-- Left Double Quote -->
<!ENTITY rldquo "&#148;"> <!-- Right Double Quote -->
<!ENTITY trade "&#153;"> <!-- Trademark Symbol (TM) -->
<!ENTITY rtrade "&#174;"> <!-- Registered Trademark (R) -->
<!ENTITY copyr "&#169;"> <!-- Copyright Symbol -->
```

## Referencing External Entities

You can also use the SYSTEM or PUBLIC identifier to name an entity that is defined in an external file. You'll do that now.

---

**Note:** The XML defined here is contained in `slideSample07.xml` and in `copyright.xml`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample07-xml.html` and `copyright-xml.html`.)

---

To reference an external entity, add the text highlighted below to the DOCTYPE statement in your XML file:

```
<!DOCTYPE slideshow SYSTEM "slideshow.dtd" [
  <!ENTITY product "WonderWidget">
  <!ENTITY products "WonderWidgets">
  <!ENTITY copyright SYSTEM "copyright.xml">
]>
```

This definition references a copyright message contained in a file named `copyright.xml`. Create that file and put some interesting text in it, perhaps something like this:

```
<!-- A SAMPLE copyright -->

This is the standard copyright message that our lawyers
make us put everywhere so we don't have to shell out a
million bucks every time someone spills hot coffee in their
lap...
```

Finally, add the text highlighted below to your `slideSample.xml` file to reference the external entity, and save a copy of the file as `slideSample07.html`:

```
<!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
...
</slide>

<!-- COPYRIGHT SLIDE -->
<slide type="all">
  <item>&copyright;</item>
</slide>
```

You could also use an external entity declaration to access a servlet that produces the current date using a definition something like this:

```
<!ENTITY currentDate SYSTEM
    "http://www.example.com/servlet/CurrentDate?fmt=dd-MMM-
    yyyy">
```

You would then reference that entity the same as any other entity:

```
Today's date is &currentDate;.
```

When you echo the latest version of the slide presentation with an XML parser, here is what you'll see:

```
...
<slide type="all">
  <item>
    This is the standard copyright message that our lawyers
    make us put everywhere so we don't have to shell out a
    million bucks every time someone spills hot coffee in their
    lap...
  </item>
</slide>
...
```

You'll notice that the newline which follows the comment in the file is echoed as a character, but that the comment itself is ignored. That is the reason that the copyright message appears to start on the next line after the `<item>` element, instead of on the same line—the first character echoed is actually the newline that follows the comment.

## Summarizing Entities

An entity that is referenced in the document content, whether internal or external, is termed a general entity. An entity that contains DTD specifications that are referenced from within the DTD is termed a parameter entity. (More on that later.)

An entity which contains XML (text and markup), and which is therefore parsed, is known as a *parsed entity*. An entity which contains binary data (like images) is known as an *unparsed entity*. (By its very nature, it must be external.) We'll be discussing references to unparsed entities in the next section of this tutorial.

# Referencing Binary Entities

This section discusses the options for referencing binary files like image files and multimedia data files.

## Using a MIME Data Type

There are two ways to go about referencing an unparsed entity like a binary image file. One is to use the DTD's NOTATION-specification mechanism. However, that mechanism is a complex, non-intuitive holdover that mostly exists for compatibility with SGML documents. We will have occasion to discuss it in a bit more depth when we look at the DTDHandler API, but suffice it for now to say that the combination of the recently defined XML namespaces standard, in conjunction with the MIME data types defined for electronic messaging attachments, together provide a much more useful, understandable, and extensible mechanism for referencing unparsed external entities.

---

**Note:** The XML described here is in `slideshow1b.dtd`. It shows how binary references can be made, assuming that the application which will be processing the XML data knows how to handle such references.

---

To set up the slideshow to use image files, add the text highlighted below to your `slideshow1b.dtd` file:

```
<!ELEMENT slide (image?, title, item*)>
<!ATTLIST slide
    type    (tech | exec | all) #IMPLIED
>
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA | item)* >
<!ELEMENT image EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST image
    alt      CDATA      #IMPLIED
    src      CDATA      #REQUIRED
    type     CDATA      "image/gif"
>
```

These modifications declare `image` as an optional element in a `slide`, define it as empty element, and define the attributes it requires. The `image` tag is patterned after the HTML 4.0 tag, `img`, with the addition of an image-type specifier, `type`. (The `img` tag is defined in the HTML 4.0 Specification.)

The `image` tag's attributes are defined by the `ATTLIST` entry. The `alt` attribute, which defines alternate text to display in case the image can't be found, accepts character data (CDATA). It has an "implied" value, which means that it is optional, and that the program processing the data knows enough to substitute something like "Image not found". On the other hand, the `src` attribute, which names the image to display, is required.

The `type` attribute is intended for the specification of a MIME data type, as defined at <ftp://ftp.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/media-types/>. It has a default value: `image/gif`.

---

**Note:** It is understood here that the character data (CDATA) used for the `type` attribute will be one of the MIME data types. The two most common formats are: `image/gif`, and `image/jpeg`. Given that fact, it might be nice to specify an attribute list here, using something like:

```
type ("image/gif", "image/jpeg")
```

That won't work, however, because attribute lists are restricted to name tokens. The forward slash isn't part of the valid set of name-token characters, so this declaration fails. Besides that, creating an attribute list in the DTD would limit the valid MIME types to those defined today. Leaving it as CDATA leaves things more open ended, so that the declaration will continue to be valid as additional types are defined.

---

In the document, a reference to an image named "intro-pic" might look something like this:

```
<image src="image/intro-pic.gif", alt="Intro Pic",  
type="image/gif" />
```

## The Alternative: Using Entity References

Using a MIME data type as an attribute of an element is a mechanism that is flexible and expandable. To create an external ENTITY reference using the notation mechanism, you need DTD NOTATION elements for `jpeg` and `gif` data. Those can of course be obtained from some central repository. But then you need to define a different ENTITY element for each image you intend to reference! In other words, adding a new image to your document always requires both a new entity definition in the DTD and a reference to it in the document. Given the anticipated ubiquity of the HTML 4.0 specification, the newer standard is to use

the MIME data types and a declaration like `image`, which assumes the application knows how to process such elements.

## Defining Parameter Entities and Conditional Sections

Just as a general entity lets you reuse XML data in multiple places, a parameter entity lets you reuse parts of a DTD in multiple places. In this section of the tutorial, you'll see how to define and use parameter entities. You'll also see how to use parameter entities with conditional sections in a DTD.

### Creating and Referencing a Parameter Entity

Recall that the existing version of the slide presentation could not be validated because the document used `<em>` tags, and those are not part of the DTD. In general, we'd like to use a whole variety of HTML-style tags in the text of a slide, not just one or two, so it makes more sense to use an existing DTD for XHTML than it does to define all the tags we might ever need. A parameter entity is intended for exactly that kind of purpose.

---

**Note:** The DTD specifications shown here are contained in `slideshow2.dtd` and `xhtml.dtd`. The XML file that references it is `slideSample08.xml`. (The browsable versions are `slideshow2-dtd.html` and `slideSample08-xml.html`.)

---

Open your DTD file for the slide presentation and add the text highlighted below to define a parameter entity that references an external DTD file:

```
<!ELEMENT slide (image?, title?, item*)>
<!ATTLIST slide
    ...
>

<!ENTITY % xhtml SYSTEM "xhtml.dtd">
%xhtml;

<!ELEMENT title ...
```

Here, you used an `<!ENTITY>` tag to define a parameter entity, just as for a general entity, but using a somewhat different syntax. You included a percent sign

(%) before the entity name when you defined the entity, and you used the percent sign instead of an ampersand when you referenced it.

Also, note that there are always two steps for using a parameter entity. The first is to define the entity name. The second is to reference the entity name, which actually does the work of including the external definitions in the current DTD. Since the URI for an external entity could contain slashes (/) or other characters that are not valid in an XML name, the definition step allows a valid XML name to be associated with an actual document. (This same technique is used in the definition of namespaces, and anywhere else that XML constructs need to reference external documents.)

**Notes:**

- The DTD file referenced by this definition is `xhtml.dtd`. You can either copy that file to your system or modify the `SYSTEM` identifier in the `<!ENTITY>` tag to point to the correct URL.
- This file is a small subset of the XHTML specification, loosely modeled after the Modularized XHTML draft, which aims at breaking up the DTD for XHTML into bite-sized chunks, which can then be combined to create different XHTML subsets for different purposes. When work on the modularized XHTML draft has been completed, this version of the DTD should be replaced with something better. For now, this version will suffice for our purposes.

The whole point of using an XHTML-based DTD was to gain access to an entity it defines that covers HTML-style tags like `<em>` and `<b>`. Looking through `xhtml.dtd` reveals the following entity, which does exactly what we want:

```
<!ENTITY % inline "#PCDATA|em|b|a|img|br">
```

This entity is a simpler version of those defined in the Modularized XHTML draft. It defines the HTML-style tags we are most likely to want to use -- emphasis, bold, and break, plus a couple of others for images and anchors that we may or may not use in a slide presentation. To use the `inline` entity, make the changes highlighted below in your DTD file:

```
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA %inline;)*>
<!ELEMENT item (#PCDATA %inline; | item)* >
```

These changes replaced the simple `#PCDATA` item with the `inline` entity. It is important to notice that `#PCDATA` is first in the `inline` entity, and that `inline` is first wherever we use it. That is required by XML's definition of a mixed-content



model. To be in accord with that model, you also had to add an asterisk at the end of the `title` definition.

Save the DTD as `slideshow2.dtd`, for use when experimenting with parameter entities.

---

**Note:** The Modularized XHTML DTD defines both `inline` and `Inline` entities, and does so somewhat differently. Rather than specifying `#PCDATA|em|b|a|img|Br`, their definitions are more like `(#PCDATA|em|b|a|img|Br)*`. Using one of those definitions, therefore, looks more like this:

---

```
<!ELEMENT title %Inline; >
```

---

## Conditional Sections

Before we proceed with the next programming exercise, it is worth mentioning the use of parameter entities to control *conditional sections*. Although you cannot conditionalize the content of an XML document, you can define conditional sections in a DTD that become part of the DTD only if you specify `include`. If you specify `ignore`, on the other hand, then the conditional section is not included.

Suppose, for example, that you wanted to use slightly different versions of a DTD, depending on whether you were treating the document as an XML document or as a SGML document. You could do that with DTD definitions like the following:

```
someExternal.dtd:
<![ INCLUDE [
    ... XML-only definitions
]]>
<![ IGNORE [
    ... SGML-only definitions
]]>
... common definitions
```

The conditional sections are introduced by “<![”, followed by the `INCLUDE` or `IGNORE` keyword and another “[”. After that comes the contents of the conditional section, followed by the terminator: “]]>”. In this case, the XML definitions are included, and the SGML definitions are excluded. That’s fine for XML documents, but you can’t use the DTD for SGML documents. You could change the keywords, of course, but that only reverses the problem.

The solution is to use references to parameter entities in place of the `INCLUDE` and `IGNORE` keywords:

```
someExternal.dtd:
  <![ %XML; [
    ... XML-only definitions
  ]]>
  <![ %SGML; [
    ... SGML-only definitions
  ]]>
  ... common definitions
```

Then each document that uses the DTD can set up the appropriate entity definitions:

```
<!DOCTYPE foo SYSTEM "someExternal.dtd" [
  <!ENTITY % XML "INCLUDE" >
  <!ENTITY % SGML "IGNORE" >
]>
<foo>
...
</foo>
```

This procedure puts each document in control of the DTD. It also replaces the `INCLUDE` and `IGNORE` keywords with variable names that more accurately reflect the purpose of the conditional section, producing a more readable, self-documenting version of the DTD.

## Resolving A Naming Conflict

The XML structures you have created thus far have actually encountered a small naming conflict. It seems that `xhtml.dtd` defines a `title` element which is entirely different from the `title` element defined in the `slideshow DTD`. Because there is no hierarchy in the DTD, these two definitions conflict.

---

**Note:** The Modularized XHTML DTD also defines a `title` element that is intended to be the document title, so we can't avoid the conflict by changing `xhtml.dtd`—the problem would only come back to haunt us later.

---

You could use XML namespaces to resolve the conflict. You'll take a look at that approach in the next section. Alternatively, you could use one of the more hierarchical schema proposals described in *Schema Standards* (page 38). The simplest

way to solve the problem for now, though, is simply to rename the title element in `slideshow.dtd`.

---

**Note:** The XML shown here is contained in `slideshow3.dtd` and `slideSample09.xml`, which references `copyright.xml` and `xhtml.dtd`. (The browsable versions are `slideshow3-dtd.html`, `slideSample09-xml.html`, `copyright-xml.html`, and `xhtml-dtd.html`.)

---

To keep the two title elements separate, you'll create a "hyphenation hierarchy". Make the changes highlighted below to change the name of the title element in `slideshow.dtd` to `slide-title`:

```
<!ELEMENT slide (image?, slide-title?, item*)>
<!ATTLIST slide
    type    (tech | exec | all) #IMPLIED
>

<!-- Defines the %inline; declaration -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml SYSTEM "xhtml.dtd">
%xhtml;

<!ELEMENT slide-title (%inline;)*>
```

Save this DTD as `slideshow3.dtd`.

The next step is to modify the XML file to use the new element name. To do that, make the changes highlighted below:

```
...
<slide type="all">
<slide-title>Wake up to ... </slide-title>
</slide>

...

<!-- OVERVIEW -->
<slide type="all">
<slide-title>Overview</slide-title>
<item>...
```

Save a copy of this file as `slideSample09.xml`.

## Using Namespaces

As you saw earlier, one way or another it is necessary to resolve the conflict between the `title` element defined in `slideshow.dtd` and the one defined in `xhtml.dtd` when the same name is used for different purposes. In the previous exercise, you hyphenated the name in order to put it into a different “namespace”. In this section, you’ll see how to use the XML namespace standard to do the same thing without renaming the element.

The primary goal of the namespace specification is to let the document author tell the parser which DTD or schema to use when parsing a given element. The parser can then consult the appropriate DTD or schema for an element definition. Of course, it is also important to keep the parser from aborting when a “duplicate” definition is found, and yet still generate an error if the document references an element like `title` without *qualifying* it (identifying the DTD or schema to use for the definition).

---

**Note:** Namespaces apply to attributes as well as to elements. In this section, we consider only elements. For more information on attributes, consult the namespace specification at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names/>.

---

## Defining a Namespace in a DTD

In a DTD, you define a namespace that an element belongs to by adding an attribute to the element’s definition, where the attribute name is `xmlns` (“xml namespace”). For example, you could do that in `slideshow.dtd` by adding an entry like the following in the `title` element’s attribute-list definition:

```
<!ELEMENT title (%inline;)*>
<!ATTLIST title
  xmlns CDATA #FIXED "http://www.example.com/slideshow"
>
```

Declaring the attribute as `FIXED` has several important features:

- It prevents the document from specifying any non-matching value for the `xmlns` attribute.
- The element defined in this DTD is made unique (because the parser understands the `xmlns` attribute), so it does not conflict with an element

that has the same name in another DTD. That allows multiple DTDs to use the same element name without generating a parser error.

- When a document specifies the `xmlns` attribute for a tag, the document selects the element definition with a matching attribute.

To be thorough, every element name in your DTD would get the exact same attribute, with the same value. (Here, though, we're only concerned about the `title` element.) Note, too, that you are using a CDATA string to supply the URI. In this case, we've specified an URL. But you could also specify a URN, possibly by specifying a prefix like `urn:` instead of `http:`. (URNs are currently being researched. They're not seeing a lot of action at the moment, but that could change in the future.)

## Referencing a Namespace

When a document uses an element name that exists in only one of the DTDs or schemas it references, the name does not need to be qualified. But when an element name that has multiple definitions is used, some sort of qualification is a necessity.

---

**Note:** In point of fact, an element name is always qualified by its *default namespace*, as defined by name of the DTD file it resides in. As long as there is only one definition for the name, the qualification is implicit.

---

You qualify a reference to an element name by specifying the `xmlns` attribute, as shown here:

```
<title xmlns="http://www.example.com/slideshow">
  Overview
</title>
```

The specified namespace applies to that element, and to any elements contained within it.

## Defining a Namespace Prefix

When you only need one namespace reference, it's not such a big deal. But when you need to make the same reference several times, adding `xmlns` attributes becomes unwieldy. It also makes it harder to change the name of the namespace at a later date.

The alternative is to define a *namespace prefix*, which is as simple as specifying `xmlns`, a colon (:), and the prefix name before the attribute value, as shown here:

```
<SL:slideshow xmlns:SL='http://www.example.com/slideshow'
...>
...
</SL:slideshow>
```

This definition sets up `SL` as a prefix that can be used to qualify the current element name and any element within it. Since the prefix can be used on any of the contained elements, it makes the most sense to define it on the XML document's root element, as shown here.

---

**Note:** The namespace URI can contain characters which are not valid in an XML name, so it cannot be used as a prefix directly. The prefix definition associates an XML name with the URI, which allows the prefix name to be used instead. It also makes it easier to change references to the URI in the future.

---

When the prefix is used to qualify an element name, the end-tag also includes the prefix, as highlighted here:

```
<SL:slideshow xmlns:SL='http://www.example.com/slideshow'
...>
...
<slide>
  <SL:title>Overview</SL:title>
</slide>
...
</SL:slideshow>
```

Finally, note that multiple prefixes can be defined in the same element, as shown here:

```
<SL:slideshow xmlns:SL='http://www.example.com/slideshow'
  xmlns:xhtml='urn:...'>
...
</SL:slideshow>
```

With this kind of arrangement, all of the prefix definitions are together in one place, and you can use them anywhere they are needed in the document. This example also suggests the use of URN to define the `xhtml` prefix, instead of an URL. That definition would conceivably allow the application to reference a

local copy of the XHTML DTD or some mirrored version, with a potentially beneficial impact on performance.

## Designing an XML Data Structure

This section covers some heuristics you can use when making XML design decisions.

### Saving Yourself Some Work

Whenever possible, use an existing schema definition. It's usually a lot easier to ignore the things you don't need than to design your own from scratch. In addition, using a standard DTD makes data interchange possible, and may make it possible to use data-aware tools developed by others.

So, if an industry standard exists, consider referencing that DTD with an external parameter entity. One place to look for industry-standard DTDs is at the web site created by the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS). You can find a list of technical committees at <http://www.oasis-open.org/>, or check their repository of XML standards at <http://www.XML.org>.

---

**Note:** Many more good thoughts on the design of XML structures are at the OASIS page, <http://www.oasis-open.org/cover/elementsAndAttrs.html>.

---

### Attributes and Elements

One of the issues you will encounter frequently when designing an XML structure is whether to model a given data item as a subelement or as an attribute of an existing element. For example, you could model the title of a slide either as:

```
<slide>
  <title>This is the title</title>
</slide>
```

or as:

```
<slide title="This is the title">...</slide>
```

In some cases, the different characteristics of attributes and elements make it easy to choose. Let's consider those cases first, and then move on to the cases where the choice is more ambiguous.

## Forced Choices

Sometimes, the choice between an attribute and an element is forced on you by the nature of attributes and elements. Let's look at a few of those considerations:

### **The data contains substructures**

In this case, the data item must be modeled as an *element*. It can't be modeled as an attribute, because attributes take only simple strings. So if the title can contain emphasized text like this: The `<em>Best</em>` Choice, then the title must be an element.

### **The data contains multiple lines**

Here, it also makes sense to use an *element*. Attributes need to be simple, short strings or else they become unreadable, if not unusable.

### **Multiple occurrences are possible**

Whenever an item can occur multiple times, like paragraphs in an article, it must be modeled as an *element*. The element that contains it can only have one attribute of a particular kind, but it can have many subelements of the same type.

### **The data changes frequently**

When the data will be frequently modified with an editor, it may make sense to model it as an *element*. Many XML-aware editors make it easy modify element data, while attributes can be somewhat harder to get to.

### **The data is a small, simple string that rarely if ever changes**

This is data that can be modeled as an *attribute*. However, just because you *can* does not mean that you should. Check the "Stylistic Choices" section next, to be sure.

### **Using DTDs when the data is confined to a small number of fixed choices**

Here is one time when it really makes sense to use an *attribute*. A DTD can prevent an attribute from taking on any value that is not in the preapproved list, but it cannot similarly restrict an element. (With a schema on the other hand, both attributes and elements can be restricted.)



## Stylistic Choices

As often as not, the choices are not as cut and dried as those shown above. When the choice is not forced, you need a sense of “style” to guide your thinking. The question to answer, then, is what makes good XML style, and why.

Defining a sense of style for XML is, unfortunately, as nebulous a business as defining “style” when it comes to art or music. There are a few ways to approach it, however. The goal of this section is to give you some useful thoughts on the subject of “XML style”.

### Visibility

One heuristic for thinking about XML elements and attributes uses the concept of *visibility*. If the data is intended to be shown—to be displayed to some end user—then it should be modeled as an element. On the other hand, if the information guides XML processing but is never seen by a user, then it may be better to model it as an attribute. For example, in order-entry data for shoes, shoe size would definitely be an element. On the other hand, a manufacturer’s code number would be reasonably modeled as an attribute.

### Consumer / Provider

Another way of thinking about the visibility heuristic is to ask who is the consumer and/or provider of the information. The shoe size is entered by a human sales clerk, so it’s an element. The manufacturer’s code number for a given shoe model, on the other hand, may be wired into the application or stored in a database, so that would be an attribute. (If it were entered by the clerk, though, it should perhaps be an element.)

### Container vs. Contents

Perhaps the best way of thinking about elements and attributes is to think of an element as a *container*. To reason by analogy, the *contents* of the container (water or milk) correspond to XML data modeled as elements. Such data is essentially variable. On the other hand, *characteristics* of the container (blue or white pitcher) can be modeled as attributes. That kind of information tends to be more immutable. Good XML style will, in some consistent way, separate each container’s contents from its characteristics.

To show these heuristics at work: In a slideshow the type of the slide (executive or technical) is best modeled as an attribute. It is a characteristic of the slide that lets it be selected or rejected for a particular audience. The title of the slide, on the other hand, is part of its contents. The visibility heuristic is also satisfied here. When the slide is displayed, the title is shown but the type of the slide isn’t. Finally, in this example, the consumer of the title information is the presentation

audience, while the consumer of the type information is the presentation program.

## Normalizing Data

In *Saving Yourself Some Work* (page 79), you saw that it is a good idea to define an external entity that you can reference in an XML document. Such an entity has all the advantages of a modularized routine—changing that one copy affects every document that references it. The process of eliminating redundancies is known as *normalizing*, so defining entities is one good way to normalize your data.

In an HTML file, the only way to achieve that kind of modularity is with HTML links—but of course the document is then fragmented, rather than whole. XML entities, on the other hand, suffer no such fragmentation. The entity reference acts like a macro—the entity’s contents are expanded in place, producing a whole document, rather than a fragmented one. And when the entity is defined in an external file, multiple documents can reference it.

The considerations for defining an entity reference, then, are pretty much the same as those you would apply to modularized program code:

- Whenever you find yourself writing the same thing more than once, think entity. That lets you write it one place and reference it multiple places.
- If the information is likely to change, especially if it is used in more than one place, definitely think in terms of defining an entity. An example is defining `productName` as an entity so that you can easily change the documents when the product name changes.
- If the entity will never be referenced anywhere except in the current file, define it in the `local_subset` of the document’s DTD, much as you would define a method or inner class in a program.
- If the entity will be referenced from multiple documents, define it as an external entity, the same way that would define any generally usable class as an external class.

External entities produce modular XML that is smaller, easier to update and maintain. They can also make the resulting document somewhat more difficult to visualize, much as a good OO design can be easy to change, once you understand it, but harder to wrap your head around at first.

You can also go overboard with entities. At an extreme, you could make an entity reference for the word “the”—it wouldn’t buy you much, but you could do it.

---

**Note:** The larger an entity is, the less likely it is that changing it will have unintended effects. When you define an external entity that covers a whole section on installation instructions, for example, making changes to the section is unlikely to make any of the documents that depend on it come out wrong. Small inline substitutions can be more problematic, though. For example, if `productName` is defined as an entity, the name change can be to a different part of speech, and that can produce! Suppose the product name is something like “HtmlEdit”. That’s a verb. So you write a sentence that becomes, “You can HtmlEdit your file...” after the entity-substitution occurs. That sentence reads fine, because the verb fits well in that context. But if the name is eventually changed to “HtmlEditor”, the sentence becomes “You can HtmlEditor your file...”, which clearly doesn’t work. Still, even if such simple substitutions can sometimes get you in trouble, they can potentially save a lot of time. (One alternative would be to set up entities named `productNoun`, `productVerb`, `productAdj`, and `productAdverb`!)

---

## Normalizing DTDs

Just as you can normalize your XML document, you can also normalize your DTD declarations by factoring out common pieces and referencing them with a parameter entity. Factoring out the DTDs (also known as modularizing or normalizing) gives the same advantages and disadvantages as normalized XML—easier to change, somewhat more difficult to follow.

You can also set up conditionalized DTDs. If the number and size of the conditional sections is small relative to the size of the DTD as a whole, that can let you “single source” a DTD that you can use for multiple purposes. If the number of conditional sections gets large, though, the result can be a complex document that is difficult to edit.

## Summary

Congratulations! You have now created a number of XML files that you can use for testing purposes. Here's a table that describes the files you have constructed.

**Table 2–5** Listing of Sample XML Files

File	Contents
slideSample01.xml	A basic file containing a few elements and attributes, as well as comments.
slideSample02.xml	Includes a processing instruction.
SlideSampleBad1.xml	A file that is <i>not</i> well-formed.
slideSample03.xml	Includes a simple entity reference (&lt;).
slideSample04.xml	Contains a CDATA section.
slideSample05.xml	References either a simple external DTD for elements (slideshow1a.dtd), for use with a nonvalidating parser, or else a DTD that defines attributes (slideshow1b.dtd) for use with a validating parser.
slideSample06.xml	Defines two entities locally (product and products), and references slideshow1b.dtd.
slideSample07.xml	References an external entity defined locally (copyright.xml), and references slideshow1b.dtd.
slideSample08.xml	References xhtml.dtd using a parameter entity in slideshow2.dtd, producing a naming conflict, since title is declared in both.
slideSample09.xml	Changes the title element to slide-title, so it can reference xhtml.dtd using a parameter entity in slideshow3.dtd without conflict.

---

# Getting Started with Web Applications

*Stephanie Bodoff*

A Web application is a dynamic extension of a Web server. There are two types of Web applications:

- Presentation-oriented. A presentation-oriented Web application generates dynamic Web pages containing various types of markup language (HTML, XML, and so on) in response to requests.
- Service-oriented. A service-oriented Web application implements the end-point of a Web service. Presentation-oriented applications are often clients of service-oriented Web applications.

In the Java 2 platform, *Web components* provide the dynamic extension capabilities for a Web server. Web components are either Java Servlets or JSP pages. Servlets are Java programming language classes that dynamically process requests and construct responses. JSP pages are text-based documents that execute as servlets but allow a more natural approach to creating static content. Although servlets and JSP pages can be used interchangeably, each has its own strengths. Servlets are best suited to service-oriented Web applications and managing the control functions of a presentation-oriented application, such as dispatching requests and handling nontextual data. JSP pages are more appropriate for generating text-based markup such as HTML, SVG, WML, and XML.

Web components are supported by the services of a runtime platform called a *Web container*. The Web container provides services such as request dispatching,

security, concurrency, and life cycle management. It also gives Web components access to APIs such as naming, transactions, and e-mail.

Certain aspects of Web application behavior can be configured when the application is installed or *deployed* to the Web container. The configuration information is maintained in a text file in XML format called a *Web application deployment descriptor*. A Web application deployment descriptor (DD) must conform to the schema described in the Java Servlet specification.

This chapter describes the organization, configuration, and installation and deployment procedures for Web applications. Chapters 8 and 9 cover how to develop Web components for service-oriented Web applications. Chapters 11 and 12 cover how to develop the Web components for presentation-oriented Web applications. Many features of JSP technology are determined by Java Servlet technology, so you should familiarize yourself with that material even if you do not intend to write servlets.

Most Web applications use the HTTP protocol, and support for HTTP is a major aspect of Web components. For a brief summary of HTTP protocol features see Appendix B.

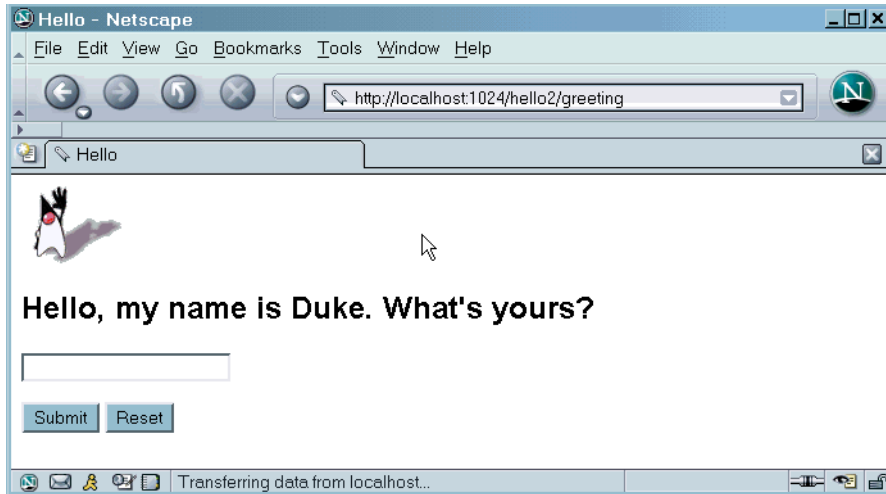
## Web Application Life Cycle

A Web application consists of Web components, static resource files such as images, and helper classes and libraries. The Web container provides many supporting services that enhance the capabilities of Web components and make them easier to develop. However, because it must take these services into account, the process for creating and running a Web application is different from that of traditional stand-alone Java classes. The process for creating, deploying, and executing a Web application can be summarized as follows:

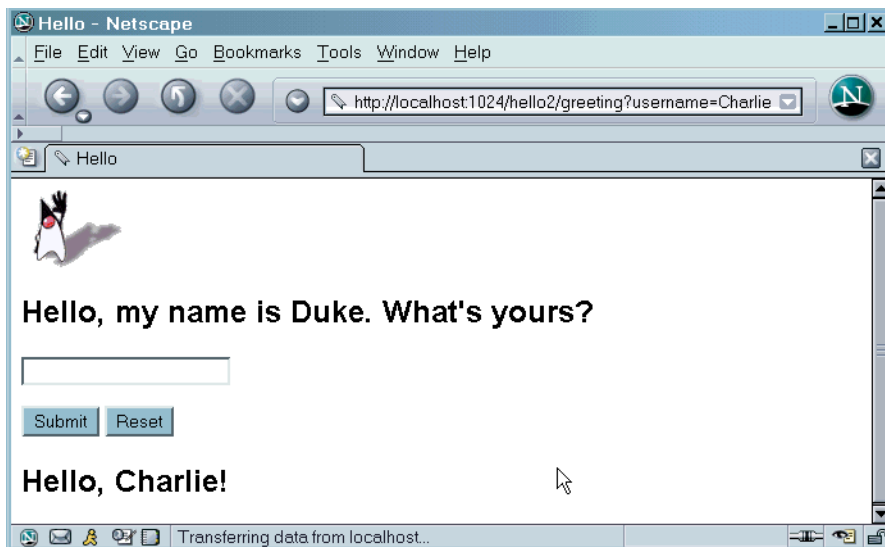
1. Develop the Web component code.
2. Develop the Web application deployment descriptor.
3. Build the Web application components along with any static resources (for example, images) and helper classes referenced by the component.
4. Package the application into a deployable unit.
5. Deploy the application into a Web container.
6. Access a URL that references the Web application.

Developing Web component code is covered in the later chapters. Steps 2 through 4 are expanded on in the following sections and illustrated with a Hello,

World style presentation-oriented application. This application allows a user to enter a name into an HTML form (Figure 3–1) and then displays a greeting after the name is submitted (Figure 3–2):



**Figure 3–1** Greeting Form



**Figure 3–2** Response

The Hello application contains two Web components that generate the greeting and the response. This tutorial has two versions of the application: a servlet version called `hello1`, in which the components are implemented by two servlet classes, `GreetingServlet.java` and `ResponseServlet.java`, and a JSP version called `hello2`, in which the components are implemented by two JSP pages, `greeting.jsp` and `response.jsp`. The two versions are used to illustrate the tasks involved in packaging, deploying, and running an application that contains Web components. If you are viewing this tutorial online, you must download the tutorial bundle to get the source code for this example. See [About the Examples](#) (page xxi).

## J2EE 1.4 Application Server

This section contains a brief summary of the components comprising the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, the configuration steps required before using the components to build and deploy the tutorial examples, and instructions for starting and stopping the main components. The last section in this chapter discusses how to run the PointBase database server; other chapters explain how to use the remaining components.

### Components

The J2EE 1.4 Application Server contains the components listed in Table 3–1

**Table 3–1** J2EE 1.4 Application Server Components

Component	Description
<code>asadmin</code>	Runs the application server administration utility. Used to start and stop the application server.
<code>asant</code>	A portable build tool that is an extension of the Ant tool developed by the Apache Software Foundation. <code>asant</code> contains additional tasks that interact with the application server administration utility.
<code>appclient</code>	Launches the application client container and invokes the client application packaged in the application JAR file.



**Table 3–1** J2EE 1.4 Application Server Components (Continued)

Component	Description
capture-schema	Extracts schema information from a database, producing a schema file that the application server can use for container-managed persistence.
deploytool	Packages J2EE applications, generates deployment descriptors, and deploys J2EE applications on the application server.
package-appclient	Packages the application client container libraries and JAR files.
PointBase database	An evaluation copy of the PointBase database server.
verifier	Validates J2EE deployment descriptors.
wscompile	Generates stubs, ties, serializers, and WSDL files used in JAX-RPC clients and services.
wsdeploy	Generates an implementation-specific, ready-to-deploy WAR file for Web service applications that use JAX-RPC.

## Setting Up To Build and Deploy Tutorial Examples

You use `asant` to build the tutorial examples and configure the application server. In order to run the `asant` scripts, you must configure your environment and the tutorial properties files as follows:

- Add `<JAVA_HOME>/bin` to the front of your path.
- Add `<J2EE_HOME>/bin` and `<J2EE_HOME>/share/bin` to the front of your path so that J2EE 1.4 Application Server components overrides other installations.
- Set the `j2ee.home` property in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/common/build.properties` to the location of your J2EE 1.4 Application Server installation. The build process uses the `j2ee.home` property to include the J2EE library archives in the classpath. The J2EE library archive is the file `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/j2ee.jar`. If you wish to use an IDE or the `javac` compiler to compile J2EE applications, you must add this JAR to your classpath.

- Set the `admin.user` and `admin.password` properties in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/common/build.properties` to the values you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server. The build scripts use these values when you invoke an administration task such as creating a database pool. The default value for `admin.user` is set to the installer's default value, which is `admin`.

## Starting and Stopping the J2EE Application Server

To start and stop the J2EE application server, you use the `asadmin` utility. To start the J2EE application server, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute this command:

```
asadmin start-domain
```

A domain is a set of one or more application server instances managed by one administration server. Associated with a domain is:

- The administration server's port number. The default is 4848.
- An administration username and password. These passwords are required when you access the administration server.

You specified these values when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server. The examples in this tutorial assume that you have chosen the default port.

With no arguments, the `start-domain` command initiates the default domain, which is `domain1`.

On Windows, from the Start menu, choose

Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Start Application Server

After the server has started, you will see the following output:

```
Domain domain1 Started.
```

To stop the J2EE application server, execute the following command:

```
asadmin stop-domain
```

On Windows, from the Start menu, choose

Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Stop Application Server

When the server has stopped you will see the following output:

```
Domain domain1 stopped.
```

## Starting the deploytool Utility

The `deploytool` utility is the GUI tool used to package Web applications, specify deployment descriptor elements, and deploy applications on the J2EE application server. To start `deploytool`, open a terminal window or command prompt and execute this command:

```
deploytool
```

On Windows, from the Start menu, choose

Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Deploytool

## Web Modules

Web components and static Web content files such as images are called *Web resources*. A *Web module* is the smallest deployable and usable unit of Web resources in a J2EE application. A J2EE Web module corresponds to a *Web application* as defined in the Java Servlet Specification.

Web modules are typically packaged and deployed as Web archive (WAR) files. The format of a WAR file is identical to that of a JAR file. However, the contents and use of WAR files differ from JAR files, so WAR file names use a `.war` extension.

In addition to Web components and Web resources, a Web module can contain other files including:

- Server-side utility classes (database beans, shopping carts, and so on). Often these classes conform to the JavaBeans component architecture.
- Client-side classes (applets and utility classes)

The top-level directory of a Web module is the *document root* of the application. The document root is where JSP pages, *client-side* classes and archives, and static Web resources are stored.

The document root contains a subdirectory called `/WEB-INF`, which contains the following files and directories:

- `web.xml` - The Web application deployment descriptor
- Tag library descriptor files (see Tag Library Descriptors, page 576)
- `classes` - A directory that contains *server-side classes*: servlets, utility classes, and JavaBeans components
- `lib` - A directory that contains JAR archives of libraries called by server-side classes

You can also create application-specific subdirectories (that is, package directories) in either the document root or the `/WEB-INF/classes/` directory.

The WAR structure just described is portable; you could import it into any container that conforms to the Java Servlet Specification. However, you cannot deploy it on the J2EE 1.4 Application Server until it contains a runtime deployment descriptor. The runtime deployment descriptor is an XML file that contains information such as the context root, the JNDI names of the application's resources, and some J2EE implementation-specific parameters. The J2EE application server Web application runtime DD is named `sun-web.xml` and is located in `/WEB-INF/` along with the Web application DD.

## Creating a Web Module

You package Web module into a WAR using the J2EE 1.4 Application Server `deploytool` utility. To build and package the `hello1` application into a WAR named `hello1.war`:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello1/`.
2. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello1/build/` directory.
3. Start `deploytool`.
4. Create a Web application called `hello1` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
5. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello1/`.

- c. In the File Name field, enter `hello1`.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.
  - e. In the WAR Display Name field enter `hello1`.
  - f. Click Edit to add the content files.
  - g. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello1/build/`. Select `duke.waving.gif`, `GreetingServlet.class`, and `ResponseServlet.class` and click Add. Click OK.
  - h. Click Next.
  - i. Select the Servlet radio button.
  - j. Click Next.
  - k. Select `GreetingServlet` from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - l. Click Finish.
6. Select File→New→Web Application WAR.
    - a. Click the Add to Existing WAR Module radio button and select `hello1` from the combo box. Since the WAR contains all of the servlet classes, you do not have to add any more content.
    - b. Click Next.
    - c. Select the Servlet radio button.
    - d. Click Next.
    - e. Select `ResponseServlet` from the Servlet Class combo box.
    - f. Click Finish.

A sample `hello1.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To open this WAR with `deploytool`:

1. Select File→Open.
2. Navigate to the `provided-wars` directory.
3. Select the WAR.
4. Click Open Module.

## Configuring Web Modules

Web applications are configured via elements contained in the Web application deployment descriptor. The `deploytool` utility generates the descriptor when you create a WAR and adds elements when you create Web components and

associated classes. You can modify the elements via the inspectors associated with the WAR.

The following sections give a brief introduction to the Web application features you will usually want to configure. A number of security parameters can be specified; these are covered in Web-Tier Security (page 650).

In the following sections, some examples demonstrate procedures for configuring the Hello, World application. If Hello, World does not use a specific configuration feature, the section gives references to other examples that illustrate how the deployment descriptor element and describes generic procedures for specifying the feature using `deploytool`. Extended examples that demonstrate how to use `deploytool` are in The Example Servlets (page 440), The Example JSP Pages (page 482), and The Example JSP Pages (page 521).

## Mapping URLs to Web Components

When a request is received by the Web container it must determine which Web component should handle the request. It does so by mapping the URL path contained in the request to a Web application and a Web component. A URL path contains the context root and an alias:

```
http://host:port/context_root/alias
```

## Setting the Context Root

A *context root* identifies a Web application. A context root must start with a forward slash '/' and end with a string. For example, to set the context root of the `hello1` application with `deploytool`:

1. Select the `hello1` WAR.
2. Select the General tab.
3. In the Context Root field, enter `/hello1`.

## Setting the Component Alias

The *alias* identifies the Web component that should handle a request. The servlet path must start with a forward slash '/' and end with a string or a wildcard expression with an extension (`*.jsp`, for example). Since Web containers automatically map an alias that ends with `*.jsp`, you do not have to specify an alias

for a JSP page unless you wish to refer to the page by a name other than its file name. In the `hello2` example, the greeting page has a alias, but `response.jsp` is called by name.

To set up the mappings for the servlet version of the Hello application with `deploytool`:

1. Expand the `hello1` WAR node.
2. Select the `GreetingServlet` Web component.
3. Select the Aliases tab.
4. Click Add to add a new mapping.
5. Type `/greeting` in the aliases list.
6. Select the `ResponseServlet` Web component.
7. Click Add.
8. Type `/response` in the aliases list.

## Declaring Welcome Files

The *welcome files* mechanism allows you to specify a list of files that the Web container will use for appending to a request for a URL (called a *valid partial request*) that is not mapped to a Web component.

For example, suppose you define a welcome file `welcome.html`. When a client requests a URL such as `host:port/webapp/directory`, where *directory* is not mapped to a servlet or JSP page, the file `host:port/webapp/directory/welcome.html` is returned to the client.

If a Web container receives a valid partial request, the Web container examines the welcome file list and appends each welcome file in the order specified to the partial request and checks whether a static resource or servlet in the WAR is mapped to that request URL. The Web container then sends the request to the first resource in the WAR that matches.

If no welcome file is specified, the J2EE 1.4 Application Server will use a file named `index.XXX`, where `XXX` can be `html` or `jsp`, as the default welcome file. If there is no welcome file and no file named `index.XXX`, the application server returns a directory listing.

To specify welcome files with `deploytool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the File Refs tab in the WAR inspector.

3. Click Add in the Welcome Files pane.
4. Select the welcome file from the drop-down list.

## Setting Initialization Parameters

The Web components in a Web module share an object that represents their application context (see *Accessing the Web Context*, page 469). You can pass initialization parameters to the context or to a Web component. To add a context parameter with `deploytool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the Context tab in the WAR inspector.
3. Click Add.

For an example context parameter, see *The Example JSP Pages* (page 482).

To add a Web component initialization parameter with `deploytool`:

1. Select the Web component.
2. Select the Init Param. tab in the WAR inspector.
3. Click Add.

## Specifying Error Mappings

You can specify a mapping between the status code returned in an HTTP response or a Java programming language exception returned by any Web component and a Web resource (see *Handling Errors*, page 448). To set up the mapping with `deploytool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the File Refs tab in the WAR inspector.
3. Click Add in the Error Mapping pane.
4. Enter the HTTP status code (see *HTTP Responses*, page 850) or fully-qualified class name of an exception in the Error/Exception field.



5. Enter the name of a resource to be invoked when the status code or exception is returned. The name should have a leading forward slash /.

---

**Note:** You can also define error pages for a JSP page contained in a WAR. If error pages are defined for both the WAR and a JSP page, the JSP page's error page takes precedence.

---

For an example error page mapping, see *The Example Servlets* (page 440).

## Declaring References to Environment Entries, Resource Environment Entries, or Resources

If your Web components reference environment entries, resource environment entries, or resources such as databases, you must declare the references in the Web application deployment descriptor. To add a reference to a resource with `deploytool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the Environment, Enterprise Bean Refs, Resource Env. Refs, or Resource Refs tab in the WAR inspector.
3. Click Add to add a new reference.
4. Type a JNDI name for the resource.
5. Choose the type of the resource.
6. Choose whether the container or the application performs authentication when the resource is accessed.
7. Choose whether the resource can be shared by more than one Web application.

For an example resource reference, see *Configuring the Web Application to Reference a Data Source with JNDI* (page 106).

## Deploying Web Modules

Before a Web application can be accessed, it must be deployed as a Web module in the application server. For example, to deploy the `hello1` Web module using `deploytool`:

1. Select the `hello1` WAR.
2. Start the J2EE application server.
3. Select `File`→`Save`, to ensure that all deployment settings are saved in the WAR.
4. Select `Tools`→`Deploy`.
5. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
6. Click OK.
7. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.

You can also deploy a WAR by copying it into the `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/autodeploy/` directory.

## Listing Deployed Web Modules

To list all Web modules currently deployed on the application server with `deploytool`:

1. Select `localhost:4848` from the servers list.
2. In the Deployment Managers dialog, enter the administration server user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
3. You will see the deployed Web modules in the Deployed Objects list of the General tab.

## Running Web Applications

A Web application is executed when a Web browser references a URL that is mapped to component. Once you have installed or deployed the `hello1` application, you can run the Web application by pointing a browser at

```
http://host:port/hello1/greeting
```

Replace *host* with the name of the host running the application server. If your browser is running on the same host as the application server, you can replace *host* with *localhost*.

Replace *port* with value you specified for the HTTP server port when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server. The default value is 1024.

The examples in this tutorial assume that your application server host and port is *localhost:1024*.

## Updating Web Modules

During development, you will often need to make changes to Web applications. After you have made the changes and want to run the modified application, you must:

1. Recompile any modified classes.
2. Repackage any modified components or resources.
3. Redeploy the application.
4. Reload the URL in the client.

To try this feature, first build and deploy the *hello2* application. A sample *hello2.war* is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`.

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello2/`.
2. Run `asant build`. The default target will copy the JSP pages to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello2/build/` directory.
3. Start `deploytool`.
4. Create a Web application called *hello2* by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
5. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello2/`.
  - c. In the File Name field, enter *hello2*.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.
  - e. In the WAR Display Name field enter *hello2*.

- f. In the Context Root field, enter /hello2.
  - g. Click Edit to add the content files.
  - h. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello2/build/. Select duke.waving.gif, greeting.jsp, and response.jsp and click Add. Click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
  - j. Select the JSP radio button.
  - k. Click Next.
  - l. Select greeting.jsp from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - m. Click Finish.
6. Add an alias to the greeting Web component.
    - a. Select the greeting Web component.
    - b. Select the Aliases tab.
    - c. Click Add to add a new mapping.
    - d. Type /greeting in the aliases list.
  7. Select File→Save.
  8. Deploy the WAR.
  9. Open your browser to <http://localhost:1024/hello2/greeting>

Open the file <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello2/greeting.jsp in an editor and change the greeting returned by greeting.jsp to be:

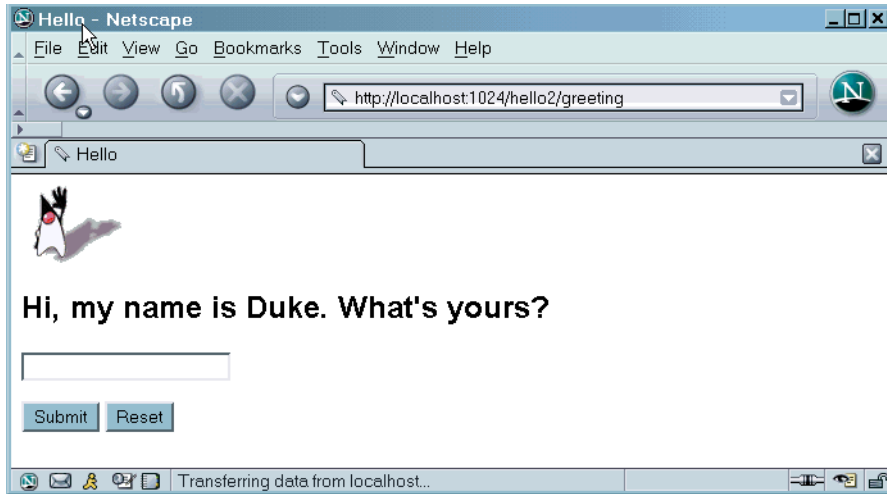
```
<h2>Hi, my name is Duke. What's yours?</h2>
```

To update the Web application:

1. Run asant build. This task copies the modified JSP page into the build directory.
2. Select the hello2 WAR.
3. Select Tools→Update. A popup dialog will display the modified file. Click OK.
4. Select File→Save.
5. Select Tools→Deploy. A popup dialog will query whether you want to redeploy. Click Yes.
6. In the Deployment Managers dialog, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
7. Click OK.

8. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
9. Reload the URL in the browser.

You should see the screen in Figure 3–3 in the browser:



**Figure 3–3** New Greeting

## Undeploying Web Modules

To undeploy a Web module with `deploytool`:

1. Select `localhost:4848` from the servers list.
2. In the Deployment Managers dialog, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
3. You will see the deployed Web modules in the Deployed Objects list of the General tab.
4. Select the module.
5. Click Undeploy.

## Duke's Bookstore Examples

In the next 5 chapters, the Duke's Bookstore examples are used to illustrate the elements of Java Servlet technology, JavaServer Pages technology, and the JSP

Standard Tag Library. The examples emulate a simple online shopping application. They provide a book catalog from which users can select books and add them to a shopping cart. Users can view and modify the shopping cart. Once users are finished shopping, they can purchase the books in the cart.

The Duke's Bookstore examples share common classes and a database schema. These files are located in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial/examples/web/bookstore/`. The common classes are packaged into a JAR. To create the bookstore library JAR:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore/`.
2. Run `asant build` to compile the bookstore files.
3. Run `asant package-bookstore` to create a library named `bookstore.jar` in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/bookstore/dist/`.

The next section describes how to create the bookstore database table and application server resources required to run the examples.

## Accessing Databases from Web Applications

Data that is shared between Web components and persistent between invocations of a Web application is usually maintained in a database. Web applications use the JDBC 2.0 API to access relational databases. For information on this API, see

<http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/jdbc>

In the JDBC API, databases are accessed via `DataSource` objects. A `DataSource` has a set of properties that identify and describe the real world data source that it represents. These properties include information like the location of the database server, the name of the database, the network protocol to use to communicate with the server, and so on.

Applications access a data source using a connection, and a `DataSource` object can be thought of as a factory for connections to the particular data source that the `DataSource` instance represents. In a basic `DataSource` implementation, a call to the method `DataSource.getConnection` returns a connection object that is a physical connection to the data source.

If a `DataSource` object is registered with a JNDI naming service, an application can use the JNDI API to access that `DataSource` object, which can then be used to connect to the data source it represents.

`DataSource` objects that implement connection pooling also produce a connection to the particular data source that the `DataSource` class represents. The connection object that the method `DataSource.getConnection` returns is a handle to a `PooledConnection` object rather than being a physical connection. An application uses the connection object like any other connection. Connection pooling has no effect on application code except that a pooled connection, like all connections, should always be explicitly closed. When an application closes a connection that is pooled, the connection is returned to a pool of reusable connections. The next time `DataSource.getConnection` is called, a handle to one of these pooled connections will be returned if one is available. Because connection pooling avoids creating a new physical connection every time one is requested, it can help applications run significantly faster.

The Duke's Bookstore examples use the PointBase evaluation database included with the J2EE 1.4 Application Server to maintain the catalog of books. This section describes how to:

- Start the PointBase database server
- Populate the database
- Define a data source in the application server
- Configure a Web application to reference the data source with a JNDI name
- Map the JNDI name to the data source defined in the application server

## Starting the PointBase Database Server

To start the PointBase database server:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<J2EE_HOME>/pointbase/tools/serverop-tion`.
2. Execute the `startserver` script.

On Windows, from the Start menu, choose

Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Start PointBase

## Populating the Example Database

To populate the database for the Duke's Bookstore examples:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore`.
2. Run `asant create-db_common`. This `asant` task runs a PointBase commander tool command to read the file `books.sql` and execute the SQL commands contained in the file. The table named `books` is created for the user `pbpublic` in the `sun-appserv-samples` PointBase database.
3. At the end of the processing, you should see the following output:

```
...
[java] SQL> INSERT INTO books VALUES('207', 'Thrilled', 'Ben',
[java] 'The Green Project: Programming for Consumer Devices',
[java] 30.00, false, 1998, 'What a cool book', 20);
[java] 1 row(s) affected

[java] SQL> INSERT INTO books VALUES('208', 'Tru', 'Itzal',
[java] 'Duke: A Biography of the Java Evangelist',
[java] 45.00, true, 2001, 'What a cool book.', 20);
[java] 1 row(s) affected
```

You can check that the table exists with the PointBase console tool as follows:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<J2EE_HOME>/pointbase/tools/serveroption/`.
2. Execute `startconsole`.
3. In the Connect to Database dialog enter `jdbc:pointbase:server://localhost/sun-appserv-samples` in the URL field.
4. Click OK.
5. Expand the SCHEMAS→PBPUBLIC→TABLES nodes. Notice that there is a table named BOOKS.
6. To see the contents of the books table:
  - a. In the Enter SQL commands text area, enter `select * from books;`
  - b. Click the Execute button.



## Defining a Data Source in the J2EE Server

Data sources in the J2EE application server implement connection pooling. To define the Duke's Bookstore data source, you first need to create a data pool as follows:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore`.
2. Run `asant create-jdbc-connection-pool_common`. This `asant` task runs an `asadmin` command to create a JDBC connection pool named `bookstore-pool`.
3. At the end of the processing, you should see the following output:

```
admin_command_common:
    [echo] Doing admin task set server.jdbc-connection-
pool.bookstore-pool.property.Password=pbpublic
[sun-appserv-admin] Executing: set --port 4848 --host localhost
--password yourpassword --user admin server.jdbc-connection-
pool.bookstore-pool.property.Password=pbpublic
[sun-appserv-admin] Unable to read system environment. No
system environment will be used.
[sun-appserv-admin] Attribute property.Password set to pbpublic
```

Then, create the data source as follows:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore`.
2. Run `asant create-jdbc-resource_common`. This `asant` task runs an `asadmin` command to create a JDBC resource named `jdbc/BookDB` that references the `bookstore-pool` connection pool.
3. At the end of the processing, you should see the following output:

```
admin_command_common:
    [echo] Doing admin task create-jdbc-resource
connectionpoolid bookstore-pool --instance server jdbc/BookDB
[sun-appserv-admin] Executing: create-jdbc-resource
--port 4848 --host localhost --password yourpassword
--user admin --connectionpoolid bookstore-pool
--instance server jdbc/BookDB
[sun-appserv-admin] Created the external JDBC resource with
jndiname = jdbc/BookDB
```

When you change application server configuration information, the changes are not applied immediately, but are saved into special files, located in `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/config/backup`. Until you apply the changes, they do not take effect. Applying changes is also called reconfiguring the server. When you apply your changes, all changes made to the configuration since the last time you applied changes take effect. Note that restarting the server *does not* automatically apply the changes.

To reconfigure the server:

1. Run `asant reconfig_common`. This `asant` task runs an `asadmin` command to reconfigure the server.
2. At the end of the processing, you should see the following output:

```
reconfig_common:
[echo] Reconfiguring server server
[sun-appserv-admin] Executing: reconfig --port 4848
--host localhost --password yourpassword --user admin server
[sun-appserv-admin] Successfully reconfigured
```

## Configuring the Web Application to Reference a Data Source with JNDI

In order to access a database from a Web application, you must declare resource reference in the application's Web application deployment descriptor (see *Declaring References to Environment Entries, Resource Environment Entries, or Resources*, page 97). The resource reference declares a JNDI name, the type of the data resource, and the kind of authentication used when the resource is accessed. The JNDI name is used to create a data source object in the database helper class `database.BookDB`:

```
public BookDB () throws Exception {
    try {
        Context initCtx = new InitialContext();
        Context envCtx = (Context)
            initCtx.lookup("java:comp/env");
        DataSource ds = (DataSource) envCtx.lookup("jdbc/BookDB");
        con = ds.getConnection();
        System.out.println("Created connection to database.");
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        System.out.println("Couldn't create connection." +
            ex.getMessage());
    }
}
```

```
        throw new  
            Exception("Couldn't open connection to database: "  
                +ex.getMessage());  
    }
```

To specify a resource reference to the bookstore data source:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the References tab.
3. Click Add.
4. Type jdbc/BookDB in the Name field.
5. Accept the default type `javax.sql.DataSource`.
6. Accept the default authorization Container.
7. Accept the default `Shareable` selected.

## Mapping the Web Application JNDI Name to a Data Source

Since the resource reference declared in the Web application deployment descriptor uses a JNDI name to refer to the data source, you must connect the name to a data source defined by the J2EE application server as follows:

1. Select the Resource Reference Name, `jdbc/BookDB`, defined in the previous section.
2. In the Deployment Setting box, enter the name of the data source that you create in the application server, `jdbc/BookDB`, in the JNDI Name field.

## Further Information

For more information about Web applications, refer to the following:

- Resources listed on the Web site <http://java.sun.com/products/servlet>.
- The Java Servlet 2.3 Specification.



---

# Java API for XML Processing

*Eric Armstrong*

**T**HE Java API for XML Processing (JAXP) is for processing XML data using applications written in the Java programming language. JAXP leverages the parser standards SAX (Simple API for XML Parsing) and DOM (Document Object Model) so that you can choose to parse your data as a stream of events or to build an object representation of it. JAXP also supports the XSLT (XML Stylesheet Language Transformations) standard, giving you control over the presentation of the data and enabling you to convert the data to other XML documents or to other formats, such as HTML. JAXP also provides namespace support, allowing you to work with DTDs that might otherwise have naming conflicts.

Designed to be flexible, JAXP allows you to use any XML-compliant parser from within your application. It does this with what is called a “pluggability layer”, which allows you to plug in an implementation of the SAX or DOM APIs. The pluggability layer also allows you to plug in an XSL processor, letting you control how your XML data is displayed.

## The JAXP APIs

The main JAXP APIs are defined in the `javax.xml.parsers` package. That package contains two vendor-neutral factory classes: `SAXParserFactory` and

`DocumentBuilderFactory` that give you a `SAXParser` and a `DocumentBuilder`, respectively. The `DocumentBuilder`, in turn, creates DOM-compliant `Document` object.

The factory APIs give you the ability to plug in an XML implementation offered by another vendor without changing your source code. The implementation you get depends on the setting of the `javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory` and `javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory` system properties. The default values (unless overridden at runtime) point to Sun's implementation.

The remainder of this section shows how the different JAXP APIs work when you write an application.

## An Overview of the Packages

The SAX and DOM APIs are defined by XML-DEV group and by the W3C, respectively. The libraries that define those APIs are:

`javax.xml.parsers`

The JAXP APIs, which provide a common interface for different vendors' SAX and DOM parsers.

`org.w3c.dom`

Defines the `Document` class (a DOM), as well as classes for all of the components of a DOM.

`org.xml.sax`

Defines the basic SAX APIs.

`javax.xml.transform`

Defines the XSLT APIs that let you transform XML into other forms.

The "Simple API" for XML (SAX) is the event-driven, serial-access mechanism that does element-by-element processing. The API for this level reads and writes XML to a data repository or the Web. For server-side and high-performance apps, you will want to fully understand this level. But for many applications, a minimal understanding will suffice.

The DOM API is generally an easier API to use. It provides a relatively familiar tree structure of objects. You can use the DOM API to manipulate the hierarchy of application objects it encapsulates. The DOM API is ideal for interactive applications because the entire object model is present in memory, where it can be accessed and manipulated by the user.

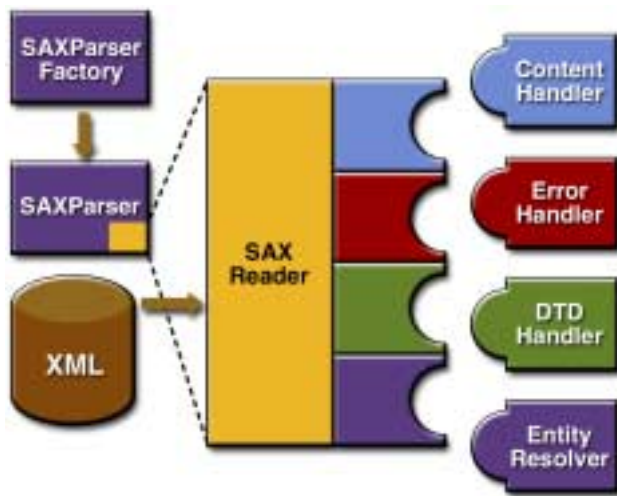
On the other hand, constructing the DOM requires reading the entire XML structure and holding the object tree in memory, so it is much more CPU and memory

intensive. For that reason, the SAX API will tend to be preferred for server-side applications and data filters that do not require an in-memory representation of the data.

Finally, the XSLT APIs defined in `javax.xml.transform` let you write XML data to a file or convert it into other forms. And, as you'll see in the XSLT section, of this tutorial, you can even use it in conjunction with the SAX APIs to convert legacy data to XML.

## The Simple API for XML (SAX) APIs

The basic outline of the SAX parsing APIs are shown at right. To start the process, an instance of the `SAXParserFactory` class is used to generate an instance of the parser.



**Figure 4-1** SAX APIs

The parser wraps a `SAXReader` object. When the parser's `parse()` method is invoked, the reader invokes one of several callback methods implemented in the application. Those methods are defined by the interfaces `ContentHandler`, `ErrorHandler`, `DTDHandler`, and `EntityResolver`.

Here is a summary of the key SAX APIs:

### SAXParserFactory

A SAXParserFactory object creates an instance of the parser determined by the system property, `javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory`.

### SAXParser

The SAXParser interface defines several kinds of `parse()` methods. In general, you pass an XML data source and a `DefaultHandler` object to the parser, which processes the XML and invokes the appropriate methods in the handler object.

### SAXReader

The SAXParser wraps a SAXReader. Typically, you don't care about that, but every once in a while you need to get hold of it using SAXParser's `getXMLReader()`, so you can configure it. It is the SAXReader which carries on the conversation with the SAX event handlers you define.

### DefaultHandler

Not shown in the diagram, a `DefaultHandler` implements the `ContentHandler`, `ErrorHandler`, `DTDHandler`, and `EntityResolver` interfaces (with null methods), so you can override only the ones you're interested in.

### ContentHandler

Methods like `startDocument`, `endDocument`, `startElement`, and `endElement` are invoked when an XML tag is recognized. This interface also defines methods `characters` and `processingInstruction`, which are invoked when the parser encounters the text in an XML element or an inline processing instruction, respectively.

### ErrorHandler

Methods `error`, `fatalError`, and `warning` are invoked in response to various parsing errors. The default error handler throws an exception for fatal errors and ignores other errors (including validation errors). That's one reason you need to know something about the SAX parser, even if you are using the DOM. Sometimes, the application may be able to recover from a validation error. Other times, it may need to generate an exception. To ensure the correct handling, you'll need to supply your own error handler to the parser.

### DTDHandler

Defines methods you will generally never be called upon to use. Used when processing a DTD to recognize and act on declarations for an *unparsed entity*.

### EntityResolver

The `resolveEntity` method is invoked when the parser must identify data identified by a URI. In most cases, a URI is simply a URL, which specifies the location of a document, but in some cases the document may be identified by a URN—a *public identifier*, or name, that is unique in the Web space.



The public identifier may be specified in addition to the URL. The `EntityResolver` can then use the public identifier instead of the URL to find the document, for example to access a local copy of the document if one exists.

A typical application implements most of the `ContentHandler` methods, at a minimum. Since the default implementations of the interfaces ignore all inputs except for fatal errors, a robust implementation may want to implement the `ErrorHandler` methods, as well.

## The SAX Packages

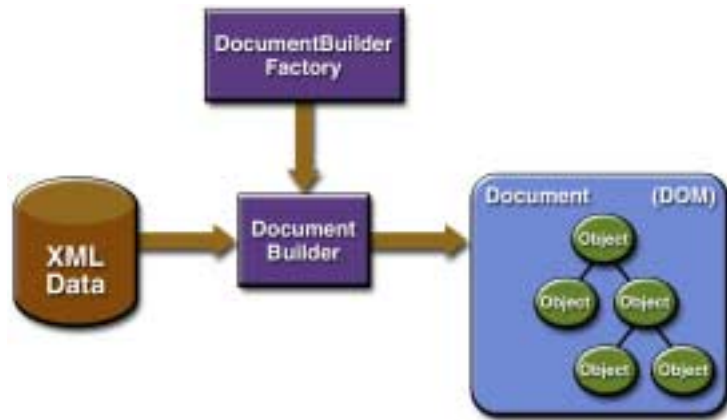
The SAX parser is defined in the following packages listed in Table 4–1.

**Table 4–1** SAX Packages

Package	Description
<code>org.xml.sax</code>	Defines the SAX interfaces. The name <code>org.xml</code> is the package prefix that was settled on by the group that defined the SAX API.
<code>org.xml.sax.ext</code>	Defines SAX extensions that are used when doing more sophisticated SAX processing, for example, to process a document type definitions (DTD) or to see the detailed syntax for a file.
<code>org.xml.sax.helpers</code>	Contains helper classes that make it easier to use SAX—for example, by defining a default handler that has null-methods for all of the interfaces, so you only need to override the ones you actually want to implement.
<code>javax.xml.parsers</code>	Defines the <code>SAXParserFactory</code> class which returns the <code>SAXParser</code> . Also defines exception classes for reporting errors.

## The Document Object Model (DOM) APIs

Figure 4–2 shows the JAXP APIs in action:



**Figure 4-2** DOM APIs

You use the `javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory` class to get a `DocumentBuilder` instance, and use that to produce a `Document` (a DOM) that conforms to the DOM specification. The builder you get, in fact, is determined by the `System` property, `javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory`, which selects the factory implementation that is used to produce the builder. (The platform's default value can be overridden from the command line.)

You can also use the `DocumentBuilder` `newDocument()` method to create an empty `Document` that implements the `org.w3c.dom.Document` interface. Alternatively, you can use one of the builder's parse methods to create a `Document` from existing XML data. The result is a DOM tree like that shown in the diagram.

---

**Note:** Although they are called objects, the entries in the DOM tree are actually fairly low-level data structures. For example, under every *element node* (which corresponds to an XML element) there is a *text node* which contains the name of the element tag! This issue will be explored at length in the DOM section of the tutorial, but users who are expecting objects are usually surprised to find that invoking the `text()` method on an element object returns nothing! For a truly object-oriented tree, see the JDOM API at <http://www.jdom.org>.

---

## The DOM Packages

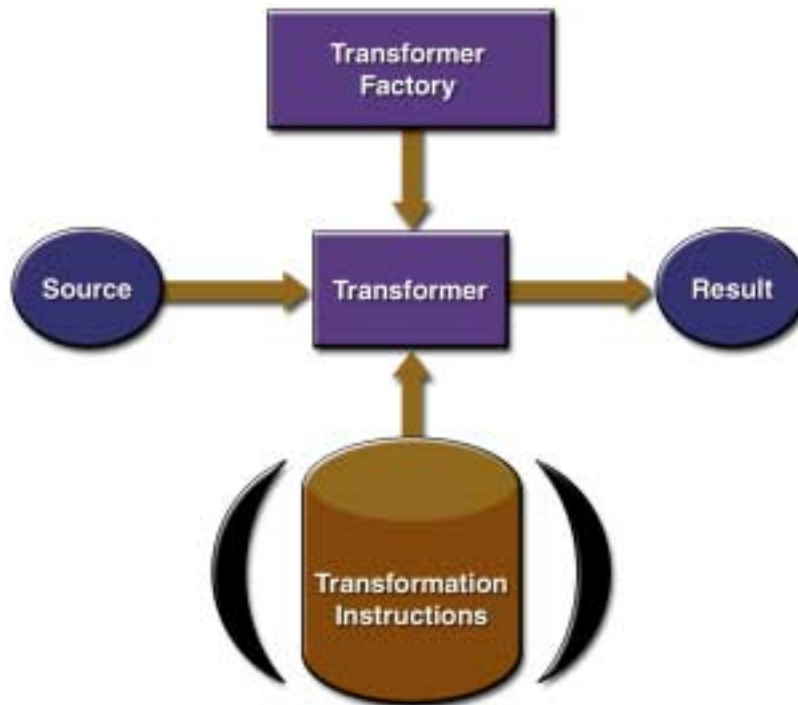
The Document Object Model implementation is defined in the packages listed in Table 4–2.:

**Table 4–2** DOM Packages

Package	Description
<code>org.w3c.dom</code>	Defines the DOM programming interfaces for XML (and, optionally, HTML) documents, as specified by the W3C.
<code>javax.xml.parsers</code>	Defines the <code>DocumentBuilderFactory</code> class and the <code>DocumentBuilder</code> class, which returns an object that implements the W3C Document interface. The factory that is used to create the builder is determined by the <code>javax.xml.parsers</code> system property, which can be set from the command line or overridden when invoking the <code>newInstance</code> method. This package also defines the <code>ParserConfigurationException</code> class for reporting errors.

# The XML Stylesheet Language for Transformation (XSLT) APIs

Figure 4–3 shows the XSLT APIs in action.



**Figure 4–3** XSLT APIs

A `TransformerFactory` object is instantiated, and used to create a `Transformer`. The source object is the input to the transformation process. A source object can be created from SAX reader, from a DOM, or from an input stream.

Similarly, the result object is the result of the transformation process. That object can be a SAX event handler, a DOM, or an output stream.

When the transformer is created, it may be created from a set of transformation instructions, in which case the specified transformations are carried out. If it is created without any specific instructions, then the transformer object simply copies the source to the result.

## The XSLT Packages

The XSLT APIs are defined in the following packages:

**Table 4-3** XSLT Packages

Package	Description
<code>javax.xml.transform</code>	Defines the <code>TransformerFactory</code> and <code>Transformer</code> classes, which you use to get a object capable of doing transformations. After creating a transformer object, you invoke its <code>transform()</code> method, providing it with an input (source) and output (result).
<code>javax.xml.transform.dom</code>	Classes to create input (source) and output (result) objects from a DOM.
<code>javax.xml.transform.sax</code>	Classes to create input (source) from a SAX parser and output (result) objects from a SAX event handler.
<code>javax.xml.transform.stream</code>	Classes to create input (source) and output (result) objects from an I/O stream.

## Compiling and Running the Programs

In the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, the JAXP libraries are distributed in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/endorsed`. To run the sample programs, you'll need to use the Java 2 platform's "endorsed standards" mechanism to access those libraries. For details, see *Compiling and Running the Program* (page 133).

## Where Do You Go from Here?

At this point, you have enough information to begin picking your own way through the JAXP libraries. Your next step from here depends on what you want to accomplish. You might want to go to:

**Simple API for XML (page 121)**

If the data structures have already been determined, and you are writing a server application or an XML filter that needs to do fast processing.

**Document Object Model (page 181)**

If you need to build an object tree from XML data so you can manipulate it in an application, or convert an in-memory tree of objects to XML. This part of the tutorial ends with a section on namespaces.

**XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations (page 255)**

If you need to transform XML tags into some other form, if you want to generate XML output, or (in combination with the SAX API) if you want to convert legacy data structures to XML.





---

# Simple API for XML

*Eric Armstrong*

**I**N this chapter we focus on the Simple API for XML (SAX), an event-driven, serial-access mechanism for accessing XML documents. This is the protocol that most servlets and network-oriented programs will want to use to transmit and receive XML documents, because it's the fastest and least memory-intensive mechanism that is currently available for dealing with XML documents.

The SAX protocol requires a lot more programming than the Document Object Model (DOM). It's an event-driven model (you provide the callback methods, and the parser invokes them as it reads the XML data), which makes it harder to visualize. Finally, you can't "back up" to an earlier part of the document, or rearrange it, any more than you can back up a serial data stream or rearrange characters you have read from that stream.

For those reasons, developers who are writing a user-oriented application that displays an XML document and possibly modifies it will want to use the DOM mechanism described in the next part of the tutorial, Document Object Model (page 181).

However, even if you plan to build with DOM apps exclusively, there are several important reasons for familiarizing yourself with the SAX model:

- Same Error Handling

When parsing a document for a DOM, the same kinds of exceptions are generated, so the error handling for JAXP SAX and DOM applications are identical.

- Handling Validation Errors

By default, the specifications require that validation errors (which you'll be learning more about in this part of the tutorial) are ignored. If you want to throw an exception in the event of a validation error (and you probably do) then you need to understand how the SAX error handling works.

- Converting Existing Data

As you'll see in the DOM section of the tutorial, there is a mechanism you can use to convert an existing data set to XML—however, taking advantage of that mechanism requires an understanding of the SAX model.

---

**Note:** The XML files used in this chapter can be found in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial114/examples/xml/samples`. The programs and output listings can be found in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial114/examples/jaxp/sax/samples`.

---

## When to Use SAX

When it comes to fast, efficient reading of XML data, SAX is hard to beat. It requires little memory, because it does not construct an internal representation (tree structure) of the XML data. Instead, it simply sends data to the application as it is read — your application can then do whatever it wants to do with the data it sees.

In effect, the SAX API acts like a serial I/O stream. You see the data as it streams in, but you can't go back to an earlier position or leap ahead to a different position. In general, it works well when you simply want to read data and have the application act on it.

It is also helpful to understand the SAX event model when you want to convert existing data to XML. As you'll see in *Generating XML from an Arbitrary Data Structure* (page 275), the key to the conversion process is modifying an existing application to deliver the appropriate SAX events as it reads the data.

But when you need to modify an XML structure — especially when you need to modify it interactively, an in-memory structure like the Document Object Model (DOM) may make more sense.

However, while DOM provides many powerful capabilities for large-scale documents (like books and articles), it also requires a lot of complex coding. (The details of that process are highlighted in *When to Use DOM* (page 182).)

For simpler applications, that complexity may well be unnecessary. For faster development and simpler applications, one of the object-oriented XML-programming standards may make the most sense, as described in JDOM and dom4j (page 35).

## Echoing an XML File with the SAX Parser

In real life, you are going to have little need to echo an XML file with a SAX parser. Usually, you'll want to process the data in some way in order to do something useful with it. (If you want to echo it, it's easier to build a DOM tree and use that for output.) But echoing an XML structure is a great way to see the SAX parser in action, and it can be useful for debugging.

In this exercise, you'll echo SAX parser events to `System.out`. Consider it the "Hello World" version of an XML-processing program. It shows you how to use the SAX parser to get at the data, and then echoes it to show you what you've got.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `Echo01.java`. The file it operates on is `slideSample01.xml`, as described in Writing a Simple XML File (page 45). (The browsable version is `slideSample01-xml.html`.)

---

## Creating the Skeleton

Start by creating a file named `Echo.java` and enter the skeleton for the application:

```
public class Echo
{
    public static void main(String argv[])
    {

    }

}
```

Since we're going to run it standalone, we need a main method. And we need command-line arguments so we can tell the application which file to echo.

## Importing Classes

Next, add the import statements for the classes the application will use:

```
import java.io.*;
import org.xml.sax.*;
import org.xml.sax.helpers.DefaultHandler;
import javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory;
import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;
import javax.xml.parsers.SAXParser;

public class Echo
{
    ...
}
```

The classes in `java.io`, of course, are needed to do output. The `org.xml.sax` package defines all the interfaces we use for the SAX parser. The `SAXParserFactory` class creates the instance we use. It throws a `ParserConfigurationException` if it is unable to produce a parser that matches the specified configuration of options. (You'll see more about the configuration options later.) The `SAXParser` is what the factory returns for parsing, and the `DefaultHandler` defines the class that will handle the SAX events that the parser generates.

## Setting up for I/O

The first order of business is to process the command line argument, get the name of the file to echo, and set up the output stream. Add the text highlighted below to take care of those tasks and do a bit of additional housekeeping:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        System.err.println("Usage: cmd filename");
        System.exit(1);
    }
    try {
        // Set up output stream
        out = new OutputStreamWriter(System.out, "UTF8");
    }
    catch (Throwable t) {
        t.printStackTrace();
    }
}
```

```
        System.exit(0);  
    }  
  
    static private Writer out;
```

When we create the output stream writer, we are selecting the UTF-8 character encoding. We could also have chosen US-ASCII, or UTF-16, which the Java platform also supports. For more information on these character sets, see Java Encoding Schemes (page 811).

## Implementing the ContentHandler Interface

The most important interface for our current purposes is the `ContentHandler` interface. That interface requires a number of methods that the SAX parser invokes in response to different parsing events. The major event handling methods are: `startDocument`, `endDocument`, `startElement`, `endElement`, and `characters`.

The easiest way to implement that interface is to extend the `DefaultHandler` class, defined in the `org.xml.sax.helpers` package. That class provides do-nothing methods for all of the `ContentHandler` events. Enter the code highlighted below to extend that class:

```
public class Echo extends DefaultHandler  
{  
    ...  
}
```

---

**Note:** `DefaultHandler` also defines do-nothing methods for the other major events, defined in the `DTDHandler`, `EntityResolver`, and `ErrorHandler` interfaces. You'll learn more about those methods as we go along.

---

Each of these methods is required by the interface to throw a `SAXException`. An exception thrown here is sent back to the parser, which sends it on to the code that invoked the parser. In the current program, that means it winds up back at the `Throwable` exception handler at the bottom of the `main` method.

When a start tag or end tag is encountered, the name of the tag is passed as a `String` to the `startElement` or `endElement` method, as appropriate. When a start tag is encountered, any attributes it defines are also passed in an

Attributes list. Characters found within the element are passed as an array of characters, along with the number of characters (length) and an offset into the array that points to the first character.

## Setting up the Parser

Now (at last) you're ready to set up the parser. Add the text highlighted below to set it up and get it started:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        System.err.println("Usage: cmd filename");
        System.exit(1);
    }

    // Use an instance of ourselves as the SAX event handler
    DefaultHandler handler = new Echo();

    // Use the default (non-validating) parser
    SAXParserFactory factory = SAXParserFactory.newInstance();
    try {
        // Set up output stream
        out = new OutputStreamWriter(System.out, "UTF8");

        // Parse the input
        SAXParser saxParser = factory.newSAXParser();
        saxParser.parse( new File(argv[0]), handler );

    } catch (Throwable t) {
        t.printStackTrace();
    }
    System.exit(0);
}
```

With these lines of code, you created a SAXParserFactory instance, as determined by the setting of the `javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory` system property. You then got a parser from the factory and gave the parser an instance of this class to handle the parsing events, telling it which input file to process.

---

**Note:** The `javax.xml.parsers.SAXParser` class is a wrapper that defines a number of convenience methods. It wraps the (somewhat-less friendly)

`org.xml.sax.Parser` object. If needed, you can obtain that parser using the SAX-Parser's `getParser()` method.

---

For now, you are simply catching any exception that the parser might throw. You'll learn more about error processing in a later section of the tutorial, Handling Errors with the Nonvalidating Parser (page 145).

## Writing the Output

The `ContentHandler` methods throw `SAXExceptions` but not `IOExceptions`, which can occur while writing. The `SAXException` can wrap another exception, though, so it makes sense to do the output in a method that takes care of the exception-handling details. Add the code highlighted below to define an `emit` method that does that:

```
static private Writer out;

private void emit(String s)
throws SAXException
{
    try {
        out.write(s);
        out.flush();
    } catch (IOException e) {
        throw new SAXException("I/O error", e);
    }
}
...
```

When `emit` is called, any I/O error is wrapped in `SAXException` along with a message that identifies it. That exception is then thrown back to the SAX parser. You'll learn more about SAX exceptions later on. For now, keep in mind that `emit` is a small method that handles the string output. (You'll see it called a lot in the code ahead.)

## Spacing the Output

Here is another bit of infrastructure we need before doing some real processing. Add the code highlighted below to define a `nl()` method that writes the kind of line-ending character used by the current system:

```
private void emit(String s)
    ...
}

private void nl()
throws SAXException
{
    String lineEnd = System.getProperty("line.separator");
    try {
        out.write(lineEnd);
    } catch (IOException e) {
        throw new SAXException("I/O error", e);
    }
}
```

---

**Note:** Although it seems like a bit of a nuisance, you will be invoking `nl()` many times in the code ahead. Defining it now will simplify the code later on. It also provides a place to indent the output when we get to that section of the tutorial.

---

## Handling Content Events

Finally, let's write some code that actually processes the `ContentHandler` events.

### Document Events

Add the code highlighted below to handle the start-document and end-document events:

```
static private Writer out;

public void startDocument()
throws SAXException
{
    emit("<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>");
    nl();
}
```



```

}

public void endDocument()
throws SAXException
{
    try {
        nl();
        out.flush();
    } catch (IOException e) {
        throw new SAXException("I/O error", e);
    }
}

private void echoText()
...

```

Here, you are echoing an XML declaration when the parser encounters the start of the document. Since you set up the `OutputStreamWriter` using the UTF-8 encoding, you include that specification as part of the declaration.

---

**Note:** However, the IO classes don't understand the hyphenated encoding names, so you specified "UTF8" rather than "UTF-8".

---

At the end of the document, you simply put out a final newline and flush the output stream. Not much going on there.

## Element Events

Now for the interesting stuff. Add the code highlighted below to process the start-element and end-element events:

```

public void startElement(String namespaceURI,
                        String sName, // simple name
                        String qName, // qualified name
                        Attributes attrs)
throws SAXException
{
    String eName = sName; // element name
    if ("".equals(eName)) eName = qName; // not namespaceAware
    emit("<" + eName);
    if (attrs != null) {
        for (int i = 0; i < attrs.getLength(); i++) {
            String aName = attrs.getLocalName(i); // Attr name
            if ("".equals(aName)) aName = attrs.getQName(i);

```

```

        emit(" ");
        emit(aName+"=\""+attrs.getValue(i)+"\"");
    }
}
emit(">");
}

public void endElement(String namespaceURI,
                      String sName, // simple name
                      String qName // qualified name
                      )
    throws SAXException
{
    String eName = sName; // element name
    if ("".equals(eName)) eName = qName; // not namespaceAware
    emit("<"+eName+">");
}

private void emit(String s)
...

```

With this code, you echoed the element tags, including any attributes defined in the start tag. Note that when the `startElement()` method is invoked, the simple name (“local name”) for elements and attributes could turn out to be the empty string, if namespace processing was not enabled. The code handles that case by using the qualified name whenever the simple name is the empty string.

## Character Events

To finish handling the content events, you need to handle the characters that the parser delivers to your application.

Parsers are not required to return any particular number of characters at one time. A parser can return anything from a single character at a time up to several thousand, and still be standard-conforming implementation. So, if your application needs to process the characters it sees, it is wise to accumulate the characters in a buffer, and operate on them only when you are sure they have all been found.

Add the line highlighted below to define the text buffer:

```
public class Echo01 extends DefaultHandler
{
    StringBuffer textBuffer;

    public static void main(String argv[])
    {

        ...
    }
}
```

Then add the code highlighted below to accumulate the characters the parser delivers in the buffer:

```
public void endElement(...)
throws SAXException
{
    ...
}

public void characters(char buf[], int offset, int len)
throws SAXException
{
    String s = new String(buf, offset, len);
    if (textBuffer == null) {
        textBuffer = new StringBuffer(s);
    } else {
        textBuffer.append(s);
    }
}

private void emit(String s)
{
    ...
}
```

Next, add this method highlighted below to send the contents of the buffer to the output stream.

```
public void characters(char buf[], int offset, int len)
throws SAXException
{
    ...
}

private void echoText()
throws SAXException
{
    if (textBuffer == null) return;
}
```

```

        String s = ""+textBuffer
        emit(s);
        textBuffer = null;
    }

    private void emit(String s)
    ...

```

When this method is called twice in a row (which will happens at times, as we'll see next), the buffer will be null. So in that case, the method simply returns. When the buffer is non-null, however, it's contents are sent to the output stream.

Finally, add the code highlighted below to echo the contents of the buffer whenever an element starts or ends:

```

    public void startElement(...)
    throws SAXException
    {
        echoText();
        String eName = sName; // element name
        ...
    }

    public void endElement(...)
    throws SAXException
    {
        echoText();
        String eName = sName; // element name
        ...
    }

```

You're done accumulating text when an element ends, of course. So you echo it at that point, which clears the buffer before the next element starts.

But you also want to echo the accumulated text when an element starts! That's necessary for document-style data, which can contain XML elements that are intermixed with text. For example, in this document fragment:

```

<para>This paragraph contains <b>important</b>
ideas.</para>

```

The initial text, "This paragraph contains" is terminated by the start of the **<b>** element. The text, "important" is terminated by the end tag, **</b>**, and the final text, "ideas.", is terminated by the end tag, **</para>**.

---

**Note:** Most of the time, though, the accumulated text will be echoed when an `endElement()` event occurs. When a `startElement()` event occurs after that, the buffer will be empty. The first line in the `echoText()` method checks for that case, and simply returns.

---

Congratulations! At this point you have written a complete SAX parser application. The next step is to compile and run it.

---

**Note:** To be strictly accurate, the character handler should scan the buffer for ampersand characters ('&'); and left-angle bracket characters ('<') and replace them with the strings “&” or “&lt;”, as appropriate. You’ll find out more about that kind of processing when we discuss entity references in *Displaying Special Characters and CDATA* (page 153).

---

## Compiling and Running the Program

In the J2EE release, the JAXP libraries are in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/share/lib/endorsed`. These are newer versions of the standard JAXP libraries that are part of the Java 2 platform.

The J2EE Application Server automatically uses the newer libraries when a program runs. So you won’t have to be concerned with where they reside when you deploy an application.

And since the JAXP APIs are identical in both versions, you won’t need to be concerned at compile time either. So compiling the program you created is as simple as issuing the command:

```
javac Echo.java
```

But to run the program outside of the server container, you need to make sure that the java runtime finds the newer versions of the JAXP libraries. That situation can occur, for example, when unit-testing parts of your application outside of the sever, as well as here, when running the XML tutorial examples.

There are two ways to make sure that the program uses the latest version of the JAXP libraries:

- Copy the `<J2EE_HOME>/share/lib/endorsed` directory to `<J2EE_HOME>/jdk/jre/lib`. You can then run the program with this command:

```
<J2EE_HOME>/jdk/bin/java Echo slideSample.xml
```

The libraries will then be found in the endorsed standards directory, `<J2EE_HOME>/jdk/jre/lib/endorsed`.

- Use the endorsed directories system property to specify the location of the libraries, by specifying this option on the java command line: `-D"java.endorsed.dirs=<J2EE_HOME>/share/lib/endorsed"`

---

**Note:** Since the JAXP APIs are already built into the Java 2 Platform, they don't need to be specified at compile time. (In fact, the `-D` option is not even allowed at compile time, because endorsed standards are *required* to maintain consistent APIs.) However, when the JAXP factories instantiate an *implementation*, the endorsed directories mechanism is employed to make sure that the desired implementation is instantiated.

---

## Checking the Output

Here is part of the program's output, showing some of its weird spacing:

```
...
<slideshow title="Sample Slide Show" date="Date of publication"
author="Yours Truly">

  <slide type="all">
    <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
  </slide>
  ...
```

---

**Note:** The program's output is contained in `Echo01-01.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo01-01.html`.)

---

Looking at this output, a number of questions arise. Namely, where is the excess vertical whitespace coming from? And why is it that the elements are indented properly, when the code isn't doing it? We'll answer those questions in a moment. First, though, there are a few points to note about the output:

- The comment defined at the top of the file

```
<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->
```

does not appear in the listing. Comments are ignored, unless you implement a `LexicalHandler`. You'll see more about that later on in this tutorial.

- Element attributes are listed all together on a single line. If your window isn't really wide, you won't see them all.
- The single-tag empty element you defined (`<item/>`) is treated exactly the same as a two-tag *empty element* (`<item></item>`). It is, for all intents and purposes, identical. (It's just easier to type and consumes less space.)

## Identifying the Events

This version of the echo program might be useful for displaying an XML file, but it's not telling you much about what's going on in the parser. The next step is to modify the program so that you see where the spaces and vertical lines are coming from.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `Echo02.java`. The output it produces is shown in `Echo02-01.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo02-01.html`)

---

Make the changes highlighted below to identify the events as they occur:

```
public void startDocument()
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    nl();
    emit("START DOCUMENT");
    nl();
    emit("<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>");
    nl();
}

public void endDocument()
```

```

throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("END DOCUMENT");
    try {
        ...
    }

public void startElement(...)
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("ELEMENT: ");
    String eName = sName; // element name
    if ("".equals(eName)) eName = qName; // not namespaceAware
    emit("<" + eName);
    if (attrs != null) {
        for (int i = 0; i < attrs.getLength(); i++) {
            String aName = attrs.getLocalName(i); // Attr name
            if ("".equals(aName)) aName = attrs.getQName(i);
            emit(" ");
            emit(aName + "=\"" + attrs.getValue(i) + "\"");
            nl();
            emit("  ATTR: ");
            emit(aName);
            emit("\t\"");
            emit(attrs.getValue(i));
            emit("\");
        }
    }
    if (attrs.getLength() > 0) nl();
    emit(">");
}

public void endElement(...)
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("END_ELM: ");
    String eName = sName; // element name
    if ("".equals(eName)) eName = qName; // not namespaceAware

```



```

        emit("<" + eName + ">");
    }

    ...

    private void echoText()
    throws SAXException
    {
        if (textBuffer == null) return;
        nl();
        emit("CHARS: |");
        String s = "" + textBuffer;
        emit(s);
        emit("|");
        textBuffer = null;
    }

```

Compile and run this version of the program to produce a more informative output listing. The attributes are now shown one per line, which is nice. But, more importantly, output lines like this one:

```

    CHARS: |

    |

```

show that both the indentation space and the newlines that separate the attributes come from the data that the parser passes to the `characters()` method.

---

**Note:** The XML specification requires all input line separators to be normalized to a single newline. The newline character is specified as in Java, C, and UNIX systems, but goes by the alias “linefeed” in Windows systems.

---

## Compressing the Output

To make the output more readable, modify the program so that it only outputs characters containing something other than whitespace.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `Echo03.java`.

---

Make the changes shown below to suppress output of characters that are all whitespace:

```
public void echoText()
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("CHARS:|");
    emit("CHARS:  ");
    String s = ""+textBuffer;
    if (!s.trim().equals("")) emit(s);
    emit("|");
}
```

Next, add the code highlighted below to echo each set of characters delivered by the parser:

```
public void characters(char buf[], int offset, int len)
throws SAXException
{
    if (textBuffer != null) {
        echoText();
        textBuffer = null;
    }
    String s = new String(buf, offset, len);
    ...
}
```

If you run the program now, you will see that you have eliminated the indentation as well, because the indent space is part of the whitespace that precedes the start of an element. Add the code highlighted below to manage the indentation:

```
static private Writer out;

private String indentString = "    "; // Amount to indent
private int indentLevel = 0;

...

public void startElement(...)
throws SAXException
{
    indentLevel++;
```

```

        nl();
        emit("ELEMENT: ");
        ...
    }

    public void endElement(...)
    throws SAXException
    {
        nl();
        emit("END_ELM: ");
        emit("</"+sName+">");
        indentLevel--;
    }
    ...
    private void nl()
    throws SAXException
    {
        ...
        try {
            out.write(lineEnd);
            for (int i=0; i < indentLevel; i++)
                out.write(indentString);
        } catch (IOException e) {
            ...
        }
    }

```

This code sets up an indent string, keeps track of the current indent level, and outputs the indent string whenever the `nl` method is called. If you set the indent string to "", the output will be un-indented (Try it. You'll see why it's worth the work to add the indentation.)

You'll be happy to know that you have reached the end of the "mechanical" code you have to add to the Echo program. From here on, you'll be doing things that give you more insight into how the parser works. The steps you've taken so far, though, have given you a lot of insight into how the parser sees the XML data it processes. It's also given you a helpful debugging tool you can use to see what the parser sees.

## Inspecting the Output

There is part of the output from this version of the program:

```
ELEMENT: <slideshow
...
>
CHARS:
CHARS:
  ELEMENT: <slide
  ...
  END_ELM: </slide>
CHARS:
CHARS:
```

---

**Note:** The complete output is `Echo03-01.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo03-01.html`)

---

Note that the `characters` method was invoked twice in a row. Inspecting the source file `slideSample01.xml` shows that there is a comment before the first slide. The first call to `characters` comes before that comment. The second call comes after. (Later on, you'll see how to be notified when the parser encounters a comment, although in most cases you won't need such notifications.)

Note, too, that the `characters` method is invoked after the first slide element, as well as before. When you are thinking in terms of hierarchically structured data, that seems odd. After all, you intended for the `slideshow` element to contain `slide` elements, not text. Later on, you'll see how to restrict the `slideshow` element using a DTD. When you do that, the `characters` method will no longer be invoked.

In the absence of a DTD, though, the parser must assume that any element it sees contains text like that in the first item element of the overview slide:

```
<item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
```

Here, the hierarchical structure looks like this:

```
ELEMENT:  <item>
CHARS:    Why
  ELEMENT:  <em>
  CHARS:    WonderWidgets
  END_ELM:  </em>
CHARS:    are great
END_ELM:  </item>
```

## Documents and Data

In this example, it's clear that there are characters intermixed with the hierarchical structure of the elements. The fact that text can surround elements (or be prevented from doing so with a DTD or schema) helps to explain why you sometimes hear talk about “XML data” and other times hear about “XML documents”. XML comfortably handles both structured data and text documents that include markup. The only difference between the two is whether or not text is allowed between the elements.

---

**Note:** In an upcoming section of this tutorial, you will work with the `ignoreWhitespace` method in the `ContentHandler` interface. This method can only be invoked when a DTD is present. If a DTD specifies that `slideshow` does not contain text, then all of the whitespace surrounding the `slide` elements is by definition ignorable. On the other hand, if `slideshow` can contain text (which must be assumed to be true in the absence of a DTD), then the parser must assume that spaces and lines it sees between the `slide` elements are significant parts of the document.

---

## Adding Additional Event Handlers

Besides `ignoreWhitespace`, there are two other `ContentHandler` methods that can find uses in even simple applications: `setDocumentLocator` and `processingInstruction`. In this section of the tutorial, you'll implement those two event handlers.

## Identifying the Document's Location

A *locator* is an object that contains the information necessary to find the document. The `Locator` class encapsulates a system ID (URL) or a public identifier (URN), or both. You would need that information if you wanted to find something relative to the current document—in the same way, for example, that an HTML browser processes an `href="anotherFile"` attribute in an anchor tag—the browser uses the location of the current document to find `anotherFile`.

You could also use the locator to print out good diagnostic messages. In addition to the document's location and public identifier, the locator contains methods that give the column and line number of the most recently-processed event. The `setDocumentLocator` method is called only once at the beginning of the parse, though. To get the current line or column number, you would save the locator when `setDocumentLocator` is invoked and then use it in the other event-handling methods.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `Echo04.java`. Its output is in `Echo04-01.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo04-01.html`.)

---

Start by removing the extra character-echoing code you added for the last example:

```
public void characters(char buf[], int offset, int len)
    throws SAXException
{
    if (textBuffer != null) {
        echoText();
        textBuffer = null;
    }
    String s = new String(buf, offset, len);
    ...
}
```

Next, add the method highlighted below to the Echo program to get the document locator and use it to echo the document's system ID.

```
...
private String indentString = "    "; // Amount to indent
private int indentLevel = 0;

public void setDocumentLocator(Locator l)
{
    try {
        out.write("LOCATOR");
        out.write("SYS ID: " + l.getSystemId() );
        out.flush();
    } catch (IOException e) {
        // Ignore errors
    }
}

public void startDocument()
...
```

Notes:

- This method, in contrast to every other `ContentHandler` method, does not return a `SAXException`. So, rather than using `emit` for output, this code writes directly to `System.out`. (This method is generally expected to simply save the `Locator` for later use, rather than do the kind of processing that generates an exception, as here.)
- The spelling of these methods is “Id”, not “ID”. So you have `getSystemId` and `getPublicId`.

When you compile and run the program on `slideSample01.xml`, here is the significant part of the output:

```
LOCATOR
SYS ID: file:<path>/../samples/slideSample01.xml

START DOCUMENT
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
...
```

Here, it is apparent that `setDocumentLocator` is called before `startDocument`. That can make a difference if you do any initialization in the event handling code.

## Handling Processing Instructions

It sometimes makes sense to code application-specific processing instructions in the XML data. In this exercise, you'll modify the Echo program to display a processing instruction contained in `slideSample02.xml`.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `Echo05.java`. The file it operates on is `slideSample02.xml`, as described in Writing Processing Instructions (page 50). The output is in `Echo05-02.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample02-xml.html` and `Echo05-02.html`.)

---

As you saw in Writing Processing Instructions (page 50), the format for a processing instruction is `<?target data?>`, where “target” is the target application that is expected to do the processing, and “data” is the instruction or information for it to process. The sample file `slideSample02.xml` contains a processing instruction for a mythical slide presentation program that queries the user to find out which slides to display (technical, executive-level, or all):

```
<slideshow
...
>

<!-- PROCESSING INSTRUCTION -->
<?my.presentation.Program QUERY="exec, tech, all"?>

<!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
```



To display that processing instruction, add the code highlighted below to the Echo app:

```
public void characters(char buf[], int offset, int len)
...
}

public void processingInstruction(String target, String data)
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("PROCESS: ");
    emit("<?" + target + " " + data + "?>");
}

private void echoText()
...
```

When your edits are complete, compile and run the program. The relevant part of the output should look like this:

```
ELEMENT: <slideshow
...
>
PROCESS: <?my.presentation.Program QUERY="exec, tech, all"?>
CHARS:
...
```

## Summary

With the minor exception of `ignorableWhitespace`, you have used most of the `ContentHandler` methods that you need to handle the most commonly useful SAX events. You'll see `ignorableWhitespace` a little later on. Next, though, you'll get deeper insight into how you handle errors in the SAX parsing process.

## Handling Errors with the Nonvalidating Parser

The parser can generate one of three kinds of errors: fatal error, error, and warning. In this exercise, you'll how the parser handles a fatal error.

This version of the Echo program uses the nonvalidating parser. So it can't tell if the XML document contains the right tags, or if those tags are in the right sequence. In other words, it can't tell you if the document is valid. It can, however, tell whether or not the document is well-formed.

In this section of the tutorial, you'll modify the slideshow file to generate different kinds of errors and see how the parser handles them. You'll also find out which error conditions are ignored, by default, and see how to handle them.

---

**Note:** The XML file used in this exercise is `slideSampleBad1.xml`, as described in *Introducing an Error* (page 52). The output is in `Echo05-Bad1.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSampleBad1-xml.html` and `Echo05-Bad1.html`.)

---

When you created `slideSampleBad1.xml`, you deliberately created an XML file that was not well-formed. Run the Echo program on that file now. The output now gives you an error message that looks like this (after formatting for readability):

```
org.xml.sax.SAXParseException:
  The element type "item" must be terminated by the
  matching end-tag "</item>".
...
at org.apache.xerces.parsers.AbstractSAXParser...
...
at Echo.main(...)
```

---

**Note:** The message above was generated by the JAXP 1.2 libraries. If you are using a different parser, the error message is likely to be somewhat different.

---

When a fatal error occurs, the parser is unable to continue. So, if the application does not generate an exception (which you'll see how to do a moment), then the default error-event handler generates one. The stack trace is generated by the `Throwable` exception handler in your main method:

```
...
} catch (Throwable t) {
    t.printStackTrace();
}
```

That stack trace is not too useful, though. Next, you'll see how to generate better diagnostics when an error occurs.

## Handling a SAXParseException

When the error was encountered, the parser generated a `SAXParseException`—a subclass of `SAXException` that identifies the file and location where the error occurred.

---

**Note:** The code you'll create in this exercise is in `Echo06.java`. The output is in `Echo06-Bad1.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo06-Bad1.html`.)

---

Add the code highlighted below to generate a better diagnostic message when the exception occurs:

```
...
} catch (SAXParseException spe) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
        + ", line " + spe.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + spe.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("    " + spe.getMessage() );
} catch (Throwable t) {
    t.printStackTrace();
}
```

Running this version of the program on `slideSampleBad1.xml` generates an error message which is a bit more helpful, like this:

```
** Parsing error, line 22, uri file:<path>/slideSampleBad1.xml
    The element type "item" must be ...
```

---

**Note:** The text of the error message depends on the parser used. This message was generated using JAXP 1.2.

---

---

**Note:** Catching all throwables like this is not generally a great idea for production applications. We're doing it now so we can build up to full error handling gradually. In addition, it acts as a catch-all for null pointer exceptions that can be thrown when the parser is passed a null value.

---

## Handling a SAXException

A more general `SAXException` instance may sometimes be generated by the parser, but it more frequently occurs when an error originates in one of application's event handling methods. For example, the signature of the `startDocument` method in the `ContentHandler` interface is defined as returning a `SAXException`:

```
public void startDocument() throws SAXException
```

All of the `ContentHandler` methods (except for `setDocumentLocator`) have that signature declaration.

A `SAXException` can be constructed using a message, another exception, or both. So, for example, when `Echo.startDocument` outputs a string using the `emit` method, any I/O exception that occurs is wrapped in a `SAXException` and sent back to the parser:

```
private void emit(String s)
throws SAXException
{
    try {
        out.write(s);
        out.flush();
    } catch (IOException e) {
        throw new SAXException("I/O error", e);
    }
}
```

---

**Note:** If you saved the `Locator` object when `setDocumentLocator` was invoked, you could use it to generate a `SAXParseException`, identifying the document and location, instead of generating a `SAXException`.

---

When the parser delivers the exception back to the code that invoked the parser, it makes sense to use the original exception to generate the stack trace. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```
...
} catch (SAXParseException err) {
    System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
        + ", line " + err.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + err.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("    " + err.getMessage());
```

```

} catch (SAXException sxe) {
    // Error generated by this application
    // (or a parser-initialization error)
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();
} catch (Throwable t) {
    t.printStackTrace();
}

```

This code tests to see if the `SAXException` is wrapping another exception. If so, it generates a stack trace originating from where that exception occurred to make it easier to pinpoint the code responsible for the error. If the exception contains only a message, the code prints the stack trace starting from the location where the exception was generated.

## Improving the SAXParseException Handler

Since the `SAXParseException` can also wrap another exception, add the code highlighted below to use the contained exception for the stack trace:

```

...
} catch (SAXParseException err) {
    System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
        + ", line " + err.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + err.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("    " + err.getMessage());

    // Use the contained exception, if any

```

```

    Exception x = spe;
    if (spe.getException() != null)
        x = spe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (SAXException sxe) {
    // Error generated by this application
    // (or a parser-initialization error)
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (Throwable t) {
    t.printStackTrace();
}

```

The program is now ready to handle any SAX parsing exceptions it sees. You've seen that the parser generates exceptions for fatal errors. But for nonfatal errors and warnings, exceptions are never generated by the default error handler, and no messages are displayed. In a moment, you'll learn more about errors and warnings and find out how to supply an error handler to process them.

## Handling a ParserConfigurationException

Finally, recall that the `SAXParserFactory` class could throw an exception if it were for unable to create a parser. Such an error might occur if the factory could not find the class needed to create the parser (class not found error), was not permitted to access it (illegal access exception), or could not instantiate it (instantiation error).

Add the code highlighted below to handle such errors:

```

} catch (SAXException sxe) {
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
    // Parser with specified options can't be built
    pce.printStackTrace();

} catch (Throwable t) {
    t.printStackTrace();
}

```

Admittedly, there are quite a few error handlers here. But at least now you know the kinds of exceptions that can occur.

---

**Note:** A `javax.xml.parsers.FactoryConfigurationError` could also be thrown if the factory class specified by the system property cannot be found or instantiated. That is a non-trappable error, since the program is not expected to be able to recover from it.

---

## Handling an IOException

Finally, while we're at it, let's add a handler for `IOException`s:

```
} catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {  
    // Parser with specified options can't be built  
    pce.printStackTrace();  
  
} catch (IOException ioe) {  
    // I/O error  
    ioe.printStackTrace();  
}  
  
} catch (Throwable t) {  
    ...
```

We'll leave the handler for `Throwables` to catch null pointer errors, but note that at this point it is doing the same thing as the `IOException` handler. Here, we're merely illustrating the kinds of exceptions that *can* occur, in case there are some that your application could recover from.

## Handling NonFatal Errors

A *nonfatal* error occurs when an XML document fails a validity constraint. If the parser finds that the document is not valid, then an error event is generated. Such errors are generated by a validating parser, given a DTD or schema, when a document has an invalid tag, or a tag is found where it is not allowed, or (in the case of a schema) if the element contains invalid data.

You won't actually dealing with validation issues until later in this tutorial. But since we're on the subject of error handling, you'll write the error-handling code now.

The most important principle to understand about non-fatal errors is that they are *ignored*, by default.

But if a validation error occurs in a document, you probably don't want to continue processing it. You probably want to treat such errors as fatal. In the code you write next, you'll set up the error handler to do just that.

---

**Note:** The code for the program you'll create in this exercise is in `Echo07.java`.

---

To take over error handling, you override the `DefaultHandler` methods that handle fatal errors, nonfatal errors, and warnings as part of the `ErrorHandler` interface. The SAX parser delivers a `SAXParseException` to each of these methods, so generating an exception when an error occurs is as simple as throwing it back.

Add the code highlighted below to override the handler for errors:

```
public void processingInstruction(String target, String data)
    throws SAXException
{
    ...
}

// treat validation errors as fatal
public void error(SAXParseException e)
    throws SAXParseException
{
    throw e;
}
```

---

**Note:** It can be instructive to examine the error-handling methods defined in `org.xml.sax.helpers.DefaultHandler`. You'll see that the `error()` and `warning()` methods do nothing, while `fatalError()` throws an exception. Of course, you could always override the `fatalError()` method to throw a different exception. But if your code *doesn't* throw an exception when a fatal error occurs, then the SAX parser will — the XML specification requires it.

---

## Handling Warnings

Warnings, too, are ignored by default. Warnings are informative, and require a DTD. For example, if an element is defined twice in a DTD, a warning is gener-



ated—it's not illegal, and it doesn't cause problems, but it's something you might like to know about since it might not have been intentional.

Add the code highlighted below to generate a message when a warning occurs:

```
// treat validation errors as fatal
public void error(SAXParseException e)
    throws SAXParseException
{
    throw e;
}

// dump warnings too
public void warning(SAXParseException err)
    throws SAXParseException
{
    System.out.println("** Warning"
        + ", line " + err.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + err.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("    " + err.getMessage());
}
```

Since there is no good way to generate a warning without a DTD or schema, you won't be seeing any just yet. But when one does occur, you're ready!

## Displaying Special Characters and CDATA

The next thing we want to do with the parser is to customize it a bit, so you can see how to get information it usually ignores. In this section, you'll learn how the parser handles:

- Special Characters ("<", "&", and so on)
- Text with XML-style syntax

## Handling Special Characters

In XML, an entity is an XML structure (or plain text) that has a name. Referencing the entity by name causes it to be inserted into the document in place of the

entity reference. To create an entity reference, the entity name is surrounded by an ampersand and a semicolon, like this:

```
&entityName;
```

Earlier, you put an entity reference into your XML document by coding:

```
Market Size &lt; predicted
```

---

**Note:** The file containing this XML is `slideSample03.xml`, as described in Using an Entity Reference in an XML Document (page 54). The results of processing it are shown in `Echo07-03.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample03-xml.html` and `Echo07-03.html`.)

---

When you run the Echo program on `slideSample03.xml`, you see the following output:

```
ELEMENT:  <item>
CHARS:    Market Size < predicted
END_ELM:  </item>
```

The parser converted the reference into the entity it represents, and passed the entity to the application.

## Handling Text with XML-Style Syntax

When you are handling large blocks of XML or HTML that include many of the special characters, you use a CDATA section.

---

**Note:** The XML file used in this example is `slideSample04.xml`, as described in Handling Text with XML-Style Syntax (page 154). The results of processing it are shown in `Echo07-04.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample04-xml.html` and `Echo07-04.html`.)

---

A CDATA section works like `<pre>...</pre>` in HTML, only more so—all whitespace in a CDATA section is significant, and characters in it are not interpreted as XML. A CDATA section starts with `<![CDATA[` and ends with `]]>`. The

file `slideSample04.xml` contains this a CDATA section for a fictitious technical slide:

```
...
<slide type="tech">
  <title>How it Works</title>
  <item>First we fozzle the frobmorten</item>
  <item>Then we framboze the staten</item>
  <item>Finally, we frenzle the fuznaten</item>
  <item><![CDATA[Diagram:
    frobmorten <----- fuznaten
      |           ^
      | <1>       | <1> = fozzle
      V           | <2> = framboze
    Staten-----+ <3> = frenzle
                  <2>
  ]]></item>
</slide>
</slideshow>
```

When you run the Echo program on the new file, you see the following output:

```
ELEMENT: <item>
CHARS:   Diagram:

frobmorten <-----fuznaten
  |           ^
  | <1>       | <1> = fozzle
  V           | <2> = framboze
staten-----+ <3> = frenzle
              <2>

END_ELM: </item>
```

You can see here that the text in the CDATA section arrived as it was written. Since the parser didn't treat the angle brackets as XML, they didn't generate the fatal errors they would otherwise cause. (Because, if the angle brackets weren't in a CDATA section, the document would not be well-formed.)

## Handling CDATA and Other Characters

The existence of CDATA makes the proper echoing of XML a bit tricky. If the text to be output is *not* in a CDATA section, then any angle brackets, ampersands, and other special characters in the text should be replaced with the appro-

priate entity reference. (Replacing left angle brackets and ampersands is most important, other characters will be interpreted properly without misleading the parser.)

But if the output text *is* in a CDATA section, then the substitutions should not occur, to produce text like that in the example above. In a simple program like our Echo application, it's not a big deal. But many XML-filtering applications will want to keep track of whether the text appears in a CDATA section, in order to treat special characters properly. (Later in this tutorial, you will see how to use a `LexicalHandler` to find out whether or not you are processing a CDATA section.)

One other area to watch for is attributes. The text of an attribute value could also contain angle brackets and semicolons that need to be replaced by entity references. (Attribute text can never be in a CDATA section, though, so there is never any question about doing that substitution.)

## Parsing with a DTD

After the XML declaration, the document prolog can include a DTD, or reference an external DTD, or both. In this section, you'll see the effect of the DTD on the data that the parser delivers to your application.

### DTD's Effect on the Nonvalidating Parser

In this section, you'll use the Echo program to see how the data appears to the SAX parser when the data file references a DTD.

---

**Note:** The XML file used in this section is `slideSample05.xml`, which references `slideshow1a.dtd`, as described in Parsing with a DTD (page 156). The output is shown in `Echo07-05.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideshow1a-dtd.html`, `slideSample05-xml.html`, and `Echo07-05.html`.)

---

Running the Echo program on your latest version of `slideSample.xml` shows that many of the superfluous calls to the `characters` method have now disappeared.

Where before you saw:

```

...
>
PROCESS: ...
CHARS:
  ELEMENT:  <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
    ELEMENT:  <title>
    CHARS:    Wake up to ...
    END_ELM:  </title>
  END_ELM:  </slide>
CHARS:
  ELEMENT:  <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
  ...

```

Now you see:

```

...
>
PROCESS: ...
  ELEMENT:  <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
    ELEMENT:  <title>
    CHARS:    Wake up to ...
    END_ELM:  </title>
  END_ELM:  </slide>
  ELEMENT:  <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
  ...

```

It is evident here that the whitespace characters which were formerly being echoed around the `slide` elements are no longer being delivered by the parser, because the DTD declares that `slideshow` consists solely of `slide` elements:

```
<!ELEMENT slideshow (slide+)>
```

## Tracking Ignorable Whitespace

Now that the DTD is present, the parser is no longer calling the `characters` method with whitespace that it knows to be irrelevant. From the standpoint of an application that is only interested in processing the XML data, that is great. The application is never bothered with whitespace that exists purely to make the XML file readable.

On the other hand, if you were writing an application that was filtering an XML data file, and you wanted to output an equally readable version of the file, then that whitespace would no longer be irrelevant—it would be essential. To get those characters, you need to add the `ignorableWhitespace` method to your application. You'll do that next.

---

**Note:** The code written in this section is contained in `Echo08.java`. The output is in `Echo08-05.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo08-05.html`.)

---

To process the (generally) ignorable whitespace that the parser is seeing, add the code highlighted below to implement the `ignorableWhitespace` event handler in your version of the Echo program:

```
public void characters (char buf[], int offset, int len)
...
}

public void ignorableWhitespace char buf[], int offset, int Len)
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("IGNORABLE");
}

public void processingInstruction(String target, String data)
...
```

This code simply generates a message to let you know that ignorable whitespace was seen.

---

**Note:** Again, not all parsers are created equal. The SAX specification does not require this method to be invoked. The Java XML implementation does so whenever the DTD makes it possible.

---

When you run the Echo application now, your output looks like this:

```
ELEMENT: <slideshow
  ATTR: ...
>
IGNORABLE
IGNORABLE
PROCESS: ...
IGNORABLE
IGNORABLE
  ELEMENT: <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
  IGNORABLE
    ELEMENT: <title>
    CHARS:  Wake up to ...
    END_ELM: </title>
  IGNORABLE
  END_ELM: </slide>
IGNORABLE
IGNORABLE
  ELEMENT: <slide
    ATTR: ...
  >
  ...
```

Here, it is apparent that the `ignorableWhitespace` is being invoked before and after comments and slide elements, where `characters` was being invoked before there was a DTD.

## Cleanup

Now that you have seen ignorable whitespace echoed, remove that code from your version of the Echo program—you won't be needing it any more in the exercises ahead.

---

**Note:** That change has been made in `Echo09.java`.

---

## Empty Elements, Revisited

Now that you understand how certain instances of whitespace can be ignorable, it is time to revise the definition of an “empty” element. That definition can now be expanded to include

```
<foo>    </foo>
```

where there is whitespace between the tags and the DTD says that whitespace is ignorable.

## Echoing Entity References

When you wrote `slideSample06.xml`, you defined entities for the product name. Now it’s time to see how they’re echoed when you process them with the SAX parser.

---

**Note:** The XML used here is contained in `slideSample06.xml`, which references `slideshow1b.dtd`, as described in *Defining Attributes and Entities in the DTD* (page 62). The output is shown in `Echo09-06.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample06-xml.html`, `slideshow1b-dtd.html` and `Echo09-06.html`.)

---

When you run the Echo program on `slideSample06.xml`, here is the kind of thing you see:

```
ELEMENT:  <title>
CHARS:    Wake up to WonderWidgets!
END_ELM:  </title>
```

Note that the product name has been substituted for the entity reference.

## Echoing the External Entity

In `slideSample07.xml`, you defined an external entity to reference a copyright file.



---

**Note:** The XML used here is contained in `slideSample07.xml` and in `copyright.xml`. The output is shown in `Echo09-07.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample07-xml.html`, `copyright-xml.html` and `Echo09-07.html`.)

---

When you run the Echo program on that version of the slide presentation, here is what you see:

```
...
END_ELM: </slide>
ELEMENT: <slide
  ATTR: type "all"
>
  ELEMENT: <item>
  CHARS:
This is the standard copyright message that our lawyers
make us put everywhere so we don't have to shell out a
million bucks every time someone spills hot coffee in their
lap...
  END_ELM: </item>
END_ELM: </slide>
...
```

Note that the newline which follows the comment in the file is echoed as a character, but that the comment itself is ignored. That is the reason that the copyright message appears to start on the next line after the CHARS: label, instead of immediately after the label—the first character echoed is actually the newline that follows the comment.

## Summarizing Entities

An entity that is referenced in the document content, whether internal or external, is termed a general entity. An entity that contains DTD specifications that are referenced from within the DTD is termed a parameter entity. (More on that later.)

An entity which contains XML (text and markup), and which is therefore parsed, is known as a *parsed entity*. An entity which contains binary data (like images) is known as an *unparsed entity*. (By its very nature, it must be external.) We'll be discussing references to unparsed entities in the next section of this tutorial.

## Choosing your Parser Implementation

If no other factory class is specified, the default `SAXParserFactory` class is used. To use a different manufacturer's parser, you can change the value of the environment variable that points to it. You can do that from the command line, like this:

```
java -Djavax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory=yourFactoryHere ...
```

The factory name you specify must be a fully qualified class name (all package prefixes included). For more information, see the documentation in the `newInstance()` method of the `SAXParserFactory` class.

## Using the Validating Parser

By now, you have done a lot of experimenting with the nonvalidating parser. It's time to have a look at the validating parser and find out what happens when you use it to parse the sample presentation.

Two things to understand about the validating parser at the outset are:

- A schema or Document Type Definition (DTD) is required.
- Since the schema/DTD is present, the `ignoreWhitespace` method is invoked whenever possible.

## Configuring the Factory

The first step is modify the `Echo` program so that it uses the validating parser instead of the nonvalidating parser.

---

**Note:** The code in this section is contained in `Echo10.java`.

---

To use the validating parser, make the changes highlighted below:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        ...
    }
}
```

```
// Use the default (non-validating) parser  
// Use the validating parser  
SAXParserFactory factory = SAXParserFactory.newInstance();  
factory.setValidating(true);  
try {  
    ...  
}
```

Here, you configured the factory so that it will produce a validating parser when `newSAXParser` is invoked. You can also configure it to return a namespace-aware parser using `setNamespaceAware(true)`. Sun's implementation supports any combination of configuration options. (If a combination is not supported by any particular implementation, it is required to generate a factory configuration error.)

## Validating with XML Schema

Although a full treatment of XML Schema is beyond the scope of this tutorial, this section will show you the steps you need to take to validate an XML document using an existing schema written in the XML Schema language. (To learn more about XML Schema, you can review the online tutorial, *XML Schema Part 0: Primer*, at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/>. You can also examine the sample programs that are part of the JAXP download. They use a simple XML Schema definition to validate personnel data stored in an XML file.)

---

**Note:** There are multiple schema-definition languages, including RELAX NG, Schematron, and the W3C “XML Schema” standard. (Even a DTD qualifies as a “schema”, although it is the only one that does not use XML syntax to describe schema constraints.) However, “XML Schema” presents us with a terminology challenge. While the phrase “XML Schema schema” would be precise, we’ll use the phrase “XML Schema definition” to avoid the appearance of redundancy.

---

To be notified of validation errors in an XML document, the parser factory must be configured to create a validating parser, as shown in the previous section. In addition,

1. The appropriate properties must be set on the SAX parser.
2. The appropriate error handler must be set.
3. The document must be associated with a schema.

## Setting the SAX Parser Properties

It's helpful to start by defining the constants you'll use when setting the properties:

```
static final String JAXP_SCHEMA_LANGUAGE =  
    "http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaLanguage";  
  
static final String W3C_XML_SCHEMA =  
    "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema";
```

Next, you need to configure the parser factory to generate a parser that is namespace-aware parser, as well as validating:

```
...  
SAXParserFactory factory = SAXParserFactory.newInstance();  
factory.setNamespaceAware(true);  
factory.setValidating(true);
```

You'll learn more about namespaces in *Validating with XML Schema* (page 247). For now, understand that schema validation is a namespace-oriented process. Since JAXP-compliant parsers are not namespace-aware by default, it is necessary to set the property for schema validation to work.

The last step is to configure the parser to tell it which schema language to use. Here, you will use the constants you defined earlier to specify the W3C's XML Schema language:

```
saxParser.setProperty(JAXP_SCHEMA_LANGUAGE, W3C_XML_SCHEMA);
```

In the process, however, there is an extra error to handle. You'll take a look at that error next.

## Setting up the Appropriate Error Handling

In addition to the error handling you've already learned about, there is one error that can occur when you are configuring the parser for schema-based validation. If the parser is not 1.2 compliant, and therefore does not support XML Schema, it could throw a `SAXNotRecognizedException`.

To handle that case, you wrap the `setProperty()` statement in a `try/catch` block, as shown in the code highlighted below.

```
...
SAXParser saxParser = factory.newSAXParser();
try {
    saxParser.setProperty(JAXP_SCHEMA_LANGUAGE, W3C_XML_SCHEMA);
}
catch (SAXNotRecognizedException x) {
    // Happens if the parser does not support JAXP 1.2
    ...
}
...
```

## Associating a Document with A Schema

Now that the program is ready to validate the data using an XML Schema definition, it is only necessary to ensure that the XML document is associated with one. There are two ways to do that:

- With a schema declaration in the XML document.
- By specifying the schema to use in the application.

---

**Note:** When the application specifies the schema to use, it overrides any schema declaration in the document.

---

To specify the schema definition in the document, you would create XML like this:

```
<documentRoot
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation='YourSchemaDefinition.xsd'
>
...
```

The first attribute defines the XML Namespace (`xmlns`) prefix, “xsi”, where “xsi” stands for “XML Schema Instance”. The second line specifies the schema to use for elements in the document that do *not* have a namespace prefix — that is, for the elements you typically define in any simple, uncomplicated XML document.

---

**Note:** You'll be learning about namespaces in Validating with XML Schema (page 247). For now, think of these attributes as the "magic incantation" you use to validate a simple XML file that doesn't use them. Once you've learned more about namespaces, you'll see how to use XML Schema to validate complex documents that use them. Those ideas are discussed in Validating with Multiple Namespaces (page 250).

---

You can also specify the schema file in the application, using code like this:

```
static final String JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE =
    "http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaSource";

...
SAXParser saxParser = spf.newSAXParser();
...
saxParser.setProperty(JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE,
    new File(schemaSource));
```

Now that you know how to make use of an XML Schema definition, we'll turn our attention to the kinds of errors you can see when the application is validating its incoming data. To that, you'll use a Document Type Definition (DTD) as you experiment with validation.

## Experimenting with Validation Errors

To see what happens when the XML document does not specify a DTD, remove the DOCTYPE statement from the XML file and run the Echo program on it.

---

**Note:** The output shown here is contained in Echo10-01.txt. (The browsable version is Echo10-01.html.)

---

The result you see looks like this:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
** Parsing error, line 9, uri ../slideSample01.xml
   Document root element "slideshow", must match DOCTYPE root
   "null"
```

---

**Note:** The message above was generated by the JAXP 1.2 libraries. If you are using a different parser, the error message is likely to be somewhat different.

---

This message says that the root element of the document must match the element specified in the DOCTYPE declaration. That declaration specifies the document's DTD. Since you don't have one yet, its value is "null". In other words, the message is saying that you are trying to validate the document, but no DTD has been declared, because no DOCTYPE declaration is present.

So now you know that a DTD is a requirement for a valid document. That makes sense. What happens when you run the parser on your current version of the slide presentation, with the DTD specified?

---

**Note:** The output shown here is produced using `slideSample07.xml`, as described in Referencing Binary Entities (page 69). The output is contained in `Echo10-07.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo10-07.html`.)

---

This time, the parser gives a different error message:

```
** Parsing error, line 29, uri file:...  
The content of element type "slide" must match  
"(image?,title,item*)"
```

---

**Note:** The message above was generated by the JAXP 1.2 libraries. If you are using a different parser, the error message is likely to be somewhat different.

---

This message says that the element found at line 29 (`<item>`) does not match the definition of the `<slide>` element in the DTD. The error occurs because the definition says that the `slide` element requires a `title`. That element is not optional, and the copyright slide does not have one. To fix the problem, add the question mark highlighted below to make `title` an optional element:

```
<!ELEMENT slide (image?, title?, item*)>
```

Now what happens when you run the program?

---

**Note:** You could also remove the copyright slide, which produces the same result shown below, as reflected in `Echo10-06.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo10-06.html`.)

---

The answer is that everything runs fine until the parser runs into the `<em>` tag contained in the overview slide. Since that tag was not defined in the DTD, the attempt to validate the document fails. The output looks like this:

```
...
ELEMENT: <title>
CHARS:   Overview
END_ELM: </title>
ELEMENT: <item>
CHARS:   Why ** Parsing error, line 28, uri: ...
Element "em" must be declared.
org.xml.sax.SAXParseException: ...
...
```

---

**Note:** The message above was generated by the JAXP 1.2 libraries. If you are using a different parser, the error message is likely to be somewhat different.

---

The error message identifies the part of the DTD that caused validation to fail. In this case it is the line that defines an `item` element as `(#PCDATA | item)`.

**Exercise:** Make a copy of the file and remove all occurrences of `<em>` from it. Can the file be validated now? (In the next section, you'll learn how to define parameter entries so that we can use XHTML in the elements we are defining as part of the slide presentation.)

## Error Handling in the Validating Parser

It is important to recognize that the only reason an exception is thrown when the file fails validation is as a result of the error-handling code you entered in the early stages of this tutorial. That code is reproduced below:

```
public void error(SAXParseException e)
throws SAXParseException
{
    throw e;
}
```



If that exception is not thrown, the validation errors are simply ignored.

**Exercise:** Try commenting out the line that throws the exception. What happens when you run the parser now?

In general, a SAX parsing *error* is a validation error, although we have seen that it can also be generated if the file specifies a version of XML that the parser is not prepared to handle. The thing to remember is that your application will not generate a validation exception unless you supply an error handler like the one above.

## Parsing a Parameterized DTD

This section uses the Echo program to see what happens when you reference `xhtml.dtd` in `slideshow2.dtd`. It also covers the kinds of warnings that are generated by the SAX parser when a DTD is present.

---

**Note:** The XML file used here is `slideSample08.xml`, which references `slideshow2.dtd`. The output is contained in `Echo10-08.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample08-xml.html`, `slideshow2-dtd.html`, and `Echo10-08.html`.)

---

When you try to echo the slide presentation, you find that it now contains a new error. The relevant part of the output is shown here (formatted for readability):

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
** Parsing error, line 22, uri: ../slideshow.dtd
Element type "title" must not be declared more than once.
```

---

**Note:** The message above was generated by the JAXP 1.2 libraries. If you are using a different parser, the error message is likely to be somewhat different.

---

The problem is that `xhtml.dtd` defines a `title` element which is entirely different from the `title` element defined in the `slideshow` DTD. Because there is no hierarchy in the DTD, these two definitions conflict.

The `slideSample09.xml` version solves the problem by changing the name of the slide title. Run the Echo program on that version of the slide presentation. It should run to completion and display output like that shown in `Echo10-09`.

Congratulations! You have now read a fully validated XML document. The change in that version of the file had the effect of putting the DTD's `title` element into a slideshow "namespace" that you artificially constructed by hyphenating the name, so the `title` element in the "slideshow namespace" (`slide-title`, really) was no longer in conflict with the `title` element in `xhtml.dtd`.

---

**Note:** As mentioned in Using Namespaces (page 76), namespaces let you accomplish the same goal without having to rename any elements.

---

To finish off this section, we'll take a look at the kinds of warnings that the validating parser can produce when processing the DTD.

## DTD Warnings

As mentioned earlier in this tutorial, warnings are generated only when the SAX parser is processing a DTD. Some warnings are generated only by the validating parser. The nonvalidating parser's main goal is operate as rapidly as possible, but it too generates some warnings. (The explanations that follow tell which does what.)

The XML specification suggests that warnings should be generated as result of:

- Providing additional declarations for entities, attributes, or notations.  
(Such declarations are ignored. Only the first is used. Also, note that duplicate definitions of *elements* always produce a fatal error when validating, as you saw earlier.)
- Referencing an undeclared element type.  
(A validity error occurs only if the undeclared type is actually used in the XML document. A warning results when the undeclared element is referenced in the DTD.)
- Declaring attributes for undeclared element types.

The Java XML SAX parser also emits warnings in other cases, such as:

- No `<!DOCTYPE ...>` when validating.
- Referencing an undefined parameter entity when not validating.  
(When validating, an error results. Although nonvalidating parsers are not required to read parameter entities, the Java XML parser does so. Since it

is not a requirement, the Java XML parser generates a warning, rather than an error.)

- Certain cases where the character-encoding declaration does not look right.

At this point, you have digested many XML concepts, including DTDs, external entities. You have also learned your way around the SAX parser. The remainder of the SAX tutorial covers advanced topics that you will only need to understand if you are writing SAX-based applications. If your primary goal is to write DOM-based applications, you can skip ahead to Document Object Model (page 181).

## Handling Lexical Events

You saw earlier that if you are writing text out as XML, you need to know if you are in a CDATA section. If you are, then angle brackets (<) and ampersands (&) should be output unchanged. But if you're not in a CDATA section, they should be replaced by the predefined entities `&lt;` and `&amp;`. But how do you know if you're processing a CDATA section?

Then again, if you are filtering XML in some way, you would want to pass comments along. Normally the parser ignores comments. How can you get comments so that you can echo them?

Finally, there are the parsed entity definitions. If an XML-filtering app sees `&myEntity`; it needs to echo the same string—not the text that is inserted in its place. How do you go about doing that?

This section of the tutorial answers those questions. It shows you how to use `org.xml.sax.ext.LexicalHandler` to identify comments, CDATA sections, and references to parsed entities.

Comments, CDATA tags, and references to parsed entities constitute *lexical* information—that is, information that concerns the text of the XML itself, rather than the XML's information content. Most applications, of course, are concerned only with the *content* of an XML document. Such apps will not use the `LexicalEventListener` API. But apps that output XML text will find it invaluable.

---

**Note:** Lexical event handling is an optional parser feature. Parser implementations are not required to support it. (The reference implementation does so.) This discussion assumes that the parser you are using does so, as well.

---

## How the LexicalHandler Works

To be informed when the SAX parser sees lexical information, you configure the `XmlReader` that underlies the parser with a `LexicalHandler`. The `LexicalHandler` interface defines these even-handling methods:

`comment(String comment)`

Passes comments to the application.

`startCDATA(), endCDATA()`

Tells when a CDATA section is starting and ending, which tells your application what kind of characters to expect the next time `characters()` is called.

`startEntity(String name), endEntity(String name)`

Gives the name of a parsed entity.

`startDTD(String name, String publicId, String systemId), endDTD()`

Tells when a DTD is being processed, and identifies it.

## Working with a LexicalHandler

In the remainder of this section, you'll convert the Echo app into a lexical handler and play with its features.

---

**Note:** The code shown in this section is in `Echo11.java`. The output is shown in `Echo11-09.txt`. (The browsable version is `Echo11-09.html`.)

---

To start, add the code highlighted below to implement the `LexicalHandler` interface and add the appropriate methods.

```
import org.xml.sax.*;
import org.xml.sax.helpers.DefaultHandler;
import org.xml.sax.ext.LexicalHandler;
...
public class Echo extends HandlerBase
    implements LexicalHandler
{
    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
        ...
        // Use an instance of ourselves as the SAX event handler
        DefaultHandler handler = new Echo();
        Echo handler = new Echo();
        ...
    }
}
```

At this point, the `Echo` class extends one class and implements an additional interface. You changed the class of the handler variable accordingly, so you can use the same instance as either a `DefaultHandler` or a `LexicalHandler`, as appropriate.

Next, add the code highlighted below to get the `XMLReader` that the parser delegates to, and configure it to send lexical events to your lexical handler:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    ...
    try {
        ...
        // Parse the input
        SAXParser saxParser = factory.newSAXParser();
        XMLReader xmlReader = saxParser.getXMLReader();
        xmlReader.setProperty(
            "http://xml.org/sax/properties/lexical-handler",
            handler
        );
        saxParser.parse( new File(argv[0]), handler);
    } catch (SAXParseException spe) {
        ...
    }
}
```

Here, you configured the `XMLReader` using the `setProperty()` method defined in the `XMLReader` class. The property name, defined as part of the SAX standard, is the URL, `http://xml.org/sax/properties/lexical-handler`.

Finally, add the code highlighted below to define the appropriate methods that implement the interface.

```
public void warning(SAXParseException err)
{
    ...
}

public void comment(char[] ch, int start, int length) throws SAX-
Exception
{
}

public void startCDATA()
throws SAXException
{
}

public void endCDATA()
throws SAXException
```

```
{
}

public void startEntity(String name)
throws SAXException
{
}

public void endEntity(String name)
throws SAXException
{
}

public void startDTD(
    String name, String publicId, String systemId)
throws SAXException
{
}

public void endDTD()
throws SAXException
{
}

private void echoText()
    ...
```

You have now turned the Echo class into a lexical handler. In the next section, you'll start experimenting with lexical events.

## Echoing Comments

The next step is to do something with one of the new methods. Add the code highlighted below to echo comments in the XML file:

```
public void comment(char[] ch, int start, int length)
    throws SAXException
{
    String text = new String(ch, start, length);
    nl();
    emit("COMMENT: "+text);
}
```

When you compile the Echo program and run it on your XML file, the result looks something like this:

```
COMMENT:  A SAMPLE set of slides
COMMENT:  FOR WALLY / WALLIES
COMMENT:
    DTD for a simple "slide show".

COMMENT:  Defines the %inline; declaration
COMMENT:  ...
```

The line endings in the comments are passed as part of the comment string, once again normalized to newlines. You can also see that comments in the DTD are echoed along with comments from the file. (That can pose problems when you want to echo only comments that are in the data file. To get around that problem, you can use the `startDTD` and `endDTD` methods.)

## Echoing Other Lexical Information

To finish up this section, you'll exercise the remaining `LexicalHandler` methods.

---

**Note:** The code shown in this section is in `Echo12.java`. The file it operates on is `slideSample09.xml`. The results of processing are in `Echo12-09.txt` (The browsable versions are `slideSample09-xml.html` and `Echo12-09.html`.)

---

Make the changes highlighted below to remove the comment echo (you don't need that any more) and echo the other events, along with any characters that have been accumulated when an event occurs:

```
public void comment(char[] ch, int start, int length)
    throws SAXException
{
    String text = new String(ch, start, length);
    nl();
    emit("COMMENT: "+text);
}
```

```
public void startCDATA()
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("START CDATA SECTION");
}

public void endCDATA()
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("END CDATA SECTION");
}

public void startEntity(String name)
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("START ENTITY: "+name);
}

public void endEntity(String name)
throws SAXException
{
    echoText();
    nl();
    emit("END ENTITY: "+name);
}

public void startDTD(String name, String publicId, String
systemId)
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("START DTD: "+name
        +"          publicId=" + publicId
        +"          systemId=" + systemId);
}

public void endDTD()
throws SAXException
{
    nl();
    emit("END DTD");
}
```



Here is what you see when the DTD is processed:

```
START DTD: slideshow
      publicId=null
      systemId=slideshow3.dtd
START ENTITY: ...
...
END DTD
```

---

**Note:** To see events that occur while the DTD is being processed, use `org.xml.sax.ext.DeclHandler`.

---

Here is some of the additional output you see when the internally defined products entity is processed with the latest version of the program:

```
START ENTITY: products
CHARS:   WonderWidgets
END ENTITY: products
```

And here is the additional output you see as a result of processing the external copyright entity:

```
START ENTITY: copyright
CHARS:
This is the standard copyright message that our lawyers
make us put everywhere so we don't have to shell out a
million bucks every time someone spills hot coffee in their
lap...

END ENTITY: copyright
```

Finally, you get output that shows when the CDATA section was processed:

```
START CDATA SECTION
CHARS:   Diagram:

frobmorten <-----fuznaten
|           <3>           ^
| <1>           | <1> = fozzle
V           | <2> = framboze
staten-----+ <3> = frenzle
           <2>
```

END CDATA SECTION

In summary, the `LexicalHandler` gives you the event-notifications you need to produce an accurate reflection of the original XML text.

---

**Note:** To accurately echo the input, you would modify the `characters()` method to echo the text it sees in the appropriate fashion, depending on whether or not the program was in CDATA mode.

---

## Using the DTDHandler and EntityResolver

In this section of the tutorial, we'll carry on a short discussion of the two remaining SAX event handlers: `DTDHandler` and `EntityResolver`. The `DTDHandler` is invoked when the DTD encounters an unparsed entity or a notation declaration. The `EntityResolver` comes into play when a URN (public ID) must be resolved to a URL (system ID).

### The DTDHandler API

In the section *Choosing your Parser Implementation* (page 162) you saw a method for referencing a file that contains binary data, like an image file, using MIME data types. That is the simplest, most extensible mechanism to use. For compatibility with older SGML-style data, though, it is also possible to define an unparsed entity.

The `NDATA` keyword defines an unparsed entity, like this:

```
<!ENTITY myEntity SYSTEM "..URL.." NDATA gif>
```

The `NDATA` keyword says that the data in this entity is not parsable XML data, but is instead data that uses some other notation. In this case, the notation is named "gif". The DTD must then include a declaration for that notation, which would look something like this:

```
<!NOTATION gif SYSTEM "..URL..">
```

When the parser sees an unparsed entity or a notation declaration, it does nothing with the information except to pass it along to the application using the `DTDHandler` interface. That interface defines two methods:

```
notationDecl(String name, String publicId, String systemId)

unparsedEntityDecl(String name, String publicId,
    String systemId, String notationName)
```

The `notationDecl` method is passed the name of the notation and either the public or system identifier, or both, depending on which is declared in the DTD. The `unparsedEntityDecl` method is passed the name of the entity, the appropriate identifiers, and the name of the notation it uses.

---

**Note:** The `DTDHandler` interface is implemented by the `DefaultHandler` class.

---

Notations can also be used in attribute declarations. For example, the following declaration requires notations for the GIF and PNG image-file formats:

```
<!ENTITY image EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST image
    ...
    type NOTATION (gif | png) "gif"
>
```

Here, the type is declared as being either `gif`, or `png`. The default, if neither is specified, is `gif`.

Whether the notation reference is used to describe an unparsed entity or an attribute, it is up to the application to do the appropriate processing. The parser knows nothing at all about the semantics of the notations. It only passes on the declarations.

## The EntityResolver API

The `EntityResolver` API lets you convert a public ID (URN) into a system ID (URL). Your application may need to do that, for example, to convert something like `href="urn:/someName"` into `"http://someURL"`.

The `EntityResolver` interface defines a single method:

```
resolveEntity(String publicId, String systemId)
```

This method returns an `InputSource` object, which can be used to access the entity's contents. Converting an URL into an `InputSource` is easy enough. But the URL that is passed as the system ID will be the location of the original document which is, as likely as not, somewhere out on the Web. To access a local copy, if there is one, you must maintain a catalog somewhere on the system that maps names (public IDs) into local URLs.

## Further Information

For further information on the Simple API for XML processing (SAX) standard, see:

- The SAX standard page: <http://www.saxproject.org/>

For more information on schema-based validation mechanisms, see:

- The W3C standard validation mechanism, XML Schema: <http://www.w3c.org/XML/Schema>
- RELAX NG's regular-expression based validation mechanism: <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/relax-ng/>
- Schematron's assertion-based validation mechanism: <http://www.ascc.net/xml/resource/schematron/schematron.html>

---

# Document Object Model

*Eric Armstrong*

**I**N the SAX chapter, you wrote an XML file that contains slides for a presentation. You then used the SAX API to echo the XML to your display.

In this chapter, you'll use the Document Object Model (DOM) to build a small SlideShow application. You'll start by constructing a DOM and inspecting it, then see how to write a DOM as an XML structure, display it in a GUI, and manipulate the tree structure.

A Document Object Model is a garden-variety tree structure, where each node contains one of the components from an XML structure. The two most common types of nodes are *element nodes* and *text nodes*. Using DOM functions lets you create nodes, remove nodes, change their contents, and traverse the node hierarchy.

In this chapter, you'll parse an existing XML file to construct a DOM, display and inspect the DOM hierarchy, convert the DOM into a display-friendly JTree, and explore the syntax of namespaces. You'll also create a DOM from scratch, and see how to use some of the implementation-specific features in Sun's JAXP implementation to convert an existing data set to XML.

First though, we'll make sure that DOM is the most appropriate choice for your application. We'll do that in the next section, When to Use DOM.

---

**Note:** The examples in this chapter can be found in `<J2EE_HOME>/doc/tutorial/examples/jaxp/dom/samples`.

---

## When to Use DOM

The Document Object Model (DOM) is a standard that is, above all, designed for *documents* (for example, articles and books). In addition, the JAXP 1.2 implementation supports XML Schema, which may be an important consideration for any given application.

On the other hand, if you are dealing with simple *data* structures, and if XML Schema isn't a big part of your plans, then you may find that one of the more object-oriented standards like JDOM and dom4j (page 35) is better suited for your purpose.

From the start, DOM was intended to be language neutral. Because it was designed for use with languages like C or Perl, DOM does not take advantage of Java's object-oriented features. That fact, in addition to the document/data distinction, also helps to account for the ways in which processing a DOM differs from processing a JDOM or dom4j structure.

In this section, we'll examine the differences between the models underlying those standards to give help you choose the one that is most appropriate for your application.

## Documents vs. Data

The major point of departure between the document model used in DOM and the data model used in JDOM or dom4j lies in:

- The kind of node that exists in the hierarchy.
- The capacity for “mixed-content”.

It is the difference in what constitutes a “node” in the data hierarchy that primarily accounts for the differences in programming with these two models. However, it is the capacity for mixed-content which, more than anything else, accounts for the difference in how the standards define a “node”. So we'll start by examining DOM's “mixed-content model”.

## Mixed Content Model

Recall from the discussion of Document-Driven Programming (DDP) (page 31) that text and elements can be freely intermixed in a DOM hierarchy. That kind of structure is dubbed “mixed content” in the DOM model.

Mixed content occurs frequently in documents. For example, to represent this structure:

```
<sentence>This is an <bold>important</bold> idea.</sentence>
```

The hierarchy of DOM nodes would look something like this, where each line represents one node:

```
ELEMENT: sentence
+ TEXT: This is an
+ ELEMENT: bold
  + TEXT: important
  + TEXT: idea.
```

Note that the sentence element contains text, followed by a subelement, followed by additional text. It is that intermixing of text and elements that defines the “mixed-content model”.

## Kinds of Nodes

In order to provide the capacity for mixed content, DOM nodes are inherently very simple. In the example above, for instance, the “content” of the first element (it’s *value*) simply identifies the kind of node it is.

First time users of a DOM are usually thrown by this fact. After navigating to the `<sentence>` node, they ask for the node’s “content”, and expect to get something useful. Instead, all they get is the name of the element, “sentence”.

---

**Note:** The DOM Node API defines `nodeValue()`, `node.nodeType()`, and `nodeName()` methods. For the first element node, `nodeName()` returns “sentence”, while `nodeValue()` returns null. For the first text node, `nodeName()` returns “#text”, and `nodeValue()` returns “This is an “. The important point is that the *value* of an element is not the same as its *content*.

---

Instead, obtaining the content you care about when processing a DOM means inspecting the list of subelements the node contains, ignoring those you aren't interested in, and processing the ones you do care about.

For example, in the example above, what does it mean if you ask for the “text” of the sentence? Any of the following could be reasonable, depending on your application:

- This is an
- This is an idea.
- This is an important idea.
- This is an **important** idea.

## A Simpler Model

With DOM, you are free to create the semantics you need. However, you are also required to do the processing necessary to implement those semantics. Standards like JDOM and dom4j, on the other hand, make it a lot easier to do simple things, because each node in the hierarchy is an object.

Although JDOM and dom4j make allowances for elements with mixed content, they are not primarily designed for such situations. Instead, they are targeted for applications where the XML structure contains data.

As described in Traditional Data Processing (page 31), the elements in a data structure typically contain either text or other elements, but not both. For example, here is some XML that represents a simple address book:

```
<addressbook>
  <entry>
    <name>Fred</name>
    <email>fred@home</email>
  </entry>
  ...
</addressbook>
```

---

**Note:** For very simple XML data structures like this one, you could also use the regular expression package (`java.util.regex`) built into version 1.4 of the Java platform.

---

In JDOM and dom4j, once you navigate to an element that contains text, you invoke a method like `text()` to get its content. When processing a DOM,



though, you would have to inspect the list of subelements to “put together” the text of the node, as you saw earlier -- even if that list only contained one item (a TEXT node).

So for simple data structures like the address book above, you could save yourself a bit of work by using JDOM or dom4j. It may make sense to use one of those models even when the data is technically “mixed”, but when there is always one (and only one) segment of text for a given node.

Here is an example of that kind of structure, which would also be easily processed in JDOM or dom4j:

```
<addressbook>
  <entry>Fred
    <email>fred@home</email>
  </entry>
  ...
</addressbook>
```

Here, each entry has a bit of identifying text, followed by other elements. With this structure, the program could navigate to an entry, invoke `text()` to find out who it belongs to, and process the `<email>` sub element if it is at the correct node.

## Increasing the Complexity

But to get a full understanding of the kind of processing you need to do when searching or manipulating a DOM, it is important to know the kinds of nodes that a DOM can conceivably contain.

Here is an example that tries to bring the point home. It is a representation of this data:

```
<sentence>
  The &projectName; <![CDATA[<i>project</i>]]> is
  <?editor: red><bold>important</bold><?editor: normal>.
</sentence>
```

This sentence contains an *entity reference* — a pointer to an “entity” which is defined elsewhere. In this case, the entity contains the name of the project. The example also contains a CDATA section (uninterpreted data, like `<pre>` data in HTML), as well as *processing instructions* (`<?...?>`) that in this case tell the editor to which color to use when rendering the text.

Here is the DOM structure for that data. It's fairly representative of the kind of structure that a robust application should be prepared to handle:

```
+ ELEMENT: sentence
  + TEXT: The
  + ENTITY REF: projectName
    + COMMENT: The latest name we're using
    + TEXT: Eagle
  + CDATA: <i>project</i>
  + TEXT: is
  + PI: editor: red
  + ELEMENT: bold
    + TEXT: important
  + PI: editor: normal
```

This example depicts the kinds of nodes that may occur in a DOM. Although your application may be able to ignore most of them most of the time, a truly robust implementation needs to recognize and deal with each of them.

Similarly, the process of navigating to a node involves processing subelements, ignoring the ones you don't care about and inspecting the ones you do care about, until you find the node you are interested in.

Often, in such cases, you are interested in finding a node that contains specific text. For example, in The DOM API (page 9) you saw an example where you wanted to find a <coffee> node whose <name> element contains the text, "Mocha Java". To carry out that search, the program needed to work through the list of <coffee> elements and, for each one: a) get the <name> element under it and, b) examine the TEXT node under that element.

That example made some simplifying assumptions, however. It assumed that processing instructions, comments, CDATA nodes, and entity references would not exist in the data structure. Many simple applications can get away with such assumptions. Truly robust applications, on the other hand, need to be prepared to deal with the all kinds of valid XML data.

(A "simple" application will work only so long as the input data contains the simplified XML structures it expects. But there are no validation mechanisms to ensure that more complex structures will not exist. After all, XML was specifically designed to allow them.)

To be more robust, the sample code described in The DOM API (page 9), would have to do these things:

1. When searching for the <name> element:
  - a. Ignore comments, attributes, and processing instructions.
  - b. Allow for the possibility that the <coffee> subelements do not occur in the expected order.
  - c. Skip over TEXT nodes that contain ignorable whitespace, if not validating.
2. When extracting text for a node:
  - a. Extract text from CDATA nodes as well as text nodes.
  - b. Ignore comments, attributes, and processing instructions when gathering the text.
  - c. If an entity reference node or another element node is encountered, recurse. (That is, apply the text-extraction procedure to all subnodes.)

---

**Note:** The JAXP 1.2 parser does not insert entity reference nodes into the DOM. Instead, it inserts a TEXT node containing the contents of the reference. The JAXP 1.1 parser which is built into the 1.4 platform, on the other hand, does insert entity reference nodes. So a robust implementation which is parser-independent needs to be prepared to handle entity reference nodes.

---

Many applications, of course, won't have to worry about such things, because the kind of data they see will be strictly controlled. But if the data can come from a variety of external sources, then the application will probably need to take these possibilities into account.

The code you need to carry out these functions is given near the end of the DOM tutorial in Searching for Nodes (page 244) and Obtaining Node Content (page 245). Right now, the goal is simply to determine whether DOM is suitable for your application.

## Choosing Your Model

As you can see, when you are using DOM, even a simple operation like getting the text from a node can take a bit of programming. So if your programs will be handling simple data structures, JDOM, dom4j, or even the 1.4 regular expression package (`java.util.regex`) may be more appropriate for your needs.

For full-fledged documents and complex applications, on the other hand, DOM gives you a lot of flexibility. And if you need to use XML Schema, then once again DOM is the way to go for now, at least.

If you will be processing both documents *and* data in the applications you develop, then DOM may still be your best choice. After all, once you have written the code to examine and process a DOM structure, it is fairly easy to customize it for a specific purpose. So choosing to do everything in DOM means you'll only have to deal with one set of APIs, rather than two.

Plus, the DOM standard *is* a standard. It is robust and complete, and it has many implementations. That is a significant decision-making factor for many large installations — particularly for production applications, to prevent doing large rewrites in the event of an API change.

Finally, even though the text in an address book may not permit bold, italics, colors, and font sizes today, someday you may want to handle things. Since DOM will handle virtually anything you throw at it, choosing DOM makes it easier to “future-proof” your application.

## Reading XML Data into a DOM

In this section of the tutorial, you'll construct a Document Object Model (DOM) by reading in an existing XML file. In the following sections, you'll see how to display the XML in a Swing tree component and practice manipulating the DOM.

---

**Note:** In the next part of the tutorial, XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations (page 255), you'll see how to write out a DOM as an XML file. (You'll also see how to convert an existing data file into XML with relative ease.)

---

## Creating the Program

The Document Object Model (DOM) provides APIs that let you create nodes, modify them, delete and rearrange them. So it is relatively easy to create a DOM, as you'll see in later in section 5 of this tutorial, Creating and Manipulating a DOM (page 238).

Before you try to create a DOM, however, it is helpful to understand how a DOM is structured. This series of exercises will make DOM internals visible by displaying them in a Swing JTree.

## Create the Skeleton

Now that you've had a quick overview of how to create a DOM, let's build a simple program to read an XML document into a DOM then write it back out again.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `DomEcho01.java`. The file it operates on is `slideSample01.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample01-xml.html`.)

---

Start with a normal basic logic for an app, and check to make sure that an argument has been supplied on the command line:

```
public class DomEcho {
    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
        if (argv.length != 1) {
            System.err.println(
                "Usage: java DomEcho filename");
            System.exit(1);
        }
    } // main
} // DomEcho
```

## Import the Required Classes

In this section, you're going to see all the classes individually named. That's so you can see where each class comes from when you want to reference the API documentation. In your own apps, you may well want to replace import statements like those below with the shorter form: `javax.xml.parsers.*`.

Add these lines to import the JAXP APIs you'll be using:

```
import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder;
import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory;
import javax.xml.parsers.FactoryConfigurationError;
import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;
```

Add these lines for the exceptions that can be thrown when the XML document is parsed:

```
import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
import org.xml.sax.SAXParseException;
```

Add these lines to read the sample XML file and identify errors:

```
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
```

Finally, import the W3C definition for a DOM and DOM exceptions:

```
import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
```

---

**Note:** A `DOMException` is only thrown when traversing or manipulating a DOM. Errors that occur during parsing are reporting using a different mechanism that is covered below.

---

## Declare the DOM

The `org.w3c.dom.Document` class is the W3C name for a Document Object Model (DOM). Whether you parse an XML document or create one, a `Document` instance will result. We'll want to reference that object from another method later on in the tutorial, so define it as a global object here:

```
public class DomEcho
{
    static Document document;

    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
```

It needs to be `static`, because you're going to generate its contents from the `main` method in a few minutes.

## Handle Errors

Next, put in the error handling logic. This logic is basically the same as the code you saw in [Handling Errors with the Nonvalidating Parser](#) (page 145) in the

SAX tutorial, so we won't go into it in detail here. The major point worth noting is that a JAXP-conformant document builder is required to report SAX exceptions when it has trouble parsing the XML document. The DOM parser does not have to actually use a SAX parser internally, but since the SAX standard was already there, it seemed to make sense to use it for reporting errors. As a result, the error-handling code for DOM and SAX applications are very similar:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        ...
    }

    try {

} catch (SAXParseException spe) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
        + ", line " + spe.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + spe.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("    " + spe.getMessage() );

    // Use the contained exception, if any
    Exception x = spe;
    if (spe.getException() != null)
        x = spe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (SAXException sxe) {
    // Error generated during parsing
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
    // Parser with specified options can't be built
    pce.printStackTrace();

} catch (IOException ioe) {
    // I/O error
    ioe.printStackTrace();
}

} // main
```

## Instantiate the Factory

Next, add the code highlighted below to obtain an instance of a factory that can give us a document builder:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        ...
    }
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
    DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    try {
```

## Get a Parser and Parse the File

Now, add the code highlighted below to get a instance of a builder, and use it to parse the specified file:

```
    try {
        DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
        document = builder.parse( new File(argv[0]) );
    } catch (SAXParseException spe) {
```

### Save This File!

By now, you should be getting the idea that every JAXP application starts pretty much the same way. You're right! Save this version of the file as a template. You'll use it later on as the basis for an XSLT transformation application.

## Run the Program

Throughout most of the DOM tutorial, you'll be using the sample slideshows you saw in the SAX section. In particular, you'll use `slideSample01.xml`, a simple XML file with nothing much in it, and `slideSample10.xml`, a more complex example that includes a DTD, processing instructions, entity references, and a CDATA section.

For instructions on how to compile and run your program, see [Compiling and Running the Program](#) from the SAX tutorial. Substitute "DomEcho" for "Echo" as the name of the program, and you're ready to roll.



For now, just run the program on `slideSample01.xml`. If it ran without error, you have successfully parsed an XML document and constructed a DOM. Congratulations!

---

**Note:** You'll have to take my word for it, for the moment, because at this point you don't have any way to display the results. But that feature is coming shortly...

---

## Additional Information

Now that you have successfully read in a DOM, there are one or two more things you need to know in order to use `DocumentBuilder` effectively. Namely, you need to know about:

- Configuring the Factory
- Handling Validation Errors

## Configuring the Factory

By default, the factory returns a nonvalidating parser that knows nothing about namespaces. To get a validating parser, and/or one that understands namespaces, you configure the factory to set either or both of those options using the command(s) highlighted below:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        ...
    }
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
        DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    factory.setValidating(true);
    factory.setNamespaceAware(true);
    try {
        ...
    }
```

---

**Note:** JAXP-conformant parsers are not required to support all combinations of those options, even though the reference parser does. If you specify an invalid combination of options, the factory generates a `ParserConfigurationException` when you attempt to obtain a parser instance.

---

You'll be learning more about how to use namespaces in the last section of the DOM tutorial, Validating with XML Schema (page 247). To complete this section, though, you'll want to learn something about...

## Handling Validation Errors

Remember when you were wading through the SAX tutorial, and all you really wanted to do was construct a DOM? Well, here's when that information begins to pay off.

Recall that the default response to a validation error, as dictated by the SAX standard, is to do nothing. The JAXP standard requires throwing SAX exceptions, so you use exactly the same error handling mechanisms as you used for a SAX application. In particular, you need to use the `DocumentBuilder`'s `setErrorHandler` method to supply it with an object that implements the SAX `ErrorHandler` interface.

---

**Note:** `DocumentBuilder` also has a `setEntityResolver` method you can use

---

The code below uses an anonymous inner class to define that `ErrorHandler`. The highlighted code is the part that makes sure validation errors generate an exception.

```
builder.setErrorHandler(  
    new org.xml.sax.ErrorHandler() {  
        // ignore fatal errors (an exception is guaranteed)  
        public void fatalError(SAXParseException exception)  
            throws SAXException {  
        }  
        // treat validation errors as fatal  
        public void error(SAXParseException e)  
            throws SAXParseException  
        {  
            throw e;  
        }  
  
        // dump warnings too  
        public void warning(SAXParseException err)  
            throws SAXParseException  
        {  
            System.out.println("*** Warning"  
                + ", line " + err.getLineNumber()  
                + ", uri " + err.getSystemId());  
        }  
    }  
);
```

```
        System.out.println("    " + err.getMessage());  
    }  
  
    );
```

This code uses an anonymous inner class to generate an instance of an object that implements the `ErrorHandler` interface. Since it has no class name, it's "anonymous". You can think of it as an "ErrorHandler" instance, although technically it's a no-name instance that implements the specified interface. The code is substantially the same as that described in *Handling Errors with the Nonvalidating Parser* (page 145). For a more complete background on validation issues, refer to *Using the Validating Parser* (page 162).

## Looking Ahead

In the next section, you'll display the DOM structure in a `JTree` and begin to explore its structure. For example, you'll see how entity references and `CDATA` sections appear in the DOM. And perhaps most importantly, you'll see how text nodes (which contain the actual data) reside *under* element nodes in a DOM.

## Displaying a DOM Hierarchy

To create a Document Object Hierarchy (DOM) or manipulate one, it helps to have a clear idea of how the nodes in a DOM are structured. In this section of the tutorial, you'll expose the internal structure of a DOM.

## Echoing Tree Nodes

What you need at this point is a way to expose the nodes in a DOM so you can see what it contains. To do that, you'll convert a DOM into a `JTreeModel` and display the full DOM in a `JTree`. It's going to take a bit of work, but the end result will be a diagnostic tool you can use in the future, as well as something you can use to learn about DOM structure now.

## Convert DomEcho to a GUI App

Since the DOM is a tree, and the Swing `JTree` component is all about displaying trees, it makes sense to stuff the DOM into a `JTree`, so you can look at it. The

first step in that process is to hack up the DomEcho program so it becomes a GUI application.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in DomEcho02.java.

---

## Add Import Statements

Start by importing the GUI components you're going to need to set up the application and display a JTree:

```
// GUI components and layouts
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing.JTree;
```

Later on in the DOM tutorial, we'll tailor the DOM display to generate a user-friendly version of the JTree display. When the user selects an element in that tree, you'll be displaying subelements in an adjacent editor pane. So, while we're doing the setup work here, import the components you need to set up a divided view (JSplitPane) and to display the text of the subelements (JEditorPane):

```
import javax.swing.JSplitPane;
import javax.swing.JEditorPane;
```

Add a few support classes you're going to need to get this thing off the ground:

```
// GUI support classes
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Dimension;
import java.awt.Toolkit;
import java.awt.event.WindowEvent;
import java.awt.event.WindowAdapter;
```

Finally, import some classes to make a fancy border:

```
// For creating borders
import javax.swing.border.EmptyBorder;
import javax.swing.border.BevelBorder;
import javax.swing.border.CompoundBorder;
```

(These are optional. You can skip them and the code that depends on them if you want to simplify things.)

## Create the GUI Framework

The next step is to convert the application into a GUI application. To do that, the static main method will create an instance of the main class, which will have become a GUI pane.

Start by converting the class into a GUI pane by extending the Swing `JPanel` class:

```
public class DomEcho02 extends JPanel
{
    // Global value so it can be ref'd by the tree-adapter
    static Document document;
    ...
}
```

While you're there, define a few constants you'll use to control window sizes:

```
public class DomEcho02 extends JPanel
{
    // Global value so it can be ref'd by the tree-adapter
    static Document document;

    static final int windowHeight = 460;
    static final int leftWidth = 300;
    static final int rightWidth = 340;
    static final int windowWidth = leftWidth + rightWidth;
}
```

Now, in the main method, invoke a method that will create the outer frame that the GUI pane will sit in:

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    ...
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory ...
    try {
        DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
        document = builder.parse( new File(argv[0]) );
        makeFrame();
    } catch (SAXParseException spe) {
        ...
    }
}
```

Next, you'll need to define the `makeFrame` method itself. It contains the standard code to create a frame, handle the exit condition gracefully, give it an instance of the main panel, size it, locate it on the screen, and make it visible:

```

    ...
} // main

public static void makeFrame()
{
    // Set up a GUI framework
    JFrame frame = new JFrame("DOM Echo");
    frame.addWindowListener(new WindowAdapter() {
        public void windowClosing(WindowEvent e)
        {System.exit(0);}
    });

    // Set up the tree, the views, and display it all
    final DomEcho02 echoPanel = new DomEcho02();
    frame.getContentPane().add("Center", echoPanel );
    frame.pack();
    Dimension screenSize =
        Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().getScreenSize();
    int w = windowWidth + 10;
    int h = windowHeight + 10;
    frame.setLocation(screenSize.width/3 - w/2,
        screenSize.height/2 - h/2);
    frame.setSize(w, h);
    frame.setVisible(true)
} // makeFrame

```

## Add the Display Components

The only thing left in the effort to convert the program to a GUI application is to create the class constructor and make it create the panel's contents. Here is the constructor:

```

public class DomEcho02 extends JPanel
{
    ...
    static final int windowWidth = leftWidth + rightWidth;

    public DomEcho02()
    {
    } // Constructor

```

Here, you make use of the border classes you imported earlier to make a regal border (optional):

```
public DomEcho02()
{
    // Make a nice border
    EmptyBorder eb = new EmptyBorder(5,5,5,5);
    BevelBorder bb = new BevelBorder(BevelBorder.LOWERED);
    CompoundBorder cb = new CompoundBorder(eb,bb);
    this.setBorder(new CompoundBorder(cb,eb));

} // Constructor
```

Next, create an empty tree and put it a JScrollPane so users can see its contents as it gets large:

```
public DomEcho02(
{
    ...

    // Set up the tree
    JTree tree = new JTree();

    // Build left-side view
    JScrollPane treeView = new JScrollPane(tree);
    treeView.setPreferredSize(
        new Dimension( leftWidth, windowHeight ));

} // Constructor
```

Now create a non-editable JEditPane that will eventually hold the contents pointed to by selected JTree nodes:

```
public DomEcho02(
{
    ....

    // Build right-side view
    JEditorPane htmlPane = new JEditorPane("text/html","");
    htmlPane.setEditable(false);
    JScrollPane htmlView = new JScrollPane(htmlPane);
    htmlView.setPreferredSize(
        new Dimension( rightWidth, windowHeight ));

} // Constructor
```

With the left-side JTree and the right-side JEditorPane constructed, create a JSplitPane to hold them:

```
public DomEcho02()
{
    ....

    // Build split-pane view
    JSplitPane splitPane =
        new JSplitPane(JSplitPane.HORIZONTAL_SPLIT,
            treeView, htmlView );
    splitPane.setContinuousLayout( true );
    splitPane.setDividerLocation( leftWidth );
    splitPane.setPreferredSize(
        new Dimension( windowWidth + 10, windowHeight+10 ));

} // Constructor
```

With this code, you set up the JSplitPane with a vertical divider. That produces a “horizontal split” between the tree and the editor pane. (More of a horizontal layout, really.) You also set the location of the divider so that the tree got the width it prefers, with the remainder of the window width allocated to the editor pane.

Finally, specify the layout for the panel and add the split pane:

```
public DomEcho02()
{
    ...

    // Add GUI components
    this.setLayout(new BorderLayout());
    this.add("Center", splitPane );

} // Constructor
```

Congratulations! The program is now a GUI application. You can run it now to see what the general layout will look like on screen. For reference, here is the completed constructor:

```
public DomEcho02()
{
    // Make a nice border
    EmptyBorder eb = new EmptyBorder(5,5,5,5);
    BevelBorder bb = new BevelBorder(BevelBorder.LOWERED);
    CompoundBorder CB = new CompoundBorder(eb,bb);
```



```

this.setBorder(new CompoundBorder(CB,eb));

// Set up the tree
JTree tree = new JTree();

// Build left-side view
JScrollPane treeView = new JScrollPane(tree);
treeView.setPreferredSize(
    new Dimension( leftWidth, windowHeight ));

// Build right-side view
JEditorPane htmlPane = new JEditorPane("text/html","");
htmlPane.setEditable(false);
JScrollPane htmlView = new JScrollPane(htmlPane);
htmlView.setPreferredSize(
    new Dimension( rightWidth, windowHeight ));

// Build split-pane view
JSplitPane splitPane =
    new JSplitPane(JSplitPane.HORIZONTAL_SPLIT,
        treeView, htmlView )
splitPane.setContinuousLayout( true );
splitPane.setDividerLocation( leftWidth );
splitPane.setPreferredSize(
    new Dimension( windowWidth + 10, windowHeight+10 ));

// Add GUI components
this.setLayout(new BorderLayout());
this.add("Center", splitPane );

} // Constructor

```

## Create Adapters to Display the DOM in a JTree

Now that you have a GUI framework to display a JTree in, the next step is get the JTree to display the DOM. But a JTree wants to display a `TreeModel`. A DOM is a tree, but it's not a `TreeModel`. So you'll need to create an adapter class that makes the DOM look like a `TreeModel` to a JTree.

Now, when the `TreeModel` passes nodes to the JTree, JTree uses the `toString` function of those nodes to get the text to display in the tree. The standard `toString` function isn't going to be very pretty, so you'll need to wrap the DOM nodes in an `AdapterNode` that returns the text we want. What the `TreeModel`

gives to the JTree, then, will in fact be AdapterNode objects that wrap DOM nodes.

---

**Note:** The classes that follow are defined as inner classes. If you are coding for the 1.1 platform, you will need to define these class as external classes.

---

## Define the AdapterNode Class

Start by importing the tree, event, and utility classes you're going to need to make this work:

```
// For creating a TreeModel
import javax.swing.tree.*;
import javax.swing.event.*;
import java.util.*;

public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
```

Moving back down to the end of the program, define a set of strings for the node element types:

```
        ...
    } // makeFrame

    // An array of names for DOM node-types
    // (Array indexes = nodeType() values.)
    static final String[] typeName = {
        "none",
        "Element",
        "Attr",
        "Text",
        "CDATA",
        "EntityRef",
        "Entity",
        "ProcInstr",
        "Comment",
        "Document",
        "DocType",
        "DocFragment",
        "Notation",
    };

} // DomEcho
```

These are the strings that will be displayed in the JTree. The specification of these nodes types can be found in the Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Core Specification at <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/REC-DOM/Level-2-Core-20001113>, under the specification for Node. That table is reproduced below, with the headings modified for clarity, and with the `nodeType()` column added:

**Table 6–1** Node Types

Node	<code>nodeName()</code>	<code>nodeValue()</code>	attributes	<code>nodeType()</code>
Attr	name of attribute	value of attribute	null	2
CDATASection	<code>#cdata-section</code>	content of the CDATA section	null	4
Comment	<code>#comment</code>	content of the comment	null	8
Document	<code>#document</code>	null	null	9
DocumentFragment	<code>#document-fragment</code>	null	null	11
DocumentType	document type name	null	null	10
Element	tag name	null	NamedNodeMap	1
Entity	entity name	null	null	6
EntityReference	name of entity referenced	null	null	5
Notation	notation name	null	null	12
ProcessingInstruction	target	entire content excluding the target	null	7
Text	<code>#text</code>	content of the text node	null	3

**Suggestion:**

Print this table and keep it handy. You need it when working with the DOM, because all of these types are intermixed in a DOM tree. So your code is forever asking, "Is this the kind of node I'm interested in?"

Next, define the AdapterNode wrapper for DOM nodes as an inner class:

```
static final String[] typeName = {
    ...
};

public class AdapterNode
{
    org.w3c.dom.Node domNode;

    // Construct an Adapter node from a DOM node
    public AdapterNode(org.w3c.dom.Node node) {
        domNode = node;
    }

    // Return a string that identifies this node
    // in the tree
    public String toString() {
        String s = typeName[domNode.getNodeType()];
        String nodeName = domNode.getNodeName();
        if (! nodeName.startsWith("#")) {
            s += ": " + nodeName;
        }
        if (domNode.getNodeValue() != null) {
            if (s.startsWith("ProcInstr"))
                s += ", ";
            else
                s += ": ";

            // Trim the value to get rid of NL's
            // at the front
            String t = domNode.getNodeValue().trim();
            int x = t.indexOf(" ");
            if (x >= 0) t = t.substring(0, x);
            s += t;
        }
        return s;
    }
} // AdapterNode

} // DomEcho
```

This class declares a variable to hold the DOM node, and requires it to be specified as a constructor argument. It then defines the `toString` operation, which returns the node type from the `String` array, and then adds to that additional information from the node, to further identify it.

As you can see in the table of node types in `org.w3c.dom.Node`, every node has a type, and name, and a value, which may or may not be empty. In those cases where the node name starts with “#”, that field duplicates the node type, so there is in point in including it. That explains the lines that read:

```
if (! nodeName.startsWith("#")) {
    s += ": " + nodeName;
}
```

The remainder of the `toString` method deserves a couple of notes, as well. For instance, these lines:

```
if (s.startsWith("ProcInstr"))
    s += ", ";
else
    s += ": ";
```

Merely provide a little “syntactic sugar”. The type field for a Processing Instructions end with a colon (:) anyway, so those codes keep from doubling the colon.

The other interesting lines are:

```
String t = domNode.getNodeValue().trim();
int x = t.indexOf("\n");
if (x >= 0) t = t.substring(0, x);
s += t;
```

Those lines trim the value field down to the first newline (linefeed) character in the field. If you leave those lines out, you will see some funny characters (square boxes, typically) in the JTree.

---

**Note:** Recall that XML stipulates that all line endings are normalized to newlines, regardless of the system the data comes from. That makes programming quite a bit simpler.

---

Wrapping a `DomNode` and returning the desired string are the `AdapterNode`’s major functions. But since the `TreeModel` adapter will need to answer questions like “How many children does this node have?” and satisfy commands like

“Give me this node’s Nth child”, it will be helpful to define a few additional utility methods. (The adapter could always access the DOM node and get that information for itself, but this way things are more encapsulated.)

Next, add the code highlighted below to return the index of a specified child, the child that corresponds to a given index, and the count of child nodes:

```
public class AdapterNode
{
    ...
    public String toString() {
        ...
    }

    public int index(AdapterNode child) {
        //System.err.println("Looking for index of " + child);
        int count = childCount();
        for (int i=0; i<count; i++) {
            AdapterNode n = this.child(i);
            if (child == n) return i;
        }
        return -1; // Should never get here.
    }

    public AdapterNode child(int searchIndex) {
        //Note: JTree index is zero-based.
        org.w3c.dom.Node node =
            domNode.getChildNodes().item(searchIndex);
        return new AdapterNode(node);
    }

    public int childCount() {
        return domNode.getChildNodes().getLength();
    }
} // AdapterNode

} // DomEcho
```

---

**Note:** During development, it was only after I started writing the `TreeModel` adapter that I realized these were needed, and went back to add them. In just a moment, you’ll see why.

---

## Define the TreeModel Adapter

Now, at last, you are ready to write the `TreeModel` adapter. One of the really nice things about the `JTree` model is the relative ease with which you convert an existing tree for display. One of the reasons for that is the clear separation between the displayable view, which `JTree` uses, and the modifiable view, which the application uses. For more on that separation, see *Understanding the TreeModel* at <http://java.sun.com/products/jfc/tsc/articles/jtree/index.html>. For now, the important point is that to satisfy the `TreeModel` interface we only need to (a) provide methods to access and report on children and (b) register the appropriate `JTree` listener, so it knows to update its view when the underlying model changes.

Add the code highlighted below to create the `TreeModel` adapter and specify the child-processing methods:

```

    ...
} // AdapterNode

// This adapter converts the current Document (a DOM) into
// a JTree model.
public class DomToTreeModelAdapter implements
javax.swing.tree.TreeModel
{
    // Basic TreeModel operations
    public Object getRoot() {
        //System.err.println("Returning root: " +document);
        return new AdapterNode(document);
    }

    public boolean isLeaf(Object aNode) {
        // Determines whether the icon shows up to the left.
        // Return true for any node with no children
        AdapterNode node = (AdapterNode) aNode;
        if (node.childCount() > 0) return false;
        return true;
    }

    public int getChildCount(Object parent)
        AdapterNode node = (AdapterNode) parent;
        return node.childCount();
    }

    public Object getChild(Object parent, int index) {
        AdapterNode node = (AdapterNode) parent;
        return node.child(index);
    }
}

```

```

    }

    public int    getIndexOfChild(Object parent, Object child) {
        AdapterNode node = (AdapterNode) parent;
        return node.index((AdapterNode) child);
    }

    public void valueForPathChanged(
        TreePath path, Object newValue)
    {
        // Null. We won't be making changes in the GUI
        // If we did, we would ensure the new value was
        // really new and then fire a TreeNodesChanged event.
    }

} // DomToTreeModelAdapter

} // DomEcho

```

In this code, the `getRoot` method returns the root node of the DOM, wrapped as an `AdapterNode` object. From here on, all nodes returned by the adapter will be `AdapterNodes` that wrap DOM nodes. By the same token, whenever the `JTree` asks for the child of a given parent, the number of children that parent has, etc., the `JTree` will be passing us an `AdapterNode`. We know that, because we control every node the `JTree` sees, starting with the root node.

`JTree` uses the `isLeaf` method to determine whether or not to display a clickable expand/contract icon to the left of the node, so that method returns true only if the node has children. In this method, we see the cast from the generic object `JTree` sends us to the `AdapterNode` object we know it has to be. We know it is sending us an adapter object, but the interface, to be general, defines objects, so we have to do the casts.

The next three methods return the number of children for a given node, the child that lives at a given index, and the index of a given child, respectively. That's all pretty straightforward.

The last method is invoked when the user changes a value stored in the `JTree`. In this app, we won't support that. But if we did, the application would have to make the change to the underlying model and then inform any listeners that a change had occurred. (The `JTree` might not be the only listener. In many an application it isn't, in fact.)



To inform listeners that a change occurred, you'll need the ability to register them. That brings us to the last two methods required to implement the `TreeModel` interface. Add the code highlighted below to define them:

```
public class DomToTreeModelAdapter ...
{
    ...
    public void valueForPathChanged(
        TreePath path, Object newValue)
    {
        ...
    }
    private Vector listenerList = new Vector();
    public void addTreeModelListener(
        TreeModelListener listener ) {
        if ( listener != null
            && ! listenerList.contains(listener) ) {
            listenerList.addElement( listener );
        }
    }

    public void removeTreeModelListener(
        TreeModelListener listener )
    {
        if ( listener != null ) {
            listenerList.removeElement( listener );
        }
    }
}

} // DomToTreeModelAdapter
```

Since this application won't be making changes to the tree, these methods will go unused, for now. However, they'll be there in the future, when you need them.

---

**Note:** This example uses `Vector` so it will work with 1.1 apps. If coding for 1.2 or later, though, I'd use the excellent collections framework instead:

```
private LinkedList listenerList = new LinkedList();
```

---

The operations on the `List` are then `add` and `remove`. To iterate over the list, as in the operations below, you would use:

```

Iterator it = listenerList.iterator();
while ( it.hasNext() ) {
    TreeModelListener listener = (TreeModelListener) it.next();
    ...
}

```

Here, too, are some optional methods you won't be using in this application. At this point, though, you have constructed a reasonable template for a `TreeModel` adapter. In the interests of completeness, you might want to add the code highlighted below. You can then invoke them whenever you need to notify `JTree` listeners of a change:

```

public void removeTreeModelListener(
    TreeModelListener listener)
{
    ...
}

public void fireTreeNodesChanged( TreeModelEvent e ) {
    Enumeration listeners = listenerList.elements();
    while ( listeners.hasMoreElements() ) {
        TreeModelListener listener =
            (TreeModelListener) listeners.nextElement();
        listener.treeNodesChanged( e );
    }
}

public void fireTreeNodesInserted( TreeModelEvent e ) {
    Enumeration listeners = listenerList.elements();
    while ( listeners.hasMoreElements() ) {
        TreeModelListener listener =
            (TreeModelListener) listeners.nextElement();
        listener.treeNodesInserted( e );
    }
}

public void fireTreeNodesRemoved( TreeModelEvent e ) {
    Enumeration listeners = listenerList.elements();
    while ( listeners.hasMoreElements() ) {
        TreeModelListener listener =
            (TreeModelListener) listeners.nextElement();
        listener.treeNodesRemoved( e );
    }
}

```

```
public void fireTreeStructureChanged( TreeModelEvent e ) {  
    Enumeration listeners = listenerList.elements();  
    while ( listeners.hasMoreElements() ) {  
        TreeModelListener listener =  
            (TreeModelListener) listeners.nextElement();  
        listener.treeStructureChanged( e );  
    }  
}  
  
} // DomToTreeModelAdapter
```

---

**Note:** These methods are taken from the `TreeModelSupport` class described in *Understanding the TreeModel*. That architecture was produced by Tom Santos and Steve Wilson, and is a lot more elegant than the quick hack going on here. It seemed worthwhile to put them here, though, so they would be immediately at hand when and if they're needed.

---

## Finishing Up

At this point, you are basically done. All you need to do is jump back to the constructor and add the code to construct an adapter and deliver it to the `JTree` as the `TreeModel`:

```
// Set up the tree  
JTree tree = new JTree(new DomToTreeModelAdapter());
```

You can now compile and run the code on an XML file. In the next section, you will do that, and explore the DOM structures that result.

## Examining the Structure of a DOM

In this section, you'll use the GUI-fied `DomEcho` application you created in the last section to visually examine a DOM. You'll see what nodes make up the DOM, and how they are arranged. With the understanding you acquire, you'll be well prepared to construct and modify Document Object Model structures in the future.

## Displaying A Simple Tree

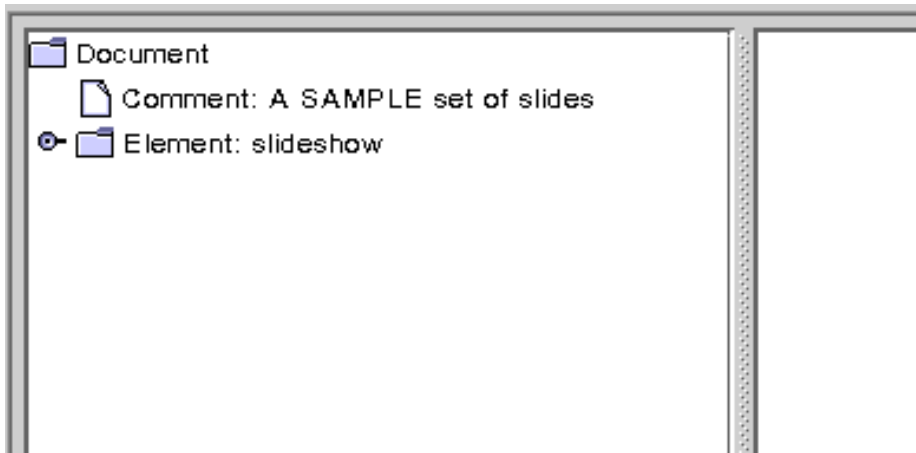
We'll start out by displaying a simple file, so you get an idea of basic DOM structure. Then we'll look at the structure that results when you include some of the more advanced XML elements.

---

**Note:** The code used to create the figures in this section is in `DomEcho02.java`. The file displayed is `slideSample01.xml`. (The browsable version is `slideSample01.xml.html`.)

---

Figure 6–1 shows the tree you see when you run the DomEcho program on the first XML file you created in the DOM tutorial.

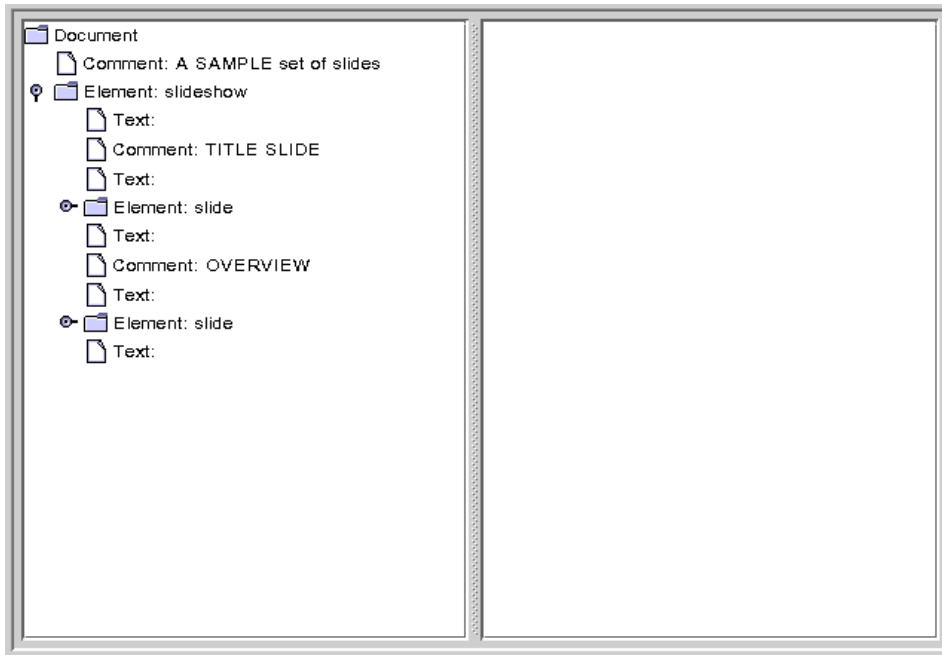


**Figure 6–1** Document, Comment, and Element Nodes Displayed

Recall that the first bit of text displayed for each node is the element type. After that comes the element name, if any, and then the element value. This view shows three element types: Document, Comment, and Element. There is only Document type for the whole tree—that is the root node. The Comment node displays the value attribute, while the Element node displays the element name, “slideshow”.

Compare Figure 6–1 with the code in the `AdapterNode`’s `toString` method to see whether the name or value is being displayed for a particular node. If you need to make it more clear, modify the program to indicate which property is being displayed (for example, with N: *name*, V: *value*).

Expanding the slideshow element brings up the display shown in Figure 6–2.



**Figure 6–2** Element Node Expanded, No Attribute Nodes Showing

Here, you can see the Text nodes and Comment nodes that are interspersed between Slide elements. The empty Text nodes exist because there is no DTD to tell the parser that no text exists. (Generally, the vast majority of nodes in a DOM tree will be Element and Text nodes.)

### Important!

Text nodes exist *under* element nodes in a DOM, and data is *always* stored in text nodes. Perhaps the most common error in DOM processing is to navigate to an element node and expect it to contain the data that is stored in that element. Not so! Even the simplest element node has a text node under it. For example, given `<size>12</size>`, there is an element node (`size`), *and a text node under it* which contains the actual data (12).

Notably absent from this picture are the Attribute nodes. An inspection of the table in `org.w3c.dom.Node` shows that there is indeed an Attribute node type. But they are not included as children in the DOM hierarchy. They are instead obtained via the Node interface `getAttributes` method.

---

**Note:** The display of the text nodes is the reason for including the lines below in the `AdapterNode`'s `toString` method. If you remove them, you'll see the funny characters (typically square blocks) that are generated by the newline characters that are in the text.

---

```
String t = domNode.getNodeValue().trim();
int x = t.indexOf("\n");
if (x >= 0) t = t.substring(0, x);
s += t;
```

## Displaying a More Complex Tree

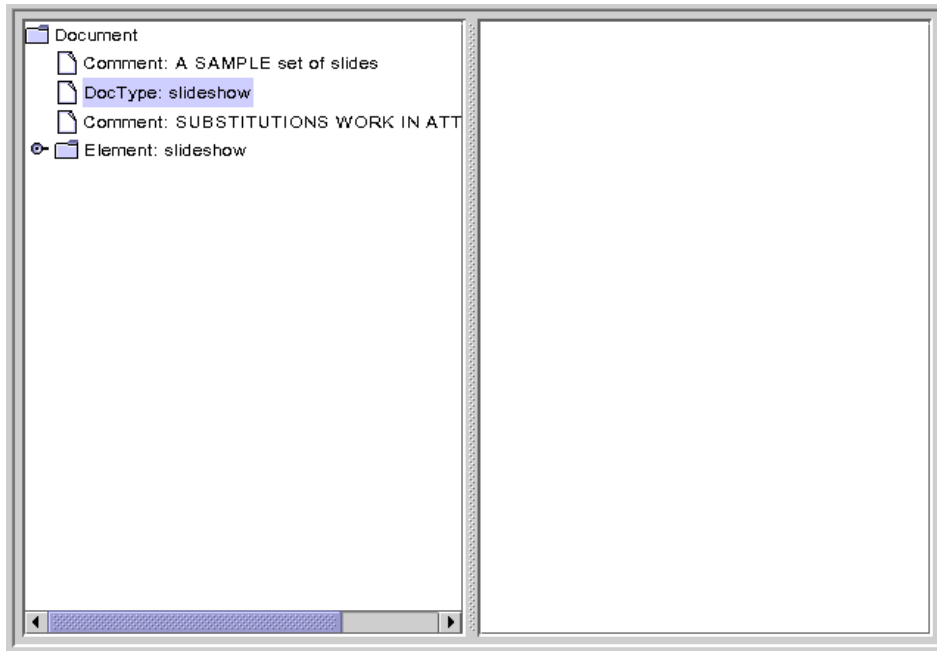
Here, you'll display the example XML file you created at the end of the SAX tutorial, to see how entity references, processing instructions, and CDATA sections appear in the DOM.

---

**Note:** The file displayed in this section is `slideSample10.xml`. The `slideSample10.xml` file references `slideshow3.dtd` which, in turn, references `copyright.xml` and a (very simplistic) `xhtml.dtd`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample10-xml.html`, `slideshow3-dtd.html`, `copyright-xml.html`, and `xhtml-dtd.html`.)

---

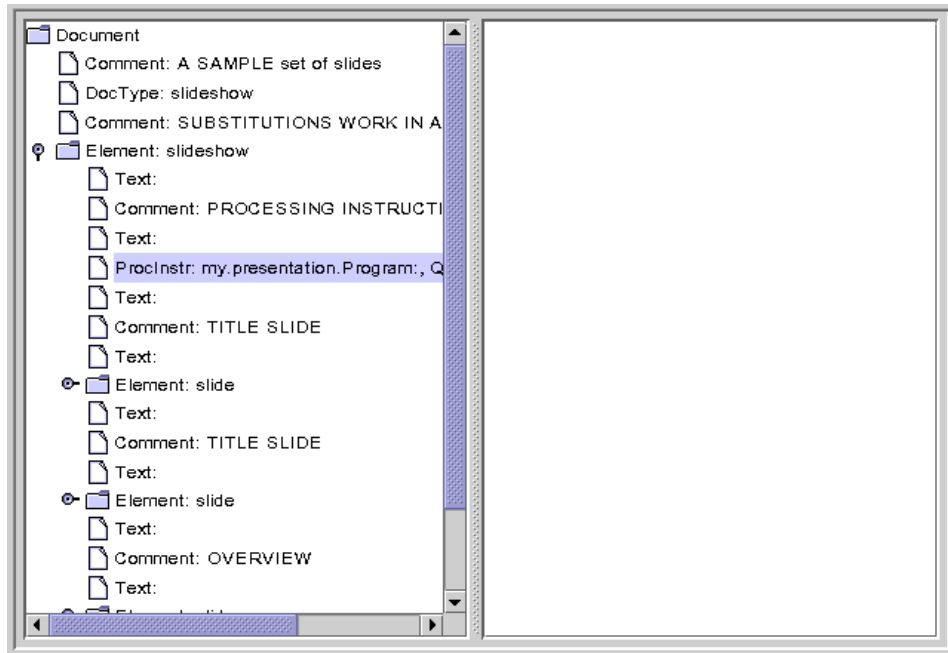
Figure 6–3 shows the result of running the DomEcho application on `slideSample10.xml`, which includes a DOCTYPE entry that identifies the document’s DTD.



**Figure 6–3** DocType Node Displayed

The DocType interface is actually an extension of `w3c.org.dom.Node`. It defines a `getEntities` method that you would use to obtain Entity nodes—the nodes that define entities like the `product` entity, which has the value “WonderWidgets”. Like Attribute nodes, Entity nodes do not appear as children of DOM nodes.

When you expand the `slideshow` node, you get the display shown in Figure 6–4.



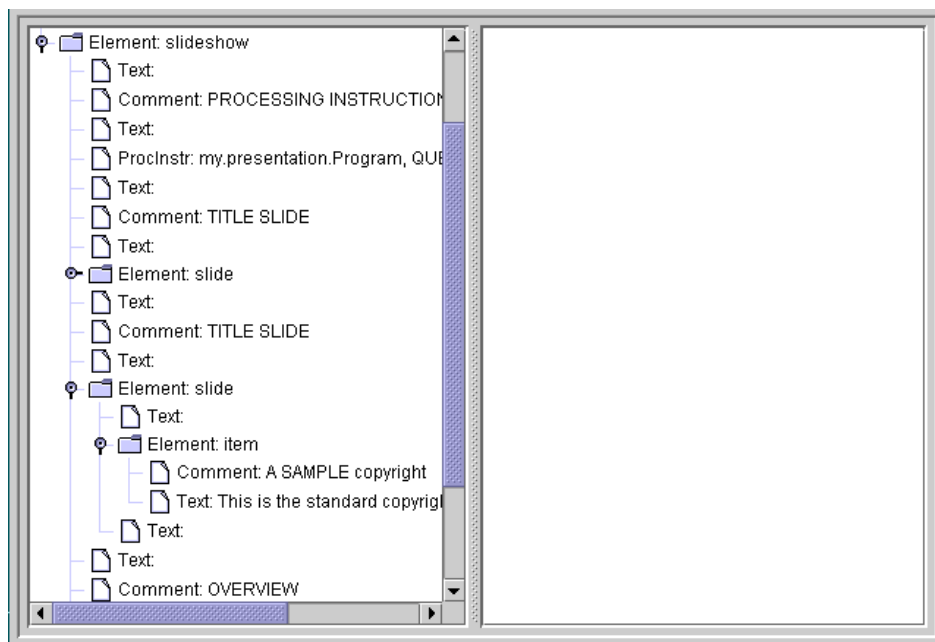
**Figure 6–4** Processing Instruction Node Displayed

Here, the processing instruction node is highlighted, showing that those nodes do appear in the tree. The `name` property contains the target-specification, which identifies the application that the instruction is directed to. The `value` property contains the text of the instruction.

Note that empty text nodes are also shown here, even though the DTD specifies that a `slideshow` can contain `slide` elements only, never text. Logically, then, you might think that these nodes would not appear. (When this file was run through the SAX parser, those elements generated `ignorableWhitespace` events, rather than character events.)



Moving down to the second `slide` element and opening the `item` element under it brings up the display shown in Figure 6–5.



**Figure 6–5** JAXP 1.2 DOM — Item Text Returned from an Entity Reference

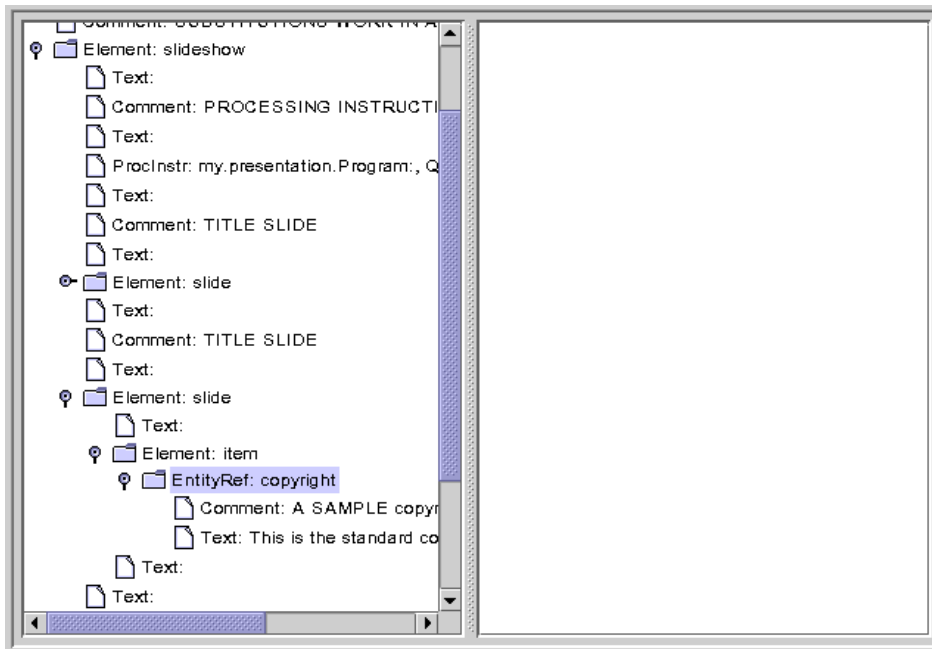
Here, you can see that a text node containing the copyright text was inserted into the DOM, rather than the entity reference which pointed to it.

For most applications, the insertion of the text is exactly what you want. That way, when you're looking for the text under a node, you don't have to worry about an entity references it might contain.

For other applications, though, you may need the ability to reconstruct the original XML. For example, an editor application would need to save the result of user modifications without throwing away entity references in the process.

Various `DocumentBuilderFactory` APIs give you control over the kind of DOM structure that is created. For example, add the highlighted line below to produce the DOM structure shown in Figure 6–6.

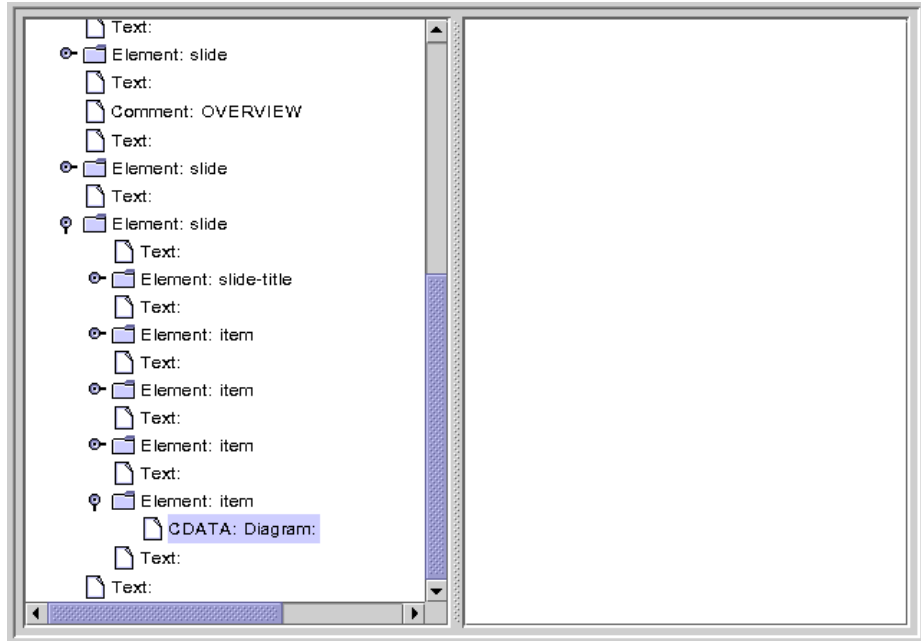
```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    ...
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
    DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    factory.setExpandEntityReferences(true);
    ...
}
```



**Figure 6–6** JAXP 1.1 in 1.4 Platform— Entity Reference Node Displayed

Here, the Entity Reference node is highlighted. Note that the entity reference contains multiple nodes under it. This example shows only comment and a text nodes, but the entity could conceivably contain other element nodes, as well.

Finally, moving down to the last `item` element under the last `slide` brings up the display shown in Figure 6–7.



**Figure 6–7** CDATA Node Displayed

Here, the CDATA node is highlighted. Note that there are no nodes under it. Since a CDATA section is entirely uninterpreted, all of its contents are contained in the node's `value` property.

## Summary of Lexical Controls

*Lexical information* is the information you need to reconstruct the original syntax of an XML document. As we discussed earlier, preserving lexical information is important for editing applications, where you want to save a document that is an accurate reflection of the original—complete with comments, entity references, and any CDATA sections it may have included at the outset.

A majority of applications, however, are only concerned with the content of the XML structures. They can afford to ignore comments, and they don't care whether data was coded in a CDATA section, as plain text, or whether it included an entity reference. For such applications, a minimum of lexical information is

desirable, because it simplifies the number and kind of DOM nodes that the application has to be prepared to examine.

The following `DocumentBuilderFactory` methods give you control over the lexical information you see in the DOM:

- `setCoalescing()`  
To convert CDATA nodes to Text node and append to an adjacent Text node (if any).
- `setExpandEntityReferences()`  
To expand entity reference nodes.
- `setIgnoringComments()`  
To ignore comments.
- `setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace()`  
To ignore ignorable whitespace in element content.

The default values for all of these properties is `false`. Table 6–2 shows the settings you need to preserve all the lexical information necessary to reconstruct the original document, in its original form. It also shows the settings that construct the simplest possible DOM, so the application can focus on the data’s semantic content, without having to worry about lexical syntax details.

**Table 6–2** Configuring `DocumentBuilderFactory`

API	Preserve Lexical Info	Focus on Content
<code>setCoalescing()</code>	false	true
<code>setExpandEntityReferences()</code>	true	false
<code>setIgnoringComments()</code>	false	true
<code>setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace()</code>	false	true

## Finishing Up

At this point, you have seen most of the nodes you will ever encounter in a DOM tree. There are one or two more that we’ll mention in the next section, but you

now know what you need to know to create or modify a DOM structure. In the next section, you'll see how to convert a DOM into a JTree that is suitable for an interactive GUI. Or, if you prefer, you can skip ahead to the 5th section of the DOM tutorial, Creating and Manipulating a DOM (page 238), where you'll learn how to create a DOM from scratch.

## Constructing a User-Friendly JTree from a DOM

Now that you know what a DOM looks like internally, you'll be better prepared to modify a DOM or construct one from scratch. Before going on to that, though, this section presents some modifications to the JTreeModel that let you produce a more user-friendly version of the JTree suitable for use in a GUI.

### Compressing the Tree View

Displaying the DOM in tree form is all very well for experimenting and to learn how a DOM works. But it's not the kind of "friendly" display that most users want to see in a JTree. However, it turns out that very few modifications are needed to turn the TreeModel adapter into something that *will* present a user-friendly display. In this section, you'll make those modifications.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in DomEcho03.java. The file it operates on is slideSample01.xml. (The browsable version is slideSample01-xml.html.)

---

### Make the Operation Selectable

When you modify the adapter, you're going to *compress* the view of the DOM, eliminating all but the nodes you really want to display. Start by defining a boolean variable that controls whether you want the compressed or uncompressed view of the DOM:

```
public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    static Document document;
    boolean compress = true;
    static final int windowHeight = 460;
    ...
}
```

## Identify Tree Nodes

The next step is to identify the nodes you want to show up in the tree. To do that, add the code highlighted below:

```
...
import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
import org.w3c.dom.Node;

public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...

    public static void makeFrame() {
        ...
    }

    // An array of names for DOM node-type
    static final String[] typeName = {
        ...
    };

    static final int ELEMENT_TYPE = Node.ELEMENT_NODE;

    // The list of elements to display in the tree
    static String[] treeElementNames = {
        "slideshow",
        "slide",
        "title",           // For slideshow #1
        "slide-title",     // For slideshow #10
        "item",
    };

    boolean treeElement(String elementName) {
        for (int i=0; i<treeElementNames.length; i++) {
            if ( elementName.equals(treeElementNames[i]) )
                return true;
        }
        return false;
    }
}
```

With this code, you set up a constant you can use to identify the ELEMENT node type, declared the names of the elements you want in the tree, and created a method tells whether or not a given element name is a “tree element”. Since `slideSample01.xml` has title elements and `slideSample10.xml` has slide-

title elements, you set up the contents of this arrays so it would work with either data file.

---

**Note:** The mechanism you are creating here depends on the fact that *structure* nodes like `slideShow` and `slide` never contain text, while text usually does appear in *content* nodes like `item`. Although those “content” nodes may contain subelements in `slideShow10.xml`, the DTD constrains those subelements to be XHTML nodes. Because they are XHTML nodes (an XML version of HTML that is constrained to be well-formed), the entire substructure under an `item` node can be combined into a single string and displayed in the `htmlPane` that makes up the other half of the application window. In the second part of this section, you’ll do that concatenation, displaying the text and XHTML as content in the `htmlPane`.

---

Although you could simply reference the node types defined in the class, `org.w3c.dom.Node`, defining the `ELEMENT_TYPE` constant keeps the code a little more readable. Each node in the DOM has a name, a type, and (potentially) a list of subnodes. The functions that return these values are `getNodeName()`, `getNodeType()`, and `getChildNodes()`. Defining our own constants will let us write code like this:

```
Node node = nodeList.item(i);
int type = node.getNodeType();
if (type == ELEMENT_TYPE) {
    ....
}
```

As a stylistic choice, the extra constants help us keep the reader (and ourselves!) clear about what we’re doing. Here, it is fairly clear when we are dealing with a node object, and when we are dealing with a type constant. Otherwise, it would be fairly tempting to code something like, `if (node == ELEMENT_NODE)`, which of course would not work at all.

## Control Node Visibility

The next step is to modify the `AdapterNode`’s `childCount` function so that it only counts “tree element” nodes—nodes which are designated as displayable in the `JTree`. Make the modifications highlighted below to do that:

```
public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public class AdapterNode
    {
```



```

...
public AdapterNode child(int searchIndex) {
    ...
}
public int childCount() {
    if (!compress) {
        // Indent this
        return domNode.getChildNodes().getLength();
    }
    int count = 0;
    for (int i=0;
        i<domNode.getChildNodes().getLength(); i++)
    {
        org.w3c.dom.Node node =
            domNode.getChildNodes().item(i);
        if (node.getNodeType() == ELEMENT_TYPE
            && treeElement( node.getNodeName() ))
        {
            ++count;
        }
    }
    return count;
}
} // AdapterNode

```

The only tricky part about this code is checking to make sure the node is an element node before comparing the node. The `DocType` node makes that necessary, because it has the same name, “`slideshow`”, as the `slideshow` element.

## Control Child Access

Finally, you need to modify the `AdapterNode`’s `child` function to return the *N*th item from the list of displayable nodes, rather than the *N*th item from all nodes in the list. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```

public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public class AdapterNode
    {
        ...
        public int index(AdapterNode child) {
            ...
        }
        public AdapterNode child(int searchIndex) {
            //Note: JTree index is zero-based.

```

```

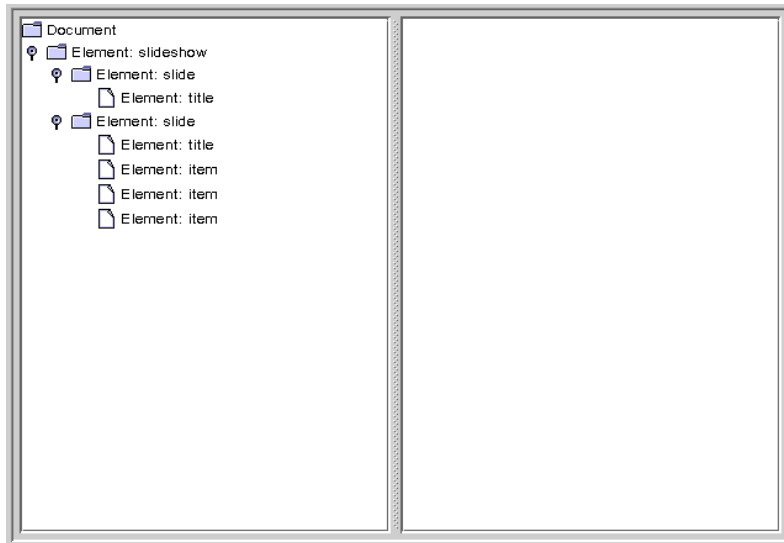
org.w3c.dom.Node node =
    domNode.getChildNodes().Item(searchIndex);
if (compress) {
    // Return Nth displayable node
    int elementNodeIndex = 0;
    for (int i=0;
        i<domNode.getChildNodes().getLength(); i++)
    {
        node = domNode.getChildNodes().Item(i);
        if (node.getNodeType() == ELEMENT_TYPE
            && treeElement( node.getNodeName() )
            && elementNodeIndex++ == searchIndex) {
            break;
        }
    }
}
return new AdapterNode(node);
} // child
} // AdapterNode

```

There's nothing special going on here. It's a slightly modified version the same logic you used when returning the child count.

## Check the Results

When you compile and run this version of the application on `slideSample01.xml`, and then expand the nodes in the tree, you see the results shown in Figure 6–8. The only nodes remaining in the tree are the high-level “structure” nodes.



**Figure 6–8** Tree View with a Collapsed Hierarchy

## Extra Credit

The way the application stands now, the information that tells the application how to compress the tree for display is “hard-coded”. Here are some ways you could consider extending the app:

### Use a Command-Line Argument

Whether you compress or don’t compress the tree could be determined by a command line argument, rather than being a hard-coded boolean variable. On the other hand, the list the list of elements that goes into the tree is still hard coded, so maybe that option doesn’t make much sense, unless...

### Read the treeElement list from a file

If you read the list of elements to include in the tree from an external file, that would make the whole application command driven. That would be good. But wouldn’t it be really nice to derive that information from the DTD or schema, instead? So you might want to consider...

### Automatically Build the List

Watch out, though! As things stand right now, there are no standard DTD parsers! If you use a DTD, then, you’ll need to write your parser to make sense out of its somewhat arcane syntax. You’ll probably have better luck if you use a schema, instead of a DTD. The nice thing about schemas is that

use XML syntax, so you can use an XML parser to read the schema the same way you use any other file.

As you analyze the schema, note that the JTree-displayable *structure* nodes are those that have no text, while the *content* nodes may contain text and, optionally, XHTML subnodes. That distinction works for this example, and will likely work for a large body of real-world applications. It's pretty easy to construct cases that will create a problem, though, so you'll have to be on the lookout for schema/DTD specifications that embed non-XHTML elements in text-capable nodes, and take the appropriate action.

## Acting on Tree Selections

Now that the tree is being displayed properly, the next step is to concatenate the subtrees under selected nodes to display them in the `htmlPane`. While you're at it, you'll use the concatenated text to put node-identifying information back in the JTree.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `DomEcho04.java`.

---

## Identify Node Types

When you concatenate the subnodes under an element, the processing you do is going to depend on the type of node. So the first thing to is to define constants for the remaining node types. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```
public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    // An array of names for DOM node-types
    static final String[] typeName = {
        ...
    };
    static final int ELEMENT_TYPE = 1;
    static final int ATTR_TYPE = Node.ATTRIBUTE_NODE;
    static final int TEXT_TYPE = Node.TEXT_NODE;
    static final int CDATA_TYPE = Node.CDATA_SECTION_NODE;
    static final int ENTITYREF_TYPE =
Node.ENTITY_REFERENCE_NODE;
    static final int ENTITY_TYPE = Node.ENTITY_NODE;
    static final int PROCINSTR_TYPE =
Node.PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION_NODE;
```

```

static final int COMMENT_TYPE = Node.COMMENT_NODE;
static final int DOCUMENT_TYPE = Node.DOCUMENT_NODE;
static final int DOCTYPE_TYPE = Node.DOCUMENT_TYPE_NODE;
static final int DOCFRAG_TYPE = Node.DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT_NODE;
static final int NOTATION_TYPE = Node.NOTATION_NODE;

```

## Concatenate Subnodes to Define Element Content

Next, you need to define add the method that concatenates the text and subnodes for an element and returns it as the element's "content". To define the content method, you'll need to add the big chunk of code highlighted below, but this is the last big chunk of code in the DOM tutorial!.

```

public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public class AdapterNode
    {
        ...
        public String toString() {
            ...
        }
        public String content() {
            String s = "";
            org.w3c.dom.NodeList nodeList =
                domNode.getChildNodes();
            for (int i=0; i<nodeList.getLength(); i++) {
                org.w3c.dom.Node node = nodeList.item(i);
                int type = node.getNodeType();
                AdapterNode adpNode = new AdapterNode(node);
                if (type == ELEMENT_TYPE) {
                    if ( treeElement(node.getNodeName()) )
                        continue;
                    s += "<" + node.getNodeName() + ">";
                    s += adpNode.content();
                    s += "</" + node.getNodeName() + ">";
                } else if (type == TEXT_TYPE) {
                    s += node.getNodeValue();
                } else if (type == ENTITYREF_TYPE) {
                    // The content is in the TEXT node under it
                    s += adpNode.content();
                } else if (type == CDATA_TYPE) {
                    StringBuffer sb = new StringBuffer(
                        node.getNodeValue() );
                    for (int j=0; j<sb.length(); j++) {

```

```

        if (sb.charAt(j) == '<') {
            sb.setCharAt(j, '&');
            sb.insert(j+1, "lt;");
            j += 3;
        } else if (sb.charAt(j) == '&') {
            sb.setCharAt(j, '&');
            sb.insert(j+1, "amp;");
            j += 4;
        }
    }
    s += "<pre>" + sb + "</pre>";
}
return s;
}
...
} // AdapterNode

```

---

**Note:** This code collapses EntityRef nodes, as inserted by the JAXP 1.1 parser that ins included in the 1.4 Java platform. With JAXP 1.2, that portion of the code is not necessary because entity references are converted to text nodes by the parser. Other parsers may well insert such nodes, however, so including this code “future proofs” your application, should you use a different parser in the future.

---

Although this code is not the most efficient that anyone ever wrote, it works and it will do fine for our purposes. In this code, you are recognizing and dealing with the following data types:

### Element

For elements with names like the XHTML “em” node, you return the node’s content sandwiched between the appropriate `<em>` and `</em>` tags. However, when processing the content for the `slide` element, for example, you don’t include tags for the `slide` elements it contains so, when returning a node’s content, you skip any subelements that are themselves displayed in the tree.

### Text

No surprise here. For a text node, you simply return the node’s value.

### Entity Reference

Unlike CDATA nodes, Entity References can contain multiple subelements. So the strategy here is to return the concatenation of those subelements.

**CDATA**

Like a text node, you return the node's value. However, since the text in this case may contain angle brackets and ampersands, you need to convert them to a form that displays properly in an HTML pane. Unlike the XML CDATA tag, the HTML `<pre>` tag does not prevent the parsing of character-format tags, break tags and the like. So you have to convert left-angle brackets (`<`) and ampersands (`&`) to get them to display properly.

On the other hand, there are quite a few node types you are *not* processing with the code above. It's worth a moment to examine them and understand why:

**Attribute**

These nodes do not appear in the DOM, but are obtained by invoking `getAttributes` on element nodes.

**Entity**

These nodes also do not appear in the DOM. They are obtained by invoking `getEntities` on `DocType` nodes.

**Processing Instruction**

These nodes don't contain displayable data.

**Comment**

Ditto. Nothing you want to display here.

**Document**

This is the root node for the DOM. There's no data to display for that.

**DocType**

The `DocType` node contains the DTD specification, with or without external pointers. It only appears under the root node, and has no data to display in the tree.

**Document Fragment**

This node is equivalent to a document node. It's a root node that the DOM specification intends for holding intermediate results during cut/paste operations, for example. Like a document node, there's no data to display.

**Notation**

We're just flat out ignoring this one. These nodes are used to include binary data in the DOM. As discussed earlier in *Choosing your Parser Implementation* and *Using the DTDHandler and EntityResolver* (page 178), the MIME types (in conjunction with namespaces) make a better mechanism for that.

## Display the Content in the JTree

With the content-concatenation out of the way, only a few small programming steps remain. The first is to modify `toString` so that it uses the node's content for identifying information. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```
public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public class AdapterNode
    {
        ...
        public String toString() {
            ...
            if (! nodeName.startsWith("#")) {
                s += ": " + nodeName;
            }
            if (compress) {
                String t = content().trim();
                int x = t.indexOf(" ");
                if (x >= 0) t = t.substring(0, x);
                s += " " + t;
            }
            return s;
        }
        if (domNode.getNodeValue() != null) {
            ...
        }
        return s;
    }
}
```

## Wire the JTree to the JEditorPane

Returning now to the app's constructor, create a tree selection listener and use to wire the `JTree` to the `JEditorPane`:

```
public class DomEcho extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public DomEcho()
    {
        ...
        // Build right-side view
        JEditorPane htmlPane = new JEditorPane("text/html", "");
        htmlPane.setEditable(false);
        JScrollPane htmlView = new JScrollPane(htmlPane);
        htmlView.setPreferredSize(
```



```

new Dimension( rightWidth, windowHeight ));

tree.addTreeSelectionListener(
    new TreeSelectionListener() {
        public void valueChanged(TreeSelectionEvent e)
        {
            TreePath p = e.getNewLeadSelectionPath();
            if (p != null) {
                AdapterNode adpNode =
                    (AdapterNode)
                        p.getLastPathComponent();
                htmlPane.setText(adpNode.content());
            }
        }
    }
);

```

Now, when a JTree node is selected, it's contents are delivered to the htmlPane.

---

**Note:** The TreeSelectionListener in this example is created using an anonymous inner-class adapter. If you are programming for the 1.1 version of the platform, you'll need to define an external class for this purpose.

---

If you compile this version of the app, you'll discover immediately that the htmlPane needs to be specified as `final` to be referenced in an inner class, so add the keyword highlighted below:

```

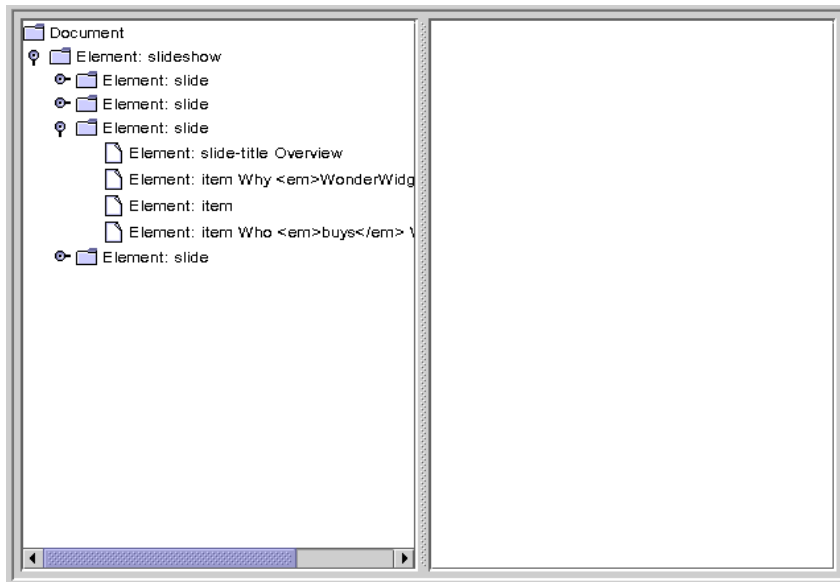
public DomEcho04()
{
    ...
    // Build right-side view
    final JEditorPane htmlPane = new
        JEditorPane("text/html","");
    htmlPane.setEditable(false);
    JScrollPane htmlView = new JScrollPane(htmlPane);
    htmlView.setPreferredSize(
        new Dimension( rightWidth, windowHeight ));
}

```

## Run the App

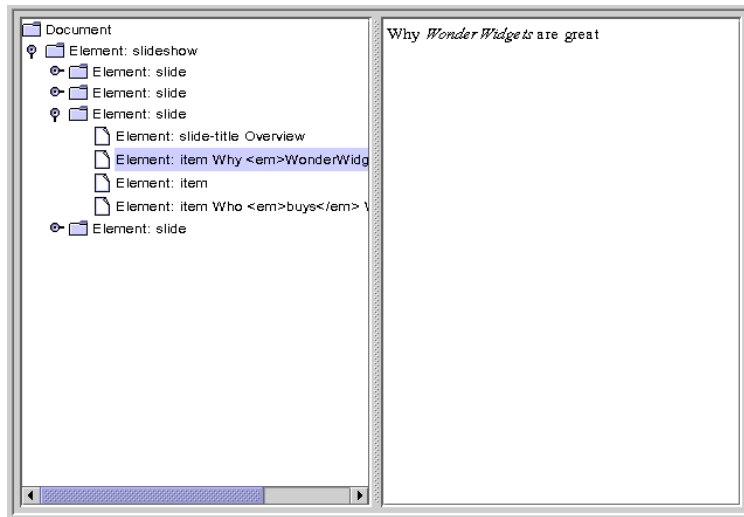
When you compile the application and run it on `slideSample10.xml` (the browsable version is `slideSample10-xml.html`), you get a display like that

shown in Figure 6–9. Expanding the hierarchy shows that the JTree now includes identifying text for a node whenever possible.



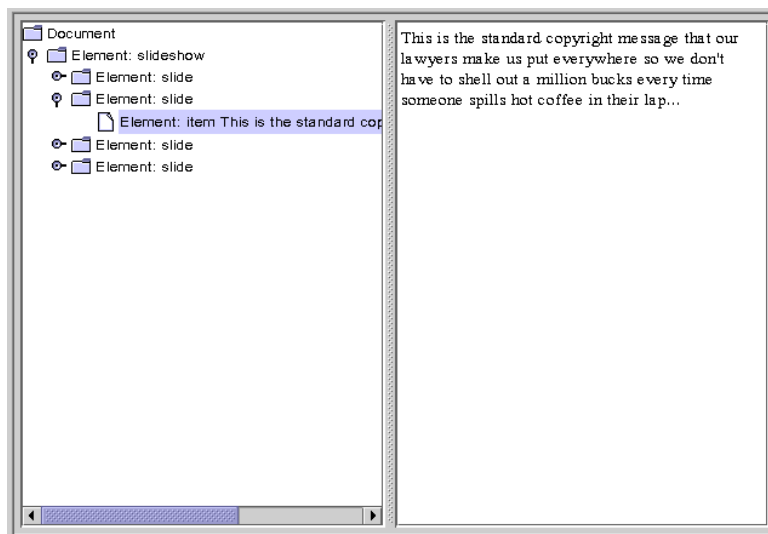
**Figure 6–9** Collapsed Hierarchy Showing Text in Nodes

Selecting an item that includes XHTML subelements produces a display like that shown in Figure 6–10:



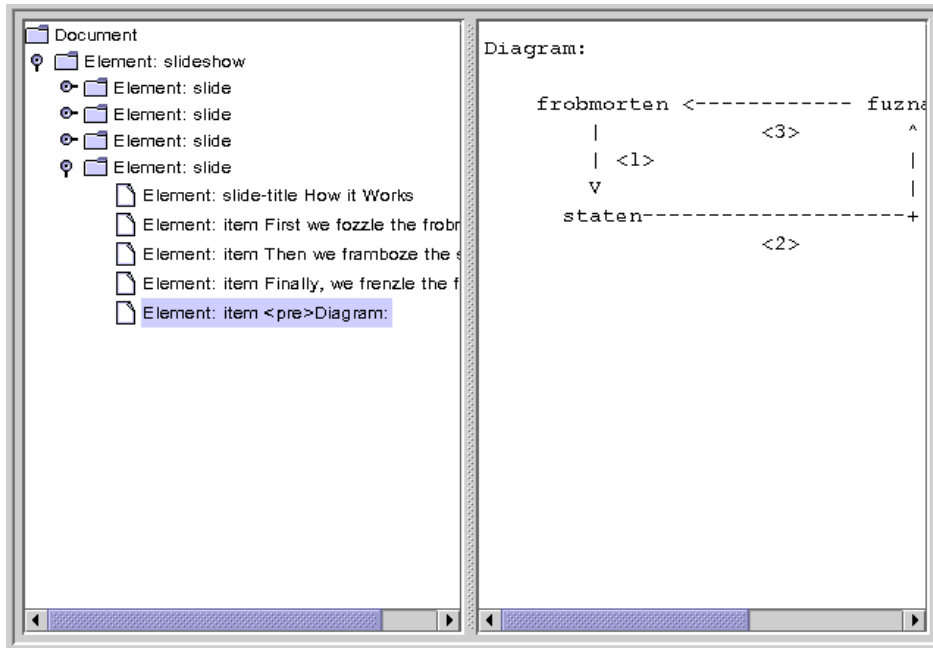
**Figure 6–10** Node with `<em>` Tag Selected

Selecting a node that contains an entity reference causes the entity text to be included, as shown in Figure 6–11:



**Figure 6–11** Node with Entity Reference Selected

Finally, selecting a node that includes a CDATA section produces results like those shown in Figure 6–12:



**Figure 6–12** Node with CDATA Component Selected

## Extra Credit

Now that you have the application working, here are some ways you might think about extending it in the future:

### Use Title Text to Identify Slides

Special case the `slide` element so that the contents of the `title` node is used as the identifying text. When selected, convert the title node's contents to a centered `H1` tag, and ignore the `title` element when constructing the tree.

### Convert Item Elements to Lists

Remove `item` elements from the `JTree` and convert them to HTML lists using `<ul>`, `<li>`, `</ul>` tags, including them in the slide's content when the slide is selected.

## Handling Modifications

A full discussion of the mechanisms for modifying the JTree's underlying data model is beyond the scope of this tutorial. However, a few words on the subject are in order.

Most importantly, note that if you allow the user to modifying the structure by manipulating the JTree, you have take the compression into account when you figure out where to apply the change. For example, if you are displaying text in the tree and the user modifies that, the changes would have to be applied to text subelements, and perhaps require a rearrangement of the XHTML subtree.

When you make those changes, you'll need to understand more about the interactions between a JTree, it's `TreeModel`, and an underlying data model. That subject is covered in depth in the Swing Connection article, *Understanding the TreeModel* at <http://java.sun.com/products/jfc/tsc/articles/jtree/index.html>.

## Finishing Up

You now understand pretty much what there is know about the structure of a DOM, and you know how to adapt a DOM to create a user-friendly display in a JTree. It has taken quite a bit of coding, but in return you have obtained valuable tools for exposing a DOM's structure and a template for GUI apps. In the next section, you'll make a couple of minor modifications to the code that turn the application into a vehicle for experimentation, and then experiment with building and manipulating a DOM.

## Creating and Manipulating a DOM

By now, you understand the structure of the nodes that make up a DOM. A DOM is actually very easy to create. This section of the DOM tutorial is going to take much less work than anything you've see up to now. All the foregoing work, however, generated the basic understanding that will make this section a piece of cake.

## Obtaining a DOM from the Factory

In this version of the application, you're still going to create a document builder factory, but this time you're going to tell it create a new DOM instead of parsing an existing XML document. You'll keep all the existing functionality intact, however, and add the new functionality in such a way that you can “flick a switch” to get back the parsing behavior.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `DomEcho05.java`.

---

## Modify the Code

Start by turning off the compression feature. As you work with the DOM in this section, you're going to want to see all the nodes:

```
public class DomEcho05 extends JPanel
{
    ...
    boolean compress = true;
    boolean compress = false;
}
```

Next, you need to create a `buildDom` method that creates the document object. The easiest way to do that is to create the method and then copy the DOM-construction section from the main method to create the `buildDom`. The modifications shown below show you the changes you need to make to make that code suitable for the `buildDom` method.

```
public class DomEcho05 extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public static void makeFrame() {
        ...
    }
    public static void buildDom()
    {
        DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
            DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
        try {
            DocumentBuilder builder =
                factory.newDocumentBuilder();
            document = builder.parse(new File(argv[0]));
            document = builder.newDocument();
        } catch (SAXException sxe) {
```

```

    ...
} catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
    // Parser with specified options can't be built
    pce.printStackTrace();
} catch (IOException ioe) {
    ...
}
}

```

In this code, you replaced the line that does the parsing with one that creates a DOM. Then, since the code is no longer parsing an existing file, you removed exceptions which are no longer thrown: `SAXException` and `IOException`.

And since you are going to be working with `Element` objects, add the statement to import that class at the top of the program:

```

import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
import org.w3c.dom.Element;

```

## Create Element and Text Nodes

Now, for your first experiment, add the `Document` operations to create a root node and several children:

```

public class DomEcho05 extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public static void buildDom()
    {
        DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
            DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
        try {
            DocumentBuilder builder =
                factory.newDocumentBuilder();
            document = builder.newDocument();
            // Create from whole cloth
            Element root =
                (Element)
                    document.createElement("rootElement");
            document.appendChild(root);
            root.appendChild(
                document.createTextNode("Some") );
            root.appendChild(
                document.createTextNode(" ") );
            root.appendChild(

```



```

        document.createTextNode("text" ) ;
    } catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
        // Parser with specified options can't be built
        pce.printStackTrace();
    }
}

```

Finally, modify the argument-list checking code at the top of the main method so you invoke `buildDom` and `makeFrame` instead of generating an error, as shown below:

```

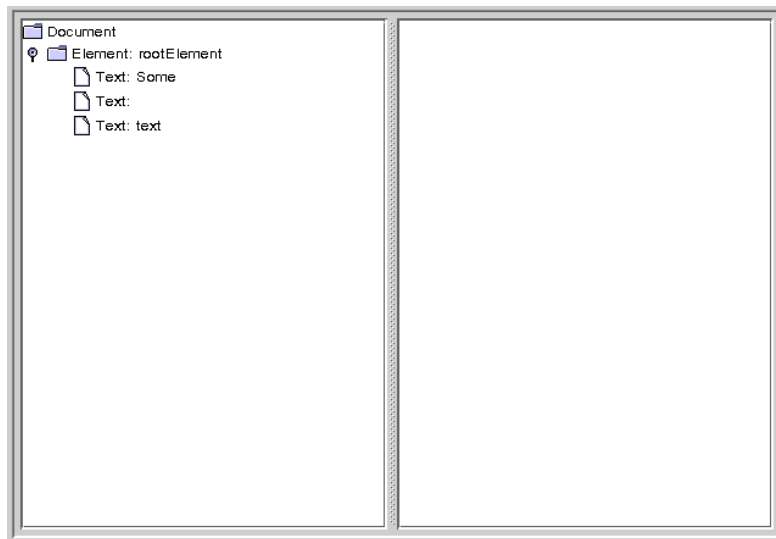
public class DomEcho05 extends JPanel
{
    ...
    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
        if (argv.length != 1) {
            System.err.println("...");
            System.exit(1);
            buildDom();
            makeFrame();
            return;
        }
    }
}

```

That's all there is to it! Now, if you supply an argument the specified file is parsed and, if you don't, the experimental code that builds a DOM is executed.

## Run the App

Compile and run the program with no arguments produces the result shown in Figure 6–13:



**Figure 6–13** Element Node and Text Nodes Created

## Normalizing the DOM

In this experiment, you'll manipulate the DOM you created by normalizing it after it has been constructed.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `DomEcho06.java`.

---

Add the code highlighted below to normalize the DOM:.

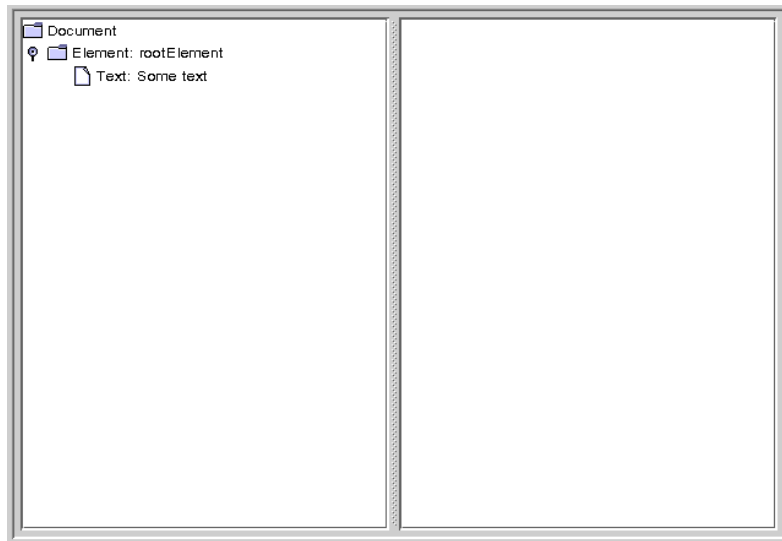
```

public static void buildDom()
{
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
        DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    try {
        ...
        root.appendChild( document.createTextNode("Some") );
        root.appendChild( document.createTextNode(" ") );
        root.appendChild( document.createTextNode("text") );
        document.getDocumentElement().normalize();
    } catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
        ...
    }
}

```

In this code, `getDocumentElement` returns the document's root node, and the `normalize` operation manipulates the tree under it.

When you compile and run the application now, the result looks like Figure 6–14:



**Figure 6–14** Text Nodes Merged After Normalization

Here, you can see that the adjacent text nodes have been combined into a single node. The `normalize` operation is one that you will typically want to use after making modifications to a DOM, to ensure that the resulting DOM is as compact as possible.

---

**Note:** Now that you have this program to experiment with, see what happens to other combinations of CDATA, entity references, and text nodes when you normalize the tree.

---

## Other Operations

To complete this section, we'll take a quick look at some of the other operations you might want to apply to a DOM, including:

- Traversing nodes
- Searching for nodes
- Obtaining node content
- Creating attributes
- Removing and changing nodes
- Inserting nodes

## Traversing Nodes

The `org.w3c.dom.Node` interface defines a number of methods you can use to traverse nodes, including `getFirstChild`, `getLastChild`, `getNextSibling`, `getPreviousSibling`, and `getParentNode`. Those operations are sufficient to get from anywhere in the tree to any other location in the tree.

## Searching for Nodes

However, when you are searching for a node with a particular name, there is a bit more to take into account. Although it is tempting to get the first child and inspect it to see if it is the right one, the search has to account for the fact that the first child in the sublist could be a comment or a processing instruction. If the XML data wasn't validated, it could even be a text node containing ignorable whitespace.

In essence, you need to look through the list of child nodes, ignoring the ones that are of no concern, and examining the ones you care about. Here is an example of the kind of routine you need to write when searching for nodes in a DOM hierarchy. It is presented here in its entirety (complete with comments) so you can use it for a template in your applications.

```
/**
 * Find the named subnode in a node's sublist.
 * <li>Ignores comments and processing instructions.
 * <li>Ignores TEXT nodes (likely to exist and contain
ignorable whitespace,
 *     if not validating.
 * <li>Ignores CDATA nodes and EntityRef nodes.
```

```

    * <li>Examines element nodes to find one with the specified
name.
    * </ul>
    * @param name the tag name for the element to find
    * @param node the element node to start searching from
    * @return the Node found
    */
public Node findSubNode(String name, Node node) {
    if (node.getNodeType() != Node.ELEMENT_NODE) {
        System.err.println("Error: Search node not of element
type");
        System.exit(22);
    }

    if (! node.hasChildNodes()) return null;

    NodeList list = node.getChildNodes();
    for (int i=0; i < list.getLength(); i++) {
        Node subnode = list.item(i);
        if (subnode.getNodeType() == Node.ELEMENT_NODE) {
            if (subnode.getNodeName() == name) return subnode;
        }
    }
    return null;
}

```

For a deeper explanation of this code, see *Increasing the Complexity* (page 185) in *When to Use DOM*.

Note, too, that you can use APIs described in *Summary of Lexical Controls* (page 220) to modify the kind of DOM the parser constructs. The nice thing about this code, though, is that will work for most any DOM.

## Obtaining Node Content

When you want to get the text that a node contains, you once again need to look through the list of child nodes, ignoring entries that are of no concern, and accumulating the text you find in TEXT nodes, CDATA nodes, and EntityRef nodes.

Here is an example of the kind of routine you need to use for that process:

```

/**
 * Return the text that a node contains. This routine:<ul>
 * <li>Ignores comments and processing instructions.
 * <li>Concatenates TEXT nodes, CDATA nodes, and the results of
 *     recursively processing EntityRef nodes.

```

```

    * <li>Ignores any element nodes in the sublist.
    * (Other possible options are to recurse into element
sublists
    * or throw an exception.)
    * </ul>
    * @param node a DOM node
    * @return a String representing its contents
    */
public String getText(Node node) {
    StringBuffer result = new StringBuffer();
    if (! node.hasChildNodes()) return "";

    NodeList list = node.getChildNodes();
    for (int i=0; i < list.getLength(); i++) {
        Node subnode = list.item(i);
        if (subnode.getNodeType() == Node.TEXT_NODE) {
            result.append(subnode.getNodeValue());
        }
        else if (subnode.getNodeType() ==
            Node.CDATA_SECTION_NODE)
        {
            result.append(subnode.getNodeValue());
        }
        else if (subnode.getNodeType() ==
            Node.ENTITY_REFERENCE_NODE)
        {
            // Recurse into the subtree for text
            // (and ignore comments)
            result.append(getText(subnode));
        }
    }
    return result.toString();
}

```

For a deeper explanation of this code, see *Increasing the Complexity* (page 185) in *When to Use DOM*.

Again, you can simplify this code by using the APIs described in *Summary of Lexical Controls* (page 220) to modify the kind of DOM the parser constructs. But the nice thing about this code, once again, is that will work for most any DOM.

## Creating Attributes

The `org.w3c.dom.Element` interface, which extends `Node`, defines a `setAttribute` operation, which adds an attribute to that node. (A better name from the

Java platform standpoint would have been `addAttribute`, since the attribute is not a property of the class, and since a new object is created.)

You can also use the `Document`'s `createAttribute` operation to create an instance of `Attribute`, and use an overloaded version of `setAttribute` to add that.

## Removing and Changing Nodes

To remove a node, you use its parent `Node`'s `removeChild` method. To change it, you can either use the parent node's `replaceChild` operation or the node's `setNodeValue` operation.

## Inserting Nodes

The important thing to remember when creating new nodes is that when you create an element node, the only data you specify is a name. In effect, that node gives you a hook to hang things on. You “hang an item on the hook” by adding to its list of child nodes. For example, you might add a text node, a `CDATA` node, or an attribute node. As you build, keep in mind the structure you examined in the exercises you've seen in this tutorial. Remember: Each node in the hierarchy is extremely simple, containing only one data element.

## Finishing Up

Congratulations! You've learned how a DOM is structured and how to manipulate it. And you now have a `DomEcho` application that you can use to display a DOM's structure, condense it down to GUI-compatible dimensions, and experiment with to see how various operations affect the structure. Have fun with it!

## Validating with XML Schema

You're now ready to take a deeper look at the process of XML Schema validation. Although a full treatment of XML Schema is beyond the scope of this tutorial, this section will show you the steps you need to take to validate an XML document using an XML Schema definition. (To learn more about XML Schema, you can review the online tutorial, *XML Schema Part 0: Primer*, at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/>. You can also examine the sample programs

that are part of the JAXP download. They use a simple XML Schema definition to validate personnel data stored in an XML file.)

---

**Note:** There are multiple schema-definition languages, including RELAX NG, Schematron, and the W3C “XML Schema” standard. (Even a DTD qualifies as a “schema”, although it is the only one that does not use XML syntax to describe schema constraints.) However, “XML Schema” presents us with a terminology challenge. While the phrase “XML Schema schema” would be precise, we’ll use the phrase “XML Schema definition” to avoid the appearance of redundancy.

---

At the end of this section, you’ll also learn how to use an XML Schema definition to validate a document that contains elements from multiple namespaces.

## Overview of the Validation Process

To be notified of validation errors in an XML document,

1. The factory must be configured, and the appropriate error handler set.
2. The document must be associated with at least one schema, and possibly more.

## Configuring the DocumentBuilder Factory

It’s helpful to start by defining the constants you’ll use when configuring the factory. (These are the same constants you define when using XML Schema for SAX parsing.)

```
static final String JAXP_SCHEMA_LANGUAGE =  
    "http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaLanguage";  
  
static final String W3C_XML_SCHEMA =  
    "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema";
```



Next, you need to configure `DocumentBuilderFactory` to generate a namespace-aware, validating parser that uses XML Schema:

```
...
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
        DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance()
    factory.setNamespaceAware(true);
    factory.setValidating(true);
    try {
        factory.setAttribute(JAXP_SCHEMA_LANGUAGE, W3C_XML_SCHEMA);
    }
    catch (IllegalArgumentException x) {
        // Happens if the parser does not support JAXP 1.2
        ...
    }
}
```

Since JAXP-compliant parsers are not namespace-aware by default, it is necessary to set the property for schema validation to work. You also set a factory attribute specify the parser language to use. (For SAX parsing, on the other hand, you set a property on the parser generated by the factory.)

## Associating a Document with a Schema

Now that the program is ready to validate with an XML Schema definition, it is only necessary to ensure that the XML document is associated with (at least) one. There are two ways to do that:

1. With a schema declaration in the XML document.
2. By specifying the schema(s) to use in the application.

---

**Note:** When the application specifies the schema(s) to use, it overrides any schema declarations in the document.

---

To specify the schema definition in the document, you would create XML like this:

```
<documentRoot
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation='YourSchemaDefinition.xsd'
>
    ...
```

The first attribute defines the XML Namespace (xmlns) prefix, “xsi”, where “xsi” stands for “XML Schema Instance”. The second line specifies the schema to use for elements in the document that do *not* have a namespace prefix — that is, for the elements you typically define in any simple, uncomplicated XML document. (You’ll see how to deal with multiple namespaces in the next section.)

To can also specify the schema file in the application, like this:

```
static final String schemaSource = "YourSchemaDefinition.xsd";
static final String JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE =
    "http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaSource";
...
DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
    DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance()
...
factory.setAttribute(JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE,
    new File(schemaSource));
```

Here, too, there are mechanisms at your disposal that will let you specify multiple schemas. We’ll take a look at those next.

## Validating with Multiple Namespaces

Namespaces let you combine elements that serve different purposes in the same document, without having to worry about overlapping names.

---

**Note:** The material discussed in this section also applies to validating when using the SAX parser. You’re seeing it here, because at this point you’ve learned enough about namespaces for the discussion to make sense.

---

To contrive an example, consider an XML data set that keeps track of personnel data. The data set may include information from the w2 tax form, as well as information from the employee’s hiring form, with both elements named <form> in their respective schemas.

If a prefix is defined for the “tax” namespace, and another prefix defined for the “hiring” namespace, then the personnel data could include segments like this:

```
<employee id="...">
  <name>....</name>
  <tax:form>
    ...w2 tax form data...
```

```

</tax:form>
<hiring:form>
    ...employment history, etc....
</hiring:form>
</employee>

```

The contents of the `tax:form` element would obviously be different from the contents of the `hiring:form`, and would have to be validated differently.

Note, too, that there is a “default” namespace in this example, that the unqualified element names `employee` and `name` belong to. For the document to be properly validated, the schema for that namespace must be declared, as well as the schemas for the `tax` and `hiring` namespaces.

---

**Note:** The “default” namespace is actually a *specific* namespace. It is defined as the “namespace that has no name”. So you can’t simply use one namespace as your default this week, and another namespace as the default later on. This “unnamed namespace” or “null namespace” is like the number zero. It doesn’t have any value, to speak of (no name), but it is still precisely defined. So a namespace that does have a name can never be used as the “default” namespace.

---

When parsed, each element in the data set will be validated against the appropriate schema, as long as those schemas have been declared. Again, the schemas can either be declared as part of the XML data set, or in the program. (It is also possible to mix the declarations. In general, though, it is a good idea to keep all of the declarations together in one place.)

## Declaring the Schemas in the XML Data Set

To declare the schemas to use for the example above in the data set, the XML code would look something like this:

```

<documentRoot
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="employeeDatabase.xsd"
  xsi:schemaLocation=
    "http://www.irs.gov/ fullpath/w2TaxForm.xsd
    http://www.ourcompany.com/ relpath/hiringForm.xsd"
  xmlns:tax="http://www.irs.gov/"
  xmlns:hiring="http://www.ourcompany.com/"
>
  ...

```

The `noNamespaceSchemaLocation` declaration is something you've seen before, as are the last two entries, which define the namespace prefixes `tax` and `hiring`. What's new is the entry in the middle, which defines the locations of the schemas to use for each namespace referenced in the document.

The `xsi:schemaLocation` declaration consists of entry pairs, where the first entry in each pair is a fully qualified URI that specifies the namespace, and the second entry contains a full path or a relative path to the schema definition. (In general, fully qualified paths are recommended. That way, only one copy of the schema will tend to exist.)

Of particular note is the fact that the namespace prefixes cannot be used when defining the schema locations. The `xsi:schemaLocation` declaration only understands namespace names, not prefixes.

## Declaring the Schemas in the Application

To declare the equivalent schemas in the application, the code would look something like this:

```
static final String employeeSchema = "employeeDatabase.xsd";
static final String taxSchema = "w2TaxForm.xsd";
static final String hiringSchema = "hiringForm.xsd";

static final String[] schemas = {
    employeeSchema,
    taxSchema,
    hiringSchema,
};

static final String JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE =
    "http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaSource";

...
DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
    DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance()
...
factory.setAttribute(JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE, schemas);
```

Here, the array of strings that points to the schema definitions (`.xsd` files) is passed as the argument to `factory.setAttribute` method. Note the differences from when you were declaring the schemas to use as part of the XML data set:

- There is no special declaration for the “default” (unnamed) schema.

- You don't specify the namespace name. Instead, you only give pointers to the .xsd files.

To make the namespace assignments, the parser reads the .xsd files, and finds in them the name of the *target namespace* they apply to. Since the files are specified with URIs, the parser can use an `EntityResolver` (if one has been defined) to find a local copy of the schema.

If the schema definition does not define a target namespace, then it applies to the “default” (unnamed, or null) namespace. So, in the example above, you would expect to see these target namespace declarations in the schemas:

- `employeeDatabase.xsd` — none
- `w2TaxForm.xsd` — `http://www.irs.gov/`
- `hiringForm.xsd` — `http://www.ourcompany.com`

At this point, you have seen two possible values for the schema source property when invoking the `factory.setAttribute()` method, a `File` object in `factory.setAttribute(JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE, new File(schemaSource))`. and an array of strings in `factory.setAttribute(JAXP_SCHEMA_SOURCE, schemas)`. Here is a complete list of the possible values for that argument:

- String that points to the URI of the schema
- `InputStream` with the contents of the schema
- `SAX InputSource`
- `File`
- an array of `Objects`, each of which is one of the types defined above.

---

**Note:** An array of `Objects` can be used only when the schema language (like `http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxp/properties/schemaLanguage`) has the ability to assemble a schema at runtime. Also: When an array of `Objects` is passed it is illegal to have two schemas that share the same namespace.

---

## Further Information

For further information on the `TreeModel`, see:

- *Understanding the TreeModel*: <http://java.sun.com/products/jfc/tsc/articles/jtree/index.html>

For further information on the W3C Document Object Model (DOM), see:

- The DOM standard page: <http://www.w3.org/DOM/>

For more information on schema-based validation mechanisms, see:

- The W3C standard validation mechanism, XML Schema: <http://www.w3.org/XML/Schema>
- RELAX NG's regular-expression based validation mechanism: <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/relax-ng/>
- Schematron's assertion-based validation mechanism: <http://www.ascc.net/xml/resource/schematron/schematron.html>

---

# XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations

*Eric Armstrong*

**T**HE XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations (XSLT) defines mechanisms for addressing XML data (XPath) and for specifying transformations on the data, in order to convert it into other forms. JAXP includes an interpreting implementation of XSLT, called Xalan.

In this chapter, you'll learn how to use Xalan. You'll write out a Document Object Model (DOM) as an XML file, and you'll see how to generate a DOM from an arbitrary data file in order to convert it to XML. Finally, you'll convert XML data into a different form, unlocking the mysteries of the XPath addressing mechanism along the way.

---

**Note:** The examples in this chapter can be found in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxp/xslt/samples`.

---

## Introducing XSLT and XPath

The XML Stylesheet Language (XSL) has three major subcomponents:

## XSL-FO

The “flow object” standard. By far the largest subcomponent, this standard gives mechanisms for describing font sizes, page layouts, and how information “flows” from one page to another. This subcomponent is *not* covered by JAXP, nor is it included in this tutorial.

## XSLT

This is the transformation language, which lets you define a transformation from XML into some other format. For example, you might use XSLT to produce HTML, or a different XML structure. You could even use it to produce plain text or to put the information in some other document format. (And as you’ll see in *Generating XML from an Arbitrary Data Structure* (page 275), a clever application can press it into service to manipulate non-XML data, as well.)

## XPath

At bottom, XSLT is a language that lets you specify what sorts of things to do when a particular element is encountered. But to write a program for different parts of an XML data structure, you need to be able to specify the part of the structure you are talking about at any given time. XPath is that specification language. It is an addressing mechanism that lets you specify a path to an element so that, for example, `<article><title>` can be distinguished from `<person><title>`. That way, you can describe different kinds of translations for the different `<title>` elements.

The remainder of this section describes the packages that make up the JAXP Transformation APIs.

# The JAXP Transformation Packages

Here is a description of the packages that make up the JAXP Transformation APIs:

### `javax.xml.transform`

This package defines the factory class you use to get a Transformer object. You then configure the transformer with input (Source) and output (Result) objects, and invoke its `transform()` method to make the transformation happen. The source and result objects are created using classes from one of the other three packages.

### `javax.xml.transform.dom`

Defines the `DOMSource` and `DOMResult` classes that let you use a DOM as an input to or output from a transformation.



`javax.xml.transform.sax`

Defines the `SAXSource` and `SAXResult` classes that let you use a SAX event generator as input to a transformation, or deliver SAX events as output to a SAX event processor.

`javax.xml.transform.stream`

Defines the `StreamSource` and `StreamResult` classes that let you use an I/O stream as an input to or output from a transformation.

## How XPath Works

The XPath specification is the foundation for a variety of specifications, including XSLT and linking/addressing specifications like XPointer. So an understanding of XPath is fundamental to a lot of advanced XML usage. This section provides a thorough introduction to XPATH in the context of XSLT, so you can refer to it as needed later on.

---

**Note:** In this tutorial, you won't actually use XPath until you get to the end of this section, Transforming XML Data with XSLT (page 289). So, if you like, you can skip this section and go on ahead to the next section, Writing Out a DOM as an XML File (page 268). (When you get to the end of that section, there will be a note that refers you back here, so you don't forget!)

---

## XPATH Expressions

In general, an XPath expression specifies a *pattern* that selects a set of XML nodes. XSLT templates then use those patterns when applying transformations. (XPointer, on the other hand, adds mechanisms for defining a *point* or a *range*, so that XPath expressions can be used for addressing.)

The nodes in an XPath expression refer to more than just elements. They also refer to text and attributes, among other things. In fact, the XPath specification defines an abstract document model that defines seven different kinds of nodes:

- root
- element
- text
- attribute
- comment
- processing instruction
- namespace

---

**Note:** The root element of the XML data is modeled by an *element* node. The XPath root node contains the document's root element, as well as other information relating to the document.

---

## The XSLT/XPath Data Model

Like the DOM, the XSLT/XPath data model consists of a tree containing a variety of nodes. Under any given element node, there are text nodes, attribute nodes, element nodes, comment nodes, and processing instruction nodes.

In this abstract model, syntactic distinctions disappear, and you are left with a normalized view of the data. In a text node, for example, it makes no difference whether the text was defined in a CDATA section, or if it included entity references. The text node will consist of normalized data, as it exists after all parsing is complete. So the text will contain a < character, regardless of whether an entity reference like &lt; or a CDATA section was used to include it. (Similarly, the text will contain an & character, regardless of whether it was delivered using & or it was in a CDATA section.)

In this section of the tutorial, we'll deal mostly with element nodes and text nodes. For the other addressing mechanisms, see the XPath Specification.

# Templates and Contexts

An XSLT *template* is a set of formatting instructions that apply to the nodes selected by an XPATH expression. In an stylesheet, a XSLT template would look something like this:

```
<xsl:template match="//LIST">
    ...
</xsl:template>
```

The expression `//LIST` selects the set of `LIST` nodes from the input stream. Additional instructions within the template tell the system what to do with them.

The set of nodes selected by such an expression defines the *context* in which other expressions in the template are evaluated. That context can be considered as the whole set — for example, when determining the number of the nodes it contains.

The context can also be considered as a single member of the set, as each member is processed one by one. For example, inside of the `LIST`-processing template, the expression `@type` refers to the `type` attribute of the current `LIST` node. (Similarly, the expression `@*` refers to all of attributes for the current `LIST` element.)

## Basic XPath Addressing

An XML document is a tree-structured (hierarchical) collection of nodes. As with a hierarchical directory structure, it is useful to specify a *path* that points a particular node in the hierarchy. (Hence the name of the specification: XPath.) In fact, much of the notation of directory paths is carried over intact:

- The forward slash `/` is used as a path separator.
- An absolute path from the root of the document starts with a `/`.
- A relative path from a given location starts with anything else.
- A double period `..` indicates the parent of the current node.
- A single period `.` indicates the current node.

For example, In an XHTML document (an XML document that looks like HTML, but which is *well-formed* according to XML rules) the path `/h1/h2/` would indicate an `h2` element under an `h1`. (Recall that in XML, element names are case sensitive, so this kind of specification works much better in XHTML than it would in plain HTML, because HTML is case-insensitive.)

In a pattern-matching specification like XSLT, the specification `/h1/h2` selects *all* `h2` elements that lie under an `h1` element. To select a specific `h2` element, square brackets `[]` are used for indexing (like those used for arrays). The path `/h1[4]/h2[5]` would therefore select the fifth `h2` element under the fourth `h1` element.

---

**Note:** In XHTML, all element names are in lowercase. That is a fairly common convention for XML documents. However, uppercase names are easier to read in a tutorial like this one. So, for the remainder of the XSLT tutorial, all XML element names will be in uppercase. (Attribute names, on the other hand, will remain in lowercase.)

---

A name specified in an XPath expression refers to an element. For example, “`h1`” in `/h1/h2` refers to an `h1` element. To refer to an attribute, you prefix the attribute name with an `@` sign. For example, `@type` refers to the `type` attribute of an element. Assuming you have an XML document with `LIST` elements, for example, the expression `LIST/@type` selects the `type` attribute of the `LIST` element.

---

**Note:** Since the expression does not begin with `/`, the reference specifies a `list` node relative to the current context—whatever position in the document that happens to be.

---

## Basic XPath Expressions

The full range of XPath expressions takes advantage of the wildcards, operators, and functions that XPath defines. You’ll be learning more about those shortly. Here, we’ll take a look at a couple of the most common XPath expressions, simply to introduce them.

The expression `@type="unordered"` specifies an attribute named `type` whose value is “unordered”. And you already know that an expression like `LIST/@type` specifies the `type` attribute of a `LIST` element.

You can combine those two notations to get something interesting! In XPath, the square-bracket notation (`[]`) normally associated with indexing is extended to specify *selection criteria*. So the expression `LIST[@type="unordered"]` selects all `LIST` elements whose `type` value is “unordered”.

Similar expressions exist for elements, where each element has an associated *string-value*. (You’ll see how the string-value is determined for a complicated

element in a little while. For now, we'll stick with simple elements that have a single text string.)

Suppose you model what's going on in your organization with an XML structure that consists of PROJECT elements and ACTIVITY elements that have a text string with the project name, multiple PERSON elements to list the people involved and, optionally, a STATUS element that records the project status. Here are some more examples that use the extended square-bracket notation:

- `/PROJECT[.="MyProject"]`—selects a PROJECT named "MyProject".
- `/PROJECT[STATUS]`—selects all projects that have a STATUS child element.
- `/PROJECT[STATUS="Critical"]`—selects all projects that have a STATUS child element with the string-value "Critical".

## Combining Index Addresses

The XPath specification defines quite a few addressing mechanisms, and they can be combined in many different ways. As a result, XPath delivers a lot of expressive power for a relatively simple specification. This section illustrates two more interesting combinations:

- `LIST[@type="ordered"][3]`—selects all LIST elements of type "ordered", and returns the third.
- `LIST[3][@type="ordered"]`—selects the third LIST element, but only if it is of type "ordered".

---

**Note:** Many more combinations of address operators are listed in section 2.5 of the XPath Specification. This is arguably the most useful section of the spec for defining an XSLT transform.

---

## Wildcards

By definition, an unqualified XPath expression selects a set of XML nodes that matches that specified pattern. For example, `/HEAD` matches all top-level HEAD

entries, while `/HEAD[1]` matches only the first. Table 7–1 lists the wildcards that can be used in XPath expressions to broaden the scope of the pattern matching.

**Table 7–1** XPath Wildcards

Wildcard	Meaning
<code>*</code>	Matches any element node (not attributes or text).
<code>node()</code>	Matches any node of any kind: element node, text node, attribute node, processing instruction node, namespace node, or comment node.
<code>@*</code>	Matches any attribute node.

In the project database example, for instance, `/*PERSON[.="Fred"]` matches any `PROJECT` or `ACTIVITY` element that names Fred.

## Extended-Path Addressing

So far, all of the patterns we’ve seen have specified an exact number of levels in the hierarchy. For example, `/HEAD` specifies any `HEAD` element at the first level in the hierarchy, while `/*/*` specifies any element at the second level in the hierarchy. To specify an indeterminate level in the hierarchy, use a double forward slash (`//`). For example, the XPath expression `//PARA` selects all paragraph elements in a document, wherever they may be found.

The `//` pattern can also be used within a path. So the expression `/HEAD/LIST//PARA` indicates all paragraph elements in a subtree that begins from `/HEAD/LIST`.

## XPath Data Types and Operators

XPath expressions yield either a set of nodes, a string, a boolean (true/false value), or a number. Table 7–2 lists the operators that can be used in an XPath expression

**Table 7–2** XPath Operators

Operator	Meaning
	Alternative. For example, <code>PARA LIST</code> selects all <code>PARA</code> and <code>LIST</code> elements.
or, and	Returns the or/and of two boolean values.
=, !=	Equal or not equal, for booleans, strings, and numbers.
<, >, <=, >=	Less than, greater than, less than or equal to, greater than or equal to—for numbers.
+, -, *, div, mod	Add, subtract, multiply, floating-point divide, and modulus (remainder) operations (e.g. <code>6 mod 4 = 2</code> )

Finally, expressions can be grouped in parentheses, so you don’t have to worry about operator precedence.

---

**Note:** “Operator precedence” is a term that answers the question, “If you specify `a + b * c`, does that mean `(a+b) * c` or `a + (b*c)`?”. (The operator precedence is roughly the same as that shown in the table.)

---

## String-Value of an Element

Before continuing, it’s worthwhile to understand how the string-value of a more complex element is determined. We’ll do that now.

The string-value of an element is the concatenation of all descendent text nodes, no matter how deep. So, for a “mixed-model” XML data element like this:

```
<PARA>This paragraph contains a <B>bold</B> word</PARA>
```

The string-value of `<PARA>` is “This paragraph contains a bold word”. In particular, note that `<B>` is a child of `<PARA>` and that the text contained in all children is concatenated to form the string-value.

Also, it is worth understanding that the text in the abstract data model defined by XPath is fully normalized. So whether the XML structure contains the entity reference `&lt;` or “`<`” in a CDATA section, the element’s string-value will contain the “`<`” character. Therefore, when generating HTML or XML with an XSLT stylesheet, occurrences of “`<`” will have to be converted to `&lt;` or enclosed in a CDATA section. Similarly, occurrences of “`&`” will need to be converted to `&amp;`.

## XPath Functions

This section ends with an overview of the XPath functions. You can use XPath functions to select a collection of nodes in the same way that you would use an element specification like those you have already seen. Other functions return a string, a number, or a boolean value. For example, the expression `/PROJECT/text()` gets the string-value of `PROJECT` nodes.

Many functions depend on the current context. In the example above, the *context* for each invocation of the `text()` function is the `PROJECT` node that is currently selected.

There are many XPath functions—too many to describe in detail here. This section provides a quick listing that shows the available XPath functions, along with a summary of what they do.

---

**Note:** Skim the list of functions to get an idea of what’s there. For more information, see Section 4 of the XPath Specification.

---

## Node-set functions

Many XPath expressions select a set of nodes. In essence, they return a *node-set*. One function does that, too.

- `id(...)`—returns the node with the specified id.

(Elements only have an ID when the document has a DTD, which specifies which attribute has the ID type.)



## Positional functions

These functions return positionally-based numeric values.

- `last()`—returns the index of the last element.  
For example: `/HEAD[last()]` selects the last HEAD element.
- `position()`—returns the index position.  
For example: `/HEAD[position() <= 5]` selects the first five HEAD elements
- `count(...)`—returns the count of elements.  
For example: `/HEAD[count(HEAD)=0]` selects all HEAD elements that have no subheads.

## String functions

These functions operate on or return strings.

- `concat(string, string, ...)`—concatenates the string values
- `starts-with(string1, string2)`—returns true if *string1* starts with *string2*
- `contains(string1, string2)`—returns true if *string1* contains *string2*
- `substring-before(string1, string2)`—returns the start of *string1* before *string2* occurs in it
- `substring-after(string1, string2)`—returns the remainder of *string1* after *string2* occurs in it
- `substring(string, idx)`—returns the substring from the index position to the end, where the index of the first char = 1
- `substring(string, idx, len)`—returns the substring from the index position, of the specified length
- `string-length()`—returns the size of the context-node's string-value

The *context node* is the currently selected node — the node that was selected by an XPath expression in which a function like `string-length()` is applied.

- `string-length(string)`—returns the size of the specified string
- `normalize-space()`—returns the normalized string-value of the current node (no leading or trailing whitespace, and sequences of whitespace characters converted to a single space)
- `normalize-space(string)`—returns the normalized string-value of the specified string
- `translate(string1, string2, string3)`—converts *string1*, replacing occurrences of characters in *string2* with the corresponding character from *string3*

---

**Note:** XPath defines 3 ways to get the text of an element: `text()`, `string(object)`, and the string-value implied by an element name in an expression like this: `/PROJECT[PERSON="Fred"]`.

---

## Boolean functions

These functions operate on or return boolean values:

- `not(...)`—negates the specified boolean value
- `true()`—returns true
- `false()`—returns false
- `lang(string)`—returns true if the language of the context node (specified by `xml:Lang` attributes) is the same as (or a sublanguage of) the specified language. For example: `Lang("en")` is true for `<PARA_xml:Lang="en">...</PARA>`

## Numeric functions

These functions operate on or return numeric values.

- `sum(...)`—returns the sum of the numeric value of each node in the specified node-set
- `floor(N)`—returns the largest integer that is not greater than *N*
- `ceiling(N)`—returns the smallest integer that is greater than *N*

- `round(N)`—returns the integer that is closest to *N*

## Conversion functions

These functions convert one data type to another.

- `string(...)`—returns the string value of a number, boolean, or node-set
- `boolean(...)`—returns a boolean value for a number, string, or node-set (a non-zero number, a non-empty node-set, and a non-empty string are all true)
- `number(...)`—returns the numeric value of a boolean, string, or node-set (true is 1, false is 0, a string containing a number becomes that number, the string-value of a node-set is converted to a number)

## Namespace functions

These functions let you determine the namespace characteristics of a node.

- `local-name()`—returns the name of the current node, minus the namespace prefix
- `local-name(...)`—returns the name of the first node in the specified node set, minus the namespace prefix
- `namespace-uri()`—returns the namespace URI from the current node
- `namespace-uri(...)`—returns the namespace URI from the first node in the specified node set
- `name()`—returns the expanded name (URI plus local name) of the current node
- `name(...)`—returns the expanded name (URI plus local name) of the first node in the specified node set

## Summary

XPath operators, functions, wildcards, and node-addressing mechanisms can be combined in wide variety of ways. The introduction you've had so far should give you a good head start at specifying the pattern you need for any particular purpose.

## Writing Out a DOM as an XML File

Once you have constructed a DOM, either by parsing an XML file or building it programmatically, you frequently want to save it as XML. This section shows you how to do that using the Xalan transform package.

Using that package, you'll create a transformer object to wire a DomSource to a StreamResult. You'll then invoke the transformer's transform() method to write out the DOM as XML data.

## Reading the XML

The first step is to create a DOM in memory by parsing an XML file. By now, you should be getting pretty comfortable with the process.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in TransformationApp01.java.

---

The code below provides a basic template to start from. (It should be familiar. It's basically the same code you wrote at the start of the DOM tutorial. If you saved it then, that version should be pretty much the equivalent of what you see below.)

```
import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder;
import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory;
import javax.xml.parsers.FactoryConfigurationError;
import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;

import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
import org.xml.sax.SAXParseException;

import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;

import java.io.*;

public class TransformationApp
{
    static Document document;

    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
        if (argv.length != 1) {
```

```

        System.err.println (
            "Usage: java TransformationApp filename");
        System.exit (1);
    }

    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
        DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    //factory.setNamespaceAware(true);
    //factory.setValidating(true);

    try {
        File f = new File(argv[0]);
        DocumentBuilder builder =
            factory.newDocumentBuilder();
        document = builder.parse(f);

    } catch (SAXParseException spe) {
        // Error generated by the parser
        System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
            + ", line " + spe.getLineNumber()
            + ", uri " + spe.getSystemId());
        System.out.println(" " + spe.getMessage() );

        // Use the contained exception, if any
        Exception x = spe;
        if (spe.getException() != null)
            x = spe.getException();
        x.printStackTrace();

    } catch (SAXException sxe) {
        // Error generated by this application
        // (or a parser-initialization error)
        Exception x = sxe;
        if (sxe.getException() != null)
            x = sxe.getException();
        x.printStackTrace();

    } catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
        // Parser with specified options can't be built
        pce.printStackTrace();

    } catch (IOException ioe) {
        // I/O error
        ioe.printStackTrace();
    }
} // main
}

```

## Creating a Transformer

The next step is to create a transformer you can use to transmit the XML to `System.out`.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `TransformationApp02.java`. The file it runs on is `slideSample01.xml`. The output is in `TransformationLog02.txt`. (The browsable versions are `slideSample01-xml.html` and `TransformationLog02.html`.)

---

Start by adding the import statements highlighted below:

```
import javax.xml.transform.Transformer;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerException;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerConfigurationException;

import javax.xml.transform.dom.DOMSource;

import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamResult;

import java.io.*;
```

Here, you've added a series of classes which should now be forming a standard pattern: an entity (`Transformer`), the factory to create it (`TransformerFactory`), and the exceptions that can be generated by each. Since a transformation always has a *source* and a *result*, you then imported the classes necessary to use a DOM as a source (`DomSource`), and an output stream for the result (`StreamResult`).

Next, add the code to carry out the transformation:

```
try {
    File f = new File(argv[0]);
    DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
    document = builder.parse(f);

    // Use a Transformer for output
    TransformerFactory tFactory =
        TransformerFactory.newInstance();
    Transformer transformer = tFactory.newTransformer();
```

```
DOMSource source = new DOMSource(document);
StreamResult result = new StreamResult(System.out);
transformer.transform(source, result);
```

Here, you created a transformer object, used the DOM to construct a source object, and used `System.out` to construct a result object. You then told the transformer to operate on the source object and output to the result object.

In this case, the “transformer” isn’t actually changing anything. In XSLT terminology, you are using the *identity transform*, which means that the “transformation” generates a copy of the source, unchanged.

---

**Note:** You can specify a variety of output properties for transformer objects, as defined in the W3C specification at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt#output>. For example, to get indented output, you can invoke:

```
transformer.setOutputProperty("indent", "yes");
```

---

Finally, add the code highlighted below to catch the new errors that can be generated:

```
} catch (TransformerConfigurationException tce) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println ("* Transformer Factory error");
    System.out.println(" " + tce.getMessage() );

    // Use the contained exception, if any
    Throwable x = tce;
    if (tce.getException() != null)
        x = tce.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (TransformerException te) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println ("* Transformation error");
    System.out.println(" " + te.getMessage() );

    // Use the contained exception, if any
    Throwable x = te;
    if (te.getException() != null)
        x = te.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (SAXParseException spe) {
    ...
```

Notes:

- TransformerExceptions are thrown by the transformer object.
- TransformerConfigurationException are thrown by the factory.
- To preserve the XML document's DOCTYPE setting, it is also necessary to add the following code:

```
import javax.xml.transform.OutputKeys;
...
if (document.getDoctype() != null){
    String systemValue = (new
        File(document.getDoctype().getSystemId())).getName();
    transformer.setOutputProperty(
        OutputKeys.DOCTYPE_SYSTEM, systemValue
    );
}
```

## Writing the XML

For instructions on how to compile and run the program, see *Compiling and Running the Program* (page 133) from the SAX tutorial. (If you're working along, substitute "TransformationApp" for "Echo" as the name of the program. If you are compiling the sample code, use "TransformationApp02".) When you run the program on `slideSample01.xml`, this is the output you see:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- A SAMPLE set of slides -->
<slideshow author="Yours Truly" date="Date of publication"
title="Sample Slide Show">

    <!-- TITLE SLIDE -->
    <slide type="all">
        <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
    </slide>

    <!-- OVERVIEW -->
    <slide type="all">
        <title>Overview</title>
        <item>Why <em>WonderWidgets</em> are great</item>
        <item/>
        <item>Who <em>buys</em> WonderWidgets</item>
    </slide>

</slideshow>
```



---

**Note:** The order of the attributes may vary, depending on which parser you are using.

---

To find out more about configuring the factory and handling validation errors, see Reading XML Data into a DOM, Additional Information (page 193).

## Writing Out a Subtree of the DOM

It is also possible to operate on a subtree of a DOM. In this section of the tutorial, you'll experiment with that option.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `TransformationApp03.java`. The output is in `TransformationLog03.txt`. (The browsable version is `TransformationLog03.html`.)

---

The only difference in the process is that now you will create a `DOMSource` using a node in the DOM, rather than the entire DOM. The first step will be to import the classes you need to get the node you want. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```
import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
import org.w3c.dom.Node;
import org.w3c.dom.NodeList;
```

The next step is to find a good node for the experiment. Add the code highlighted below to select the first `<slide>` element:

```
try {
    File f = new File(argv[0]);
    DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
    document = builder.parse(f);

    // Get the first <slide> element in the DOM
    NodeList list = document.getElementsByTagName("slide");
    Node node = list.item(0);
```

Finally, make the changes shown below to construct a source object that consists of the subtree rooted at that node:

```
DOMSource source = new DOMSource(document);
DOMSource source = new DOMSource(node);
StreamResult result = new StreamResult(System.out);
transformer.transform(source, result);
```

Now run the app. Your output should look like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<slide type="all">
  <title>Wake up to WonderWidgets!</title>
</slide>
```

## Clean Up

Because it will be easiest to do now, make the changes shown below to back out the additions you made in this section. (TransformationApp04.java contains these changes.)

```
Import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
import org.w3c.dom.Node;
import org.w3c.dom.NodeList;
...
try {
    ...
    // Get the first <slide> element in the DOM
    NodeList list = document.getElementsByTagName("slide");
    Node node = list.item(0);
    ...
    DOMSource source = new DOMSource(node);
    StreamResult result = new StreamResult(System.out);
    transformer.transform(source, result);
```

## Summary

At this point, you've seen how to use a transformer to write out a DOM, and how to use a subtree of a DOM as the source object in a transformation. In the next section, you'll see how to use a transformer to create XML from any data structure you are capable of parsing.

# Generating XML from an Arbitrary Data Structure

In this section, you'll use XSLT to convert an *arbitrary data structure* to XML.

In general outline, then:

1. You'll modify an existing program that reads the data, in order to make it generate SAX events. (Whether that program is a real parser or simply a data filter of some kind is irrelevant for the moment.)
2. You'll then use the SAX “parser” to construct a SAXSource for the transformation.
3. You'll use the same `StreamResult` object you created in the last exercise, so you can see the results. (But note that you could just as easily create a `DOMResult` object to create a DOM in memory.)
4. You'll wire the source to the result, using the transformer object to make the conversion.

For starters, you need a data set you want to convert and a program capable of reading the data. In the next two sections, you'll create a simple data file and a program that reads it.

## Creating a Simple File

We'll start by creating a data set for an address book. You can duplicate the process, if you like, or simply make use of the data stored in `PersonalAddressBook.ldif`.

The file shown below was produced by creating a new address book in Netscape Messenger, giving it some dummy data (one address card) and then exporting it in LDIF format.

---

**Note:** LDIF stands for LDAP Data Interchange Format. LDAP, turn, stands for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. I prefer to think of LDIF as the “Line Delimited Interchange Format”, since that is pretty much what it is.

---

Figure 7–1 shows the address book entry that was created.

**Figure 7-1** Address Book Entry

Exporting the address book produces a file like the one shown below. The parts of the file that we care about are shown in bold.

```
dn: cn=Fred Flintstone,mail=fred@barneys.house
modifytimestamp: 20010409210816Z
cn: Fred Flintstone
xmoxillanickname: Fred
mail: Fred@barneys.house
xmoxillausehtmlmail: TRUE
givenname: Fred
sn: Flintstone
telephonenumber: 999-Quarry
homephone: 999-BedrockLane
facsimiletelephonenumber: 888-Squawk
pagerphone: 777-pager
```

```
cellphone: 555-cell  
xmozillaanyphone: 999-Quarry  
objectclass: top  
objectclass: person
```

Note that each line of the file contains a variable name, a colon, and a space followed by a value for the variable. The sn variable contains the person's surname (last name) and the variable cn contains the DisplayName field from the address book entry.

## Creating a Simple Parser

The next step is to create a program that parses the data.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `AddressBookReader01.java`. The output is in `AddressBookReaderLog01.txt`.

---

The text for the program is shown below. It's an absurdly simple program that doesn't even loop for multiple entries because, after all, it's just a demo!

```
import java.io.*;  
  
public class AddressBookReader  
{  
  
    public static void main(String argv[])  
    {  
        // Check the arguments  
        if (argv.length != 1) {  
            System.err.println (  
                "Usage: java AddressBookReader filename");  
            System.exit (1);  
        }  
        String filename = argv[0];  
        File f = new File(filename);  
        AddressBookReader01 reader = new AddressBookReader01();  
        reader.parse(f);  
    }  
  
    /** Parse the input */  
    public void parse(File f)  
    {  
        try {
```

```

// Get an efficient reader for the file
FileReader r = new FileReader(f);
BufferedReader br = new BufferedReader(r);

// Read the file and display it's contents.
String line = br.readLine();
while (null != (line = br.readLine())) {
    if (line.startsWith("xmozillanickname: "))
        break;
}
output("nickname", "xmozillanickname", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("email", "mail", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("html", "xmozillausehtmlmail", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("firstname", "givenname", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("lastname", "sn", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("work", "telephonenumber", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("home", "homephone", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("fax", "facsimiletelephonenumber",
    line);
line = br.readLine();
output("pager", "pagerphone", line);
line = br.readLine();
output("cell", "cellphone", line);

}
catch (Exception e) {
    e.printStackTrace();
}
}

void output(String name, String prefix, String line)
{
    int startIndex = prefix.length() + 2;
    // 2=length of ": "
    String text = line.substring(startIndex);
    System.out.println(name + ": " + text);
}
}

```

This program contains three methods:

**main**

The `main` method gets the name of the file from the command line, creates an instance of the parser, and sets it to work parsing the file. This method will be going away when we convert the program into a SAX parser. (That's one reason for putting the parsing code into a separate method.)

**parse**

This method operates on the `File` object sent to it by the `main` routine. As you can see, it's about as simple as it can get. The only nod to efficiency is the use of a `BufferedReader`, which can become important when you start operating on large files.

**output**

The `output` method contains the logic for the structure of a line. Starting from the right it takes three arguments. The first argument gives the method a name to display, so we can output "html" as a variable name, instead of "xmzillausehtmlmail". The second argument gives the variable name stored in the file (xmzillausehtmlmail). The third argument gives the line containing the data. The routine then strips off the variable name from the start of the line and outputs the desired name, plus the data.

Running this program on `PersonalAddressBook.ldif` produces this output:

```
nickname: Fred
email: Fred@barneys.house
html: TRUE
firstname: Fred
lastname: Flintstone
work: 999-Quarry
home: 999-BedrockLane
fax: 888-Squawk
pager: 777-pager
cell: 555-cell
```

I think we can all agree that's a bit more readable.

## Modifying the Parser to Generate SAX Events

The next step is to modify the parser to generate SAX events, so you can use it as the basis for a `SAXSource` object in an XSLT transform.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `AddressBookReader02.java`.

---

Start by importing the additional classes you're going to need:

```
import java.io.*;

import org.xml.sax.*;
import org.xml.sax.helpers.AttributesImpl;
```

Next, modify the application so that it extends `XmlReader`. That change converts the application into a parser that generates the appropriate SAX events.

```
public class AddressBookReader
    implements XMLReader
{
```

Now, remove the main method. You won't be needing that any more.

```
public static void main(String argv[])
{
    // Check the arguments
    if (argv.length != 1) {
        System.err.println("Usage: Java AddressBookReader-
filename");
        System.exit(1);
    }
    String filename = argv[0];
    File f = new File(filename);
    AddressBookReader02 reader = new AddressBookReader02();
    reader.parse(f);
}
```

Add some global variables that will come in handy in a few minutes:

```
public class AddressBookReader
    implements XMLReader
{
    ContentHandler handler;

    // We're not doing namespaces, and we have no
    // attributes on our elements.
    String nsu = ""; // NamespaceURI
```



```

Attributes atts = new AttributesImpl();
String rootElement = "addressbook";

String indent = "\n    "; // for readability!

```

The SAX `ContentHandler` is the object that is going to get the SAX events the parser generates. To make the application into an `XmlReader`, you'll be defining a `setContentHandler` method. The handler variable will hold a reference to the object that is sent when `setContentHandler` is invoked.

And, when the parser generates SAX *element* events, it will need to supply namespace and attribute information. Since this is a simple application, you're defining null values for both of those.

You're also defining a root element for the data structure (addressbook), and setting up an indent string to improve the readability of the output.

Next, modify the parse method so that it takes an `InputSource` as an argument, rather than a `File`, and account for the exceptions it can generate:

```

public void parse(File fInputSource input)
    throws IOException, SAXException

```

Now make the changes shown below to get the reader encapsulated by the `InputSource` object:

```

try {
    // Get an efficient reader for the file
    FileReader r = new FileReader(f);
    java.io.Reader r = input.getCharacterStream();
    BufferedReader Br = new BufferedReader(r);

```

---

**Note:** In the next section, you'll create the input source object and what you put in it will, in fact, be a buffered reader. But the `AddressBookReader` could be used by someone else, somewhere down the line. This step makes sure that the processing will be efficient, regardless of the reader you are given.

---

The next step is to modify the parse method to generate SAX events for the start of the document and the root element. Add the code highlighted below to do that:

```

/** Parse the input */
public void parse(InputSource input)
...
{
    try {
        ...
        // Read the file and display its contents.
        String line = br.readLine();
        while (null != (line = br.readLine())) {
            if (line.startsWith("xmozillanickname: ")) break;
        }

        if (handler==null) {
            throw new SAXException("No content handler");
        }

        handler.startDocument();
        handler.startElement(nsu, rootElement,
            rootElement, atts);

        output("nickname", "xmozillanickname", line);
        ...
        output("cell", "cellphone", line);

        handler.ignoreWhitespace("\n".toCharArray(),
            0, // start index
            1 // length
        );
        handler.endElement(nsu, rootElement, rootElement);
        handler.endDocument();
    }
    catch (Exception e) {
        ...
    }
}

```

Here, you first checked to make sure that the parser was properly configured with a `ContentHandler`. (For this app, we don't care about anything else.) You then generated the events for the start of the document and the root element, and finished by sending the end-event for the root element and the end-event for the document.

A couple of items are noteworthy, at this point:

- We haven't bothered to send the `setDocumentLocator` event, since that is optional. Were it important, that event would be sent immediately before the `startDocument` event.
- We've generated an `ignoreableWhitespace` event before the end of the root element. This, too, is optional, but it drastically improves the readability of the output, as you'll see in a few moments. (In this case, the whitespace consists of a single newline, which is sent the same way that characters are sent to the `characters` method: as a character array, a starting index, and a length.)

Now that SAX events are being generated for the document and the root element, the next step is to modify the output method to generate the appropriate element events for each data item. Make the changes shown below to do that:

```
void output(String name, String prefix, String line)
throws SAXException
{
    int startIndex = prefix.length() + 2; // 2=length of ": "
    String text = line.substring(startIndex);
    System.out.println(name + ": " + text);

    int textLength = line.length() - startIndex;
    handler.ignoreableWhitespace(indent.toCharArray(),
                                0, // start index
                                indent.length()
                                );
    handler.startElement(nsu, name, name /*"qName"*/ , atts);
    handler.characters(line.toCharArray(),
                      startIndex,
                      textLength);
    handler.endElement(nsu, name, name);
}
```

Since the `ContentHandler` methods can send `SAXExceptions` back to the parser, the parser has to be prepared to deal with them. In this case, we don't expect any, so we'll simply allow the application to fail if any occur.

You then calculate the length of the data, and once again generate some ignoreable whitespace for readability. In this case, there is only one level of data, so we can use a fixed-indent string. (If the data were more structured, we would have to calculate how much space to indent, depending on the nesting of the data.)

---

**Note:** The indent string makes no difference to the data, but will make the output a lot easier to read. Once everything is working, try generating the result without that string! All of the elements will wind up concatenated end to end, like this:

```
<addressbook><nickname>Fred</nickname><email>...
```

---

Next, add the method that configures the parser with the `ContentHandler` that is to receive the events it generates:

```
void output(String name, String prefix, String line)
    throws SAXException
{
    ...
}

/** Allow an application to register a content event handler. */
public void setContentHandler(ContentHandler handler) {
    this.handler = handler;
}

/** Return the current content handler. */
public ContentHandler getContentHandler() {
    return this.handler;
}
```

There are several more methods that must be implemented in order to satisfy the `XmlReader` interface. For the purpose of this exercise, we'll generate null methods for all of them. For a production application, though, you may want to consider implementing the error handler methods to produce a more robust app. For now, though, add the code highlighted below to generate null methods for them:

```
/** Allow an application to register an error event handler. */
public void setErrorHandler(ErrorHandler handler)
{ }

/** Return the current error handler. */
public ErrorHandler getErrorHandler()
{ return null; }
```

Finally, add the code highlighted below to generate null methods for the remainder of the `XmlReader` interface. (Most of them are of value to a real SAX parser, but have little bearing on a data-conversion application like this one.)

```
/** Parse an XML document from a system identifier (URI). */
public void parse(String systemId)
    throws IOException, SAXException
{ }

/** Return the current DTD handler. */
public DTDHandler getDTDHandler()
{ return null; }

/** Return the current entity resolver. */
public EntityResolver getEntityResolver()
{ return null; }

/** Allow an application to register an entity resolver. */
public void setEntityResolver(EntityResolver resolver)
{ }

/** Allow an application to register a DTD event handler. */
public void setDTDHandler(DTDHandler handler)
{ }

/** Look up the value of a property. */
public Object getProperty(String name)
{ return null; }

/** Set the value of a property. */
public void setProperty(String name, Object value)
{ }

/** Set the state of a feature. */
public void setFeature(String name, boolean value)
{ }

/** Look up the value of a feature. */
public boolean getFeature(String name)
{ return false; }
```

Congratulations! You now have a parser you can use to generate SAX events. In the next section, you'll use it to construct a SAX source object that will let you transform the data into XML.

## Using the Parser as a SAXSource

Given a SAX parser to use as an event source, you can (easily!) construct a transformer to produce a result. In this section, you'll modify the `TransformerApp` you've been working with to produce a stream output result, although you could just as easily produce a DOM result.

---

**Note:** The code discussed in this section is in `TransformationApp04.java`. The results of running it are in `TransformationLog04.txt`.

---

Important!

Make sure you put the `AddressBookReader` aside and open up the `TransformationApp`. The work you do in this section affects the `TransformationApp`! (The look pretty similar, so it's easy to start working on the wrong one.)

Start by making the changes shown below to import the classes you'll need to construct a `SAXSource` object. (You won't be needing the DOM classes at this point, so they are discarded here, although leaving them in doesn't do any harm.)

```
import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
import org.xml.sax.SAXParseException;
import org.xml.sax.ContentHandler;
import org.xml.sax.InputSource;
import org.w3c.dom.Document;
import org.w3c.dom.DOMException;
...
import javax.xml.transform.dom.DOMSource;
import javax.xml.transform.sax.SAXSource;
import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamResult;
```

Next, remove a few other holdovers from our DOM-processing days, and add the code to create an instance of the `AddressBookReader`:

```
public class TransformationApp
{
    // Global value so it can be ref'd by the tree adapter
    static Document document;

    public static void main(String argv[])
    {
        ...
        DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
            DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    }
}
```

```

//factory.setNamespaceAware(true);
//factory.setValidating(true);

// Create the sax "parser".
AddressBookReader saxReader = new AddressBookReader();

try {
    File f = new File(argv[0]);
    DocumentBuilder builder =
        factory.newDocumentBuilder();
    document = builder.parse(f);

```

Guess what! You're almost done. Just a couple of steps to go. Add the code highlighted below to construct a SAXSource object:

```

// Use a Transformer for output
...
Transformer transformer = tFactory.newTransformer();

// Use the parser as a SAX source for input
FileReader fr = new FileReader(f);
BufferedReader br = new BufferedReader(fr);
InputSource inputSource = new InputSource(br);
SAXSource source = new SAXSource(saxReader, inputSource);

StreamResult result = new StreamResult(System.out);
transformer.transform(source, result);

```

Here, you constructed a buffered reader (as mentioned earlier) and encapsulated it in an input source object. You then created a SAXSource object, passing it the reader and the InputSource object, and passed that to the transformer.

When the application runs, the transformer will configure itself as the ContentHandler for the SAX parser (the AddressBookReader) and tell the parser to operate on the inputSource object. Events generated by the parser will then go to the transformer, which will do the appropriate thing and pass the data on to the result object.

Finally, remove the exceptions you no longer need to worry about, since the TransformationApp no longer generates them:

```

catch (SAXParseException spe) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println("\n** Parsing error"
        + ", line " + spe.getLineNumber()
        + ", uri " + spe.getSystemId());
    System.out.println("-----" + spe.getMessage());

```

```

// Use the contained exception, if any
Exception x = spe;
if (spe.getException() != null)
    x = spe.getException();
x.printStackTrace();

} catch (SAXException sxe) {
    // Error generated by this application
    // (or a parser initialization error)
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();

} catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
    // Parser with specified options can't be built
    pce.printStackTrace();

} catch (IOException ioe) {
    ...

```

You're done! You have now created a transformer which will use a SAXSource as input, and produce a StreamResult as output.

## Doing the Conversion

Now run the application on the address book file. Your output should look like this:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<addressbook>
  <nickname>Fred</nickname>
  <email>fred@barneys.house</email>
  <html>TRUE</html>
  <firstname>Fred</firstname>
  <lastname>Flintstone</lastname>
  <work>999-Quarry</work>
  <home>999-BedrockLane</home>
  <fax>888-Squawk</fax>
  <pager>777-pager</pager>
  <cell>555-cell</cell>
</addressbook>

```



You have now successfully converted an existing data structure to XML. And it wasn't even that hard. Congratulations!

## Transforming XML Data with XSLT

The XML Stylesheet Language for Transformations (XSLT) can be used for many purposes. For example, with a sufficiently intelligent stylesheet, you could generate PDF or PostScript output from the XML data. But generally, XSLT is used to generate formatted HTML output, or to create an alternative XML representation of the data.

In this section of the tutorial, you'll use an XSLT transform to translate XML input data to HTML output.

---

**Note:** The XSLT specification is large and complex. So this tutorial can only scratch the surface. It will give you enough of a background to get started, so you can undertake simple XSLT processing tasks. It should also give you a head start when you investigate XSLT further. For a more thorough grounding, consult a good reference manual, such as Michael Kay's *XSLT Programmer's Reference*.

---

## Defining a Simple <article> Document Type

We'll start by defining a very simple document type that could be used for writing articles. Our <article> documents will contain these structure tags:

- <TITLE> — The title of the article
- <SECT> — A section, consisting of a *heading* and a *body*
- <PARA> — A paragraph
- <LIST> — A list.
- <ITEM> — An entry in a list
- <NOTE> — An aside, which will be offset from the main text

The slightly unusual aspect of this structure is that we won't create a separate element tag for a section heading. Such elements are commonly created to distinguish the heading text (and any tags it contains) from the body of the section (that is, any structure elements underneath the heading).

Instead, we'll allow the heading to merge seamlessly into the body of a section. That arrangement adds some complexity to the stylesheet, but that will give us a chance to explore XSLT's template-selection mechanisms. It also matches our intuitive expectations about document structure, where the text of a heading is directly followed by structure elements, which can simplify outline-oriented editing.

---

**Note:** However, that structure is not easily validated, because XML's mixed-content model allows text anywhere in a section, whereas we want to confine text and inline elements so that they only appear before the first structure element in the body of the section. The assertion-based validator (Schematron (page 40)) can do it, but most other schema mechanisms can't. So we'll dispense with defining a DTD for the document type.

---

In this structure, sections can be nested. The depth of the nesting will determine what kind of HTML formatting to use for the section heading (for example, h1 or h2). Using a plain SECT tag (instead of numbered sections) is also useful with outline-oriented editing, because it lets you move sections around at will without having to worry about changing the numbering for that section or for any of the other sections that might be affected by the move.

For lists, we'll use a type attribute to specify whether the list entries are unordered (bulleted), alpha (enumerated with lower case letters), ALPHA (enumerated with uppercase letters), or numbered.

We'll also allow for some inline tags that change the appearance of the text:

- <B> — bold
- <I> — italics
- <U> — underline
- <DEF> — definition
- <LINK> — link to a URL

---

**Note:** An *inline* tag does not generate a line break, so a style change caused by an inline tag does not affect the flow of text on the page (although it will affect the appearance of that text). A *structure* tag, on the other hand, demarcates a new segment of text, so at a minimum it always generates a line break, in addition to other format changes.

---

The <DEF> tag will be used for terms that are defined in the text. Such terms will be displayed in italics, the way they ordinarily are in a document. But using a special tag in the XML will allow an index program to find such definitions and add them to an index, along with keywords in headings. In the *Note* above, for example, the definitions of inline tags and structure tags could have been marked with <DEF> tags, for future indexing.

Finally, the LINK tag serves two purposes. First, it will let us create a link to a URL without having to put the URL in twice — so we can code <link>http//...</link> instead of <a href="http//...">http//...</a>. Of course, we'll also want to allow a form that looks like <link target="...">...name...</link>. That leads to the second reason for the <link> tag—it will give us an opportunity to play with conditional expressions in XSLT.

---

**Note:** Although the article structure is exceedingly simple (consisting of only 11 tags), it raises enough interesting problems to get a good view of XSLT's basic capabilities. But we'll still leave large areas of the specification untouched. The last part of this tutorial will point out the major features we skipped.

---

## Creating a Test Document

Here, you'll create a simple test document using nested <SECT> elements, a few <PARA> elements, a <NOTE> element, a <LINK>, and a <LIST type="unordered">. The idea is to create a document with one of everything, so we can explore the more interesting translation mechanisms.

---

**Note:** The sample data described here is contained in `article1.xml`. (The browsable version is `article1-xml.html`.)

---

To make the test document, create a file called `article.xml` and enter the XML data shown below.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ARTICLE>
  <TITLE>A Sample Article</TITLE>
  <SECT>The First Major Section
    <PARA>This section will introduce a subsection.</PARA>
    <SECT>The Subsection Heading
      <PARA>This is the text of the subsection.
```

```

        </PARA>
    </SECT>
</SECT>
</ARTICLE>

```

Note that in the XML file, the subsection is totally contained within the major section. (In HTML, on the other hand, headings do not *contain* the body of a section.) The result is an outline structure that is harder to edit in plain-text form, like this, but is much easier to edit with an outline-oriented editor.

Someday, given an tree-oriented XML editor that understands inline tags like `<B>` and `<I>`, it should be possible to edit an article of this kind in outline form, without requiring a complicated stylesheet. (Such an editor would allow the writer to focus on the structure of the article, leaving layout until much later in the process.) In such an editor, the article-fragment above would look something like this:

```

<ARTICLE>
  <TITLE>A Sample Article
  <SECT>The First Major Section
    <PARA>This section will introduce a subsection.
    <SECT>The Subheading
      <PARA>This is the text of the subsection. Note that ...

```

---

**Note:** At the moment, tree-structured editors exist, but they treat inline tags like `<B>` and `<I>` the same way that they treat other structure tags, which can make the “outline” a bit difficult to read.

---

## Writing an XSLT Transform

In this part of the tutorial, you’ll begin writing an XSLT transform that will convert the XML article and render it in HTML.

---

**Note:** The transform described in this section is contained in `article1a.xsl`. (The browsable version is `article1a-xsl.html`.)

---

Start by creating a normal XML document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
```

Then add the lines highlighted below to create an XSL stylesheet:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<xsl:stylesheet
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  version="1.0"
  >

  </xsl:stylesheet>
```

Now, set it up to produce HTML-compatible output:

```
<xsl:stylesheet
  ...
  >
  <xsl:output method="html"/>
  ...

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

We'll get into the detailed reasons for that entry later on in this section. But for now, note that if you want to output anything besides well-formed XML, then you'll need an `<xsl:output>` tag like the one shown, specifying either "text" or "html". (The default value is "xml".)

---

**Note:** When you specify XML output, you can add the `indent` attribute to produce nicely indented XML output. The specification looks like this:  
`<xsl:output method="xml" indent="yes"/>`

---

## Processing the Basic Structure Elements

You'll start filling in the stylesheet by processing the elements that go into creating a table of contents — the root element, the title element, and headings. You'll also process the `PARA` element defined in the test document.

---

**Note:** If on first reading you skipped the section of this tutorial that discusses the XPath addressing mechanisms, *How XPath Works* (page 257), now is a good time to go back and review that section.

---

Begin by adding the main instruction that processes the root element:

```

    <xsl:template match="/">
      <html><body>
        <xsl:apply-templates/>
      </body></html>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>

```

The new XSL commands are shown in bold. (Note that they are defined in the “xsl” namespace.) The instruction `<xsl:apply-templates>` processes the children of the current node. In this case, the current node is the root node.

Despite its simplicity, this example illustrates a number of important ideas, so it’s worth understanding thoroughly. The first concept is that a stylesheet contains a number of *templates*, defined with the `<xsl:template>` tag. Each template contains a `match` attribute, which selects the elements that the template will be applied to, using the XPath addressing mechanisms described in *How XPath Works* (page 257).

Within the template, tags that do not start with the `xsl:` namespace prefix are simply copied. The newlines and whitespace that follow them are also copied, which helps to make the resulting output readable.

---

**Note:** When a newline is not present, whitespace is generally ignored. To include whitespace in the output in such cases, or to include other text, you can use the `<xsl:text>` tag. Basically, an XSLT stylesheet expects to process tags. So everything it sees needs to be either an `<xsl: . . .>` tag, some other tag, or whitespace.

---

In this case, the non-XSL tags are HTML tags. So when the root tag is matched, XSLT outputs the HTML start-tags, processes any templates that apply to children of the root, and then outputs the HTML end-tags.

## Process the <TITLE> Element

Next, add a template to process the article title:

```

    <xsl:template match="/ARTICLE/TITLE">
      <h1 align="center"> <xsl:apply-templates/> </h1>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>

```

In this case, you specified a complete path to the `TITLE` element, and output some HTML to make the text of the title into a large, centered heading. In this case, the `apply-templates` tag ensures that if the title contains any inline tags like italics, links, or underlining, they will be processed as well.

More importantly, the `apply-templates` instruction causes the *text* of the title to be processed. Like the DOM data model, the XSLT data model is based on the concept of *text nodes* contained in *element nodes* (which, in turn, can be contained in other element nodes, and so on). That hierarchical structure constitutes the source tree. There is also a result tree, which contains the output.

XSLT works by transforming the source tree into the result tree. To visualize the result of XSLT operations, it is helpful to understand the structure of those trees, and their contents. (For more on this subject, see *The XSLT/XPath Data Model* (page 258).)

## Process Headings

To continue processing the basic structure elements, add a template to process the top-level headings:

```
<xsl:template match="/ARTICLE/SECT">
  <h2> <xsl:apply-templates
    select="text()|B|I|U|DEF|LINK"/> </h2>
  <xsl:apply-templates select="SECT|PARA|LIST|NOTE"/>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Here, you've specified the path to the topmost `SECT` elements. But this time, you've applied templates in two stages, using the `select` attribute. For the first stage, you selected text nodes using the XPath `text()` function, as well as inline tags like bold and italics. (The vertical pipe (`|`) is used to match multiple items — text, *or* a bold tag, *or* an italics tag, etc.) In the second stage, you selected the other structure elements contained in the file, for sections, paragraphs, lists, and notes.

Using the `select` attribute let you put the text and inline elements between the `<h2> . . . </h2>` tags, while making sure that all of the structure tags in the section are processed afterwards. In other words, you made sure that the nesting of the headings in the XML document is *not* reflected in the HTML formatting, which is important for HTML output.

In general, using the `select` clause lets you apply all templates to a subset of the information available in the current context. As another example, this template selects all attributes of the current node:

```
<xsl:apply-templates select="@*" /></attributes>
```

Next, add the virtually identical template to process subheadings that are nested one level deeper:

```
<xsl:template match="/ARTICLE/SECT/SECT">
  <h3> <xsl:apply-templates
    select="text()|B|I|U|DEF|LINK"/> </h3>
  <xsl:apply-templates select="SECT|PARA|LIST|NOTE"/>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

## Generate a Runtime Message

You could add templates for deeper headings, too, but at some point you have to stop, if only because HTML only goes down to five levels. But for this example, you'll stop at two levels of section headings. But if the XML input happens to contain a third level, you'll want to deliver an error message to the user. This section shows you how to do that.

---

**Note:** We *could* continue processing SECT elements that are further down, by selecting them with the expression `/SECT/SECT//SECT`. The `//` selects any SECT elements, at any depth, as defined by the XPath addressing mechanism. But we'll take the opportunity to play with messaging, instead.

---

Add the following template to generate an error when a section is encountered that is nested too deep:

```
<xsl:template match="/ARTICLE/SECT/SECT/SECT">
  <xsl:message terminate="yes">
    Error: Sections can only be nested 2 deep.
  </xsl:message>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```



The `terminate="yes"` clause causes the transformation process to stop after the message is generated. Without it, processing could still go on with everything in that section being ignored.

As an additional exercise, you could expand the stylesheet to handle sections nested up to four sections deep, generating `<h2>...<h5>` tags. Generate an error on any section nested five levels deep.

Finally, finish up the stylesheet by adding a template to process the `PARA` tag:

```
<xsl:template match="PARA">
  <p><xsl:apply-templates/></p>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

## Writing the Basic Program

In this part of the tutorial, you'll modify the program that used XSLT to echo an XML file unchanged, changing it so it uses your stylesheet.

---

**Note:** The code shown in this section is contained in `Stylizer.java`. The result is `stylizer1a.html`. (The browser-displayable version of the HTML source is `stylizer1a-src.html`.)

---

Start by copying `TransformationApp02`, which parses an XML file and writes to `System.out`. Save it as `Stylizer.java`.

Next, modify occurrences of the class name and the usage section of the program:

```
public class TransformationAppStylizer
{
    if (argv.length != 1 2) {
        System.err.println (
            "Usage: java TransformationApp filename");
        "Usage: java Stylizer stylesheet xmlfile");
        System.exit (1);
    }
    ...
}
```

Then modify the program to use the stylesheet when creating the Transformer object.

```

...
import javax.xml.transform.dom.DOMSource;
import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamSource;
import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamResult;
...

public class Stylizer
{
    ...
    public static void main (String argv[])
    {
        ...
        try {
            File f = new File(argv[0]);
            File stylesheet = new File(argv[0]);
            File datafile = new File(argv[1]);

            DocumentBuilder builder =
                factory.newDocumentBuilder();
            document = builder.parse(f datafile);
            ...
            StreamSource stylesource =
                new StreamSource(stylesheet);
            Transformer transformer =
                Factory.newTransformer(stylesource);
            ...

```

This code uses the file to create a StreamSource object, and then passes the source object to the factory class to get the transformer.

---

**Note:** You can simplify the code somewhat by eliminating the DOMSource class entirely. Instead of creating a DOMSource object for the XML file, create a StreamSource object for it, as well as for the stylesheet.

---

Now compile and run the program using `article1a.xsl` on `article1.xml`. The results should look like this:

```

<html>
<body>

<h1 align="center">A Sample Article</h1>

```

```

<h2>The First Major Section

  </h2>
<p>This section will introduce a subsection.</p>
<h3>The Subsection Heading

  </h3>
<p>This is the text of the subsection.

  </p>

</body>
</html>

```

At this point, there is quite a bit of excess whitespace in the output. You'll see how to eliminate most of it in the next section.

## Trimming the Whitespace

If you recall, when you took a look at the structure of a DOM, there were many text nodes that contained nothing but ignorable whitespace. Most of the excess whitespace in the output came from these nodes. Fortunately, XSL gives you a way to eliminate them. (For more about the node structure, see *The XSLT/XPath Data Model* (page 258).)

---

**Note:** The stylesheet described here is `article1b.xsl`. The result is `stylizer1b.html`. (The browser-displayable versions are `article1b-xsl.html` and `stylizer1b-src.html`.)

---

To remove some of the excess whitespace, add the line highlighted below to the stylesheet.

```

<xsl:stylesheet ...
  >
  <xsl:output method="html"/>
  <xsl:strip-space elements="SECT"/>
  ...

```

This instruction tells XSL to remove any text nodes under SECT elements that contain nothing but whitespace. Nodes that contain text other than whitespace will not be affected, and other kinds of nodes are not affected.

Now, when you run the program, the result looks like this:

```
<html>
<body>

<h1 align="center">A Sample Article</h1>

<h2>The First Major Section
  </h2>
<p>This section will introduce a subsection.</p>
<h3>The Subsection Heading
  </h3>
<p>This is the text of the subsection.
  </p>

</body>
</html>
```

That's quite an improvement. There are still newline characters and white space after the headings, but those come from the way the XML is written:

```
<SECT>The First Major Section
____<PARA>This section will introduce a subsection.</PARA>
^^^^
```

Here, you can see that the section heading ends with a newline and indentation space, before the PARA entry starts. That's not a big worry, because the browsers that will process the HTML routinely compress and ignore the excess space. But there is still one more formatting tool at our disposal.

---

**Note:** The stylesheet described here is `article1c.xsl`. The result is `stylizer1c.html`. (The browser-displayable versions are `article1c-xsl.html` and `stylizer1c-src.html`.)

---

To get rid of that last little bit of whitespace, add this template to the stylesheet:

```
<xsl:template match="text()">
  <xsl:value-of select="normalize-space()"/>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The output now looks like this:

```
<html>
<body>
<h1 align="center">A Sample Article</h1>
<h2>The First Major Section</h2>
<p>This section will introduce a subsection.</p>
<h3>The Subsection Heading</h3>
<p>This is the text of the subsection.</p>
</body>
</html>
```

That is quite a bit better. Of course, it would be nicer if it were indented, but that turns out to be somewhat harder than expected! Here are some possible avenues of attack, along with the difficulties:

### Indent option

Unfortunately, the `indent="yes"` option that can be applied to XML output is not available for HTML output. Even if that option were available, it wouldn't help, because HTML elements are rarely nested! Although HTML source is frequently indented to show the *implied* structure, the HTML tags themselves are not nested in a way that creates a *real* structure.

### Indent variables

The `<xsl:text>` function lets you add any text you want, including whitespace. So, it could conceivably be used to output indentation space. The problem is to vary the *amount* of indentation space. XSLT variables seem like a good idea, but they don't work here. The reason is that when you assign a value to a variable in a template, the value is only known *within* that template (statically, at compile time value). Even if the variable is defined globally, the assigned value is not stored in a way that lets it be dynamically known by other templates at runtime. Once `<apply-templates/>` invokes other templates, they are unaware of any variable settings made in other templates.

### Parameterized templates

Using a "parameterized template" is another way to modify a template's behavior. But determining the amount of indentation space to pass as the parameter remains the crux of the problem!

At the moment, then, there does not appear to be any good way to control the indentation of HTML-formatted output. That would be inconvenient if you needed to display or edit the HTML as plain text. But it's not a problem if you do your editing on the XML form, only use the HTML version for display in a

browser. (When you view `stylizer1c.html`, for example, you see the results you expect.)

## Processing the Remaining Structure Elements

In this section, you'll process the `LIST` and `NOTE` elements that add additional structure to an article.

---

**Note:** The sample document described in this section is `article2.xml`, and the stylesheet used to manipulate it is `article2.xsl`. The result is `stylizer2.html`. (The browser-displayable versions are `article2-xml.html`, `article2-xsl.html`, and `stylizer2-src.html`.)

---

Start by adding some test data to the sample document:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ARTICLE>
  <TITLE>A Sample Article</TITLE>
  <SECT>The First Major Section
    ...
  </SECT>
  <SECT>The Second Major Section
    <PARA>This section adds a LIST and a NOTE.
    <PARA>Here is the LIST:
      <LIST type="ordered">
        <ITEM>Pears</ITEM>
        <ITEM>Grapes</ITEM>
      </LIST>
    </PARA>
    <PARA>And here is the NOTE:
      <NOTE>Don't forget to go to the hardware store
        on your way to the grocery!
      </NOTE>
    </PARA>
  </SECT>
</ARTICLE>
```

---

**Note:** Although the list and note in the XML file are contained in their respective paragraphs, it really makes no difference whether they are contained or not—the

generated HTML will be the same, either way. But having them contained will make them easier to deal with in an outline-oriented editor.

---

## Modify <PARA> handling

Next, modify the PARA template to account for the fact that we are now allowing some of the structure elements to be embedded with a paragraph:

```
<xsl:template match="PARA">
  <p><xsl:apply-templates/></p>
  <p> <xsl:apply-templates select="text()|B|I|U|DEF|LINK"/>
    </p>
  <xsl:apply-templates select="PARA|LIST|NOTE"/>
</xsl:template>
```

This modification uses the same technique you used for section headings. The only difference is that SECT elements are not expected within a paragraph. (However, a paragraph could easily exist inside another paragraph, as quoted material, for example.)

## Process <LIST> and <ITEM> elements

Now you're ready to add a template to process LIST elements:

```
<xsl:template match="LIST">
  <xsl:if test="@type='ordered'">
    <ol>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </ol>
  </xsl:if>
  <xsl:if test="@type='unordered'">
    <ul>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </ul>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The <xsl:if> tag uses the test="" attribute to specify a boolean condition. In this case, the value of the type attribute is tested, and the list that is generated changes depending on whether the value is ordered or unordered.

The two important things to note for this example are:

- There is no `else` clause, nor is there a `return` or `exit` statement, so it takes two `<xsl:if>` tags to cover the two options. (Or the `<xsl:choose>` tag could have been used, which provides case-statement functionality.)
- Single quotes are required around the attribute values. Otherwise, the XSLT processor attempts to interpret the word `ordered` as an XPath function, instead of as a string.

Now finish up LIST processing by handling ITEM elements:

```
<xsl:template match="ITEM">
  <li><xsl:apply-templates/>
</li>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

## Ordering Templates in a Stylesheet

By now, you should have the idea that templates are independent of one another, so it doesn't generally matter where they occur in a file. So from here on, we'll just show the template you need to add. (For the sake of comparison, they're always added at the end of the example stylesheet.)

Order *does* make a difference when two templates can apply to the same node. In that case, the one that is defined *last* is the one that is found and processed. For example, to change the ordering of an indented list to use lowercase alphabets, you could specify a template pattern that looks like this: `//LIST//LIST`. In that template, you would use the HTML option to generate an alphabetic enumeration, instead of a numeric one.

But such an element could also be identified by the pattern `//LIST`. To make sure the proper processing is done, the template that specifies `//LIST` would have to appear *before* the template the specifies `//LIST//LIST`.



## Process <NOTE> Elements

The last remaining structure element is the NOTE element. Add the template shown below to handle that.

```
<xsl:template match="NOTE">
  <blockquote><b>Note:</b><br/>
  <xsl:apply-templates/>
</p></blockquote>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

This code brings up an interesting issue that results from the inclusion of the <br/> tag. To be well-formed XML, the tag must be specified in the stylesheet as <br/>, but that tag is not recognized by many browsers. And while most browsers recognize the sequence <br></br>, they all treat it like a paragraph break, instead of a single line break.

In other words, the transformation *must* generate a <br> tag, but the stylesheet must specify <br/>. That brings us to the major reason for that special output tag we added early in the stylesheet:

```
<xsl:stylesheet ... >
  <xsl:output method="html"/>
  ...
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

That output specification converts empty tags like <br/> to their HTML form, <br>, on output. That conversion is important, because most browsers do not recognize the empty tags. Here is a list of the affected tags:

area	frame	isindex
base	hr	link
basefont	img	meta
br	input	param
col		

To summarize, by default XSLT produces well-formed XML on output. And since an XSL stylesheet is well-formed XML to start with, you cannot easily put a tag like <br> in the middle of it. The “<xsl:output method=“html”/>” solves the problem, so you can code <br/> in the stylesheet, but get <br> in the output.

The other major reason for specifying `<xsl:output method="html"/>` is that, as with the specification `<xsl:output method="text"/>`, generated text is *not* escaped. For example, if the stylesheet includes the `&lt;` entity reference, it will appear as the `<` character in the generated text. When XML is generated, on the other hand, the `&lt;` entity reference in the stylesheet would be unchanged, so it would appear as `&lt;` in the generated text.

---

**Note:** If you actually want `&lt;` to be generated as part of the HTML output, you'll need to encode it as `&amp;lt;`;—that sequence becomes `&lt;` on output, because only the `&amp;` is converted to an `&` character.

---

## Run the Program

Here is the HTML that is generated for the second section when you run the program now:

```
...
<h2>The Second Major Section</h2>
<p>This section adds a LIST and a NOTE.</p>
<p>Here is the LIST:</p>
<ol>
<li>Pears</li>
<li>Grapes</li>
</ol>
<p>And here is the NOTE:</p>
<blockquote>
<b>Note:</b>
<br>Don't forget to go to the hardware store on your way to the
grocery!
</blockquote>
```

## Process Inline (Content) Elements

The only remaining tags in the `ARTICLE` type are the *inline* tags — the ones that don't create a line break in the output, but which instead are integrated into the stream of text they are part of.

Inline elements are different from structure elements, in that they are part of the content of a tag. If you think of an element as a node in a document tree, then each node has both *content* and *structure*. The content is composed of the text

and inline tags it contains. The structure consists of the other elements (structure elements) under the tag.

---

**Note:** The sample document described in this section is `article3.xml`, and the stylesheet used to manipulate it is `article3.xsl`. The result is `stylizer3.html`. (The browser-displayable versions are `article3-xml.html`, `article3-xsl.html`, and `stylizer3-src.html`.)

---

Start by adding one more bit of test data to the sample document:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ARTICLE>
  <TITLE>A Sample Article</TITLE>
  <SECT>The First Major Section
    ...
  </SECT>
  <SECT>The Second Major Section
    ...
  </SECT>
  <SECT>The <I>Third</I> Major Section
    <PARA>In addition to the inline tag in the heading,
      this section defines the term <DEF>inline</DEF>,
      which literally means "no line break". It also
      adds a simple link to the main page for the Java
      platform (<LINK>http://java.sun.com</LINK>),
      as well as a link to the
      <LINK target="http://java.sun.com/xml">XML</LINK>
      page.
    </PARA>
  </SECT>
</ARTICLE>
```

Now, process the inline `<DEF>` elements in paragraphs, renaming them to HTML italics tags:

```
<xsl:template match="DEF">
  <i> <xsl:apply-templates/> </i>
</xsl:template>
```

Next, comment out the text-node normalization. It has served its purpose, and now you're to the point that you need to preserve important spaces:

```
<!--  
  <xsl:template match="text()">  
    <xsl:value-of select="normalize-space()" />  
  </xsl:template>  
-->
```

This modification keeps us from losing spaces before tags like `<I>` and `<DEF>`. (Try the program without this modification to see the result.)

Now, process basic inline HTML elements like `<B>`, `<I>`, `<U>` for bold, italics, and underlining.

```
<xsl:template match="B|I|U">  
  <xsl:element name="{name()}">  
    <xsl:apply-templates/>  
  </xsl:element>  
</xsl:template>
```

The `<xsl:element>` tag lets you compute the element you want to generate. Here, you generate the appropriate inline tag using the name of the current element. In particular, note the use of curly braces (`{}`) in the `name="..."` expression. Those curly braces cause the text inside the quotes to be processed as an XPath expression, instead of being interpreted as a literal string. Here, they cause the XPath `name()` function to return the name of the current node.

Curly braces are recognized anywhere that an *attribute value template* can occur. (Attribute value templates are defined in section 7.6.2 of the XSLT specification, and they appear several places in the template definitions.). In such expressions, curly braces can also be used to refer to the value of an attribute, `{@foo}`, or to the content of an element `{foo}`.

---

**Note:** You can also generate attributes using `<xsl:attribute>`. For more information, see Section 7.1.3 of the XSLT Specification.

---

The last remaining element is the LINK tag. The easiest way to process that tag will be to set up a *named template* that we can drive with a parameter:

```
<xsl:template name="htmlLink">
  <xsl:param name="dest" select="UNDEFINED"/>
  <xsl:element name="a">
    <xsl:attribute name="href">
      <xsl:value-of select="$dest"/>
    </xsl:attribute>
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </xsl:element>
</xsl:template>
```

The major difference in this template is that, instead of specifying a match clause, you gave the template a name with the `name=""` clause. So this template only gets executed when you invoke it.

Within the template, you also specified a parameter named `dest`, using the `<xsl:param>` tag. For a bit of error checking, you used the `select` clause to give that parameter a default value of `UNDEFINED`. To reference the variable in the `<xsl:value-of>` tag, you specified `"$dest"`.

---

**Note:** Recall that an entry in quotes is interpreted as an expression, unless it is further enclosed in single quotes. That's why the single quotes were needed earlier, in `"@type='ordered'"`—to make sure that `ordered` was interpreted as a string.

---

The `<xsl:element>` tag generates an element. Previously, we have been able to simply specify the element we want by coding something like `<html>`. But here you are dynamically generating the content of the HTML anchor (`<a>`) in the body of the `<xsl:element>` tag. And you are dynamically generating the `href` attribute of the anchor using the `<xsl:attribute>` tag.

The last important part of the template is the `<apply-templates>` tag, which inserts the text from the text node under the LINK element. Without it, there would be no text in the generated HTML link.

Next, add the template for the LINK tag, and call the named template from within it:

```
<xsl:template match="LINK">
  <xsl:if test="@target">
    <!--Target attribute specified.-->
    <xsl:call-template name="htmlLink">
      <xsl:with-param name="dest" select="@target"/>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>
```

```

    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>

<xsl:template name="htmlLink">
  ...

```

The `test="@target"` clause returns true if the `target` attribute exists in the `LINK` tag. So this `<xsl:if>` tag generates HTML links when the text of the link and the target defined for it are different.

The `<xsl:call-template>` tag invokes the named template, while `<xsl:with-param>` specifies a parameter using the `name` clause, and its value using the `select` clause.

As the very last step in the stylesheet construction process, add the `<xsl:if>` tag shown below to process `LINK` tags that do not have a `target` attribute.

```

<xsl:template match="LINK">
  <xsl:if test="@target">
    ...
  </xsl:if>

  <xsl:if test="not(@target)">
    <xsl:call-template name="htmlLink">
      <xsl:with-param name="dest">
        <xsl:apply-templates/>
      </xsl:with-param>
    </xsl:call-template>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>

```

The `not(...)` clause inverts the previous test (remember, there is no `else` clause). So this part of the template is interpreted when the `target` attribute is not specified. This time, the parameter value comes not from a `select` clause, but from the *contents* of the `<xsl:with-param>` element.

---

**Note:** Just to make it explicit: Parameters and variables (which are discussed in a few moments in *What Else Can XSLT Do?* (page 311)) can have their value specified *either* by a `select` clause, which lets you use XPath expressions, *or* by the content of the element, which lets you use XSLT tags.

---

The content of the parameter, in this case, is generated by the `<xsl:apply-templates/>` tag, which inserts the contents of the text node under the LINK element.

## Run the Program

When you run the program now, the results should look something like this:

```
...
<h2>The <I>Third</I> Major Section
</h2>
<p>In addition to the inline tag in the heading, this section
  defines the term <i>inline</i>, which literally means
  "no line break". It also adds a simple link to the
  main page for the Java platform (<a href="http://java.
  sun.com">http://java.sun.com</a>),
  as well as a link to the
  <a href="http://java.sun.com/xml">XML</a> page.
</p>
```

Good work! You have now converted a rather complex XML file to HTML. (As seemingly simple as it appear at first, it certainly provided a lot of opportunity for exploration.)

## Printing the HTML

You have now converted an XML file to HTML. One day, someone will produce an HTML-aware printing engine that you'll be able to find and use through the Java Printing Service API. At that point, you'll have ability to print an arbitrary XML file by generating HTML—all you'll have to do is set up a stylesheet and use your browser.

## What Else Can XSLT Do?

As lengthy as this section of the tutorial has been, it has still only scratched the surface of XSLT's capabilities. Many additional possibilities await you in the XSLT Specification. Here are a few of the things to look for:

### **import (Section 2.6.2) and include (Section 2.6.1)**

Use these statements to modularize and combine XSLT stylesheets. The `include` statement simply inserts any definitions from the included file. The

`import` statement lets you override definitions in the imported file with definitions in your own stylesheet.

**for-each loops (Section 8)**

Loop over a collection of items and process each one, in turn.

**choose (case statement) for conditional processing (Section 9.2)**

Branch to one of multiple processing paths depending on an input value.

**generating numbers (Section 7.7)**

Dynamically generate numbered sections, numbered elements, and numeric literals. XSLT provides three numbering modes:

- **single:** Numbers items under a single heading, like an ordered list in HTML.
- **multiple:** Produces multi-level numbering like “A.1.3”.
- **any:** Consecutively numbers items wherever they appear, as with footnotes in a chapter.

**formatting numbers (Section 12.3)**

Control enumeration formatting, so you get numerics (`format="1"`), uppercase alphabetics (`format="A"`), lowercase alphabetics (`format="a"`), or compound numbers, like “A.1”, as well as numbers and currency amounts suited for a specific international locale.

**sorting output (Section 10)**

Produce output in some desired sorting order.

**mode-based templates (Section 5.7)**

Process an element multiple times, each time in a different “mode”. You add a mode attribute to templates, and then specify `<apply-templates mode="...">` to apply only the templates with a matching mode. Combine with the `<apply-templates select="...">` attribute to apply mode-based processing to a subset of the input data.

**variables (Section 11)**

Variables, like parameters, let you control a template’s behavior. But they are not as valuable as you might think. The value of a variable is only known within the scope of the current template or `<xsl:if>` tag (for example) in which it is defined. You can’t pass a value from one template to another, or even from an enclosed part of a template to another part of the same template.

These statements are true even for a “global” variable. You can change its value in a template, but the change only applies to that template. And when the expression used to define the global variable is evaluated, that evaluation takes place in the context of the structure’s root node. In other words, global



variables are essentially runtime constants. Those constants can be useful for changing the behavior of a template, especially when coupled with `include` and `import` statements. But variables are not a general-purpose data-management mechanism.

## The Trouble with Variables

It is tempting to create a single template and set a variable for the destination of the link, rather than go to the trouble of setting up a parameterized template and calling it two different ways. The idea would be to set the variable to a default value (say, the text of the `LINK` tag) and then, if `target` attribute exists, set the destination variable to the value of the `target` attribute.

That would be a good idea—if it worked. But once again, the issue is that variables are only known in the scope within which they are defined. So when you code an `<xsl:if>` tag to change the value of the variable, the value is only known within the context of the `<xsl:if>` tag. Once `</xsl:if>` is encountered, any change to the variable's setting is lost.

A similarly tempting idea is the possibility of replacing the `text()|B|I|U|DEF|LINK` specification with a variable (`$inline`). But since the value of the variable is determined by where it is defined, the value of a global `inline` variable consists of text nodes, `<B>` nodes, and so on, that happen to exist at the root level. In other words, the value of such a variable, in this case, is null.

## Transforming from the Command Line with Xalan

To run a transform from the command line, you initiate a Xalan Process using the following command:

```
java org.apache.xalan.xslt.Process
  -IN article3.xml -XSL article3.xsl
```

---

**Note:** Remember to use the endorsed directories mechanism to access the Xalan libraries, as described in *Compiling and Running the Program* (page 133).

---

With this command, the output goes to `System.out`. The `-OUT` option can also be used to output to a file.

The Process command allows for a variety of other options, as well. For details, see <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/commandline.html>.

## Concatenating Transformations with a Filter Chain

It is sometimes useful to create a *filter chain* — a concatenation of XSLT transformations in which the output of one transformation becomes the input of the next. This section of the tutorial shows you how to do that.

### Writing the Program

Start by writing a program to do the filtering. This example will show the full source code, but you can use one of the programs you've been working on as a basis, to make things easier.

---

**Note:** The code described here is contained in `FilterChain.java`.

---

The sample program includes the import statements that identify the package locations for each class:

```
import javax.xml.parsers.FactoryConfigurationError;
import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;
import javax.xml.parsers.SAXParser;
import javax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory;

import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
import org.xml.sax.SAXParseException;
import org.xml.sax.InputSource;
import org.xml.sax.XMLReader;
import org.xml.sax.XMLFilter;

import javax.xml.transform.Transformer;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerException;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory;
import javax.xml.transform.TransformerConfigurationException;

import javax.xml.transform.sax.SAXTransformerFactory;
import javax.xml.transform.sax.SAXSource;
import javax.xml.transform.sax.SAXResult;
```

```
import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamSource;
import javax.xml.transform.stream.StreamResult;

import java.io.*;
```

The program also includes the standard error handlers you're used to. They're listed here, just so they are all gathered together in one place:

```
}
catch (TransformerConfigurationException tce) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println ("* Transformer Factory error");
    System.out.println("    " + tce.getMessage() );

    // Use the contained exception, if any
    Throwable x = tce;
    if (tce.getException() != null)
        x = tce.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();
}
catch (TransformerException te) {
    // Error generated by the parser
    System.out.println ("* Transformation error");
    System.out.println("    " + te.getMessage() );

    // Use the contained exception, if any
    Throwable x = te;
    if (te.getException() != null)
        x = te.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();
}
catch (SAXException sxe) {
    // Error generated by this application
    // (or a parser-initialization error)
    Exception x = sxe;
    if (sxe.getException() != null)
        x = sxe.getException();
    x.printStackTrace();
}
catch (ParserConfigurationException pce) {
    // Parser with specified options can't be built
    pce.printStackTrace();
}
catch (IOException ioe) {
    // I/O error
    ioe.printStackTrace();
}
```

In between the import statements and the error handling, the core of the program consists of the code shown below.

```
public static void main (String argv[])
{
    if (argv.length != 3) {
        System.err.println (
            "Usage: java FilterChain style1 style2 xmlfile");
        System.exit (1);
    }

    try {
        // Read the arguments
        File stylesheet1 = new File(argv[0]);
        File stylesheet2 = new File(argv[1]);
        File datafile = new File(argv[2]);

        // Set up the input stream
        BufferedInputStream bis = new
            BufferedInputStream(new FileInputStream(datafile));
        InputSource input = new InputSource(bis);

        // Set up to read the input file (see Note #1)
        SAXParserFactory spf = SAXParserFactory.newInstance();
        spf.setNamespaceAware(true);
        SAXParser parser = spf.newSAXParser();
        XMLReader reader = parser.getXMLReader();

        // Create the filters (see Note #2)
        SAXTransformerFactory stf =
            (SAXTransformerFactory)
                TransformerFactory.newInstance();
        XMLFilter filter1 = stf.newXMLFilter(
            new StreamSource(stylesheet1));
        XMLFilter filter2 = stf.newXMLFilter(
            new StreamSource(stylesheet2));

        // Wire the output of the reader to filter1 (see Note #3)
        // and the output of filter1 to filter2
        filter1.setParent(reader);
        filter2.setParent(filter1);

        // Set up the output stream
        StreamResult result = new StreamResult(System.out);

        // Set up the transformer to process the SAX events generated
        // by the last filter in the chain
        Transformer transformer = stf.newTransformer();
```

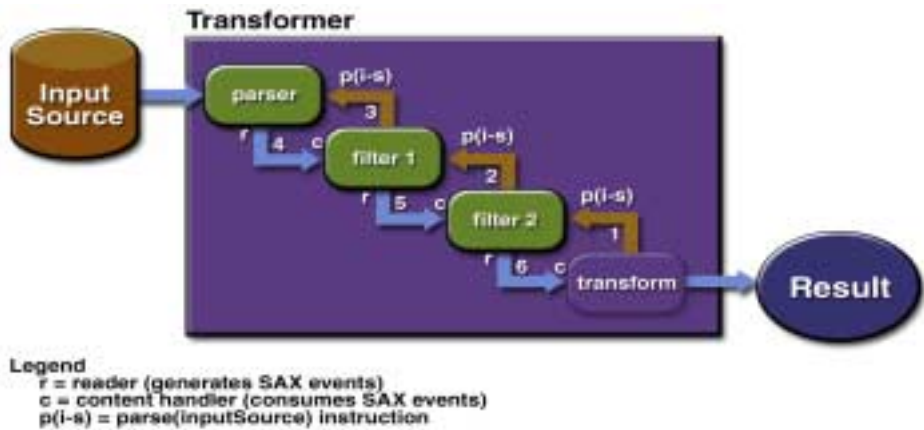
```
SAXSource transformSource = new SAXSource(  
    filter2, input);  
transformer.transform(transformSource, result);  
} catch (...) {  
    ...  
}
```

Notes:

1. The Xalan transformation engine currently requires a namespace-aware SAX parser.
2. This weird bit of code is explained by the fact that `SAXTransformerFactory` extends `TransformerFactory`, adding methods to obtain filter objects. The `newInstance()` method is a static method defined in `TransformerFactory`, which (naturally enough) returns a `TransformerFactory` object. In reality, though, it returns a `SAXTransformerFactory`. So, to get at the extra methods defined by `SAXTransformerFactory`, the return value must be cast to the actual type.
3. An `XMLFilter` object is both a SAX reader and a SAX content handler. As a SAX reader, it generates SAX events to whatever object has registered to receive them. As a content handler, it consumes SAX events generated by its “parent” object — which is, of necessity, a SAX reader, as well. (Calling the event generator a “parent” must make sense when looking at the internal architecture. From an external perspective, the name doesn’t appear to be particularly fitting.) The fact that filters both generate and consume SAX events allows them to be chained together.

## Understanding How the Filter Chain Works

The code listed above shows you how to set up the transformation. Figure 7–2 should help you understand what’s happening when it executes.



**Figure 7–2** Operation of Chained Filters

When you create the transformer, you pass it at a SAXSource object, which encapsulates a reader (in this case, `filter2`) and an input stream. You also pass it a pointer to the result stream, where it directs its output. The diagram shows what happens when you invoke `transform()` on the transformer. Here is an explanation of the steps:

1. The transformer sets up an internal object as the content handler for `filter2`, and tells it to parse the input source.
2. `filter2`, in turn, sets itself up as the content handler for `filter1`, and tells *it* to parse the input source.
3. `filter1`, in turn, tells the parser object to parse the input source.
4. The parser does so, generating SAX events which it passes to `filter1`.
5. `filter1`, acting in its capacity as a content handler, processes the events and does its transformations. Then, acting in its capacity as a SAX reader (XMLReader), it sends SAX events to `filter2`.
6. `filter2` does the same, sending its events to the transformer's content handler, which generates the output stream.

## Testing the Program

To try out the program, you'll create an XML file based on a tiny fraction of the XML DocBook format, and convert it to the ARTICLE format defined here. Then you'll apply the ARTICLE stylesheet to generate an HTML version.

---

**Note:** This example processes `small-docbook-article.xml` using `docbookToArticle.xsl` and `article1c.xsl`. The result is `filterout.html` (The browser-displayable versions are `small-docbook-article-xml.html`, `docbookToArticle-xsl.html`, `article1c-xsl.html`, and `filterout-src.html`.) See the O'Reilly Web pages for a good description of the DocBook article format.

---

Start by creating a small article that uses a minute subset of the XML DocBook format:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Article>
  <ArtHeader>
    <Title>Title of my (Docbook) article</Title>
  </ArtHeader>
  <Sect1>
    <Title>Title of Section 1.</Title>
    <Para>This is a paragraph.</Para>
  </Sect1>
</Article>
```

Next, create a stylesheet to convert it into the ARTICLE format:

```
<xsl:stylesheet
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  version="1.0"
  >
  <xsl:output method="xml"/> (see Note #1)

  <xsl:template match="/">
    <ARTICLE>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </ARTICLE>
  </xsl:template>

  <!-- Lower level titles strip element tag --> (see Note #2)

  <!-- Top-level title -->
  <xsl:template match="/Article/ArtHeader/Title"> (Note #3)
    <TITLE> <xsl:apply-templates/> </TITLE>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="//Sect1"> (see Note #4)
    <SECT><xsl:apply-templates/></SECT>
  </xsl:template>
```

```

<xsl:template match="Para">
  <PARA><xsl:apply-templates/></PARA> (see Note #5)
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>

```

Notes:

1. This time, the stylesheet is generating XML output.
2. The template that follows (for the top-level title element) matches only the main title. For section titles, the TITLE tag gets stripped. (Since no template conversion governs those title elements, they are ignored. The text nodes they contain, however, are still echoed as a result of XSLT's built in template rules— so only the tag is ignored, not the text. More on that below.)
3. The title from the DocBook article header becomes the ARTICLE title.
4. Numbered section tags are converted to plain SECT tags.
5. This template carries out a case conversion, so Para becomes PARA.

Although it hasn't been mentioned explicitly, XSLT defines a number of built-in (default) template rules. The complete set is listed in Section 5.8 of the specification. Mainly, they provide for the automatic copying of text and attribute nodes, and for skipping comments and processing instructions. They also dictate that inner elements are processed, even when their containing tags don't have templates. That is the reason that the text node in the section title is processed, even though the section title is not covered by any template.

Now, run the FilterChain program, passing it the stylesheet above (docbook-ToArticle.xsl), the ARTICLE stylesheet (article1c.xsl), and the small DocBook file (small-docbook-article.xml), in that order. The result should like this:

```

<html>
<body>
<h1 align="center">Title of my (Docbook) article</h1>
<h2>Title of Section 1.</h2>
<p>This is a paragraph.</p>
</body>
</html>

```

---

**Note:** *This output was generated using JAXP 1.0. However, the first filter in the chain is not currently translating any of the tags in the input file. Until that defect is fixed, the output you see will consist of concatenated plain text in the HTML*



*output, like this:* “Title of my (Docbook) article Title of Section 1. This is a paragraph.”.

---

## Conclusion

Congratulations! You have completed the XSLT tutorial. There is a lot you can do with XML and XSLT, and you are now prepared to explore the many exciting possibilities that await.

## Further Information

For more information on XSL stylesheets, XSLT, and transformation engines, see:

- A great introduction to XSLT that starts with a simple HTML page and uses XSLT to customize it, one step at a time: <http://www.xfront.com/rescuing-xslt.html>
- Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL): <http://www.w3.org/Style/XSL/>
- The XML Path Language: <http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath>
- The Xalan transformation engine: <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/>
- Output properties that can be programmatically specified on transformer objects: <http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt#output>.
- Using Xalan from the command line: <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/commandline.html>



---

# Building Web Services With JAX-RPC

*Dale Green*

JAX-RPC stands for Java API for XML-based RPC. It's an API for building Web services and clients that use remote procedure calls (RPC) and XML. Often used in a distributed client/server model, an RPC mechanism enables clients to execute procedures on other systems.

In JAX-RPC, a remote procedure call is represented by an XML-based protocol such as SOAP. The SOAP specification defines the envelope structure, encoding rules, and convention for representing remote procedure calls and responses. These calls and responses are transmitted as SOAP messages (XML files) over HTTP.

Although SOAP messages are complex, the JAX-RPC API hides this complexity from the application developer. On the server side, the developer specifies the remote procedures by defining methods in an interface written in the Java programming language. The developer also codes one or more classes that implement those methods. Client programs are also easy to code. A client creates a proxy, a local object representing the service, and then simply invokes methods on the proxy. With JAX-RPC, the developer does not generate or parse SOAP messages. It is the JAX-RPC runtime system that converts the API calls and responses to and from SOAP messages.

With JAX-RPC, clients and Web services have a big advantage—the platform independence of the Java programming language. In addition, JAX-RPC is not restrictive: a JAX-RPC client can access a Web service that is not running on the

Java platform and vice versa. This flexibility is possible because JAX-RPC uses technologies defined by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C): HTTP, SOAP, and the Web Service Description Language (WSDL). WSDL specifies an XML format for describing a service as a set of endpoints operating on messages.

## Types Supported By JAX-RPC

Behind the scenes, JAX-RPC maps types of the Java programming language to XML/WSDL definitions. For example, JAX-RPC maps the `java.lang.String` class to the `xsd:string` XML data type. Application developers don't need to know the details of these mappings, but they should be aware that not every class in the Java 2 Standard Edition (J2SE™) can be used as a method parameter or return type in JAX-RPC.

### J2SE SDK Classes

JAX-RPC supports the following J2SE SDK classes:

```
java.lang.Boolean
java.lang.Byte
java.lang.Double
java.lang.Float
java.lang.Integer
java.lang.Long
java.lang.Short
java.lang.String

java.math.BigDecimal
java.math.BigInteger

java.net.URI

java.util.Calendar
java.util.Date
```

This release of JAX-RPC also supports several implementation classes of the `java.util.Collection` interface. See Table 8–1.

**Table 8–1** Supported Classes of the Java Collections Framework

<code>java.util.Collection</code> Subinterface	Implementation Classes
List	ArrayList LinkedList Stack Vector
Map	HashMap Hashtable Properties TreeMap
Set	HashSet TreeSet

## Primitives

JAX-RPC supports the following primitive types of the Java programming language:

```
boolean
byte
double
float
int
long
short
```

## Arrays

JAX-RPC also supports arrays with members of supported JAX-RPC types. Examples of supported arrays are `int[]` and `String[]`. Multidimensional arrays, such as `BigDecimal[][]`, are also supported.

## Value Types

A *value type* is a class whose state may be passed between a client and remote service as a method parameter or return value. For example, in an application for a university library, a client might call a remote procedure with a value type parameter named `Book`, a class that contains the fields `Title`, `Author`, and `Publisher`.

To be supported by JAX-RPC, a value type must conform to the following rules:

- It must have a public default constructor.
- It must not implement (either directly or indirectly) the `java.rmi.Remote` interface.
- Its fields must be supported JAX-RPC types.

The value type may contain public, private, or protected fields. The field of a value type must meet these requirements:

- A public field cannot be `final` or `transient`.
- A non-public field must have corresponding getter and setter methods.

## JavaBeans Components

JAX-RPC also supports JavaBeans components, which must conform to the same set of rules as application classes. In addition, a JavaBeans component must have a getter and setter method for each bean property. The type of the bean property must be a supported JAX-RPC type. For an example of a JavaBeans component, see the section TBD.

## Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC

This section shows how to build and deploy a simple Web service called `MyHelloService`. A later section, *Creating Web Service Clients with JAX-RPC* (page 332), provides examples of JAX-RPC clients that access this service. The source code required by `MyHelloService` is in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/helloservice/`.

These are the basic steps for creating the service:

1. Code the the service endpoint interface and implementation class.
2. Build and generate the files required by the service.

3. Use `deploytool` to package the service's files into a WAR file.
4. Deploy the WAR file.

The sections that follow cover these steps in greater detail. Before proceeding, you should try out the examples in the *Getting Started with Web Applications* chapter. Make sure that you've followed the instructions in *Setting Up To Build and Deploy Tutorial Examples* (page 89).

## Coding the Service Endpoint Interface and Implementation Class

A service endpoint interface declares the methods that a remote client may invoke on the service. In this example, the interface declares a single method named `sayHello`.

A service endpoint interface must conform to a few rules:

- It extends the `java.rmi.Remote` interface.
- It must not have constant declarations, such as `public final static`.
- The methods must throw the `java.rmi.RemoteException` or one of its subclasses. (The methods may also throw service-specific exceptions.)
- Method parameters and return types must be supported JAX-RPC types. See the section *Types Supported By JAX-RPC* (page 324).

In this example, the service endpoint interface is `HelloIF.java`:

```
package helloservice;

import java.rmi.Remote;
import java.rmi.RemoteException;

public interface HelloIF extends Remote {
    public String sayHello(String s) throws RemoteException;
}
```

In addition to the interface, you'll need the class that implements the interface. In this example, the implementation class is called `HelloImpl`:

```
package helloservice;

public class HelloImpl implements HelloIF {

    public String message ="Hello";
```

```
        public String sayHello(String s) {  
            return message + s;  
        }  
    }  
}
```

## Building the Service

To build `MyHelloService`, in a terminal window go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/helloservice/` directory and type the following:

```
asant build
```

The preceding command executes three asant tasks:

1. `compile-service`
2. `generate-wsdl`
3. `generate-mapping`

### compile-service

This asant task compiles `HelloIF.java` and `HelloImpl.java`, writing the class files to the `build` subdirectory.

### generate-wsdl

The `generate-wsdl` task runs the `wscompile` tool, which creates the `MyHelloService.wsdl` file in the `build` directory. The `generate-wsdl` task runs `wscompile` as follows:

```
wscompile -define -d build/server -nd build  
-classpath build config-interface.xml
```



The `-define` flag instructs the tool to read the service endpoint interface and to create a WSDL file. The `-d` and `-nd` flags tell the tool to write output to the `build` subdirectory. The tool reads the following `config-interface.xml` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<configuration
  xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/jax-rpc/ri/config">
  <service
    name="MyHelloService"
    targetNamespace="urn:Foo"
    typeNamespace="urn:Foo"
    packageName="helloservice">
    <interface name="helloservice.HelloIF"/>
  </service>
</configuration>
```

The `config.xml-interface` file tells `wscompile` to create a WSDL file with the following information:

- The service name is `MyHelloService`.
- The WSDL namespace is `urn:Foo`. (To understand this namespace, you need to be familiar with WSDL technology. See [Further Information](#), page 346)
- The classes for the `MyHelloService` are in the `helloservice` package.
- The service endpoint interface is `helloservice.HelloIF`.

## generate-mapping

This `asant` task also runs `wscompile`, this time to create a `mapping.xml` file and a set of runtime classes. The `mapping.xml` file maps the package names of the service classes to a namespace URI of the WSDL file. The set of runtime classes is made up of serializers, deserializers, and ties. The `generate-mapping` task runs `wscompile` as follows:

```
wscompile -gen -d build -nd build -mapping build/mapping.xml
-classpath build config-wsdl.xml
```

The `-gen` flag instructs the tool to read the WSDL file and to create the runtime classes. The `-d` and `-nd` flags tell the tool to write output to the `build` subdirec-

tory, and the `-mapping` flag specifies the mapping file. The tool reads the following `config-wsdl.xml` file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<configuration
  xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/jax-rpc/ri/config">
  <wsdl location="build/MyHelloService.wsdl"
    packageName="helloservice"/>
</configuration>
```

## Packaging the Service

Behind the scenes, a JAX-RPC Web service is actually a servlet. Because a servlet is a Web component, to package the service you run the New Web Component wizard of the `deploytool` utility. During this process the wizard performs the following tasks.

- Creates the Web application deployment descriptor
- Creates a WAR file
- Adds the deployment descriptor and service files to the WAR file

To start the New Web Component wizard, select **File→New→Web Application WAR**. The wizard displays the following dialog boxes.

1. Introduction dialog box
  - a. Read the explanatory text for an overview of the wizard's features.
  - b. Click Next.
2. WAR File dialog box
  - a. Select the button labelled **Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module**.
  - b. In the **WAR Location** field, enter `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/helloservice/MyHelloService.war`.
  - c. In the **WAR Display Field**, enter `MyHelloService`.
  - d. Click **Edit**.
  - e. In the tree under **Available Files**, locate the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/helloservice/` directory.
  - f. Select the `build` subdirectory.
  - g. Click **Add**.
  - h. Click **OK**.
  - i. Click **Next**.

3. Choose Component Type dialog box
  - a. Select the Web Services Endpoint button.
  - b. Click Next.
4. Choose Service dialog box
  - a. In the WSDL File combo box, select `MyHelloService.wsdl`.
  - b. In the Mapping File combo box, select `mapping.xml`.
  - c. Click Next.
5. Web Service Endpoint dialog box
  - a. In the Service Endpoint Interface combo box, select `helloservice.HelloIF`.
  - b. In the Namespace field, enter `urn:Foo`.
  - c. In the Local Part field, enter `HelloIFPort`.
  - d. Bug 4866894: Do not enter the Endpoint Address URI in this dialog.
  - e. Click Next.
6. Component General Properties dialog box
  - a. In the Service Endpoint Implementation combo box, select `helloservice.HelloImpl`.
  - b. Click Finish.

## Specifying the Endpoint Address

To access `MyHelloService`, the tutorial clients will specify this service endpoint address URI:

```
http://localhost:1024/hello-jaxrpc/hello
```

The `/hello-jaxrpc` string is the context root of the servlet that implements `MyHelloService`. The `/hello` string is the servlet alias. To specify the endpoint address, you set the context root and alias as follows:

1. In `deploytool`, select `MyHelloService` in the tree.
2. Select the General tab.
3. In the Context Root field, enter `hello-jaxrpc`.
4. In the tree, select `HelloImpl`.
5. Select the Aliases tab.

6. In the Component Aliases table, add `/hello`. (Don't forget the forward slash.)
7. Select File→Save.

Bug 4866894: Do not enter the Service Endpoint Address URI in the Endpoint tab of `HelloImpl`.

## Deploying the Service

In `deploytool`, perform these steps:

1. In the tree, select `MyHelloService`.
2. Select Tools→Deploy.

Now you are ready to create a client that accesses this service.

## Creating Web Service Clients with JAX-RPC

This section shows how to create and run four types of clients:

- Static stub
- Dynamic proxy
- Dynamic invocation interface (DII)
- J2EE application client

When you run these client examples, they will access the `MyHelloService` that you deployed in the preceding section.

### Static Stub Client Example

This example resides in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/staticstub` directory.

`HelloClient` is a stand-alone program that calls the `sayHello` method of the `MyHelloService`. It makes this call through a stub, a local object which acts as a proxy for the remote service. Because the stub is created before runtime (by `wscompile`), it is usually called a *static stub*.

## Coding the Static Stub Client

Before it can invoke the remote methods on the stub the client performs these steps:

1. Creates a Stub object:

```
(Stub)(new MyHelloService_Impl().getHelloIFPort())
```

The code in this method is implementation-specific because it relies on a `MyHelloService_Impl` object, which is not defined in the specifications. The `MyHelloService_Impl` class will be generated by `wscompile` in the following section.

2. Sets the endpoint address that the stub uses to access the service:

```
stub._setProperty  
(javax.xml.rpc.Stub.ENDPOINT_ADDRESS_PROPERTY, args[0]);
```

At runtime, the endpoint address is passed to `HelloClient` in `args[0]` as a command-line parameter, which `asant` gets from the `endpoint.address` property in the `build.properties` file. This address must match the one you set for the service in [Specifying the Endpoint Address](#) (page 331).

3. Casts `stub` to the service endpoint interface, `HelloIF`:

```
HelloIF hello = (HelloIF)stub;
```

Here is the full source code listing for the `HelloClient.java` file, which is located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/staticstub/src/` directory:

```
package staticstub;  
  
import javax.xml.rpc.Stub;  
  
public class HelloClient {  
  
    private String endpointAddress;  
  
    public static void main(String[] args) {  
  
        System.out.println("Endpoint address = " + args[0]);  
        try {  
            Stub stub = createProxy();  
            stub._setProperty  
                (javax.xml.rpc.Stub.ENDPOINT_ADDRESS_PROPERTY,  
                 args[0]);  
            HelloIF hello = (HelloIF)stub;
```

```

        System.out.println(hello.sayHello("Duke!"));
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        ex.printStackTrace();
    }
}

private static Stub createProxy() {
    // Note: MyHelloService_Impl is implementation-specific.
    return
        (Stub) (new MyHelloService_Impl().getHelloIFPort());
}
}

```

## Building and Running the Static Stub Client

Before performing the steps in this section, you must first create and deploy `MyHelloService` as described in [Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC](#) (page 326).

To build and package the client, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/staticstub/` directory and type the following:

```
asant build
```

The preceding command invokes three asant tasks:

- `generate-stubs`
- `compile-client`
- `package-client`

The `generate-stubs` task runs the `wscompile` tool as follows:

```
wscompile -gen:client -d build/client -classpath build/server
config-wsdl.xml
```

This `wscompile` command reads the `MyHelloService.wsdl` file that was generated in [Building the Service](#) (page 328). The `wscompile` command generates files based on the information in the WSDL file and on the command-line flags. The `-gen:client` flag instructs `wscompile` to generate the stubs and other runtime files. The `-d` flag tells the tool to write the output to the `build/client` sub-

directory. The tool reads the following `config-wsdl.xml` file, which specifies the location of the WSDL file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<configuration
  xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/jax-rpc/ri/config">
  <wsdl location="build/MyHelloService.wsdl"
    packageName="staticstub"/>
</configuration>
```

The `compile-client` task compiles `src/HelloClient.java` and writes the class file to the `build` subdirectory.

The `package-client` task packages the files created by the `generate-stubs` and `compile-client` tasks into the `dist/client.jar` file. Except for the `HelloClient.class`, all of the files in `client.jar` were created by `wscompile`. Note that `wscompile` generated the `HelloIF.class` based on the information it read from the `MyHelloService.wsdl` file.

To run the client, type the following:

```
asant run
```

The client should display the following line:

```
Hello Duke!
```

## Dynamic Proxy Client Example

This example resides in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dynamicproxy/` directory.

The client in the preceding section used a static stub for the proxy. In contrast, the client example in this section calls a remote procedure through a *dynamic proxy*, a class that is created during runtime. Although the source code for the static stub client relied on an implementation-specific class, the code for the dynamic proxy client does not have this limitation.

## Coding the Dynamic Proxy Client

The `DynamicProxyHello` program constructs the dynamic proxy as follows:

1. Creates a `Service` object named `helloService`:

```
Service helloService =
    serviceFactory.createService(helloWsdUrl,
        new QName(namespaceUri, serviceName));
```

A Service object is a factory for proxies. To create the Service object (helloService), the program calls the createService method on another type of factory, a ServiceFactory object.

The createService method has two parameters, the URL of the WSDL file and a QName object. At runtime, the client gets information about the service by looking up its WSDL. In this example, the URL of the WSDL file points to the WSDL that was deployed with MyHelloService:

```
http://localhost:1024/jaxrpc-hello/hello?WSDL
```

A QName object is a tuple that represents an XML qualified name. The tuple is composed of a namespace URI and the local part of the qualified name. In the QName parameter of the createService invocation, the local part is the service name, MyHelloService.

2. The program creates a proxy (myProxy) with a type of the service endpoint interface (HelloIF):

```
dynamicproxy.HelloIF myProxy =
    (dynamicproxy.HelloIF)helloService.getPort(
        new QName(namespaceUri, portName),
        dynamicproxy.HelloIF.class);
```

The helloService object is a factory for dynamic proxies. To create myProxy, the program calls the getPort method of helloService. This method has two parameters: a QName object that specifies the port name and a java.lang.Class object for the service endpoint interface. The port name, HelloIFPort, is also specified by the WSDL file.

Here is the listing for the HelloClient.java file, located in the <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dynamicproxy/src/ directory:

```
package dynamicproxy;

import java.net.URL;
import javax.xml.rpc.Service;
import javax.xml.rpc.JAXRPCException;
import javax.xml.namespace.QName;
import javax.xml.rpc.ServiceFactory;
import dynamicproxy.HelloIF;

public class HelloClient {
```



```

public static void main(String[] args) {
    try {

        String urlString = args[0] + "?WSDL";
        String namespaceUri = "urn:Foo";
        String serviceName = "MyHelloService";
        String portName = "HelloIFPort";

        System.out.println("UrlString = " + urlString);
        URL helloWsdUrl = new URL(urlString);

        ServiceFactory serviceFactory =
            ServiceFactory.newInstance();

        Service helloService =
            serviceFactory.createService(helloWsdUrl,
            new QName(namespaceUri, serviceName));

        dynamicproxy.HelloIF myProxy =
            (dynamicproxy.HelloIF)
            helloService.getPort(
            new QName(namespaceUri, portName),
            dynamicproxy.HelloIF.class);

        System.out.println(myProxy.sayHello("Buzz"));

    } catch (Exception ex) {
        ex.printStackTrace();
    }
}

```

## Building and Running the Dynamic Proxy Client

Before performing the steps in this section, you must first create and deploy `MyHelloService` as described in [Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC](#) (page 326).

To build and package the client, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dynamicproxy/` directory and type the following:

```
asant build
```

The preceding command runs these tasks:

- `generate-stubs`
- `compile-client`
- `package-proxy`

The `generate-stubs` task runs `wscompile`, which reads the `MyHelloService.wsdl` file and generates the service endpoint interface class (`HelloIF.class`). Although this `wscompile` invocation also creates stubs, the dynamic proxy client does not use these stubs, which are required only by static stub clients. For more information about the `wscompile` command that is run by `generate-stubs`, see *Building and Running the Static Stub Client* (page 334).

The `compile-client` task compiles the `src/HelloClient.java` file.

The `package-proxy` task creates the `dist/client.jar` file, which contains `HelloIF.class` and `HelloClient.class`.

To run the client, type the following:

```
asant run
```

The client should display the following line:

```
Hello Buzz!
```

## Dynamic Invocation Interface (DII) Client Example

This example resides in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dii` directory.

With the dynamic invocation interface (DII), a client can call a remote procedure even if the signature of the remote procedure or the name of the service are unknown until runtime. In contrast to a static stub or dynamic proxy client, a DII client does not require runtime classes generated by `wscompile`. However, as you'll see in the following section, the source code for a DII client is more complicated than the code of the other two types of clients.

This example is for advanced users who are familiar with WSDL documents. (See *Further Information*, page 346.)

## Coding the DII Client

The DIIHello program performs these steps:

1. Creates a Service object.

```
Service service =  
    factory.createService(new QName(qnameService));
```

To get a Service object, the program invokes the createService method of a ServiceFactory object. The parameter of the createService method is a QName object that represents the name of the service, MyHelloService. The WSDL file specifies this name as follows:

```
<service name="MyHelloService">
```

2. From the Service object, creates a Call object:

```
QName port = new QName(qnamePort);  
Call call = service.createCall(port);
```

A Call object supports the dynamic invocation of the remote procedures of a service. To get a Call object, the program invokes the Service object's createCall method. The parameter of createCall is a QName object that represents the service endpoint interface, MyHelloService-RPC. In the WSDL file, the name of this interface is designated by the portType element:

```
<portType name="HelloIF">
```

3. Sets the service endpoint address on the Call object:

```
call.setTargetEndpointAddress(endpoint);
```

In the WSDL file, this address is specified by the <soap:address> element.

4. Sets these properties on the Call object:

```
SOAPACTION_USE_PROPERTY  
SOAPACTION_URI_PROPERTY  
ENCODING_STYLE_PROPERTY
```

To learn more about these properties, refer to the SOAP and WSDL documents listed in Further Information (page 346).

5. Specifies the method's return type, name, and parameter:

```
QName QNAME_TYPE_STRING = new QName(NS_XSD, "string");  
call.setReturnType(QNAME_TYPE_STRING);
```

```
call.setOperationName(new QName(BODY_NAMESPACE_VALUE,  
    "sayHello"));
```

```
call.addParameter("String_1", QName_TYPE_STRING,
    ParameterMode.IN);
```

To specify the return type, the program invokes the `setReturnType` method on the `Call` object. The parameter of `setReturnType` is a `QName` object that represents an XML string type.

The program designates the method name by invoking the `setOperationName` method with a `QName` object that represents `sayHello`.

To indicate the method parameter, the program invokes the `addParameter` method on the `Call` object. The `addParameter` method has three arguments: a `String` for the parameter name (`String_1`), a `QName` object for the XML type, and a `ParameterMode` object to indicate the passing mode of the parameter (`IN`).

6. Invokes the remote method on the `Call` object:

```
String[] params = { "Murphy" };
String result = (String)call.invoke(params);
```

The program assigns the parameter value (`Murphy`) to a `String` array (`params`) and then executes the `invoke` method with the `String` array as an argument.

Here is the listing for the `HelloClient.java` file, located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dii/src/` directory:

```
package dii;

import javax.xml.rpc.Call;
import javax.xml.rpc.Service;
import javax.xml.rpc.JAXRPCException;
import javax.xml.namespace.QName;
import javax.xml.rpc.ServiceFactory;
import javax.xml.rpc.ParameterMode;

public class HelloClient {

    private static String qnameService = "MyHelloService";
    private static String qnamePort = "HelloIF";

    private static String BODY_NAMESPACE_VALUE =
        "urn:Foo";
    private static String ENCODING_STYLE_PROPERTY =
        "javax.xml.rpc.encodingstyle.namespace.uri";
    private static String NS_XSD =
```

```

        "http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema";
private static String URI_ENCODING =
    "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/encoding/";

public static void main(String[] args) {

    System.out.println("Endpoint address = " + args[0]);

    try {
        ServiceFactory factory =
            ServiceFactory.newInstance();
        Service service =
            factory.createService(
                new QName(qnameService));

        QName port = new QName(qnamePort);

        Call call = service.createCall(port);
        call.setTargetEndpointAddress(args[0]);

        call.setProperty(Call.SOAPACTION_USE_PROPERTY,
            new Boolean(true));
        call.setProperty(Call.SOAPACTION_URI_PROPERTY,
            "");
        call.setProperty(ENCODING_STYLE_PROPERTY,
            URI_ENCODING);
        QName QNAME_TYPE_STRING =
            new QName(NS_XSD, "string");
        call.setReturnType(QNAME_TYPE_STRING);

        call.setOperationName(
            new QName(BODY_NAMESPACE_VALUE, "sayHello"));
        call.addParameter("String_1", QNAME_TYPE_STRING,
            ParameterMode.IN);
        String[] params = { "Murph!" };

        String result = (String)call.invoke(params);
        System.out.println(result);

    } catch (Exception ex) {
        ex.printStackTrace();
    }
}

```

## Building and Running the DII Client

Before performing the steps in this section, you must first create and deploy `MyHelloService` as described in [Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC](#) (page 326).

To build and package the client, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/dii/` directory and type the following:

```
asant build
```

This build task compiles `HelloClient` and packages it into the `dist/client.jar` file. Unlike the previous client examples, the DII client does not require files generated by `wscompile`.

To run the client, type this command:

```
asant run
```

The client should display this line:

```
Hello Murph!
```

## J2EE Application Client Example

Unlike the stand-alone clients in the preceding sections, the client in this section is a J2EE application client. Because it's a J2EE component, a J2EE application client can locate a local Web service by invoking the JNDI lookup method.

## J2EE Application HelloClient Listing

Here is the listing for the `HelloClient.java` file, located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/appclient/src/` directory:

```
package appclient;

import javax.xml.rpc.Stub;
import javax.naming.*;

public class HelloClient {

    private String endpointAddress;
```

```

public static void main(String[] args) {

    System.out.println("Endpoint address = " + args[0]);

    try {
        Context ic = new InitialContext();
        MyHelloService myHelloService = (MyHelloService)
            ic.lookup("java:comp/env/service/MyJAXRCHello");
        appclient.HelloIF helloPort =
            myHelloService.getHelloIFPort();
        ((Stub)helloPort)._setProperty
            (Stub.ENDPOINT_ADDRESS_PROPERTY, args[0]);

        System.out.println(helloPort.sayHello("Jake!"));
        System.exit(0);

    } catch (Exception ex) {
        ex.printStackTrace();
        System.exit(1);
    }
}

```

## Building the J2EE Application Client

In a terminal window, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/appclient` directory and type the following:

```
asant build
```

The preceding command compiles `HelloClient.java` and runs `wscompile` by invoking the `generate-mapping` target. For more information on this target, see the section `generate-mapping` (page 329).

## Packaging the J2EE Application Client

Packaging this client is a two-step process:

1. Create an EAR file for a J2EE application.
2. Create a JAR file for the application client and add it to the EAR file.

To create the EAR file, follow these steps:

1. In `deploytool`, select `File→New→Application EAR`.
2. Click `Browse`.

3. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/appclient`.
4. In the File Name field, enter `HelloServiceApp.ear`.
5. Click New Application.
6. Click OK.

To start the New Application Client wizard, select `File→New→Application Client JAR`. The wizard displays the following dialog boxes.

1. Introduction dialog box
  - a. Read the explanatory text for an overview of the wizard's features.
  - b. Click Next.
2. JAR File Contents dialog box
  - a. Select the button labelled `Create New AppClient Module in Application`.
  - b. In the combo box below this button, select `HelloServiceApp`.
  - c. In the `AppClient Display Name` field, enter `HelloClient`.
  - d. Click Edit.
  - e. In the tree under `Available Files`, locate the `<INSTALL>/examples/jaxrpc/appclient` directory.
  - f. Select the `build` directory.
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
3. General dialog box
  - a. In the `Main Class` combo box, select `appclient>HelloClient`.
  - b. Click Next.
  - c. Click Finish.

## Specifying the Web Reference

When it invokes the `lookup` method, the `HelloClient` refers to the Web service as follows:

```
MyHelloService myHelloService = (MyHelloService)
ic.lookup("java:comp/env/service/MyJAXRPCHello");
```



You specify this reference as follows.

1. In the tree, select `HelloClient`.
2. Select the Web Service Refs tab.
3. Click Add.
4. In the Coded Name field, enter `service/MyJAXRPCHello`.
5. In the Service Interface combo box, select `appclient.MyHelloService`.
6. In the WSDL File combo box, select `MyHelloService.wsdl`.
7. In the Namespace field, enter `urn:Foo`.
8. In the Local Part field, enter `MyHelloService`.
9. In the Mapping File combo box, select `mapping.xml`.
10. Click OK.

## Deploying and Running the J2EE Application Client

Before performing the steps in this section, you must first create and deploy the `MyHelloService` as described in [Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC](#) (page 326).

To deploy the J2EE application client, follow these steps:

1. Select the `HelloServiceApp` application.
2. Select Tools→Deploy.
3. In the Deploy Module dialog select the checkbox labelled Return Client JAR.
4. In the field below the checkbox, enter this directory:

`<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/appclient`

5. Click OK.

To run the client:

1. In a terminal window, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/appclient/` directory.
2. Type the following on a single line:

```
appclient -client HelloServiceAppClient.jar  
http://localhost:1024/hello-jaxrpc/hello
```

The client should display this line:

```
Hello Jake!
```

## Other JAX-RPC Client Examples

Chapter 15 shows how a JSP page can be a static stub client that accesses a remote Web service. See the section, The Example JSP Pages (page 605).

## Further Information

For more information about JAX-RPC and related technologies, refer to the following:

- Java API for XML-based RPC 1.1 Specification  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/downloads/jaxrpc.html>
- JAX-RPC Home  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxrpc/index.html>
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1 W3C Note  
<http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP/>
- Web Services Description Language (WSDL) 1.1 W3C Note  
<http://www.w3.org/TR/wsdl>

---

# SOAP with Attachments API for Java

*Maydene Fisher and Kim Haase*

**S**OAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ) is used mainly for the SOAP messaging that goes on behind the scenes in JAX-RPC and JAXR implementations. Secondly, it is an API that developers can use when they choose to write SOAP messaging applications directly rather than using JAX-RPC. The SAAJ API allows you to do XML messaging from the Java platform: By simply making method calls using the SAAJ API, you can create, send, and consume XML messages over the Internet. This chapter will help you learn how to use the SAAJ API.

The SAAJ API conforms to the Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1 specification and the SOAP with Attachments specification. The SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ) 1.2 specification defines the `javax.xml.soap` package, which contains the API for creating and populating a SOAP message. This package has all the API necessary for sending request-response messages. (Request-response messages are explained in `SOAPConnection` Objects, page 352.)

---

**Note:** The `javax.xml.messaging` package, defined in the Java API for XML Messaging (JAXM) 1.1 specification, is not part of the J2EE 1.4 platform and is not

discussed in this chapter. The JAXM API is available as a separate download from <http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxm/>.

---

This chapter starts with an overview of messages and connections, which gives some of the conceptual background behind the SAAJ API to help you understand why certain things are done the way they are. Next the tutorial shows you how to use the basic SAAJ API, giving examples and explanations of the more commonly used features. The code examples in the last part of the tutorial show you how to build an application.

## Overview of SAAJ

This overview presents a high level view of how SAAJ messaging works and explains concepts in general terms. Its goal is to give you some terminology and a framework for the explanations and code examples that are presented in the tutorial section.

The overview looks at SAAJ from two perspectives:

- Messages
- Connections

## Messages

SAAJ messages follow SOAP standards, which prescribe the format for messages and also specify some things that are required, optional, or not allowed. With the SAAJ API, you can create XML messages that conform to the SOAP 1.1 and WS-I Basic Profile 1.0 specifications simply by making Java API calls.

## The Structure of an XML Document

---

**Note:** For more complete information on XML documents, see Chapters 2 and 4.

---

An XML document has a hierarchical structure with elements, subelements, sub-subelements, and so on. You will notice that many of the SAAJ classes and interfaces represent XML elements in a SOAP message and have the word *element* or *SOAP* or both in their names.

An element is also referred to as a *node*. Accordingly, the SAAJ API has the interface `Node`, which is the base class for all the classes and interfaces that represent XML elements in a SOAP message. There are also methods such as `SOAPElement.addTextNode`, `Node.detachNode`, and `Node.getValue`, which you will see how to use in the tutorial section.

## What Is in a Message?

The two main types of SOAP messages are those that have attachments and those that do not.

### Messages with No Attachments

The following outline shows the very high level structure of a SOAP message with no attachments. Except for the SOAP header, all the parts listed are required to be in every SOAP message.

#### I. SOAP message

##### A. SOAP part

##### 1. SOAP envelope

##### a. SOAP header (optional)

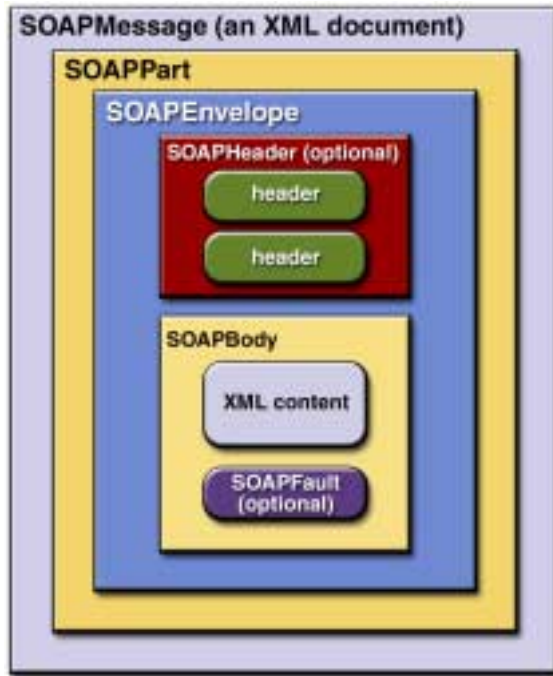
##### b. SOAP body

The SAAJ API provides the `SOAPMessage` class to represent a SOAP message, the `SOAPPart` class to represent the SOAP part, the `SOAPEnvelope` interface to represent the SOAP envelope, and so on. Figure 9–1 illustrates the structure of a SOAP message with no attachments.

When you create a new `SOAPMessage` object, it will automatically have the parts that are required to be in a SOAP message. In other words, a new `SOAPMessage` object has a `SOAPPart` object that contains a `SOAPEnvelope` object. The `SOAPEnvelope` object in turn automatically contains an empty `SOAPHeader` object followed by an empty `SOAPBody` object. If you do not need the `SOAPHeader` object, which is optional, you can delete it. The rationale for having it automatically included is that more often than not you will need it, so it is more convenient to have it provided.

The `SOAPHeader` object may contain one or more headers with information about the sending and receiving parties. The `SOAPBody` object, which always follows the `SOAPHeader` object if there is one, provides a simple way to send information

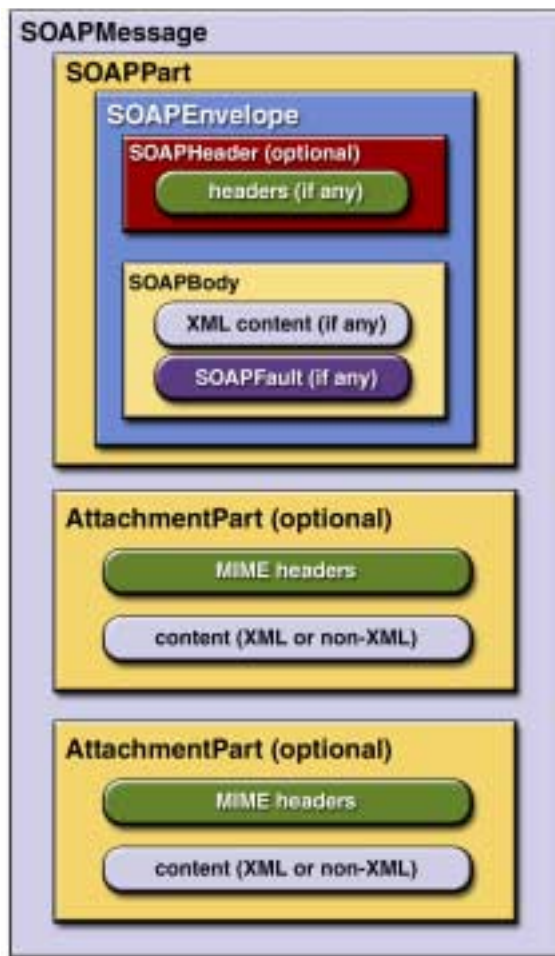
intended for the ultimate recipient. For example, if there is a `SOAPFault` object (see Using SOAP Faults, page 375), it must be in the `SOAPBody` object.



**Figure 9-1** SOAPMessage Object with No Attachments

## Messages with Attachments

A SOAP message may include one or more attachment parts in addition to the SOAP part. The SOAP part may contain only XML content; as a result, if any of the content of a message is not in XML format, it must occur in an attachment part. So, if for example, you want your message to contain a binary file, your message must have an attachment part for it. Note that an attachment part can contain any kind of content, so it can contain data in XML format as well. Figure 9-2 shows the high-level structure of a SOAP message that has two attachments.



**Figure 9–2** SOAPMessage Object with Two AttachmentPart Objects

The SAAJ API provides the `AttachmentPart` class to represent the attachment part of a SOAP message. A `SOAPMessage` object automatically has a `SOAPPart` object and its required subelements, but because `AttachmentPart` objects are optional, you have to create and add them yourself. The tutorial section will walk you through creating and populating messages with and without attachment parts.

If a `SOAPMessage` object has one or more attachments, each `AttachmentPart` object must have a MIME header to indicate the type of data it contains. It may also have additional MIME headers to identify it or to give its location, which

are optional but can be useful when there are multiple attachments. When a `SOAPMessage` object has one or more `AttachmentPart` objects, its `SOAPPart` object may or may not contain message content.

## SAAJ and DOM

At SAAJ 1.2, the SAAJ APIs extend their counterparts in the `org.w3c.dom` package:

- The `Node` interface extends the `org.w3c.dom.Node` interface.
- The `SOAPElement` interface extends both the `Node` interface and the `org.w3c.dom.Element` interface.
- The `SOAPPart` class implements the `org.w3c.dom.Document` interface.
- The `Text` interface extends the `org.w3c.dom.Text` interface.

Moreover, the `SOAPPart` of a `SOAPMessage` is also a DOM Level 2 Document, and can be manipulated as such by applications, tools and libraries that use DOM. See Chapter 6 for details about DOM. See Adding Content to the SOAP-Part Object (page 364) and Adding a Document to the SOAP Body (page 366) for details on how to use DOM documents with the SAAJ API.

## Connections

All SOAP messages are sent and received over a connection. With the SAAJ API, the connection is represented by a `SOAPConnection` object, which goes from the sender directly to its destination. This kind of connection is called a *point-to-point* connection because it goes from one endpoint to another endpoint. Messages sent using the SAAJ API are called *request-response messages*. They are sent over a `SOAPConnection` object with the method `call`, which sends a message (a request) and then blocks until it receives the reply (a response).

## SOAPConnection Objects

The following code fragment creates the `SOAPConnection` object connection, and then, after creating and populating the message, uses `con` to send the message. As stated previously, all messages sent over a `SOAPConnection` object are sent with the method `call`, which both sends the message and blocks until it receives the response. Thus, the return value for the method `call` is the SOAP-



Message object that is the response to the message that was sent. The parameter request is the message being sent; endpoint represents where it is being sent.

```
SOAPConnectionFactory factory =
    SOAPConnectionFactory.newInstance();
SOAPConnection connection = factory.createConnection();

. . . // create a request message and give it content

java.net.URL endpoint =
    new URL("http://fabulous.com/gizmo/order");
SOAPMessage response = connection.call(request, endpoint);
```

Note that the second argument to the method call, which identifies where the message is being sent, can be a String object or a URL object. Thus, the last two lines of code from the preceding example could also have been the following:

```
String endpoint = "http://fabulous.com/gizmo/order";
SOAPMessage response = connection.call(request, endpoint);
```

A Web service implemented for request-response messaging must return a response to any message it receives. The response is a SOAPMessage object, just as the request is a SOAPMessage object. When the request message is an update, the response is an acknowledgement that the update was received. Such an acknowledgement implies that the update was successful. Some messages may not require any response at all. The service that gets such a message is still required to send back a response because one is needed to unblock the call method. In this case, the response is not related to the content of the message; it is simply a message to unblock the call method.

Now that you have some background on SOAP messages and SOAP connections, in the next section you will see how to use the SAAJ API.

## Tutorial

This tutorial will walk you through how to use the SAAJ API. First, it covers the basics of creating and sending a simple SOAP message. Then you will learn more details about adding content to messages, including how to create SOAP faults and attributes. Finally, you will learn how to send a message and retrieve

the content of the response. After going through this tutorial, you will know how to perform the following tasks:

- Creating and Sending a Simple Message
- Adding Content to the Header
- Adding Content to the SOAP Body
- Adding Content to the SOAPPart Object
- Adding a Document to the SOAP Body
- Manipulating Message Content Using SAAJ or DOM APIs
- Adding Attachments
- Adding Attributes
- Using SOAP Faults

In the section Code Examples (page 380), you will see the code fragments from earlier parts of the tutorial in runnable applications, which you can test yourself.

A SAAJ client can send request-response messages to Web services that are implemented to do request-response messaging. This section demonstrates how you can do this.

## Creating and Sending a Simple Message

This section covers the basics of creating and sending a simple message and retrieving the content of the response. It includes the following topics:

- Creating a Message
- Parts of a Message
- Accessing Elements of a Message
- Adding Content to the Body
- Getting a SOAPConnection Object
- Sending a Message
- Getting the Content of a Message

### Creating a Message

The first step is to create a message, which you do using a `MessageFactory` object. The SAAJ API provides a default implementation of the `MessageFac-`

tory class, thus making it easy to get an instance. The following code fragment illustrates getting an instance of the default message factory and then using it to create a message.

```
MessageFactory factory = MessageFactory.newInstance();
SOAPMessage message = factory.createMessage();
```

As is true of the `newInstance` method for `SOAPConnectionFactory`, the `newInstance` method for `MessageFactory` is static, so you invoke it by calling `MessageFactory.newInstance`.

## Parts of a Message

A `SOAPMessage` object is required to have certain elements, and, as stated previously, the SAAJ API simplifies things for you by returning a new `SOAPMessage` object that already contains these elements. So `message`, which was created in the preceding line of code, automatically has the following:

- I. A `SOAPPart` object that contains
  - A. A `SOAPEnvelope` object that contains
    - 1. An empty `SOAPHeader` object
    - 2. An empty `SOAPBody` object

The `SOAPHeader` object is optional and may be deleted if it is not needed. However, if there is one, it must precede the `SOAPBody` object. The `SOAPBody` object can hold the content of the message and can also contain fault messages that contain status information or details about a problem with the message. The section [Using SOAP Faults](#) (page 375) walks you through how to use `SOAPFault` objects.

## Accessing Elements of a Message

The next step in creating a message is to access its parts so that content can be added. There are two ways to do this. The `SOAPMessage` object `message`, created in the previous code fragment, is the place to start.

The first way to access the parts of the message is to work your way through the structure of the message. The message contains a `SOAPPart` object, so you use the `getSOAPPart` method of `message` to retrieve it:

```
SOAPPart soapPart = message.getSOAPPart();
```

Next you can use the `getEnvelope` method of `soapPart` to retrieve the `SOAPEnvelope` object that it contains.

```
SOAPEnvelope envelope = soapPart.getEnvelope();
```

You can now use the `getHeader` and `getBody` methods of `envelope` to retrieve its empty `SOAPHeader` and `SOAPBody` objects.

```
SOAPHeader header = envelope.getHeader();  
SOAPBody body = envelope.getBody();
```

The second way to access the parts of the message is to retrieve the message header and body directly, without retrieving the `SOAPPart` or `SOAPEnvelope`. To do so, use the `getSOAPHeader` and `getSOAPBody` methods of `SOAPMessage`:

```
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();  
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
```

This example of a SAAJ client does not use a SOAP header, so you can delete it. (You will see more about headers later.) Because all `SOAPElement` objects, including `SOAPHeader` objects, are derived from the `Node` interface, you use the method `Node.detachNode` to delete header.

```
header.detachNode();
```

## Adding Content to the Body

To add content to the body, you need to create a `SOAPBodyElement` object to hold the content. When you create any new element, you also need to create an associated `Name` object so that it is uniquely identified.

One way to create `Name` objects is by using `SOAPEnvelope` methods, so you can use the variable `envelope` from the previous code fragment to create the `Name` object for your new element. Another way to create `Name` objects is to use `SOAPFactory` methods, which are useful if you do not have access to the `SOAPEnvelope`.

---

**Note:** The `SOAPFactory` class also lets you create XML elements when you are not creating an entire message or do not have access to a complete `SOAPMessage` object. For example, JAX-RPC implementations often work with XML fragments rather than complete `SOAPMessage` objects. Consequently, they do not have access to a `SOAPEnvelope` object, which makes using a `SOAPFactory` object to create `Name`

objects very useful. In addition to a method for creating `Name` objects, the `SOAPFactory` class provides methods for creating `Detail` objects and SOAP fragments. You will find an explanation of `Detail` objects in the SOAP Fault sections Overview of SOAP Faults (page 375) and Creating and Populating a `SOAPFault` Object (page 377).

---

`Name` objects associated with `SOAPBodyElement` or `SOAPHeaderElement` objects must be fully qualified; that is, they must be created with a local name, a prefix for the namespace being used, and a URI for the namespace. Specifying a namespace for an element makes clear which one is meant if there is more than one element with the same local name.

The code fragment that follows retrieves the `SOAPBody` object `body` from message, uses a `SOAPFactory` to create a `Name` object for the element to be added, and adds a new `SOAPBodyElement` object to `body`.

```
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
SOAPFactory soapFactory = SOAPFactory.newInstance();
Name bodyName = soapFactory.createName("GetLastTradePrice",
    "m", "http://wombat.ztrade.com");
SOAPBodyElement bodyElement = body.addBodyElement(bodyName);
```

At this point, `body` contains a `SOAPBodyElement` object identified by the `Name` object `bodyName`, but there is still no content in `bodyElement`. Assuming that you want to get a quote for the stock of Sun Microsystems, Inc., you need to create a child element for the symbol using the method `addChildElement`. Then you need to give it the stock symbol using the method `addTextNode`. The `Name` object for the new `SOAPElement` object `symbol` is initialized with only a local name because child elements inherit the prefix and URI from the parent element.

```
Name name = soapFactory.createName("symbol");
SOAPElement symbol = bodyElement.addChildElement(name);
symbol.addTextNode("SUNW");
```

You might recall that the headers and content in a `SOAPPart` object must be in XML format. The SAAJ API takes care of this for you, building the appropriate XML constructs automatically when you call methods such as `addBodyElement`, `addChildElement`, and `addTextNode`. Note that you can call the method `addTextNode` only on an element such as `bodyElement` or any child elements that are added to it. You cannot call `addTextNode` on a `SOAPHeader` or `SOAPBody` object because they contain elements, not text.

The content that you have just added to your SOAPBody object will look like the following when it is sent over the wire:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    <m:GetLastTradePrice xmlns:m="http://wombat.ztrade.com">
      <symbol>SUNW</symbol>
    </m:GetLastTradePrice>
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

Let's examine this XML excerpt line by line to see how it relates to your SAAJ code. Note that an XML parser does not care about indentations, but they are generally used to indicate element levels and thereby make it easier for a human reader to understand.

SAAJ code:

```
SOAPMessage message = messageFactory.createMessage();
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
```

XML it produces:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
  xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Header/>
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    .
    .
    .
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

The outermost element in this XML example is the SOAP envelope element, indicated by SOAP-ENV:Envelope. Envelope is the name of the element, and SOAP-ENV is the namespace prefix. The interface SOAPEnvelope represents a SOAP envelope.

The first line signals the beginning of the SOAP envelope element, and the last line signals the end of it; everything in between is part of the SOAP envelope. The second line is an example of an attribute for the SOAP envelope element. Because a SOAP Envelope element always contains this attribute with this value, a SOAPMessage object comes with it automatically included. xmlns stands for "XML namespace," and its value is the URI of the namespace associated with Envelope.

The next line is an empty SOAP header. We could remove it by calling `header.detachNode` after the `getSOAPHeader` call.

The next two lines mark the beginning and end of the SOAP body, represented in SAAJ by a `SOAPBody` object. The next step is to add content to the body.

SAAJ code:

```
Name bodyName = soapFactory.createName("GetLastTradePrice",
    "m", "http://wombat.ztrade.com");
SOAPBodyElement bodyElement = body.addBodyElement(bodyName);
```

XML it produces:

```
<m:GetLastTradePrice
  xmlns:m="http://wombat.ztrade.com">
  .
  .
  .
</m:GetLastTradePrice>
```

These lines are what the `SOAPBodyElement bodyElement` in your code represents. `GetLastTradePrice` is its local name, `m` is its namespace prefix, and `http://wombat.ztrade.com` is its namespace URI.

SAAJ code:

```
Name name = soapFactory.createName("symbol");
SOAPElement symbol = bodyElement.addChildElement(name);
symbol.addTextNode("SUNW");
```

XML it produces:

```
<symbol>SUNW</symbol>
```

The String `"SUNW"` is the text node for the element `<symbol>`. This String object is the message content that your recipient, the stock quote service, receives.

## Getting a `SOAPConnection` Object

The SAAJ API is focused primarily on creating messages. Once you have a message, you can send it using various mechanisms (JMS or JAXM, for example). The SAAJ API does, however, provide a simple mechanism for request-response messaging.

To send a message, a SAAJ client may use a `SOAPConnection` object. A `SOAPConnection` object is a point-to-point connection, meaning that it goes directly from the sender to the destination (usually a URL) that the sender specifies.

The first step is to obtain a `SOAPConnectionFactory` object that you can use to create your connection. The SAAJ API makes this easy by providing the `SOAPConnectionFactory` class with a default implementation. You can get an instance of this implementation with the following line of code.

```
SOAPConnectionFactory soapConnectionFactory =  
    SOAPConnectionFactory.newInstance();
```

Now you can use `soapConnectionFactory` to create a `SOAPConnection` object.

```
SOAPConnection connection =  
    soapConnectionFactory.createConnection();
```

You will use `connection` to send the message that you created.

## Sending a Message

A SAAJ client calls the `SOAPConnection` method `call` on a `SOAPConnection` object to send a message. The `call` method takes two arguments, the message being sent and the destination to which the message should go. This message is going to the stock quote service indicated by the URL object endpoint.

```
java.net.URL endpoint = new URL(  
    "http://wombat.ztrade.com/quotes");  
  
SOAPMessage response = connection.call(message, endpoint);
```

The content of the message you sent is the stock symbol `SUNW`; the `SOAPMessage` object `response` should contain the last stock price for Sun Microsystems, which you will retrieve in the next section.

A connection uses a fair amount of resources, so it is a good idea to close a connection as soon as you are through using it.

```
connection.close();
```



## Getting the Content of a Message

The initial steps for retrieving a message's content are the same as those for giving content to a message: Either you use the `Message` object to get the `SOAPBody` object, or you access the `SOAPBody` object through the `SOAPPart` and `SOAPEnvelope` objects.

Then you access the `SOAPBody` object's `SOAPBodyElement` object, because that is the element to which content was added in the example. (In a later section you will see how to add content directly to the `SOAPPart` object, in which case you would not need to access the `SOAPBodyElement` object for adding content or for retrieving it.)

To get the content, which was added with the method `SOAPElement.addTextNode`, you call the method `Node.getValue`. Note that `getValue` returns the value of the immediate child of the element that calls the method. Therefore, in the following code fragment, the method `getValue` is called on `bodyElement`, the element on which the method `addTextNode` was called.

In order to access `bodyElement`, you need to call the method `getChildElements` on `soapBody`. Passing `bodyName` to `getChildElements` returns a `java.util.Iterator` object that contains all of the child elements identified by the `Name` object `bodyName`. You already know that there is only one, so just calling the method `next` on it will return the `SOAPBodyElement` you want. Note that the method `Iterator.next` returns a `Java Object`, so it is necessary to cast the `Object` it returns to a `SOAPBodyElement` object before assigning it to the variable `bodyElement`.

```
SOAPBody soapBody = response.getSOAPBody();
java.util.Iterator iterator =
    soapBody.getChildElements(bodyName);
SOAPBodyElement bodyElement =
    (SOAPBodyElement)iterator.next();
String lastPrice = bodyElement.getValue();
System.out.print("The last price for SUNW is ");
System.out.println(lastPrice);
```

If there were more than one element with the name `bodyName`, you would have had to use a `while` loop using the method `Iterator.hasNext` to make sure that you got all of them.

```
while (iterator.hasNext()) {
    SOAPBodyElement bodyElement =
        (SOAPBodyElement)iterator.next();
    String lastPrice = bodyElement.getValue();
    System.out.print("The last price for SUNW is ");
    System.out.println(lastPrice);
}
```

At this point, you have seen how to send a very basic request-response message and get the content from the response. The next sections provide more detail on adding content to messages.

## Adding Content to the Header

To add content to the header, you need to create a `SOAPHeaderElement` object. As with all new elements, it must have an associated `Name` object, which you can create using the message's `SOAPEnvelope` object or a `SOAPFactory` object.

For example, suppose you want to add a conformance claim header to the message to state that your message conforms to the WS-I Basic Profile.

The following code fragment retrieves the `SOAPHeader` object from `message` and adds a new `SOAPHeaderElement` object to it. This `SOAPHeaderElement` object contains the correct qualified name and attribute for a WS-I conformance claim header.

```
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();
Name headerName = soapFactory.createName("Claim",
    "wsi", "http://ws-i.org/schemas/conformanceClaim/");
SOAPHeaderElement headerElement =
    header.addHeaderElement(headerName);
headerElement.addAttribute(soapFactory.createName(
    "conformsTo"), "http://ws-i.org/profiles/basic1.0/");
```

At this point, `header` contains the `SOAPHeaderElement` object `headerElement` identified by the `Name` object `headerName`. Note that the `addHeaderElement` method both creates `headerElement` and adds it to `header`.

A conformance claim header has no content. This code produces the following XML header:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Header>
  <wsi:Claim conformsTo="http://ws-i.org/profiles/basic1.0/"
    xmlns:wsi="http://ws-i.org/schemas/conformanceClaim/" />
</SOAP-ENV:Header>
```

For more information about creating SOAP messages that conform to WS-I, see the Messaging section of the WS-I Basic Profile.

For a different kind of header, you might want to add content to `headerElement`. The following line of code uses the method `addTextNode` to do this.

```
headerElement.addTextNode("order");
```

Now you have the `SOAPHeader` object `header` that contains a `SOAPHeaderElement` object whose content is "order".

## Adding Content to the SOAP Body

The process for adding content to the `SOAPBody` object is the same as the process for adding content to the `SOAPHeader` object. You access the `SOAPBody` object, add a `SOAPBodyElement` object to it, and add text to the `SOAPBodyElement` object. It is possible to add additional `SOAPBodyElement` objects, and it is possible to add subelements to the `SOAPBodyElement` objects with the method `addChildElement`. For each element or child element, you add content with the method `addTextNode`.

The following example shows adding multiple `SOAPElement` objects and adding text to each of them. The code first creates the `SOAPBodyElement` object `purchaseLineItems`, which has a fully qualified name associated with it. That is, the `Name` object for it has a local name, a namespace prefix, and a namespace URI. As you saw earlier, a `SOAPBodyElement` object is required to have a fully qualified name, but child elements added to it, such as `SOAPElement` objects, may have `Name` objects with only the local name.

```
SOAPBody body = soapFactory.getSOAPBody();
Name bodyName = soapFactory.createName("PurchaseLineItems",
    "PO", "http://sonata.fruitsgalore.com");
SOAPBodyElement purchaseLineItems =
    body.addBodyElement(bodyName);
```

```

Name childName = soapFactory.createName("Order");
SOAPElement order =
    purchaseLineItems.addChildElement(childName);

childName = soapFactory.createName("Product");
SOAPElement product = order.addChildElement(childName);
product.addTextNode("Apple");

childName = soapFactory.createName("Price");
SOAPElement price = order.addChildElement(childName);
price.addTextNode("1.56");

childName = soapFactory.createName("Order");
SOAPElement order2 =
    purchaseLineItems.addChildElement(childName);

childName = soapFactory.createName("Product");
SOAPElement product2 = order2.addChildElement(childName);
product2.addTextNode("Peach");

childName = soapFactory.createName("Price");
SOAPElement price2 = order2.addChildElement(childName);
price2.addTextNode("1.48");

```

The SAAJ code in the preceding example produces the following XML in the SOAP body:

```

<P0:PurchaseLineItems
  xmlns:P0="http://www.sonata.fruitsgalore/order">
  <Order>
    <Product>Apple</Product>
    <Price>1.56</Price>
  </Order>

  <Order>
    <Product>Peach</Product>
    <Price>1.48</Price>
  </Order>
</P0:PurchaseLineItems>

```

## Adding Content to the SOAPPart Object

If the content you want to send is in a file, SAAJ provides an easy way to add it directly to the SOAPPart object. This means that you do not access the SOAPBody object and build the XML content yourself, as you did in the previous section.

To add a file directly to the SOAPPart object, you use a `javax.xml.transform.Source` object from JAXP (the Java API for XML Processing). There are three types of Source objects: `SAXSource`, `DOMSource`, and `StreamSource`. A `StreamSource` object holds content as an XML document. `SAXSource` and `DOMSource` objects hold content along with the instructions for transforming the content into an XML document.

The following code fragment uses the JAXP API to build a `DOMSource` object that is passed to the `SOAPPart.setContent` method. The first three lines of code get a `DocumentBuilderFactory` object and use it to create the `DocumentBuilder` object `builder`. Because SOAP messages use namespaces, you should set the `NamespaceAware` property for the factory to `true`. Then `builder` parses the content file to produce a `Document` object.

```
DocumentBuilderFactory dbFactory =
    DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
dbFactory.setNamespaceAware(true);
DocumentBuilder builder = dbFactory.newDocumentBuilder();
Document document =
    builder.parse("file:///music/order/soap.xml");
DOMSource domSource = new DOMSource(document);
```

The following two lines of code access the SOAPPart object (using the `SOAPMessage` object `message`) and set the new `Document` object as its content. The method `SOAPPart.setContent` not only sets content for the `SOAPBody` object but also sets the appropriate header for the `SOAPHeader` object.

```
SOAPPart soapPart = message.getSOAPPart();
soapPart.setContent(domSource);
```

The XML file you use to set the content of the SOAPPart object must include `Envelope` and `Body` elements, like this:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Body>
    ...
  </SOAP-ENV:Body>
</SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

You will see other ways to add content to a message in the sections [Adding a Document to the SOAP Body](#) (page 366) and [Adding Attachments](#) (page 367).

## Adding a Document to the SOAP Body

In addition to setting the content of the entire SOAP message to that of a DOM-Source object, you can add a DOM document directly to the body of the message. This capability means that you do not have to create a `javax.xml.transform.Source` object. After you parse the document, you can add it directly to the message body:

```
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
SOAPBodyElement docElement = body.addDocument(document);
```

## Manipulating Message Content Using SAAJ or DOM APIs

Because SAAJ nodes and elements implement the DOM Node and Element interfaces, you have many options for adding or changing message content:

- Use only DOM APIs
- Use only SAAJ APIs
- Use SAAJ APIs and then switch to using DOM APIs
- Use DOM APIs and then switch to using SAAJ APIs

The first three of these cause no problems. Once you have created a message, whether or not you have imported its content from another document, you can start adding or changing nodes using either SAAJ or DOM APIs.

But if you use DOM APIs and then switch to using SAAJ APIs to manipulate the document, any references to objects within the tree that were obtained using DOM APIs are no longer valid. If you must use SAAJ APIs after using DOM APIs, you should set all of your DOM typed references to null, because they can become invalid. For more information about the exact cases in which references become invalid, see the SAAJ API documentation.

The basic rule is that you can continue manipulating the message content using SAAJ APIs as long as you want to, but once you start manipulating it using DOM, you should not use SAAJ APIs after that.

## Adding Attachments

An `AttachmentPart` object can contain any type of content, including XML. And because the SOAP part can contain only XML content, you must use an `AttachmentPart` object for any content that is not in XML format.

### Creating an AttachmentPart Object and Adding Content

The `SOAPMessage` object creates an `AttachmentPart` object, and the message also has to add the attachment to itself after content has been added. The `SOAPMessage` class has three methods for creating an `AttachmentPart` object.

The first method creates an attachment with no content. In this case, an `AttachmentPart` method is used later to add content to the attachment.

```
AttachmentPart attachment = message.createAttachmentPart();
```

You add content to `attachment` with the `AttachmentPart` method `setContent`. This method takes two parameters, a Java Object for the content, and a `String` object that gives the content type. Content in the `SOAPBody` part of a message automatically has a `Content-Type` header with the value `"text/xml"` because the content has to be in XML. In contrast, the type of content in an `AttachmentPart` object has to be specified because it can be any type.

Each `AttachmentPart` object has one or more headers associated with it. When you specify a type to the method `setContent`, that type is used for the header `Content-Type`. `Content-Type` is the only header that is required. You may set other optional headers, such as `Content-Id` and `Content-Location`. For convenience, SAAJ provides `get` and `set` methods for the headers `Content-Type`, `Content-Id`, and `Content-Location`. These headers can be helpful in accessing a particular attachment when a message has multiple attachments. For example, to access the attachments that have particular headers, you call the `SOAPMessage` method `getAttachments` and pass it the header or headers you are interested in.

The following code fragment shows one of the ways to use the method `setContent`. This method takes two parameters, the first being a Java Object containing the content and the second being a `String` giving the content type. The Java Object may be a `String`, a stream, a `javax.xml.transform.Source` object, or a `javax.activation.DataHandler` object. The Java Object being added in the following code fragment is a `String`, which is plain text, so the second argument must be `"text/plain"`. The code also sets a content identifier, which can be

used to identify this `AttachmentPart` object. After you have added content to attachment, you need to add it to the `SOAPMessage` object, which is done in the last line.

```
String stringContent = "Update address for Sunny Skies " +  
    "Inc., to 10 Upbeat Street, Pleasant Grove, CA 95439";  
  
attachment.setContent(stringContent, "text/plain");  
attachment.setContentId("update_address");  
  
message.addAttachmentPart(attachment);
```

The variable `attachment` now represents an `AttachmentPart` object that contains the string `stringContent` and has a header that contains the string `"text/plain"`. It also has a `Content-Id` header with `"update_address"` as its value. And `attachment` is now part of `message`.

The other two `SOAPMessage.createAttachment` methods create an `AttachmentPart` object complete with content. One is very similar to the `AttachmentPart.setContent` method in that it takes the same parameters and does essentially the same thing. It takes a Java Object containing the content and a String giving the content type. As with `AttachmentPart.setContent`, the Object may be a String, a stream, a `javax.xml.transform.Source` object, or a `javax.activation.DataHandler` object.

The other method for creating an `AttachmentPart` object with content takes a `DataHandler` object, which is part of the JavaBeans Activation Framework (JAF). Using a `DataHandler` object is fairly straightforward. First you create a `java.net.URL` object for the file you want to add as content. Then you create a `DataHandler` object initialized with the URL object:

```
URL url = new URL("http://greatproducts.com/gizmos/img.jpg");  
DataHandler dataHandler = new DataHandler(url);  
AttachmentPart attachment =  
    message.createAttachmentPart(dataHandler);  
attachment.setContentId("attached_image");  
  
message.addAttachmentPart(attachment);
```

You might note two things about the previous code fragment. First, it sets a header for `Content-ID` with the method `setContentId`. This method takes a String that can be whatever you like to identify the attachment. Second, unlike the other methods for setting content, this one does not take a String for `Content-Type`. This method takes care of setting the `Content-Type` header for you,



which is possible because one of the things a `DataHandler` object does is determine the data type of the file it contains.

## Accessing an AttachmentPart Object

If you receive a message with attachments or want to change an attachment to a message you are building, you will need to access the attachment. The `SOAPMessage` class provides two versions of the method `getAttachments` for retrieving its `AttachmentPart` objects. When it is given no argument, the method `SOAPMessage.getAttachments` returns a `java.util.Iterator` object over all the `AttachmentPart` objects in a message. When `getAttachments` is given a `MimeHeaders` object, which is a list of MIME headers, it returns an iterator over the `AttachmentPart` objects that have a header that matches one of the headers in the list. The following code uses the `getAttachments` method that takes no arguments and thus retrieves all of the `AttachmentPart` objects in the `SOAPMessage` object `message`. Then it prints out the content ID, content type, and content of each `AttachmentPart` object.

```
java.util.Iterator iterator = message.getAttachments();
while (iterator.hasNext()) {
    AttachmentPart attachment =
        (AttachmentPart)iterator.next();
    String id = attachment.getContentId();
    String type = attachment.getContentType();
    System.out.print("Attachment " + id +
        " has content type " + type);
    if (type == "text/plain") {
        Object content = attachment.getContent();
        System.out.println("Attachment " +
            "contains:\n" + content);
    }
}
```

## Adding Attributes

An XML element may have one or more attributes that give information about that element. An attribute consists of a name for the attribute followed immediately by an equals sign (=) and its value.

The `SOAPElement` interface provides methods for adding an attribute, for getting the value of an attribute, and for removing an attribute. For example, in the following code fragment, the attribute named `id` is added to the `SOAPElement`

object `person`. Because `person` is a `SOAPElement` object rather than a `SOAPBodyElement` object or `SOAPHeaderElement` object, it is legal for its `Name` object to contain only a local name.

```
Name attributeName = envelope.createName("id");
person.addAttribute(attributeName, "Person7");
```

These lines of code will generate the first line in the following XML fragment.

```
<person id="Person7">
...
</person>
```

The following line of code retrieves the value of the attribute whose name is `id`.

```
String attributeValue =
    person.getAttributeValue(attributeName);
```

If you had added two or more attributes to `person`, the previous line of code would have returned only the value for the attribute named `id`. If you wanted to retrieve the values for all of the attributes for `person`, you would use the method `getAllAttributes`, which returns an iterator over all of the values. The following lines of code retrieve and print out each value on a separate line until there are no more attribute values. Note that the method `Iterator.next` returns a Java Object, which is cast to a `Name` object so that it can be assigned to the `Name` object `attributeName`. (The example in `DOMExample.java` (page 391) uses code similar to this.)

```
Iterator iterator = person.getAllAttributes();
while (iterator.hasNext()){
    Name attributeName = (Name) iterator.next();
    System.out.println("Attribute name is " +
        attributeName.getQualifiedName());
    System.out.println("Attribute value is " +
        element.getAttributeValue(attributeName));
}
```

The following line of code removes the attribute named `id` from `person`. The variable `successful` will be true if the attribute was removed successfully.

```
boolean successful = person.removeAttribute(attributeName);
```

In this section you saw how to add, retrieve, and remove attributes. This information is general in that it applies to any element. The next section discusses attributes that may be added only to header elements.

## Header Attributes

Attributes that appear in a `SOAPHeaderElement` object determine how a recipient processes a message. You can think of header attributes as offering a way to extend a message, giving information about such things as authentication, transaction management, payment, and so on. A header attribute refines the meaning of the header, while the header refines the meaning of the message contained in the SOAP Body.

The SOAP 1.1 specification defines two attributes that can appear only in `SOAPHeaderElement` objects: `actor` and `mustUnderstand`. The next two sections discuss these attributes.

### The Actor Attribute

The attribute `actor` is optional, but if it is used, it must appear in a `SOAPHeaderElement` object. Its purpose is to indicate the recipient of a header element. The default actor is the message's ultimate recipient; that is, if no actor attribute is supplied, the message goes directly to the ultimate recipient.

An actor is an application that can both receive SOAP messages and forward them to the next actor. The ability to specify one or more actors as intermediate recipients makes it possible to route a message to multiple recipients and to supply header information that applies specifically to each of the recipients.

For example, suppose that a message is an incoming purchase order. Its `SOAPHeader` object might have `SOAPHeaderElement` objects with actor attributes that route the message to applications that function as the order desk, the shipping desk, the confirmation desk, and the billing department. Each of these applications will take the appropriate action, remove the `SOAPHeaderElement` objects relevant to it, and send the message on to the next actor.

---

**Note:** Although the SAAJ API provides the API for adding these attributes, it does not supply the API for processing them. For example, the actor attribute requires that there be an implementation such as a messaging provider service to route the message from one actor to the next.

---

An actor is identified by its URI. For example, the following line of code, in which `orderHeader` is a `SOAPHeaderElement` object, sets the actor to the given URI.

```
orderHeader.setActor("http://gizmos.com/orders");
```

Additional actors may be set in their own `SOAPHeaderElement` objects. The following code fragment first uses the `SOAPMessage` object `message` to get its `SOAPHeader` object `header`. Then `header` creates four `SOAPHeaderElement` objects, each of which sets its actor attribute.

```
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();
SOAPFactory soapFactory = SOAPFactory.newInstance();

String namespace = "ns";
String namespaceURI = "http://gizmos.com/NSURI";

Name order = soapFactory.createName("orderDesk",
    namespace, namespaceURI);
SOAPHeaderElement orderHeader =
    header.addHeaderElement(order);
orderHeader.setActor("http://gizmos.com/orders");

Name shipping =
    soapFactory.createName("shippingDesk",
        namespace, namespaceURI);
SOAPHeaderElement shippingHeader =
    header.addHeaderElement(shipping);
shippingHeader.setActor("http://gizmos.com/shipping");

Name confirmation =
    soapFactory.createName("confirmationDesk",
        namespace, namespaceURI);
SOAPHeaderElement confirmationHeader =
    header.addHeaderElement(confirmation);
confirmationHeader.setActor(
    "http://gizmos.com/confirmations");

Name billing = soapFactory.createName("billingDesk",
    namespace, namespaceURI);
SOAPHeaderElement billingHeader =
    header.addHeaderElement(billing);
billingHeader.setActor("http://gizmos.com/billing");
```

The `SOAPHeader` interface provides two methods that return a `java.util.Iterator` object over all of the `SOAPHeaderElement` objects with an actor that

matches the specified actor. The first method, `examineHeaderElements`, returns an iterator over all of the elements with the specified actor.

```
java.util.Iterator headerElements =
    header.examineHeaderElements("http://gizmos.com/orders");
```

The second method, `extractHeaderElements`, not only returns an iterator over all of the `SOAPHeaderElement` objects with the specified actor attribute but also detaches them from the `SOAPHeader` object. So, for example, after the order desk application has done its work, it would call `extractHeaderElements` to remove all of the `SOAPHeaderElement` objects that applied to it.

```
java.util.Iterator headerElements =
    header.extractHeaderElements("http://gizmos.com/orders");
```

Each `SOAPHeaderElement` object may have only one actor attribute, but the same actor may be an attribute for multiple `SOAPHeaderElement` objects.

Two additional `SOAPHeader` methods, `examineAllHeaderElements` and `extractAllHeaderElements`, allow you to examine or extract all the header elements, whether or not they have an actor attribute. For example, you could use the following code to display the values of all the header elements:

```
Iterator allHeaders =
    header.examineAllHeaderElements();
while (allHeaders.hasNext()) {
    SOAPHeaderElement headerElement =
        (SOAPHeaderElement)allHeaders.next();
    Name headerName =
        headerElement.getElementName();
    System.out.println("\nHeader name is " +
        headerName.getQualifiedName());
    System.out.println("Actor is " +
        headerElement.getActor());
    System.out.println("MustUnderstand is " +
        headerElement.getMustUnderstand());
}
```

## The mustUnderstand Attribute

The other attribute that must be added only to a `SOAPHeaderElement` object is `mustUnderstand`. This attribute says whether or not the recipient (indicated by the actor attribute) is required to process a header entry. When the value of the `mustUnderstand` attribute is `true`, the actor must understand the semantics of the header entry and must process it correctly to those semantics. If the value is

false, processing the header entry is optional. A `SOAPHeaderElement` object with no `mustUnderstand` attribute is equivalent to one with a `mustUnderstand` attribute whose value is false.

The `mustUnderstand` attribute is used to call attention to the fact that the semantics in an element are different from the semantics in its parent or peer elements. This allows for robust evolution, ensuring that the change in semantics will not be silently ignored by those who may not fully understand it.

If the actor for a header that has a `mustUnderstand` attribute set to `true` cannot process the header, it must send a SOAP fault back to the sender. (See the section *Using SOAP Faults*, page 375 for information.) The actor must not change state or cause any side-effects, so that to an outside observer, it appears that the fault was sent before any header processing was done.

The following code fragment creates a `SOAPHeader` object with a `SOAPHeaderElement` object that has a `mustUnderstand` attribute.

```
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();

Name name = soapFactory.createName("Transaction", "t",
    "http://gizmos.com/orders");

SOAPHeaderElement transaction = header.addHeaderElement(name);
transaction.setMustUnderstand(true);
transaction.addTextNode("5");
```

This code produces the following XML:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Header>
  <t:Transaction
    xmlns:t="http://gizmos.com/orders"
    SOAP-ENV:mustUnderstand="1">
    5
  </t:Transaction>
</SOAP-ENV:Header>
```

You can use the `getMustUnderstand` method to retrieve the value of the `MustUnderstand` attribute. For example, you could add the following to the code fragment at the end of the previous section:

```
System.out.println("MustUnderstand is " +
    headerElement.getMustUnderstand());
```

# Using SOAP Faults

In this section, you will see how to use the API for creating and accessing a SOAP Fault element in an XML message.

## Overview of SOAP Faults

If you send a message that was not successful for some reason, you may get back a response containing a SOAP Fault element that gives you status information, error information, or both. There can be only one SOAP Fault element in a message, and it must be an entry in the SOAP Body. Further, if there is a SOAP Fault element in the SOAP Body, there can be no other elements in the SOAP Body. This means that when you add a SOAP Fault element, you have effectively completed the construction of the SOAP Body. The SOAP 1.1 specification defines only one Body entry, which is the SOAP Fault element. Of course, the SOAP Body may contain other kinds of Body entries, but the SOAP Fault element is the only one that has been defined.

A `SOAPFault` object, the representation of a SOAP Fault element in the SAAJ API, is similar to an `Exception` object in that it conveys information about a problem. However, a `SOAPFault` object is quite different in that it is an element in a message's `SOAPBody` object rather than part of the `try/catch` mechanism used for `Exception` objects. Also, as part of the `SOAPBody` object, which provides a simple means for sending mandatory information intended for the ultimate recipient, a `SOAPFault` object only reports status or error information. It does not halt the execution of an application the way an `Exception` object can.

If you are a client using the SAAJ API and are sending point-to-point messages, the recipient of your message may add a `SOAPFault` object to the response to alert you to a problem. For example, if you sent an order with an incomplete address for where to send the order, the service receiving the order might put a `SOAPFault` object in the return message telling you that part of the address was missing.

Another example of who might send a SOAP fault is an intermediate recipient, or actor. As stated in the section [Adding Attributes](#), page 369, an actor that cannot process a header that has a `mustUnderstand` attribute with a value of `true` must return a SOAP fault to the sender.

A `SOAPFault` object contains the following elements:

- A **fault code** — always required

The fault code must be a fully qualified name, which means that it must contain a prefix followed by a local name. The SOAP 1.1 specification defines a set of fault code local name values in section 4.4.1, which a developer may extend to cover other problems. The default fault code local names defined in the specification relate to the SAAJ API as follows:

- `VersionMismatch` — the namespace for a `SOAPEnvelope` object was invalid
- `MustUnderstand` — an immediate child element of a `SOAPHeader` object had its `mustUnderstand` attribute set to `true`, and the processing party did not understand the element or did not obey it
- `Client` — the `SOAPMessage` object was not formed correctly or did not contain the information needed to succeed
- `Server` — the `SOAPMessage` object could not be processed because of a processing error, not because of a problem with the message itself
- A **fault string** — always required

A human-readable explanation of the fault

- A **fault actor** — required if the `SOAPHeader` object contains one or more actor attributes; optional if no actors are specified, meaning that the only actor is the ultimate destination

The fault actor, which is specified as a URI, identifies who caused the fault. For an explanation of what an actor is, see the section *The Actor Attribute*, page 371.

- A **Detail object** — required if the fault is an error related to the `SOAPBody` object

If, for example, the fault code is `Client`, indicating that the message could not be processed because of a problem in the `SOAPBody` object, the `SOAPFault` object must contain a `Detail` object that gives details about the problem. If a `SOAPFault` object does not contain a `Detail` object, it can be assumed that the `SOAPBody` object was processed successfully.



## Creating and Populating a SOAPFault Object

You have already seen how to add content to a SOAPBody object; this section will walk you through adding a SOAPFault object to a SOAPBody object and then adding its constituent parts.

As with adding content, the first step is to access the SOAPBody object.

```
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
```

With the SOAPBody object `body` in hand, you can use it to create a SOAPFault object. The following line of code both creates a SOAPFault object and adds it to `body`.

```
SOAPFault fault = body.addFault();
```

The SOAPFault interface provides convenience methods that create an element, add the new element to the SOAPFault object, and add a text node all in one operation. For example, in the following lines of code, the method `setFaultCode` creates a `faultcode` element, adds it to `fault`, and adds a `Text` node with the value "SOAP-ENV:Server" by specifying a default prefix and the namespace URI for a SOAP envelope.

```
Name faultName =  
    soapFactory.createName("Server",  
        "", SOAPConstants.URI_NS_SOAP_ENVELOPE);  
fault.setFaultCode(faultName);  
fault.setFaultActor("http://gizmos.com/orders");  
fault.setFaultString("Server not responding");
```

The SOAPFault object `fault`, created in the previous lines of code, indicates that the cause of the problem is an unavailable server and that the actor at `http://gizmos.com/orders` is having the problem. If the message were being routed only to its ultimate destination, there would have been no need for setting a fault actor. Also note that `fault` does not have a `Detail` object because it does not relate to the SOAPBody object.

The following code fragment creates a SOAPFault object that includes a `Detail` object. Note that a SOAPFault object may have only one `Detail` object, which is simply a container for `DetailEntry` objects, but the `Detail` object may have

multiple `DetailEntry` objects. The `Detail` object in the following lines of code has two `DetailEntry` objects added to it.

```
SOAPFault fault = body.addFault();

Name faultName = soapFactory.createName("Client",
    "", SOAPConstants.URI_NS_SOAP_ENVELOPE);
fault.setFaultCode(faultName);
fault.setFaultString("Message does not have necessary info");

Detail detail = fault.addDetail();

Name entryName = soapFactory.createName("order",
    "PO", "http://gizmos.com/orders/");
DetailEntry entry = detail.addDetailEntry(entryName);
entry.addTextNode("Quantity element does not have a value");

Name entryName2 = soapFactory.createName("confirmation",
    "PO", "http://gizmos.com/confirm");
DetailEntry entry2 = detail.addDetailEntry(entryName2);
entry2.addTextNode("Incomplete address: no zip code");
```

See `SOAPFaultTest.java` (page 390) for an example that uses code like that shown in this section.

## Retrieving Fault Information

Just as the `SOAPFault` interface provides convenience methods for adding information, it also provides convenience methods for retrieving that information. The following code fragment shows what you might write to retrieve fault information from a message you received. In the code fragment, `newMessage` is the `SOAPMessage` object that has been sent to you. Because a `SOAPFault` object must be part of the `SOAPBody` object, the first step is to access the `SOAPBody` object. Then the code tests to see if the `SOAPBody` object contains a `SOAPFault` object. If so, the code retrieves the `SOAPFault` object and uses it to retrieve its contents. The convenience methods `getFaultCode`, `getFaultString`, and `getFaultActor` make retrieving the values very easy.

```
SOAPBody body = newMessage.getSOAPBody();
if ( body.hasFault() ) {
    SOAPFault newFault = body.getFault();
    Name code = newFault.getFaultCodeAsName();
    String string = newFault.getFaultString();
    String actor = newFault.getFaultActor();
```

Next the code prints out the values it just retrieved. Not all messages are required to have a fault actor, so the code tests to see if there is one. Testing whether the variable actor is null works because the method `getFaultActor` returns null if a fault actor has not been set.

```
System.out.println("SOAP fault contains: ");
System.out.println("  Fault code = " +
    code.getQualifiedName());
System.out.println("  Fault string = " + string);

if ( actor != null ) {
    System.out.println("  Fault actor = " + actor);
}
```

The final task is to retrieve the `Detail` object and get its `DetailEntry` objects. The code uses the `SOAPFault` object `newFault` to retrieve the `Detail` object `newDetail`, and then it uses `newDetail` to call the method `getDetailEntries`. This method returns the `java.util.Iterator` object `entries`, which contains all of the `DetailEntry` objects in `newDetail`. Not all `SOAPFault` objects are required to have a `Detail` object, so the code tests to see whether `newDetail` is null. If it is not, the code prints out the values of the `DetailEntry` objects as long as there are any.

```
Detail newDetail = newFault.getDetail();
if ( newDetail != null ) {
    Iterator entries = newDetail.getDetailEntries();
    while ( entries.hasNext() ) {
        DetailEntry newEntry =
            (DetailEntry)entries.next();
        String value = newEntry.getValue();
        System.out.println("  Detail entry = " + value);
    }
}
```

In summary, you have seen how to add a `SOAPFault` object and its contents to a message as well as how to retrieve the contents. A `SOAPFault` object, which is optional, is added to the `SOAPBody` object to convey status or error information. It must always have a fault code and a `String` explanation of the fault. A `SOAPFault` object must indicate the actor that is the source of the fault only when there are multiple actors; otherwise, it is optional. Similarly, the `SOAPFault` object must contain a `Detail` object with one or more `DetailEntry` objects only when the contents of the `SOAPBody` object could not be processed successfully.

See `SOAPFaultTest.java` (page 390) for an example that uses code like that shown in this section.

## Code Examples

The first part of this tutorial used code fragments to walk you through the fundamentals of using the SAAJ API. In this section, you will use some of those code fragments to create applications. First, you will see the program `Request.java`. Then you will see how to run the programs `MyUddiPing.java`, `HeaderExample.java`, `SOAPFaultTest.java`, and `DOMExample.java`.

You do not have to start the J2EE Application Server in order to run these examples.

### Request.java

The class `Request.java` puts together the code fragments used in Tutorial (page 353) and adds what is needed to make it a complete example of a client sending a request-response message. In addition to putting all the code together, it adds `import` statements, a `main` method, and a `try/catch` block with exception handling.

```
import javax.xml.soap.*;
import java.util.*;
import java.net.URL;

public class Request {
    public static void main(String[] args){
        try {
            SOAPConnectionFactory soapConnectionFactory =
                SOAPConnectionFactory.newInstance();
            SOAPConnection connection =
                soapConnectionFactory.createConnection();
            SOAPFactory soapFactory =
                SOAPFactory.newInstance();

            MessageFactory factory =
                MessageFactory.newInstance();
            SOAPMessage message = factory.createMessage();

            SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();
            SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
```

```

header.detachNode();

Name bodyName = soapFactory.createName(
    "GetLastTradePrice", "m",
    "http://wombats.ztrade.com");
SOAPBodyElement bodyElement =
    body.addBodyElement(bodyName);

Name name = soapFactory.createName("symbol");
SOAPElement symbol =
    bodyElement.addChildElement(name);
symbol.addTextNode("SUNW");

URL endpoint = new URL
    ("http://wombat.ztrade.com/quotes");
SOAPMessage response =
    connection.call(message, endpoint);

connection.close();

SOAPBody soapBody = response.getSOAPBody();

Iterator iterator =
    soapBody.getChildElements(bodyName);
SOAPBodyElement bodyElement =
    (SOAPBodyElement)iterator.next();
String lastPrice = bodyElement.getValue();

System.out.print("The last price for SUNW is ");
System.out.println(lastPrice);

    } catch (Exception ex) {
        ex.printStackTrace();
    }
}

```

In order for `Request.java` to be runnable, the second argument supplied to the method `call` would have to be a valid existing URI, which is not true in this case. However, the application in the next section is one that you can run.

## MyUddiPing.java

The program `MyUddiPing.java` is another example of a SAAJ client application. It sends a request to a Universal Description, Discovery and Integration (UDDI) service and gets back the response. A UDDI service is a business regis-

try and repository from which you can get information about businesses that have registered themselves with the registry service. For this example, the MyUddiPing application is not actually accessing a UDDI service registry but rather a test (demo) version. Because of this, the number of businesses you can get information about is limited. Nevertheless, MyUddiPing demonstrates a request being sent and a response being received.

## Setting Up

The myuddiping example is in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/myuddiping/
```

---

**Note:** <INSTALL> is the directory where you installed the J2EE Tutorial bundle.

---

In the myuddiping directory, you will find two files and the src directory. The src directory contains one source file, MyUddiPing.java.

The file uddi.properties contains the URL of the destination (the UDDI test registry) and the proxy host and proxy port of the sender. Edit this file to supply the correct proxy host and proxy port if you access the Internet from behind a firewall. If you are not sure what the values for these are, consult your system administrator or another person with that information.

The file build.xml is the build file for this example. It includes the file <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/common/targets.xml, which contains a set of targets common to all the SAAJ examples.

The prepare target creates a directory named build. To invoke the prepare target, you type the following at the command line:

```
asant prepare
```

The target named build compiles the source file MyUddiPing.java and puts the resulting .class file in the build directory. So to do these tasks, you type the following at the command line:

```
asant build
```

## Examining MyUddiPing

We will go through the file `MyUddiPing.java` a few lines at a time, concentrating on the last section. This is the part of the application that accesses only the content you want from the XML message returned by the UDDI registry.

The first few lines of code import the packages used in the application.

```
import javax.xml.soap.*;
import java.net.*;
import java.util.*;
import java.io.*;
```

The next few lines begin the definition of the class `MyUddiPing`, which starts with the definition of its `main` method. The first thing it does is check to see if two arguments were supplied. If not, it prints a usage message and exits. The usage message mentions only one argument; the other is supplied by the `build.xml` target.

```
public class MyUddiPing {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            if (args.length != 2) {
                System.err.println("Argument required: " +
                    "-Dbusiness-name=<name>");
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
```

The following lines create a `java.util.Properties` object that contains the system properties and the properties from the file `uddi.properties` that is in the `myuddiping` directory.

```
        Properties myprops = new Properties();
        myprops.load(new FileInputStream(args[0]));

        Properties props = System.getProperties();

        Enumeration enum = myprops.propertyNames();
        while (enum.hasMoreElements()) {
            String s = (String)enum.nextElement();
            props.put(s, myprops.getProperty(s));
        }
```

The next four lines create a `SOAPMessage` object. First, the code gets an instance of `SOAPConnectionFactory` and uses it to create a connection. Then it gets an instance of `MessageFactory` and uses it to create a message.

```
SOAPConnectionFactory soapConnectionFactory =
    SOAPConnectionFactory.newInstance();
SOAPConnection connection =
    soapConnectionFactory.createConnection();
MessageFactory messageFactory =
    MessageFactory.newInstance();

SOAPMessage message =
    messageFactory.createMessage();
```

The next lines of code retrieve the `SOAPHeader` and `SOAPBody` objects from the message and remove the header.

```
SOAPHeader header = message.getSOAPHeader();
SOAPBody body = message.getSOAPBody();
header.detachNode();
```

The following lines of code create the UDDI `find_business` message. The first line gets a `SOAPFactory` instance that we will use to create names. The next line adds the `SOAPBodyElement` with a fully qualified name, including the required namespace for a UDDI version 2 message. The next lines add two attributes to the new element: the required attribute `generic`, with the UDDI version number 2.0, and the optional attribute `maxRows`, with the value 100. Then the code adds a child element with the `Name` object name and adds text to the element with the method `addTextNode`. The text added is the business name you will supply at the command line when you run the application.

```
SOAPFactory soapFactory =
    SOAPFactory.newInstance();
SOAPBodyElement findBusiness =
    body.addBodyElement(soapFactory.createName(
        "find_business", "",
        "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));
findBusiness.addAttribute(soapFactory.createName(
    "generic"), "2.0");
findBusiness.addAttribute(soapFactory.createName(
    "maxRows"), "100");
SOAPElement businessName =
    findBusiness.addChildElement(
        soapFactory.createName("name"));
businessName.addTextNode(args[1]);
```



The next line of code saves the changes that have been made to the message. This method will be called automatically when the message is sent, but it does not hurt to call it explicitly.

```
message.saveChanges();
```

The following lines display the message that will be sent:

```
System.out.println("\n--- Request Message ---\n");  
message.writeTo(System.out);
```

The next line of code creates the `java.net.URL` object that represents the destination for this message. It gets the value of the property named `URL` from the system property file.

```
URL endpoint = new URL(  
    System.getProperties().getProperty("URL"));
```

Next the message `message` is sent to the destination that `endpoint` represents, which is the UDDI test registry. The `call` method will block until it gets a `SOAPMessage` object back, at which point it returns the reply.

```
SOAPMessage reply =  
    connection.call(message, endpoint);
```

In the next lines of code, the first line prints out a line giving the URL of the sender (the test registry), and the others display the returned message.

```
System.out.println("\n\nReceived reply from: " +  
    endpoint);  
System.out.println("\n---- Reply Message ----\n");  
reply.writeTo(System.out);
```

The returned message is the complete SOAP message, an XML document, as it looks when it comes over the wire. It is a `businessList` that follows the format specified in [http://uddi.org/pubs/DataStructure-V2.03-Published-20020719.htm#\\_Toc25130802](http://uddi.org/pubs/DataStructure-V2.03-Published-20020719.htm#_Toc25130802).

As interesting as it is to see the XML that is actually transmitted, the XML document format does not make it easy to see the text that is the message's content. To remedy this, the last part of `MyUddiPing.java` contains code that prints out just the text content of the response, making it much easier to see the information you want.

Because the content is in the `SOAPBody` object, the first thing you need to do is access it, as shown in the following line of code.

```
SOAPBody replyBody = reply.getSOAPBody();
```

Next the code displays a message describing the content:

```
System.out.println("\n\nContent extracted from " +  
    "the reply message:\n");
```

To display the content of the message, the code uses the known format of the reply message. First it gets all the reply body's child elements named `businessList`:

```
Iterator businessListIterator =  
    replyBody.getChildElements(  
        soapFactory.createName("businessList",  
            "", "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));
```

The method `getChildElements` returns the elements in the form of a `java.util.Iterator` object. You access the child elements by calling the method `next` on the `Iterator` object.

An immediate child of a `SOAPBody` object is a `SOAPBodyElement` object.

We know that the reply can contain only one `businessList` element, so the code then retrieves this one element by calling the iterator's `next` method. Note that the method `Iterator.next` returns an `Object`, which has to be cast to the specific kind of object you are retrieving. Thus, the result of calling `businessListIterator.next` is cast to a `SOAPBodyElement` object:

```
SOAPBodyElement businessList =  
    (SOAPBodyElement)businessListIterator.next();
```

The next element in the hierarchy is a single `businessInfos` element, so the code retrieves this element the same way it retrieved the `businessList`. Chil-

dren of SOAPBodyElement objects and all child elements from there down are SOAPElement objects.

```

Iterator businessInfosIterator =
    businessList.getChildElements(
        soapFactory.createName("businessInfos",
            "", "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));

SOAPElement businessInfos =
    (SOAPElement)businessInfosIterator.next();

```

The businessInfos element contains zero or more businessInfo elements. If the query returned no businesses, the code prints a message saying that none were found. If the query returned businesses, however, the code extracts the name and optional description by retrieving the child elements with those names. The method `Iterator.hasNext` can be used in a while loop because it returns true as long as the next call to the method `next` will return a child element. Accordingly, the loop ends when there are no more child elements to retrieve.

```

Iterator businessInfoIterator =
    businessInfos.getChildElements(
        soapFactory.createName("businessInfo",
            "", "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));

if (! businessInfoIterator.hasNext()) {
    System.out.println("No businesses found " +
        "matching the name '" + args[1] +
        "'.");
} else {
    while (businessInfoIterator.hasNext()) {
        SOAPElement businessInfo = (SOAPElement)
            businessInfoIterator.next();
        // Extract name and description from the
        // businessInfo
        Iterator nameIterator =
            businessInfo.getChildElements(
                soapFactory.createName("name",
                    "", "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));
        while (nameIterator.hasNext()) {
            businessName =
                (SOAPElement)nameIterator.next();
            System.out.println("Company name: " +
                businessName.getValue());
        }
        Iterator descriptionIterator =
            businessInfo.getChildElements(

```

```

        soapFactory.createName(
            "description", "",
            "urn:uddi-org:api_v2"));
    while (descriptionIterator.hasNext()) {
        SOAPElement businessDescription =
            (SOAPElement)
            descriptionIterator.next();
        System.out.println("Description: " +
            businessDescription.getValue());
    }
    System.out.println("");
}

```

## Running MyUddiPing

You compile `MyUddiPing.java` by typing the following at the command line:

```
cd <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/myuddiping
asant build
```

With the code compiled, you are ready to run `MyUddiPing`. The run target takes two arguments, but you need to supply only one of them. The first argument is the file `uddi.properties`, which is supplied by a property set in `build.xml`. The other argument is the name of the business for which you want to get a description, and you need to supply this argument on the command line. Note that any property set on the command line overrides any value set for that property in the `build.xml` file.

```
asant run -Dbusiness-name="food"
```

Output similar to the following will appear after the full XML message:

Content extracted from the reply message:

```
Company name: Food
Description: Test Food
```

```
Company name: Food Manufacturing
```

```
Company name: foodCompanyA
Description: It is a food company sells biscuit
```

If you want to run `MyUddiPing` again, you may want to start over by deleting the build directory and the `.class` file it contains. You can do this by typing the following at the command line:

```
asant clean
```

## HeaderExample.java

The example `HeaderExample.java`, based on the code fragments in the section `Adding Attributes` (page 369), creates a message with several headers. It then retrieves the contents of the headers and prints them out. You will find the code for `HeaderExample` in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/headers/src/
```

## Running HeaderExample

To run `HeaderExample`, you use the file `build.xml` that is in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/headers/`.

To run `HeaderExample`, use the following command:

```
asant run
```

This command executes the `prepare`, `build`, and `run` targets in the `build.xml` and `targets.xml` files.

When you run `HeaderExample`, you will see output similar to the following:

```
----- Request Message -----
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <SOAP-ENV:Header>
    <ns:orderDesk SOAP-ENV:actor="http://gizmos.com/orders"
xmlns:ns="http://gizmos.com/NSURI"/>
    <ns:shippingDesk SOAP-ENV:actor="http://gizmos.com/shipping"
xmlns:ns="http://gizmos.com/NSURI"/>
    <ns:confirmationDesk
SOAP-ENV:actor="http://gizmos.com/confirmations"
xmlns:ns="http://gizmos.com/NSURI"/>
    <ns:billingDesk SOAP-ENV:actor="http://gizmos.com/billing"
xmlns:ns="http://gizmos.com/NSURI"/>
  <t:Transaction SOAP-ENV:mustUnderstand="1"
```

```

xmlns:t="http://gizmos.com/orders">5</t:Transaction>
</SOAP-ENV:Header><SOAP-ENV:Body/></SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
Header name is ns:orderDesk
Actor is http://gizmos.com/orders
MustUnderstand is false

Header name is ns:shippingDesk
Actor is http://gizmos.com/shipping
MustUnderstand is false

Header name is ns:confirmationDesk
Actor is http://gizmos.com/confirmations
MustUnderstand is false

Header name is ns:billingDesk
Actor is http://gizmos.com/billing
MustUnderstand is false

Header name is t:Transaction
Actor is null
MustUnderstand is true

```

## SOAPFaultTest.java

The example `SOAPFaultTest.java`, based on the code fragments in the sections [Creating and Populating a SOAPFault Object](#) (page 377) and [Retrieving Fault Information](#) (page 378), creates a message with a `SOAPFault` object. It then retrieves the contents of the `SOAPFault` object and prints them out. You will find the code for `SOAPFaultTest` in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/fault/src/
```

## Running SOAPFaultTest

To run `SOAPFaultTest`, you use the file `build.xml` that is in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/fault/`.

To run `SOAPFaultTest`, use the following command:

```
asant run
```

When you run `SOAPFaultTest`, you will see output like the following (line breaks have been inserted in the message for readability):

Here is what the XML message looks like:

```
<SOAP-ENV:Envelope
xmlns:SOAP-ENV="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
<SOAP-ENV:Header/><SOAP-ENV:Body>
<SOAP-ENV:Fault><faultcode>SOAP-ENV:Client</faultcode>
<faultstring>Message does not have necessary info</faultstring>
<faultactor>http://gizmos.com/order</faultactor>
<detail>
<PO:order xmlns:PO="http://gizmos.com/orders/">
Quantity element does not have a value</PO:order>
<PO:confirmation xmlns:PO="http://gizmos.com/confirm">
Incomplete address: no zip code</PO:confirmation>
</detail></SOAP-ENV:Fault>
</SOAP-ENV:Body></SOAP-ENV:Envelope>
```

SOAP fault contains:

```
    Fault code = SOAP-ENV:Client
    Local name = Client
    Namespace prefix = SOAP-ENV, bound to
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/
    Fault string = Message does not have necessary info
    Fault actor = http://gizmos.com/order
    Detail entry = Quantity element does not have a value
    Detail entry = Incomplete address: no zip code
```

## DOMExample.java

The example `DOMExample.java` shows how to add a DOM document to the body of a message and then to traverse its contents. You will find the code for `DOMExample` in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/dom/src/
```

This example first creates a DOM document by parsing an XML document, almost exactly like the JAXP example `DomEcho01.java` in the directory

<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxp/dom/samples/. The file it parses is one that you specify on the command line.

```
static Document document;
...
    DocumentBuilderFactory factory =
        DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
    factory.setNamespaceAware(true);
    try {
        DocumentBuilder builder =
            factory.newDocumentBuilder();
        document = builder.parse( new File(args[0]) );
        ...
    }
```

Next, the example creates a SOAP message in the usual way. Then it adds the document to the message body:

```
SOAPBodyElement docElement =
    body.addDocument(document);
```

This example does not change the content of the message. Instead, it displays the message content and then uses a recursive method, `getContents`, to traverse the element tree using SAAJ APIs and display the message contents in a readable form.

```
public void getContents(Iterator iterator,
    String indent) {

    while (iterator.hasNext()) {
        SOAPElement element =
            (SOAPElement)iterator.next();
        Name name = element.getElementName();
        System.out.println(indent + "Name is " +
            name.getQualifiedName());
        String content = element.getValue();
        if (content != null) {
            System.out.println(indent + "Content is " +
                content);
        }
        Iterator attrs = element.getAllAttributes();
        while (attrs.hasNext()){
            Name attrName = (Name)attrs.next();
            System.out.println(indent +
                " Attribute name is " +
                attrName.getQualifiedName());
            System.out.println(indent +
```



```

        " Attribute value is " +
        element.getAttributeValue(attrName));
    }
    if (content == null) {
        Iterator iter2 = element.getChildElements();
        getContents(iter2, indent + " ");
    }
}
}

```

## Running DOMExample

To run DOMExample, you use the file `build.xml` that is in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/saaj/dom/`. This directory also contains several sample XML files you can use:

- `FindBusiness.xml`, a simple UDDI query message
- `uddimsg.xml`, an example of a reply to a UDDI query (specifically, some sample output from the `MyUddiPing` example)
- `slide.xml`, similar to the `slideSample01.xml` file in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxp/dom/samples/`

To run DOMExample, use a command like the following:

```
asant run -Dxml-file=FindBusiness.xml
```

After running DOMExample, you will see output something like the following:

```

Running DOMExample.
Name is find_business
Attribute name is generic
Attribute value is 2.0
Attribute name is xmlns
Attribute value is urn:uddi-org:api_v2
Name is name
Content is: %Coff%

```

## Conclusion

SAAJ provides a Java API for writing and sending XML messages. You have seen how to use this API to write client code for SAAJ request-response messages. You have also seen how to get the content from a response message.

You now have first-hand experience of how SAAJ makes it easier to do XML messaging.

## Further Information

For more information about SAAJ, SOAP, and WS-I, see the following:

- SAAJ 1.2 specification, available from  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/downloads/saaaj.html>
- SAAJ website:  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/saaaj/>
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1 Specification:  
<http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP/>
- WS-I Basic Profile:  
<http://www.ws-i.org/Profiles/Basic/2003-01/BasicProfile-1.0-WGAD.html>
- JAXM website:  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxm/>

---

# Java API for XML Registries

*Kim Haase*

**T**HE Java API for XML Registries (JAXR) provides a uniform and standard Java API for accessing different kinds of XML registries.

After providing a brief overview of JAXR, this chapter describes how to implement a JAXR client to publish an organization and its Web services to a registry and to query a registry to find organizations and services. Finally, it explains how to run the examples provided with this tutorial and offers links to more information on JAXR.

## Overview of JAXR

This section provides a brief overview of JAXR. It covers the following topics:

- What Is a Registry?
- What Is JAXR?
- JAXR Architecture

## What Is a Registry?

An XML *registry* is an infrastructure that enables the building, deployment, and discovery of Web services. It is a neutral third party that facilitates dynamic and

loosely coupled business-to-business (B2B) interactions. A registry is available to organizations as a shared resource, often in the form of a Web-based service.

Currently there are a variety of specifications for XML registries. These include

- The ebXML Registry and Repository standard, which is sponsored by the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS) and the United Nations Centre for the Facilitation of Procedures and Practices in Administration, Commerce and Transport (U.N./CEFACT)
- The Universal Description, Discovery, and Integration (UDDI) project, which is being developed by a vendor consortium

A *registry provider* is an implementation of a business registry that conforms to a specification for XML registries.

## What Is JAXR?

JAXR enables Java software programmers to use a single, easy-to-use abstraction API to access a variety of XML registries. A unified JAXR information model describes content and metadata within XML registries.

JAXR gives developers the ability to write registry client programs that are portable across different target registries. JAXR also enables value-added capabilities beyond those of the underlying registries.

The current version of the JAXR specification includes detailed bindings between the JAXR information model and both the ebXML Registry and the UDDI version 2 specifications. You can find the latest version of the specification at

<http://java.sun.com/xml/downloads/jaxr.html>

At this release of the J2EE platform, JAXR implements the level 0 capability profile defined by the JAXR specification. This level allows access to both UDDI and ebXML registries at a basic level. At this release, JAXR supports access only to UDDI version 2 registries.

Currently several public UDDI version 2 registries exist.

The Java Web Services Developer Pack (Java WSDP) Registry Server provides a UDDI version 2 registry that you can use to test your JAXR applications in a private environment. You can download the Java WSDP from

<http://java.sun.com/webservices/download.html>. The Registry Server includes a database based on the native XML database Xindice, which is part of the Apache XML project. This database provides the repository for registry data. The Registry Server does not support messages defined in the UDDI Version 2.0 Replication Specification.

---

**Note:** If you use the Java WSDP Registry Server to test JAXR applications that you develop using the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, make sure that in your PATH you place the J2EE 1.4 Application Server bin directories before the Java WSDP bin directories.

---

Several ebXML registries are under development, and one is available at the Center for E-Commerce Infrastructure Development (CECID), Department of Computer Science Information Systems, The University of Hong Kong (HKU). For information, see <http://www.cec.id.hku.hk/Release/PR09APR2002.html>.

A JAXR provider for ebXML registries is available in open source at <http://ebxmlrr.sourceforge.net>.

## JAXR Architecture

The high-level architecture of JAXR consists of the following parts:

- A *JAXR client*: a client program that uses the JAXR API to access a business registry via a JAXR provider.
- A *JAXR provider*: an implementation of the JAXR API that provides access to a specific registry provider or to a class of registry providers that are based on a common specification.

A JAXR provider implements two main packages:

- `javax.xml.registry`, which consists of the API interfaces and classes that define the registry access interface.
- `javax.xml.registry.infomodel`, which consists of interfaces that define the information model for JAXR. These interfaces define the types of objects that reside in a registry and how they relate to each other. The basic interface in this package is the `RegistryObject` interface. Its subinterfaces include `Organization`, `Service`, and `ServiceBinding`.

The most basic interfaces in the `javax.xml.registry` package are

- **Connection.** The `Connection` interface represents a client session with a registry provider. The client must create a connection with the JAXR provider in order to use a registry.
- **RegistryService.** The client obtains a `RegistryService` object from its connection. The `RegistryService` object in turn enables the client to obtain the interfaces it uses to access the registry.

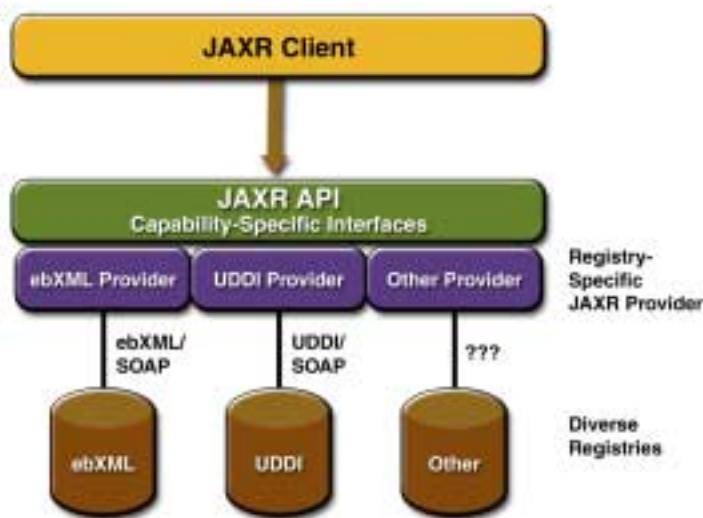
The primary interfaces, also part of the `javax.xml.registry` package, are

- **BusinessQueryManager,** which allows the client to search a registry for information in accordance with the `javax.xml.registry.infomodel` interfaces. An optional interface, `DeclarativeQueryManager`, allows the client to use SQL syntax for queries. (The implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server does not implement `DeclarativeQueryManager`.)
- **BusinessLifeCycleManager,** which allows the client to modify the information in a registry by either saving it (updating it) or deleting it.

When an error occurs, JAXR API methods throw a `JAXRException` or one of its subclasses.

Many methods in the JAXR API use a `Collection` object as an argument or a returned value. Using a `Collection` object allows operations on several registry objects at a time.

Figure 10–1 illustrates the architecture of JAXR. In the J2EE Application Server, a JAXR client uses the capability level 0 interfaces of the JAXR API to access the JAXR provider. The JAXR provider in turn accesses a registry. The J2EE Application Server supplies a JAXR provider for UDDI registries.



**Figure 10–1** JAXR Architecture

## Implementing a JAXR Client

This section describes the basic steps to follow in order to implement a JAXR client that can perform queries and updates to a UDDI registry. A JAXR client is a client program that can access registries using the JAXR API. It covers the following topics:

- Establishing a Connection
- Querying a Registry
- Managing Registry Data
- Using Taxonomies in JAXR Clients

This tutorial does not describe how to implement a JAXR provider. A JAXR provider provides an implementation of the JAXR specification that allows access to an existing registry provider, such as a UDDI or ebXML registry. The implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server itself is an example of a JAXR provider.

The J2EE 1.4 Application Server provides JAXR in the form of a resource adapter using the J2EE Connector Architecture. The resource adapter is

`<J2EE_HOME>/lib/jaxr-ra.rar`. (`<J2EE_HOME>` is the directory where the J2EE Application Server is installed.)

This tutorial includes several client examples, which are described in *Running the Client Examples* (page 421), and a J2EE application example, described in *Using JAXR Clients in J2EE Applications* (page 429). The examples are in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr`. (`<INSTALL>` is the directory where you installed the tutorial bundle.) Each example directory has a `build.xml` file that refers to a `targets.xml` file and a `build.properties` file in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/common`.

## Establishing a Connection

The first task a JAXR client must complete is to establish a connection to a registry. Establishing a connection involves the following tasks:

- Preliminaries: Getting Access to a Registry
- Creating or Looking Up a Connection Factory
- Creating a Connection
- Setting Connection Properties
- Obtaining and Using a RegistryService Object

### Preliminaries: Getting Access to a Registry

Any user of a JAXR client may perform queries on a registry. In order to add data to the registry or to update registry data, however, a user must obtain permission from the registry to access it. To register with one of the public UDDI version 2 registries, go to one of the following Web sites and follow the instructions:

- <http://test.uddi.microsoft.com/> (Microsoft)
- <http://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/registry.html> (IBM)
- <http://udditest.sap.com/> (SAP)

These UDDI version 2 registries are intended for testing purposes. When you register, you will obtain a user name and password. You will specify this user name and password for some of the JAXR client example programs.

You do not have to register with the Java WSDP Registry Server in order to add or update data. You can use the default user name and password, `testuser` and `testuser`.



---

**Note:** The JAXR API has been tested with the Microsoft and IBM registries and with the Java WSDP Registry Server, but not with the SAP registry.

---

## Creating or Looking Up a Connection Factory

A client creates a connection from a connection factory. A JAXR provider may supply one or more preconfigured connection factories that clients can obtain by looking them up using the Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) API.

At this release of the J2EE Application Server, JAXR supplies a connection factory through the JAXR RA, but you need to use the `asadmin` command to create a connector resource whose JNDI API name (“JNDI name”) is `eis/JAXR` to access this connection factory from a J2EE application. To look up this connection factory in a J2EE component, use code like the following:

```
import javax.xml.registry.*;
import javax.naming.*;
...
Context context = new InitialContext();
ConnectionFactory connFactory = (ConnectionFactory)
    context.lookup("java:comp/env/eis/JAXR");
```

To use JAXR in a standalone client program, you must create an instance of the abstract class `ConnectionFactory`:

```
import javax.xml.registry.*;
...
ConnectionFactory connFactory =
    ConnectionFactory.newInstance();
```

## Creating a Connection

To create a connection, a client first creates a set of properties that specify the URL or URLs of the registry or registries being accessed. For example, the following code provides the URLs of the query service and publishing service for the IBM test registry. (There should be no line break in the strings.)

```
Properties props = new Properties();
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.queryManagerURL",
    "http://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/inquiryapi");
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.lifeCycleManagerURL",
    "https://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/publishapi");
```

With the J2EE Application Server implementation of JAXR, if the client is accessing a registry that is outside a firewall, it must also specify proxy host and port information for the network on which it is running. For queries it may need to specify only the HTTP proxy host and port; for updates it must specify the HTTPS proxy host and port.

```
props.setProperty("com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyHost",
    "myhost.mydomain");
props.setProperty("com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPort",
    "8080");
props.setProperty("com.sun.xml.registry.https.proxyHost",
    "myhost.mydomain");
props.setProperty("com.sun.xml.registry.https.proxyPort",
    "8080");
```

The client then sets the properties for the connection factory and creates the connection:

```
connFactory.setProperties(props);
Connection connection = connFactory.createConnection();
```

The `makeConnection` method in the sample programs shows the steps used to create a JAXR connection.

## Setting Connection Properties

The implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server allows you to set a number of properties on a JAXR connection. Some of these are standard properties defined in the JAXR specification. Other properties are specific to the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server. Table 10–1 and Table 10–2 list and describe these properties.

**Table 10–1** Standard JAXR Connection Properties

Property Name and Description	Data Type	Default Value
<code>javax.xml.registry.queryManagerURL</code>  Specifies the URL of the query manager service within the target registry provider	String	None

**Table 10–1** Standard JAXR Connection Properties

Property Name and Description	Data Type	Default Value
<b>javax.xml.registry.lifeCycleManagerURL</b> Specifies the URL of the life cycle manager service within the target registry provider (for registry updates)	String	Same as the specified queryManagerURL value
<b>javax.xml.registry.semanticEquivalences</b> Specifies semantic equivalences of concepts as one or more tuples of the ID values of two equivalent concepts separated by a comma; the tuples are separated by vertical bars: id1,id2 id3,id4	String	None
<b>javax.xml.registry.security.authentication-Method</b> Provides a hint to the JAXR provider on the authentication method to be used for authenticating with the registry provider	String	None; UDDI_GET_AUTH-TOKEN is the only supported value
<b>javax.xml.registry.uddi.maxRows</b> The maximum number of rows to be returned by find operations. Specific to UDDI providers	Integer	None
<b>javax.xml.registry.postalAddressScheme</b> The ID of a ClassificationScheme to be used as the default postal address scheme. See Specifying Postal Addresses (page 419) for an example	String	None

**Table 10–2** Implementation-Specific JAXR Connection Properties

Property Name and Description	Data Type	Default Value
<b>com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyHost</b> Specifies the HTTP proxy host to be used for accessing external registries	String	None

**Table 10–2** Implementation-Specific JAXR Connection Properties

Property Name and Description	Data Type	Default Value
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPort</code> Specifies the HTTP proxy port to be used for accessing external registries; usually 8080	String	None
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.https.proxyHost</code> Specifies the HTTPS proxy host to be used for accessing external registries	String	Same as HTTP proxy host value
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.https.proxyPort</code> Specifies the HTTPS proxy port to be used for accessing external registries; usually 8080	String	Same as HTTP proxy port value
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyUserName</code> Specifies the user name for the proxy host for HTTP proxy authentication, if one is required	String	None
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPassword</code> Specifies the password for the proxy host for HTTP proxy authentication, if one is required	String	None
<code>com.sun.xml.registry.useCache</code> Tells the JAXR implementation to look for registry objects in the cache first and then to look in the registry if not found	Boolean, passed in as String	True

You can set these properties as follows:

- Most of these properties must be set in a JAXR client program. For example:

```
Properties props = new Properties();
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.queryManagerURL",
    "http://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/inquiryapi");
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.lifeCycleManagerURL",
    "https://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/publishapi");
```

```
ConnectionFactory factory = (ConnectionFactory)
    context.lookup("java:comp/env/eis/JAXR");
factory.setProperties(props);
connection = factory.createConnection();
```

- The postalAddressScheme and useCache properties may be set in a <sysproperty> tag in a build.xml file for the asant tool. For example:  
 <sysproperty key="useCache" value="true"/>

These properties may also be set with the -D option on the java command line.

An additional system property specific to the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server is com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames. For details on using this property, see Defining a Taxonomy (page 416).

## Obtaining and Using a RegistryService Object

After creating the connection, the client uses the connection to obtain a RegistryService object and then the interface or interfaces it will use:

```
RegistryService rs = connection.getRegistryService();
BusinessQueryManager bqm = rs.getBusinessQueryManager();
BusinessLifeCycleManager blcm =
    rs.getBusinessLifeCycleManager();
```

Typically, a client obtains both a BusinessQueryManager object and a BusinessLifeCycleManager object from the RegistryService object. If it is using the registry for simple queries only, it may need to obtain only a BusinessQueryManager object.

## Querying a Registry

The simplest way for a client to use a registry is to query it for information about the organizations that have submitted data to it. The BusinessQueryManager interface supports a number of find methods that allow clients to search for data using the JAXR information model. Many of these methods return a BulkRe-

sponse (a collection of objects) that meets a set of criteria specified in the method arguments. The most useful of these methods are:

- `findOrganizations`, which returns a list of organizations that meet the specified criteria—often a name pattern or a classification within a classification scheme
- `findServices`, which returns a set of services offered by a specified organization
- `findServiceBindings`, which returns the service bindings (information about how to access the service) that are supported by a specified service

The `JAXRQuery` program illustrates how to query a registry by organization name and display the data returned. The `JAXRQueryByNAICSClassification` and `JAXRQueryByWSDLClassification` programs illustrate how to query a registry using classifications. All JAXR providers support at least the following taxonomies for classifications:

- The North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). See <http://www.census.gov/epcd/www/naics.html> for details.
- The Universal Standard Products and Services Classification (UNSPSC). See <http://www.eccma.org/unspsc/> for details.
- The ISO 3166 country codes classification system maintained by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). See <http://www.iso.org/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/index.html> for details.

The following sections describe how to perform some common queries:

- Finding Organizations by Name
- Finding Organizations by Classification
- Finding Services and ServiceBindings

## Finding Organizations by Name

To search for organizations by name, you normally use a combination of `find` qualifiers (which affect sorting and pattern matching) and name patterns (which specify the strings to be searched). The `findOrganizations` method takes a collection of `findQualifier` objects as its first argument and a collection of `name-Pattern` objects as its second argument. The following fragment shows how to

find all the organizations in the registry whose names begin with a specified string, `qString`, and to sort them in alphabetical order.

```
// Define find qualifiers and name patterns
Collection findQualifiers = new ArrayList();
findQualifiers.add(FindQualifier.SORT_BY_NAME_DESC);
Collection namePatterns = new ArrayList();
namePatterns.add(qString);

// Find using the name
BulkResponse response =
    bqm.findOrganizations(findQualifiers,
        namePatterns, null, null, null, null);
Collection orgs = response.getCollection();
```

A client can use percent signs (%) to specify that the query string can occur anywhere within the organization name. For example, the following code fragment performs a case-sensitive search for organizations whose names contain `qString`:

```
Collection findQualifiers = new ArrayList();
findQualifiers.add(FindQualifier.CASE_SENSITIVE_MATCH);
Collection namePatterns = new ArrayList();
namePatterns.add("%" + qString + "%");

// Find orgs with name containing qString
BulkResponse response =
    bqm.findOrganizations(findQualifiers, namePatterns, null,
        null, null, null);
Collection orgs = response.getCollection();
```

## Finding Organizations by Classification

To find organizations by classification, you need to establish the classification within a particular classification scheme and then specify the classification as an argument to the `findOrganizations` method.

The following code fragment finds all organizations that correspond to a particular classification within the NAICS taxonomy. (You can find the NAICS codes at <http://www.census.gov/epcd/naics/naicscod.txt>.)

```
ClassificationScheme cScheme =
    bqm.findClassificationSchemeByName(null,
        "ntis-gov:naics");
Classification classification =
```

```

        blcm.createClassification(cScheme,
            "Snack and Nonalcoholic Beverage Bars", "722213");
        Collection classifications = new ArrayList();
        classifications.add(classification);
        // make JAXR request
        BulkResponse response = bqm.findOrganizations(null,
            null, classifications, null, null, null);
        Collection orgs = response.getCollection();

```

You can also use classifications to find organizations that offer services based on technical specifications that take the form of WSDL (Web Services Description Language) documents. In JAXR, a concept is used as a proxy to hold the information about a specification. The steps are a little more complicated than in the previous example, because the client must find the specification concepts first, then the organizations that use those concepts.

The following code fragment finds all the WSDL specification instances used within a given registry. You can see that the code is similar to the NAICS query code except that it ends with a call to `findConcepts` instead of `findOrganizations`.

```

String schemeName = "uddi-org:types";
ClassificationScheme uddiOrgTypes =
    bqm.findClassificationSchemeByName(null, schemeName);

/*
 * Create a classification, specifying the scheme
 * and the taxonomy name and value defined for WSDL
 * documents by the UDDI specification.
 */
Classification wsdSpecClassification =
    blcm.createClassification(uddiOrgTypes,
        "wsdlSpec", "wsdlSpec");

Collection classifications = new ArrayList();
classifications.add(wsdSpecClassification);

// Find concepts
BulkResponse br = bqm.findConcepts(null, null,
    classifications, null, null);

```

To narrow the search, you could use other arguments of the `findConcepts` method (search qualifiers, names, external identifiers, or external links).



The next step is to go through the concepts, find the WSDL documents they correspond to, and display the organizations that use each document:

```
// Display information about the concepts found
Collection specConcepts = br.getCollection();
Iterator iter = specConcepts.iterator();
if (!iter.hasNext()) {
    System.out.println("No WSDL specification concepts found");
} else {
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        Concept concept = (Concept) iter.next();

        String name = getName(concept);

        Collection links = concept.getExternalLinks();
        System.out.println("\nSpecification Concept:\n\tName: " +
            name + "\n\tKey: " +
            concept.getKey().getId() +
            "\n\tDescription: " +
            getDescription(concept));
        if (links.size() > 0) {
            ExternalLink link =
                (ExternalLink) links.iterator().next();
            System.out.println("\tURL of WSDL document: '" +
                link.getExternalURI() + "'");
        }

        // Find organizations that use this concept
        Collection specConcepts1 = new ArrayList();
        specConcepts1.add(concept);
        br = bq.m.findOrganizations(null, null, null,
            specConcepts1, null, null);

        // Display information about organizations
        ...
    }
}
```

If you find an organization that offers a service you wish to use, you can invoke the service using the JAX-RPC API.

## Finding Services and ServiceBindings

After a client has located an organization, it can find that organization's services and the service bindings associated with those services.

```
Iterator orgIter = orgs.iterator();
while (orgIter.hasNext()) {
    Organization org = (Organization) orgIter.next();
    Collection services = org.getServices();
    Iterator svcIter = services.iterator();
    while (svcIter.hasNext()) {
        Service svc = (Service) svcIter.next();
        Collection serviceBindings =
            svc.getServiceBindings();
        Iterator sbIter = serviceBindings.iterator();
        while (sbIter.hasNext()) {
            ServiceBinding sb =
                (ServiceBinding) sbIter.next();
        }
    }
}
```

## Managing Registry Data

If a client has authorization to do so, it can submit data to a registry, modify it, and remove it. It uses the `BusinessLifecycleManager` interface to perform these tasks.

Registries usually allow a client to modify or remove data only if the data is being modified or removed by the same user who first submitted the data.

Managing registry data involves the following tasks:

- Getting Authorization from the Registry
- Creating an Organization
- Adding Classifications
- Adding Services and Service Bindings to an Organization
- Saving an Organization
- Removing Data from the Registry

## Getting Authorization from the Registry

Before it can submit data, the client must send its user name and password to the registry in a set of credentials. The following code fragment shows how to do this.

```
String username = "myUserName";
String password = "myPassword";

// Get authorization from the registry
PasswordAuthentication passwdAuth =
    new PasswordAuthentication(username,
        password.toCharArray());

Set creds = new HashSet();
creds.add(passwdAuth);
connection.setCredentials(creds);
```

## Creating an Organization

The client creates the organization and populates it with data before saving it.

An Organization object is one of the more complex data items in the JAXR API. It normally includes the following:

- A Name object
- A Description object
- A Key object, representing the ID by which the organization is known to the registry. This key is created by the registry, not by the user, and is returned after the organization is submitted to the registry.
- A PrimaryContact object, which is a User object that refers to an authorized user of the registry. A User object normally includes a PersonName object and collections of TelephoneNumber, EmailAddress, and/or PostalAddress objects.
- A collection of Classification objects
- Service objects and their associated ServiceBinding objects

For example, the following code fragment creates an organization and specifies its name, description, and primary contact. When a client creates an organization, it does not include a key; the registry returns the new key when it accepts the newly created organization. The `blcm` object in this code fragment is the `BusinessLifeCycleManager` object returned in `Obtaining and Using a Registry-`

Service Object (page 405). An `InternationalString` object is used for string values that may need to be localized.

```
// Create organization name and description
Organization org =
    blcm.createOrganization("The Coffee Break");
InternationalString s =
    blcm.createInternationalString("Purveyor of " +
        "the finest coffees. Established 1914");
org.setDescription(s);

// Create primary contact, set name
User primaryContact = blcm.createUser();
PersonName pName = blcm.createPersonName("Jane Doe");
primaryContact.setPersonName(pName);

// Set primary contact phone number
TelephoneNumber tNum = blcm.createTelephoneNumber();
tNum.setNumber("(800) 555-1212");
Collection phoneNums = new ArrayList();
phoneNums.add(tNum);
primaryContact.setTelephoneNumbers(phoneNums);

// Set primary contact email address
EmailAddress emailAddress =
    blcm.createEmailAddress("jane.doe@TheCoffeeBreak.com");
Collection emailAddresses = new ArrayList();
emailAddresses.add(emailAddress);
primaryContact.setEmailAddresses(emailAddresses);

// Set primary contact for organization
org.setPrimaryContact(primaryContact);
```

## Adding Classifications

Organizations commonly belong to one or more classifications based on one or more classification schemes (taxonomies). To establish a classification for an organization using a taxonomy, the client first locates the taxonomy it wants to use. It uses the `BusinessQueryManager` to find the taxonomy. The `findClassificationSchemeByName` method takes a set of `FindQualifier` objects as its first argument, but this argument can be null.

```
// Set classification scheme to NAICS
ClassificationScheme cScheme =
    bqmf.findClassificationSchemeByName(null, "ntis-gov:naics");
```

The client then creates a classification using the classification scheme and a concept (a taxonomy element) within the classification scheme. For example, the following code sets up a classification for the organization within the NAICS taxonomy. The second and third arguments of the `createClassification` method are the name and value of the concept.

```
// Create and add classification
Classification classification =
    blcm.createClassification(cScheme,
        "Snack and Nonalcoholic Beverage Bars", "722213");
Collection classifications = new ArrayList();
classifications.add(classification);
org.addClassifications(classifications);
```

Services also use classifications, so you can use similar code to add a classification to a Service object.

## Adding Services and Service Bindings to an Organization

Most organizations add themselves to a registry in order to offer services, so the JAXR API has facilities to add services and service bindings to an organization.

Like an Organization object, a Service object has a name and a description. Also like an Organization object, it has a unique key that is generated by the registry when the service is registered. It may also have classifications associated with it.

A service also commonly has service bindings, which provide information about how to access the service. A ServiceBinding object normally has a description, an access URI, and a specification link, which provides the linkage between a service binding and a technical specification that describes how to use the service using the service binding.

The following code fragment shows how to create a collection of services, add service bindings to a service, then add the services to the organization. It specifies an access URI but not a specification link. Because the access URI is not real

and because JAXR by default checks for the validity of any published URI, the binding sets its `validateURI` property to `false`.

```
// Create services and service
Collection services = new ArrayList();
Service service = blcm.createService("My Service Name");
InternationalString is =
    blcm.createInternationalString("My Service Description");
service.setDescription(is);

// Create service bindings
Collection serviceBindings = new ArrayList();
ServiceBinding binding = blcm.createServiceBinding();
is = blcm.createInternationalString("My Service Binding " +
    "Description");
binding.setDescription(is);
// allow us to publish a bogus URL without an error
binding.setValidateURI(false);
binding.setAccessURI("http://TheCoffeeBreak.com:8080/sb/");
serviceBindings.add(binding);

// Add service bindings to service
service.addServiceBindings(serviceBindings);

// Add service to services, then add services to organization
services.add(service);
org.addServices(services);
```

## Saving an Organization

The primary method a client uses to add or modify organization data is the `saveOrganizations` method, which creates one or more new organizations in a registry if they did not exist previously. If one of the organizations exists but some of the data have changed, the `saveOrganizations` method updates and replaces the data.

After a client populates an organization with the information it wants to make public, it saves the organization. The registry returns the key in its response, and the client retrieves it.

```
// Add organization and submit to registry
// Retrieve key if successful
Collection orgs = new ArrayList();
orgs.add(org);
BulkResponse response = blcm.saveOrganizations(orgs);
Collection exceptions = response.getException();
```

```

if (exceptions == null) {
    System.out.println("Organization saved");

    Collection keys = response.getCollection();
    Iterator keyIter = keys.iterator();
    if (keyIter.hasNext()) {
        javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key orgKey =
            (javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key) keyIter.next();
        String id = orgKey.getId();
        System.out.println("Organization key is " + id);
        org.setKey(orgKey);
    }
}

```

## Removing Data from the Registry

A registry allows you to remove from the registry any data that you have submitted to it. You use the key returned by the registry as an argument to one of the `BusinessLifeCycleManager` delete methods: `deleteOrganizations`, `deleteServices`, `deleteServiceBindings`, and others.

The `JAXRDelete` sample program deletes the organization created by the `JAXR-Publish` program. It deletes the organization that corresponds to a specified key string and then displays the key again so that the user can confirm that it has deleted the correct one.

```

String id = key.getId();
System.out.println("Deleting organization with id " + id);
Collection keys = new ArrayList();
keys.add(key);
BulkResponse response = blcm.deleteOrganizations(keys);
Collection exceptions = response.getException();
if (exceptions == null) {
    System.out.println("Organization deleted");
    Collection retKeys = response.getCollection();
    Iterator keyIter = retKeys.iterator();
    javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key orgKey = null;
    if (keyIter.hasNext()) {
        orgKey =
            (javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key) keyIter.next();
        id = orgKey.getId();
        System.out.println("Organization key was " + id);
    }
}

```

A client can use a similar mechanism to delete services and service bindings.

## Using Taxonomies in JAXR Clients

In the JAXR API, a taxonomy is represented by a `ClassificationScheme` object.

This section describes how to use the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server:

- To define your own taxonomies
- To specify postal addresses for an organization

## Defining a Taxonomy

The JAXR specification requires a JAXR provider to be able to add user-defined taxonomies for use by JAXR clients. The mechanisms clients use to add and administer these taxonomies are implementation-specific.

The implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server uses a simple file-based approach to provide taxonomies to the JAXR client. These files are read at run time, when the JAXR provider starts up.

The taxonomy structure for the J2EE Application Server is defined by the JAXR Predefined Concepts DTD, which is declared both in the file `jaxrconcepts.dtd` and, in XML schema form, in the file `jaxrconcepts.xsd`. The file `jaxrconcepts.xml` contains the taxonomies for the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server. All these files are contained in the `<J2EE_HOME>/share/lib/jaxr-impl.jar` file. This JAR file also includes files that define the well-known taxonomies that the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server uses: `naics.xml`, `iso3166.xml`, and `unspsc.xml`.

The entries in the `jaxrconcepts.xml` file look like this:

```
<PredefinedConcepts>
  <JAXRClassificationScheme id="schId" name="schName">
    <JAXRConcept id="schId/conCode" name="conName"
      parent="parentId" code="conCode"></JAXRConcept>
    ...
  </JAXRClassificationScheme>
</PredefinedConcepts>
```

The taxonomy structure is a containment-based structure. The element `PredefinedConcepts` is the root of the structure and must be present. The `JAXRClassificationScheme` element is the parent of the structure, and the



JAXRConcept elements are children and grandchildren. A JAXRConcept element may have children, but it is not required to do so.

In all element definitions, attribute order and case are significant.

To add a user-defined taxonomy, follow these steps.

1. Publish the JAXRClassificationScheme element for the taxonomy as a ClassificationScheme object in the registry that you will be accessing. For example, you can publish the ClassificationScheme object to the Java WSDP Registry Server. In order to publish a ClassificationScheme object, you must set its name. You also give the scheme a classification within a known classification scheme such as `uddi-org:types`. In the following code fragment, the name is the first argument of the `LifeCycleManager.createClassificationScheme` method call.

```
ClassificationScheme cScheme =
    blcm.createClassificationScheme("MyScheme",
        "A Classification Scheme");
ClassificationScheme uddiOrgTypes =
    bqm.findClassificationSchemeByName(null,
        "uddi-org:types");
if (uddiOrgTypes != null) {
    Classification classification =
        blcm.createClassification(uddiOrgTypes,
            "postalAddress", "categorization" );
    postalScheme.addClassification(classification);
    ExternalLink externalLink =
        blcm.createExternalLink(
            "http://www.mycom.com/myscheme.html",
            "My Scheme");
    postalScheme.addExternalLink(externalLink);
    Collection schemes = new ArrayList();
    schemes.add(cScheme);
    BulkResponse br =
        blcm.saveClassificationSchemes(schemes);
}
```

The `BulkResponse` object returned by the `saveClassificationSchemes` method contains the key for the classification scheme, which you need to retrieve:

```
if (br.getStatus() == JAXRResponse.STATUS_SUCCESS) {
    System.out.println("Saved ClassificationScheme");
}
```

```

Collection schemeKeys = br.getCollection();
Iterator keysIter = schemeKeys.iterator();
while (keysIter.hasNext()) {
    javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key key =
        (javax.xml.registry.infomodel.Key)
            keysIter.next();
    System.out.println("The postalScheme key is " +
        key.getId());
    System.out.println("Use this key as the scheme" +
        " uuid in the taxonomy file");
}
}

```

2. In an XML file, define a taxonomy structure that is compliant with the JAXR Predefined Concepts DTD. Enter the ClassificationScheme element in your taxonomy XML file by specifying the returned key ID value as the id attribute and the name as the name attribute. For the code fragment above, for example, the opening tag for the JAXRClassificationScheme element looks something like this (all on one line):

```

<JAXRClassificationScheme
id="uuid:nnnnnnnn-nnnn-nnnn-nnnn-nnnnnnnnnnnn"
name="MyScheme">

```

The ClassificationScheme id must be a UUID.

3. Enter each JAXRConcept element in your taxonomy XML file by specifying the following four attributes, in this order:
  - a. id is the JAXRClassificationScheme id value, followed by a / separator, followed by the code of the JAXRConcept element
  - b. name is the name of the JAXRConcept element
  - c. parent is the immediate parent id (either the ClassificationScheme id or that of the parent JAXRConcept)
  - d. code is the JAXRConcept element code value

The first JAXRConcept element in the naics.xml file looks like this (all on one line):

```

<JAXRConcept
id="uuid:C0B9FE13-179F-413D-8A5B-5004DB8E5BB2/11"
name="Agriculture, Forestry, Fishing and Hunting"
parent="uuid:C0B9FE13-179F-413D-8A5B-5004DB8E5BB2"
code="11"></JAXRConcept>

```

4. To add the user-defined taxonomy structure to the JAXR provider, specify the system property `com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames` when you run your client program. The command line (all on one line) would look like this. A vertical bar (|) is the file separator.

```
java myProgram
-DuserTaxonomyFileNames=c:\mydir\xxx.xml|c:\mydir\xxx2.xml
```

You can use a `<sysproperty>` tag to set this property in a `build.xml` file for a client program. Or, in your program, you can set the property as follows:

```
System.setProperty
("com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames",
 "c:\mydir\xxx.xml|c:\mydir\xxx2.xml");
```

If your client will run in a J2EE application, you need to specify the system property `com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames` as one of the JVM arguments when you start the J2EE server. To do this, open the file `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/config/domain.xml` in an editor and add something like the following (all on one line) to the list of JVM options in the `java-config` element:

```
<jvm-options>-Dcom.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames=
c:\mydir\xxx.xml|c:\mydir\xxx2.xml</jvm-options>
```

Stop and restart the server to make this change take effect.

## Specifying Postal Addresses

The JAXR specification defines a postal address as a structured interface with attributes for street, city, country, and so on. The UDDI specification, on the other hand, defines a postal address as a free-form collection of address lines, each of which may also be assigned a meaning. To map the JAXR `PostalAddress` format to a known UDDI address format, you specify the UDDI format as a `ClassificationScheme` object and then specify the semantic equivalences between the concepts in the UDDI format classification scheme and the comments in the JAXR `PostalAddress` classification scheme. The JAXR `PostalAddress` classification scheme is provided by the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server.

In the JAXR API, a `PostalAddress` object has the fields `streetNumber`, `street`, `city`, `state`, `postalCode` and `country`. In the implementation of JAXR in the J2EE Application Server, these are predefined concepts in the `jaxrcon-`

cepts.xml file, within the ClassificationScheme named PostalAddressAttributes.

To specify the mapping between the JAXR postal address format and another format, you need to set two connection properties:

- The `javax.xml.registry.postalAddressScheme` property, which specifies a postal address classification scheme for the connection
- The `javax.xml.registry.semanticEquivalences` property, which specifies the semantic equivalences between the JAXR format and the other format

For example, suppose you want to use a scheme that has been published to the IBM registry with the known UUID `uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b`. This scheme already exists in the `jaxrconcepts.xml` file under the name `IBMDefaultPostalAddressAttributes`.

```
<JAXRClassificationScheme id="uuid:6EAF4B50-4196-11D6-9E2B-000629DC0A2B" name="IBMDefaultPostalAddressAttributes">
```

First, you specify the postal address scheme using the `id` value from the `JAXRClassificationScheme` element (the UUID). Case does not matter:

```
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.postalAddressScheme",
    "uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b");
```

Next, you specify the mapping from the `id` of each `JAXRConcept` element in the default JAXR postal address scheme to the `id` of its counterpart in the IBM scheme:

```
props.setProperty("javax.xml.registry.semanticEquivalences",
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/StreetNumber," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/StreetAddressNumber|" +
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/Street," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/StreetAddress|" +
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/City," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/City|" +
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/State," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/State|" +
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/PostalCode," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/ZipCode|" +
    "urn:uuid:PostalAddressAttributes/Country," +
    "urn:uuid:6eaf4b50-4196-11d6-9e2b-000629dc0a2b/Country");
```

After you create the connection using these properties, you can create a postal address and assign it to the primary contact of the organization before you publish the organization:

```
String streetNumber = "99";
String street = "Imaginary Ave. Suite 33";
String city = "Imaginary City";
String state = "NY";
String country = "USA";
String postalCode = "00000";
String type = "";
PostalAddress postAddr =
    blcm.createPostalAddress(streetNumber, street, city, state,
        country, postalCode, type);
Collection postalAddresses = new ArrayList();
postalAddresses.add(postAddr);
primaryContact.setPostalAddresses(postalAddresses);
```

A JAXR query can then retrieve the postal address using `PostalAddress` methods, if the postal address scheme and semantic equivalences for the query are the same as those specified for the publication. To retrieve postal addresses when you do not know what postal address scheme was used to publish them, you can retrieve them as a collection of `Slot` objects. The `JAXRQueryPostal.java` sample program shows how to do this.

In general, you can create a user-defined postal address taxonomy for any `postalAddress` `tModels` that use the well-known categorization in the `uddi-org:types` taxonomy, which has the `tModel` UUID `uuid:c1acf26d-9672-4404-9d70-39b756e62ab4` with a value of `postalAddress`. You can retrieve the `tModel` `overviewDoc`, which points to the technical detail for the specification of the scheme, where the taxonomy structure definition can be found. (The JAXR equivalent of an `overviewDoc` is an `ExternalLink`.)

## Running the Client Examples

The simple client programs provided with this tutorial can be run from the command line. You can modify them to suit your needs. They allow you to specify the IBM registry, the Microsoft registry, or the Java WSDP Registry Server for queries and updates; you can specify any other UDDI version 2 registry.

The client examples, in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/simple/src` directory, are as follows:

- `JAXRQuery.java` shows how to search a registry for organizations
- `JAXRQueryByNAICSClassification.java` shows how to search a registry using a common classification scheme
- `JAXRQueryByWSDLClassification.java` shows how to search a registry for Web services that describe themselves by means of a WSDL document
- `JAXRPublish.java` shows how to publish an organization to a registry
- `JAXRDelete.java` shows how to remove an organization from a registry
- `JAXRSaveClassificationScheme.java` shows how to publish a classification scheme (specifically, a postal address scheme) to a registry
- `JAXRPublishPostal.java` shows how to publish an organization with a postal address for its primary contact
- `JAXRQueryPostal.java` shows how to retrieve postal address data from an organization
- `JAXRDeleteScheme.java` shows how to delete a classification scheme from a registry
- `JAXRGetMyObjects.java` lists all the objects that you own in a registry

The `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/simple` directory also contains:

- A `build.xml` file for the examples
- A `JAXRExamples.properties` file, in the `src` subdirectory, that supplies string values used by the sample programs
- A file called `postalconcepts.xml` that you use with the postal address examples

You do not have to have the J2EE Application Server running in order to run these client examples.

## Before You Compile the Examples

Before you compile the examples, edit the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/simple/src/JAXRExamples.properties` as follows.

1. Edit the following lines in the `JAXRExamples.properties` file to specify the registry you wish to access. For both the `queryURL` and the `publishURL`

assignments, comment out all but the registry you wish to access. The default is the Java WSDP Registry Server, so if you will be using the Registry Server on your own system, you do not need to change this section.

```
## Uncomment one pair of query and publish URLs.
## IBM:
#query.url=http://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/inquiryapi
#publish.url=https://uddi.ibm.com/testregistry/publishapi
## Microsoft:
#query.url=http://test.uddi.microsoft.com/inquire
#publish.url=https://test.uddi.microsoft.com/publish
## Registry Server:
query.url=http://localhost:8080/RegistryServer
publish.url=http://localhost:8080/RegistryServer
```

If the Java WSDP Registry Server is running on a system other than your own, specify the fully qualified host name instead of `localhost`. Do not use `https:` for the `publishURL`. If Tomcat is using a nondefault port, change `8080` to the correct value for your system.

The IBM and Microsoft registries both have a considerable amount of data in them that you can perform queries on. Moreover, you do not have to register if you are only going to perform queries.

We have not included the URLs of the SAP registry; feel free to add them.

If you want to publish to any of the public registries, the registration process for obtaining access to them is not difficult (see Preliminaries: Getting Access to a Registry, page 400). Each of them, however, allows you to have only one organization registered at a time. If you publish an organization to one of them, you must delete it before you can publish another. Since the organization that the `JAXR Publish` example publishes is fictitious, you will want to delete it immediately anyway.

The Java WSDP Registry Server gives you more freedom to experiment with JAXR. You can publish as many organizations to it as you wish. However, this registry comes with an empty database, so you must publish organizations to it yourself before you can perform queries on the data.

2. Edit the following lines in the `JAXRExamples.properties` file to specify the user name and password you obtained when you registered with the registry. The defaults are the Registry Server default username and password.

```
## Specify username and password if needed
## testuser/testuser are defaults for Registry Server
registry.username=testuser
registry.password=testuser
```

3. If you will be using a public registry, edit the following lines in the `JAXR-Examples.properties` file, which contain empty strings for the proxy hosts, to specify your own proxy settings. The proxy host is the system on your network through which you access the Internet; you usually specify it in your Internet browser settings. You can leave this value empty to use the Java WSDP Registry Server.

```
## HTTP and HTTPS proxy host and port;
##   ignored by Registry Server
http.proxyHost=
http.proxyPort=8080
https.proxyHost=
https.proxyPort=8080
```

The proxy ports have the value 8080, which is the usual one; change this string if your proxy uses a different port.

For a public registry, your entries usually follow this pattern:

```
http.proxyHost=proxyhost.mydomain
http.proxyPort=8080
https.proxyHost=proxyhost.mydomain
https.proxyPort=8080
```

4. Feel free to change any of the organization data in the remainder of the file. This data is used by the publishing and postal address examples.

You can edit the `src/JAXRExamples.properties` file at any time. The `asant` targets that run the client examples will use the latest version of the file.

## Compiling the Examples

To compile the programs, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/simple` directory. A `build.xml` file allows you to use the command

```
asant compile
```

to compile all the examples. The `asant` tool creates a subdirectory called `build`.



The runtime classpath setting in the `build.xml` file includes the files `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/j2ee.jar` and `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/appserv-rt.jar` and the JAR files in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/share/lib/`. All JAXR client examples require this classpath setting.

## Running the Examples

Some of the `build.xml` targets for running the examples contain commented-out `<sysproperty>` tags that set the JAXR logging level to debug and set other connection properties. These tags are provided to illustrate how to specify connection properties. Feel free to modify or delete these tags.

If you are running the examples with the Java WSDP Registry Server, start the Java WSDP Tomcat (`<JWSDP_HOME>` is the location of the Java WSDP on your system):

```
<JWSDP_HOME>/bin/startup.sh
```

The Registry Server is a Web application that is loaded when Tomcat starts.

You do not need to start Tomcat in order to run the examples against public registries.

## Running the JAXRPublish Example

To run the JAXRPublish program, use the `run-publish` target with no command line arguments:

```
asant run-publish
```

The program output displays the string value of the key of the new organization, which is named “The Coffee Break.”

After you run the JAXRPublish program but before you run JAXRDelete, you can run JAXRQuery to look up the organization you published.

## Running the JAXRQuery Example

To run the JAXRQuery example, use the `asant` target `run-query`. Specify a `query-string` argument on the command line to search the registry for organizations whose names contain that string. For example, the following command

line searches for organizations whose names contain the string “coff” (searching is not case-sensitive):

```
asant -Dquery-string=coff run-query
```

## Running the JAXRQueryByNAICSClassification Example

After you run the JAXRPublish program, you can also run the JAXRQueryByNAICSClassification example, which looks for organizations that use the “Snack and Nonalcoholic Beverage Bars” classification, the same one used for the organization created by JAXRPublish. To do so, use the asant target run-query-naics:

```
asant run-query-naics
```

## Running the JAXRDelete Example

To run the JAXRDelete program, specify the key string returned by the JAXRPublish program as input to the run-delete target:

```
asant -Dkey-string=keyString run-delete
```

## Running the JAXRQueryByWSDLClassification Example

You can run the JAXRQueryByWSDLClassification example at any time. Use the asant target run-query-wsd1:

```
asant run-query-wsd1
```

This example returns many results from the public registries and is likely to run for several minutes.

## Publishing a Classification Scheme

In order to publish organizations with postal addresses to public registries, you must publish a classification scheme for the postal address first.

To run the JAXRSaveClassificationScheme program, use the target run-save-scheme:

```
asant run-save-scheme
```

The program returns a UUID string, which you will use in the next section.

You do not have to run this program if you are using the Java WSDP Registry Server, because it does not validate these objects.

The public registries allow you to own more than one classification scheme at a time (the limit is usually a total of about 10 classification schemes and concepts put together).

## Running the Postal Address Examples

Before you run the postal address examples, open the file `postalconcepts.xml` in an editor. Wherever you see the string `uuid-from-save`, replace it with the UUID string returned by the `run-save-scheme` target. For the Java WSDP Registry Server, you may use any string that is formatted as a UUID.

For a given registry, you only need to save the classification scheme and edit `postalconcepts.xml` once. After you perform those two steps, you can run the `JAXRPublishPostal` and `JAXRQueryPostal` programs multiple times.

1. Run the `JAXRPublishPostal` program. Notice that in the `build.xml` file, the `run-publish-postal` target contains a `<sysproperty>` tag that sets the `userTaxonomyFileNames` property to the location of the `postalconcepts.xml` file in the current directory:

```
<sysproperty  
key="com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames"  
value="postalconcepts.xml"/>
```

Specify the string you entered in the `postalconcepts.xml` file as input to the `run-publish-postal` target:

```
asant -Duuid-string=uuidstring run-publish-postal
```

The program output displays the string value of the key of the new organization.

2. Run the `JAXRQueryPostal` program. The `run-query-postal` target contains the same `<sysproperty>` tag as the `run-publish-postal` target.

As input to the `run-query-postal` target, specify both a `query-string` argument and a `uuid-string` argument on the command line to search the registry for the organization published by the `run-publish-postal` target:

```
asant -Dquery-string=coffee  
-Duuid-string=uuidstring run-query-postal
```

The postal address for the primary contact will appear correctly with the JAXR `PostalAddress` methods. Any postal addresses found that use other postal address schemes will appear as `Slot` lines.

3. If you are using a public registry, make sure to follow the instructions in Running the JAXRDelete Example (page 426) to delete the organization you published.

## Deleting a Classification Scheme

To delete the classification scheme you published after you have finished using it, run the `JAXRDeleteScheme` program using the `run-delete-scheme` target:

```
asant -Duuid-string=uuidstring run-delete-scheme
```

For a UDDI registry, deleting a classification scheme removes it from the registry logically but not physically. You can no longer use the classification scheme, but it will still be visible if, for example, you call the method `QueryManager.getRegisteredObjects`. Since the public registries allow you to own up to 10 of these objects, this is not likely to be a problem.

## Getting a List of Your Registry Objects

To get a list of the objects you own in the registry, both organizations and classification schemes, run the `JAXRGetMyObjects` program by using the `run-get-objects` target:

```
asant run-get-objects
```

If you run this program with the Java WSDP Registry Server, it returns all the standard UDDI taxonomies provided with the Registry Server, not just the objects you have created.

## Other Targets

To remove the `build` directory and class files, use the command

```
asant clean
```

To obtain a syntax reminder for the targets, use the command

```
asant -projecthelp
```

## Using JAXR Clients in J2EE Applications

You can create J2EE applications that use JAXR clients to access registries. This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a J2EE application that uses JAXR to publish an organization to a registry and then query the registry for that organization. The application in this section uses two components, an application client and a stateless session bean.

The section covers the following topics:

- Coding the Application Client: `MyAppClient.java`
- Coding the PubQuery Session Bean
- Compiling the Source Files
- Starting the J2EE Application Server
- Creating JAXR Resources
- Creating and Packaging the Application
- Deploying the Application
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application
- Undeploying and Removing the Application

You will find the source files for this section in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxr/clientsession`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

## Coding the Application Client: MyAppClient.java

The application client class, `src/MyAppClient.java`, obtains a handle to the `PubQuery` enterprise bean's remote home interface, using the JNDI API naming context `java:comp/env`. The program then creates an instance of the bean and calls the bean's two business methods, `executePublish` and `executeQuery`.

Before you compile the application, edit the `PubQueryBeanExamples.properties` file the same way you edited the `JAXRExamples.properties` file to run the simple examples.

1. Leave the `queryManagerURL` and `lifecycleManagerURL` entries as they are if you are using the Java WSDP Registry Server on your local system. To use another registry, comment out the property that specifies the Registry Server and remove the comment from the other registry.
2. If you are using a public registry, change the values for the `http.proxyHost` and `https.proxyHost` entries so that they specify the system on your network through which you access the Internet.

## Coding the PubQuery Session Bean

The `PubQuery` bean is a stateless session bean with one `create` method and two business methods. The bean uses remote interfaces rather than local interfaces because it is accessed from outside the EJB container.

The remote home interface source file is `src/PubQueryHome.java`.

The remote interface, `src/PubQueryRemote.java`, declares two business methods, `executePublish` and `executeQuery`. The bean class, `src/PubQueryBean.java`, implements the `executePublish` and `executeQuery` methods and their helper methods `getName`, `getDescription`, and `getKey`. These methods are very similar to the methods of the same name in the simple examples `JAXRQuery.java` and `JAXRPublish.java`. The `executePublish` method uses information in the file `PubQueryBeanExample.properties` to create an organization named The Coffee Enterprise Bean Break. The `executeQuery` method uses the string "Coff", specified in the application client code, to locate this organization.

The bean class also implements the required methods `ejbCreate`, `setSessionContext`, `ejbRemove`, `ejbActivate`, and `ejbPassivate`.

The `ejbCreate` method of the bean class allocates resources—in this case, by looking up the `ConnectionFactory` and creating the `Connection`.

The `ejbRemove` method must deallocate the resources that were allocated by the `ejbCreate` method. In this case, the `ejbRemove` method closes the `Connection`.

## Compiling the Source Files

To compile the application source files, use the following command:

```
asant compile
```

The `compile` target places the properties file and the class files in the build directory.

## Starting the J2EE Application Server

To run this example, you need to start the J2EE Application Server.

- On Windows systems, choose `Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Start Application Server`.
- On UNIX systems, use the following command:

```
asadmin start-domain
```

## Creating JAXR Resources

In order to use JAXR in a J2EE application that uses the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, you need to access the JAXR resource adapter (see *Implementing a JAXR Client* (page 399)). The following commands (each must be all on one line) create the resources needed to access the resource adapter:

```
asadmin create-connector-connection-pool --user username
--password password --raname jaxr-ra --connectiondefinition
javax.xml.registry.ConnectionFactory jaxr-pool
```

```
asadmin create-connector-resource --user username --password
password --poolname jaxr-pool eis/JAXR
```

The `build.xml` file for this example has targets named `create-pool` and `create-resource` that automate this task. The `create-resource` task depends on `create-pool`.

After you start the server, perform the following steps:

1. Specify the following asant target:

```
asant create-resource
```

2. Reconfigure the server:

```
asant reconfig_common
```

If the output from this command says that an instance restart is required, stop and restart the server.

## Creating and Packaging the Application

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application
2. Packaging the Application Client
3. Packaging the Session Bean
4. Checking the JNDI Names

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application

1. Start the deploytool:  

```
deploytool
```
2. Choose File→New→Application EAR.
3. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `clientsession`.
4. In the File Name field, type `ClientSessionApp`.
5. Click New Application.
6. Click OK.



## Packaging the Application Client

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the JAR File Contents screen:
  - a. Make sure that Create New AppClient Module in Application is selected and that the application is ClientSessionApp.
  - b. In the AppClient Display Name field, type MyAppClient.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the clientsession/build directory. Select MyAppClient.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen, select MyAppClient in the Main Class combo box.
4. In the EJB References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type ejb/remote/PubQuery in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose Session from the EJB Type menu.
  - c. Type PubQueryHome in the Home Interface field.
  - d. Type PubQueryRemote in the Local/Remote Interface field.
  - e. Leave the Enterprise Bean Name field empty.

When you return to the EJB References screen, choose the JNDI Name radio button and type PubQuery. The session bean uses remote interfaces, so the client accesses the bean through the JNDI name rather than the bean name.

5. Click Finish.

## Packaging the Session Bean

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select Create New JAR Module in Application and make sure that the application is ClientSessionApp.
  - b. In the JAR Display Name field, type PubQueryJAR.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.

- d. In the dialog box, locate the `clientsession/build` directory. Select `PubQueryBean.class`, `PubQueryHome.class`, `PubQueryRemote.class`, and `PubQueryBeanExample.properties` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Session radio button, then the Stateless radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose `PubQueryBean`.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, type `PubQuery`.
  - d. In the Remote Interfaces area, choose `PubQueryHome` from the Remote Home Interface menu and `PubQueryRemote` from the Remote Interface menu.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Resource References and Transaction Management boxes.
5. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
6. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. In the Coded Name field, type `eis/JAXR`.
  - c. From the Type menu, choose `javax.xml.registry.ConnectionFactory`.
  - d. In the Deployment Settings area, type `eis/JAXR` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields. (These are the user name and password specified in the file `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/config/sun-acc.xml`, which the application client container uses.)

## Checking the JNDI Names

Verify that the JNDI names for the application components are correct. They should appear as shown in Table 10–3 and Table 10–4.

**Table 10–3** Application Pane

Component Type	Component	JNDI Name
EJB	PubQuery	PubQuery

**Table 10–4** References Pane

Ref. Type	Referenced By	Reference Name	JNDI Name
EJB Ref	MyAppClient	ejb/remote/PubQuery	PubQuery
Resource	PubQuery	eis/JAXR	eis/JAXR

## Deploying the Application

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
4. In the dialog box that asks if you wish to save the application, click Yes.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application

1. If you are using the Java WSDP Registry Server, start it by starting Tomcat.  
Windows systems: Choose Start→Programs→Java(TM) Web Services Developer Pack→Start Tomcat.  
UNIX systems:  
`<JWSDP_HOME>/bin/startup.sh`  
Starting Tomcat takes some time.
2. In the deploytool, select the server node.
3. Select `ClientSessionApp` from the list of deployed objects, then click Client Jar.
4. Choose Browse to navigate to the directory from which you will run the client; we suggest the `examples/jaxr/clientsession` directory. When you reach the directory, click Select, then click OK. Click OK in the information dialog. You will find a file named `ClientSessionAppClient.jar` in the specified directory.

5. To run the client, use the following command:

```
appclient -client ClientSessionAppClient.jar
```

The program output in the terminal window looks like this:

```
Looking up EJB reference
Looked up home
Narrowed home
Got the EJB
See server log for bean output
```

In the server log, you will find the output from the `executePublish` and `executeQuery` methods.

## Undeploying and Removing the Application

To undeploy and remove the application, perform the following steps:

1. Select the deployed application in the server pane and click Undeploy.
2. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose File→Close.
3. Remove the `build` directory created by the `compile` target:  

```
asant clean
```
4. If you wish, stop the server:  

```
asadmin stop-domain
```

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

## Further Information

For more information about JAXR, registries, and Web services, see the following:

- Java Specification Request (JSR) 93: JAXR 1.0:  
<http://jcp.org/jsr/detail/093.jsp>
- JAXR home page:  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/jaxr/index.html>
- Universal Description, Discovery, and Integration (UDDI) project:

<http://www.uddi.org/>

- ebXML:  
<http://www.ebxml.org/>
- Open Source JAXR Provider for ebXML Registries:  
<http://ebxmlrr.sourceforge.net/>
- Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition:  
<http://java.sun.com/j2ee/>
- Java Technology and XML:  
<http://java.sun.com/xml/>
- Java Technology & Web Services:  
<http://java.sun.com/webservices/index.html>



---

# Java Servlet Technology

*Stephanie Bodoff*

AS soon as the Web began to be used for delivering services, service providers recognized the need for dynamic content. Applets, one of the earliest attempts toward this goal, focused on using the client platform to deliver dynamic user experiences. At the same time, developers also investigated using the server platform for this purpose. Initially, Common Gateway Interface (CGI) scripts were the main technology used to generate dynamic content. Though widely used, CGI scripting technology has a number of shortcomings, including platform dependence and lack of scalability. To address these limitations, Java Servlet technology was created as a portable way to provide dynamic, user-oriented content.

## What is a Servlet?

A *servlet* is a Java programming language class used to extend the capabilities of servers that host applications accessed via a request-response programming model. Although servlets can respond to any type of request, they are commonly used to extend the applications hosted by Web servers. For such applications, Java Servlet technology defines HTTP-specific servlet classes.

The `javax.servlet` and `javax.servlet.http` packages provide interfaces and classes for writing servlets. All servlets must implement the `Servlet` interface, which defines life-cycle methods.

When implementing a generic service, you can use or extend the `GenericServlet` class provided with the Java Servlet API. The `HttpServlet` class provides methods, such as `doGet` and `doPost`, for handling HTTP-specific services.

This chapter focuses on writing servlets that generate responses to HTTP requests. Some knowledge of the HTTP protocol is assumed; if you are unfamiliar with this protocol, you can get a brief introduction to HTTP in HTTP Overview (page 813).

## The Example Servlets

This chapter uses the Duke's Bookstore application to illustrate the tasks involved in programming servlets. Table 11–1 lists the servlets that handle each bookstore function. Each programming task is illustrated by one or more servlets. For example, `BookDetailsServlet` illustrates how to handle HTTP GET requests, `BookDetailsServlet` and `CatalogServlet` show how to construct responses, and `CatalogServlet` illustrates how to track session information.

**Table 11–1** Duke's Bookstore Example Servlets

Function	Servlet
Enter the bookstore	<code>BookStoreServlet</code>
Create the bookstore banner	<code>BannerServlet</code>
Browse the bookstore catalog	<code>CatalogServlet</code>
Put a book in a shopping cart	<code>CatalogServlet</code> , <code>BookDetailsServlet</code>
Get detailed information on a specific book	<code>BookDetailsServlet</code>
Display the shopping cart	<code>ShowCartServlet</code>
Remove one or more books from the shopping cart	<code>ShowCartServlet</code>
Buy the books in the shopping cart	<code>CashierServlet</code>



**Table 11–1** Duke’s Bookstore Example Servlets (Continued)

Function	Servlet
Receive an acknowledgement for the purchase	ReceiptServlet

The data for the bookstore application is maintained in a database and accessed through the helper class `database.BookDB`. The database package also contains the class `BookDetails`, which represents a book. The shopping cart and shopping cart items are represented by the classes `cart.ShoppingCart` and `cart.ShoppingCartItem`, respectively.

The source code for the bookstore application is located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore1/` directory created when you unzip the tutorial bundle (see *Building and Running the Examples*, page xxi). A sample `bookstore1.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build, package, deploy, and run the example:

1. Build and package the bookstore common files as described in *Duke’s Bookstore Examples* (page 101).
2. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore1/`.
3. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore1/build/` directory.
4. Start the J2EE application server.
5. Perform all the operations described in *Accessing Databases from Web Applications*, page 102.
6. Start `deploytool`.
7. Create a Web application called `bookstore1` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
8. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the `Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module` radio button.
  - b. Click `Browse` and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/bookstore1/build/`.
  - c. In the `File Name` field, enter `bookstore1`.
  - d. Click `Choose Module File`.

- e. In the WAR Display Name field, enter bookstore1.
  - f. In the Context Root field, enter /bookstore1.
  - g. Click Edit.
  - h. In the Edit Archive Contents dialog box, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore1/build/`. Select `errorpage.html`, `duke.books.gif`, `BannerServlet.class`, `BookStoreServlet.class`, `BookDetailsServlet.class`, `CatalogServlet.class`, `ShowCartServlet.class`, `CashierServlet.class`, `ReceiptServlet.class`, and the database, filters, listeners, and util packages. Click Add.
  - i. Add the shared bookstore library. Navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/build/web/bookstore/dist/`. Select `bookstore.jar` and Click Add.
  - j. Click OK.
  - k. Click Next.
  - l. Select the Servlet radio button.
  - m. Click Next.
  - n. Select `BannerServlet` from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - o. Click Finish.
9. Add each of the Web components listed in Table 11–2. For each servlet:
- a. Select File→New→Web Application WAR.
  - b. Click the Add to Existing WAR Module radio button. Since the WAR contains all of the servlet classes, you do not have to add any more content.
  - c. Click Next.
  - d. Select the Servlet radio button and the Component Aliases checkbox.
  - e. Click Next.
  - f. Select the servlet from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - g. Click Next.
  - h. Click Add. Enter the alias.

- i. Click Finish.

**Table 11–2** Duke’s Bookstore Web Components

Web Component Name	Servlet Class	Component Alias
BookStoreServlet	BookStoreServlet	/bookstore
CatalogServlet	CatalogServlet	/bookcatalog
BookDetailsServlet	BookDetailsServlet	/bookdetails
ShowCartServlet	ShowCartServlet	/bookshowcart
CashierServlet	CashierServlet	/bookcashier
ReceiptServlet	ReceiptServlet	/bookreceipt

10. Add the listener class `listeners.ContextListener` (described in Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events, page 446).
  - a. Select the Event Listeners tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Select the `listeners.ContextListener` class from drop down field in the Event Listener Classes panel.
11. Add an error page (described in Handling Errors, page 448).
  - a. Select the File Refs tab.
  - b. Click Add in the Error Mapping panel.
  - c. Enter `exception.BookNotFoundException` in the Error/Exception field.
  - d. Enter `/errorpage.html` in the Resource to be Called field.
  - e. Repeat for `exception.BooksNotFoundException` and `javax.servlet.UnavailableException`.
12. Add the filters `filters.HitCounterFilter` and `filters.OrderFilter` (described in Filtering Requests and Responses, page 458).
  - a. Select the Filter Mapping tab.
  - b. Click Edit Filter List.
  - c. Click Add.

- d. Select `filters.HitCounterFilter` from the Filter Class column. The deploytool will automatically enter `HitCounterFilter` in the Display Name column.
  - e. Click Add.
  - f. Select `filters.OrderFilter` from the Filter Class column. The deploytool will automatically enter `OrderFilter` in the Display Name column.
  - g. Click OK.
  - h. Click Add.
  - i. Select `HitCounterFilter` from the Filter Name column.
  - j. Select Servlet from the Target Type column.
  - k. Select `BookStoreServlet` from the Target column.
  - l. Repeat for `OrderFilter`. The target type is Servlet and the target is `ReceiptServlet`.
13. Add a resource reference for the database.
- a. Select the Resource Refs tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the Coded Name field.
  - d. Accept the default type `javax.sql.DataSource`.
  - e. Accept the default authorization Container.
  - f. Accept the default selected Shareable.
  - g. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the JNDI name field of the Deployment setting for `jdbc/BookDB` frame.
14. Select File→Save.
15. Deploy the application.
- a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
  - c. Click OK.
  - d. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
16. To run the application, open the bookstore URL  
`http://localhost:1024/bookstore1/bookstore`.

# Troubleshooting

The Duke's Bookstore database access object returns the following exceptions:

- `BookNotFoundException`—Returned if a book can't be located in the bookstore database. This will occur if you haven't loaded the bookstore database with data by running `asant create-db_common` or if the database server hasn't been started or it has crashed.
- `BooksNotFoundException`—Returned if the bookstore data can't be retrieved. This will occur if you haven't loaded the bookstore database with data or if the database server hasn't been started or it has crashed.
- `UnavailableException`—Returned if a servlet can't retrieve the Web context attribute representing the bookstore. This will occur if the database server hasn't been started.

Because we have specified an error page, you will see the message `The application is unavailable. Please try later.` If you don't specify an error page, the Web container generates a default page containing the message `A Servlet Exception Has Occurred` and a stack trace that can help diagnose the cause of the exception. If you use `errorpage.html`, you will have to look in the server log to determine the cause of the exception. The server log file is `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/logs/server.log`.

## Servlet Life Cycle

The life cycle of a servlet is controlled by the container in which the servlet has been deployed. When a request is mapped to a servlet, the container performs the following steps.

1. If an instance of the servlet does not exist, the Web container
  - a. Loads the servlet class.
  - b. Creates an instance of the servlet class.
  - c. Initializes the servlet instance by calling the `init` method. Initialization is covered in [Initializing a Servlet](#) (page 452).
2. Invokes the `service` method, passing a request and response object. Service methods are discussed in [Writing Service Methods](#) (page 453).

If the container needs to remove the servlet, it finalizes the servlet by calling the servlet's `destroy` method. Finalization is discussed in [Finalizing a Servlet](#) (page 473).

## Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events

You can monitor and react to events in a servlet's life cycle by defining listener objects whose methods get invoked when life cycle events occur. To use these listener objects you must define the listener class and specify the listener class.

### Defining The Listener Class

You define a listener class as an implementation of a listener interface. Servlet Life Cycle Events (page 446) lists the events that can be monitored and the corresponding interface that must be implemented. When a listener method is invoked, it is passed an event that contains information appropriate to the event. For example, the methods in the `HttpSessionListener` interface are passed an `HttpSessionEvent`, which contains an `HttpSession`.

**Table 11–3** Servlet Life Cycle Events

Object	Event	Listener Interface and Event Class
Web context (See Accessing the Web Context, page 469)	Initialization and destruction	<code>javax.servlet.</code> <code>ServletContextListener</code> and <code>ServletContextEvent</code>
	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	<code>javax.servlet.</code> <code>ServletContextAttributeListener</code> and <code>ServletContextAttributeEvent</code>
Session (See Maintaining Client State, page 470)	Creation, invalidation, activation, passivation, and timeout	<code>javax.servlet.http.</code> <code>HttpSessionListener</code> , <code>javax.servlet.http.</code> <code>HttpSessionActivationListener</code> , and <code>HttpSessionEvent</code>
	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	<code>javax.servlet.http.</code> <code>HttpSessionAttributeListener</code> and <code>HttpSessionBindingEvent</code>

**Table 11–3** Servlet Life Cycle Events (Continued)

Object	Event	Listener Interface and Event Class
Request	A servlet request has started being processed by Web components	javax.servlet. ServletRequestListener and ServletRequestEvent
	Attribute added, removed, or replaced	javax.servlet. ServletRequestAttributeListener and ServletRequestAttributeEvent

The `listeners.ContextListener` class creates and removes the database helper and counter objects used in the Duke's Bookstore application. The methods retrieve the Web context object from `ServletContextEvent` and then store (and remove) the objects as servlet context attributes.

```
import database.BookDB;
import javax.servlet.*;
import util.Counter;

public final class ContextListener
    implements ServletContextListener {
    private ServletContext context = null;
    public void contextInitialized(ServletContextEvent event) {
        context = event.getServletContext();
        try {
            BookDB bookDB = new BookDB();
            context.setAttribute("bookDB", bookDB);
        } catch (Exception ex) {
            System.out.println(
                "Couldn't create database: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        Counter counter = new Counter();
        context.setAttribute("hitCounter", counter);
        counter = new Counter();
        context.setAttribute("orderCounter", counter);
    }

    public void contextDestroyed(ServletContextEvent event) {
        context = event.getServletContext();
        BookDB bookDB = context.getAttribute(
            "bookDB");
        bookDB.remove();
    }
}
```

```
        context.removeAttribute("bookDB");  
        context.removeAttribute("hitCounter");  
        context.removeAttribute("orderCounter");  
    }  
}
```

## Specifying Event Listener Classes

You specify an event listener class in the Event Listener tab of the WAR inspector. Review step 10. in *The Example Servlets* (page 440) for the `deploytool` procedure for specifying the `ContextListener` listener class.

## Handling Errors

Any number of exceptions can occur when a servlet is executed. The Web container will generate a default page containing the message `A Servlet Exception Has Occurred` when an exception occurs, but you can also specify that the container should return a specific error page for a given exception. Review step 11. in *The Example Servlets* (page 440) for `deploytool` procedures for mapping the exceptions `exception.BookNotFound`, `exception.BooksNotFound`, and `exception.OrderException` returned by the Duke's Bookstore application to `errorpage.html`.

## Sharing Information

Web components, like most objects, usually work with other objects to accomplish their tasks. There are several ways they can do this. They can use private helper objects (for example, JavaBeans components), they can share objects that are attributes of a public scope, they can use a database, and they can invoke other Web resources. The Java Servlet technology mechanisms that allow a Web component to invoke other Web resources are described in *Invoking Other Web Resources* (page 465).

## Using Scope Objects

Collaborating Web components share information via objects maintained as attributes of four scope objects. These attributes are accessed with the

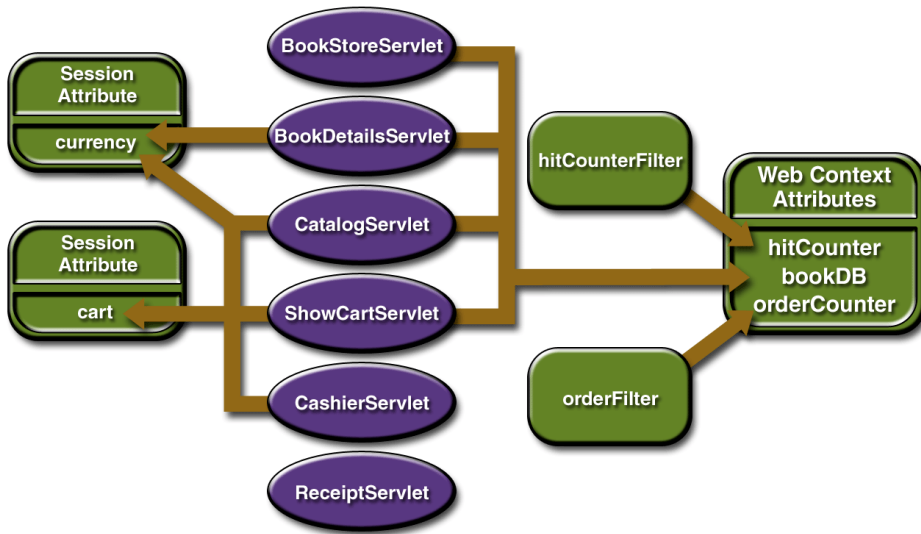


[get|set]Attribute methods of the class representing the scope. Table 11–4 lists the scope objects.

**Table 11–4** Scope Objects

Scope Object	Class	Accessible From
Web context	<code>javax.servlet.ServletContext</code>	Web components within a Web context. See Accessing the Web Context (page 469).
session	<code>javax.servlet.http.HttpSession</code>	Web components handling a request that belongs to the session. See Maintaining Client State (page 470).
request	subtype of <code>javax.servlet.ServletException</code>	Web components handling the request.
page	<code>javax.servlet.jsp.JspContext</code>	The JSP page that creates the object. See Implicit Objects (page 493).

Figure 11–1 shows the scoped attributes maintained by the Duke’s Bookstore application.



**Figure 11–1** Duke’s Bookstore Scoped Attributes

## Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources

In a multithreaded server, it is possible for shared resources to be accessed concurrently. Besides scope object attributes, shared resources include in-memory data such as instance or class variables, and external objects such as files, database connections, and network connections. Concurrent access can arise in several situations:

- Multiple Web components accessing objects stored in the Web context
- Multiple Web components accessing objects stored in a session
- Multiple threads within a Web component accessing instance variables. A Web container will typically create a thread to handle each request. If you want to ensure that a servlet instance handles only one request at a time, a servlet can implement the `SingleThreadModel` interface. If a servlet implements this interface, you are guaranteed that no two threads will execute concurrently in the servlet’s service method. A Web container can

implement this guarantee by synchronizing access to a single instance of the servlet, or by maintaining a pool of Web component instances and dispatching each new request to a free instance. This interface does not prevent synchronization problems that result from Web components accessing shared resources such as static class variables or external objects. In addition, the Servlet 2.4 specification deprecates `SingleThreadModel`.

When resources can be accessed concurrently, they can be used in an inconsistent fashion. To prevent this, you must control the access using the synchronization techniques described in the Threads lesson in *The Java Tutorial*.

In the previous section we showed five scoped attributes shared by more than one servlet: `bookDB`, `cart`, `currency`, `hitCounter`, and `orderCounter`. The `bookDB` attribute is discussed in the next section. The `cart`, `currency`, and counters can be set and read by multiple multithreaded servlets. To prevent these objects from being used inconsistently, access is controlled by synchronized methods. For example, here is the `util.Counter` class:

```
public class Counter {
    private int counter;
    public Counter() {
        counter = 0;
    }
    public synchronized int getCounter() {
        return counter;
    }
    public synchronized int setCounter(int c) {
        counter = c;
        return counter;
    }
    public synchronized int incCounter() {
        return(++counter);
    }
}
```

## Accessing Databases

Data that is shared between Web components and is persistent between invocations of a Web application is usually maintained by a database. Web components use the JDBC 2.0 API to access relational databases. The data for the bookstore application is maintained in a database and accessed through the helper class `database.BookDB`. For example, `ReceiptServlet` invokes the `BookDB.buy-`

Books method to update the book inventory when a user makes a purchase. The `buyBooks` method invokes `buyBook` for each book contained in the shopping cart. To ensure the order is processed in its entirety, the calls to `buyBook` are wrapped in a single JDBC transaction. The use of the shared database connection is synchronized via the `[get|release]Connection` methods.

```
public void buyBooks(ShoppingCart cart) throws OrderException {
    Collection items = cart.getItems();
    Iterator i = items.iterator();
    try {
        getConnection();
        con.setAutoCommit(false);
        while (i.hasNext()) {
            ShoppingCartItem sci = (ShoppingCartItem)i.next();
            BookDetails bd = (BookDetails)sci.getItem();
            String id = bd.getBookId();
            int quantity = sci.getQuantity();
            buyBook(id, quantity);
        }
        con.commit();
        con.setAutoCommit(true);
        releaseConnection();
    } catch (Exception ex) {
        try {
            con.rollback();
            releaseConnection();
            throw new OrderException("Transaction failed: " +
                ex.getMessage());
        } catch (SQLException sqx) {
            releaseConnection();
            throw new OrderException("Rollback failed: " +
                sqx.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

## Initializing a Servlet

After the Web container loads and instantiates the servlet class and before it delivers requests from clients, the Web container initializes the servlet. You can customize this process to allow the servlet to read persistent configuration data, initialize resources, and perform any other one-time activities by overriding the `init` method of the `Servlet` interface. A servlet that cannot complete its initialization process should throw `UnavailableException`.

All the servlets that access the bookstore database (`BookStoreServlet`, `CatalogServlet`, `BookDetailsServlet`, and `ShowCartServlet`) initialize a variable in their `init` method that points to the database helper object created by the Web context listener:

```
public class CatalogServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private BookDB bookDB;
    public void init() throws ServletException {
        bookDB = (BookDB)getServletContext().
            getAttribute("bookDB");
        if (bookDB == null) throw new
            UnavailableException("Couldn't get database.");
    }
}
```

## Writing Service Methods

The service provided by a servlet is implemented in the *service* method of a `GenericServlet`, the *doMethod* methods (where *Method* can take the value `Get`, `Delete`, `Options`, `Post`, `Put`, `Trace`) of an `HttpServlet`, or any other protocol-specific methods defined by a class that implements the `Servlet` interface. In the rest of this chapter, the term *service method* will be used for any method in a servlet class that provides a service to a client.

The general pattern for a service method is to extract information from the request, access external resources, and then populate the response based on that information.

For HTTP servlets, the correct procedure for populating the response is to first retrieve an output stream from the response, then fill in the response headers, and finally write any body content to the output stream. Response headers must always be set before the response has been committed. Any attempt to set/add headers after the response has been committed will be ignored by the Web container. The next two sections describe how to get information from requests and generate responses.

## Getting Information from Requests

A request contains data passed between a client and the servlet. All requests implement the `ServletRequest` interface. This interface defines methods for accessing the following information:

- Parameters, which are typically used to convey information between clients and servlets
- Object-valued attributes, which are typically used to pass information between the servlet container and a servlet or between collaborating servlets
- Information about the protocol used to communicate the request and the client and server involved in the request
- Information relevant to localization

For example, in `CatalogServlet` the identifier of the book that a customer wishes to purchase is included as a parameter to the request. The following code fragment illustrates how to use the `getParameter` method to extract the identifier:

```
String bookId = request.getParameter("Add");
if (bookId != null) {
    BookDetails book = bookDB.getBookDetails(bookId);
}
```

You can also retrieve an input stream from the request and manually parse the data. To read character data, use the `BufferedReader` object returned by the request's `getReader` method. To read binary data, use the `ServletInputStream` returned by `getInputStream`.

HTTP servlets are passed an HTTP request object, `HttpServletRequest`, which contains the request URL, HTTP headers, query string, and so on.

An HTTP request URL contains the following parts:

```
http://[host]:[port][request path]?[query string]
```

The request path is further composed of the following elements:

- **Context path:** A concatenation of a forward slash / with the context root of the servlet's Web application.
- **Servlet path:** The path section that corresponds to the component alias that activated this request. This path starts with a forward slash /.

- **Path info:** The part of the request path that is not part of the context path or the servlet path.

If the context path is `/catalog` and for the aliases listed in Table 11–5, Table 11–6 gives some examples of how the URL will be parsed.

**Table 11–5** Aliases

Pattern	Servlet
<code>/lawn/*</code>	<code>LawnServlet</code>
<code>/*.jsp</code>	<code>JSPServlet</code>

**Table 11–6** Request Path Elements

Request Path	Servlet Path	Path Info
<code>/catalog/lawn/index.html</code>	<code>/lawn</code>	<code>/index.html</code>
<code>/catalog/help/feedback.jsp</code>	<code>/help/feedback.jsp</code>	<code>null</code>

Query strings are composed of a set of parameters and values. Individual parameters are retrieved from a request with the `getParameter` method. There are two ways to generate query strings:

- A query string can explicitly appear in a Web page. For example, an HTML page generated by the `CatalogServlet` could contain the link `<a href="/bookstore1/catalog?Add=101">Add To Cart</a>`. `CatalogServlet` extracts the parameter named `Add` as follows:
 

```
String bookId = request.getParameter("Add");
```
- A query string is appended to a URL when a form with a GET HTTP method is submitted. In the Duke's Bookstore application, `CashierServlet` generates a form, then a user name input to the form is appended to the URL that maps to `ReceiptServlet`, and finally `ReceiptServlet` extracts the user name using the `getParameter` method.

## Constructing Responses

A response contains data passed between a server and the client. All responses implement the `ServletResponse` interface. This interface defines methods that allow you to do the following:

- Retrieve an output stream to use to send data to the client. To send character data, use the `PrintWriter` returned by the response's `getWriter` method. To send binary data in a MIME body response, use the `ServletOutputStream` returned by `getOutputStream`. To mix binary and text data, for example, to create a multipart response, use a `ServletOutputStream` and manage the character sections manually.
- Indicate the content type (for example, `text/html`), being returned by the response with the `setContentType(String)` method. This method must be called before the response is committed. A registry of content type names is kept by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) at: <http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/>
- Indicate whether to buffer output with the `setBufferSize(int)` method. By default, any content written to the output stream is immediately sent to the client. Buffering allows content to be written before anything is actually sent back to the client, thus providing the servlet with more time to set appropriate status codes and headers or forward to another Web resource. The method must be called before any content is written or the response is committed.
- Set localization information such as locale and character encoding. See Chapter 16 for details.

HTTP response objects, `HttpServletResponse`, have fields representing HTTP headers such as

- Status codes, which are used to indicate the reason a request is not satisfied or that a request has been redirected.
- Cookies, which are used to store application-specific information at the client. Sometimes cookies are used to maintain an identifier for tracking a user's session (see Session Tracking, page 472).

In Duke's Bookstore, `BookDetailsServlet` generates an HTML page that displays information about a book that the servlet retrieves from a database. The servlet first sets response headers: the content type of the response and the buffer size. The servlet buffers the page content because the database access can generate an exception that would cause forwarding to an error page. By buffering the response, the client will not see a concatenation of part of a Duke's Bookstore



page with the error page should an error occur. The `doGet` method then retrieves a `PrintWriter` from the response.

For filling in the response, the servlet first dispatches the request to `BannerServlet`, which generates a common banner for all the servlets in the application. This process is discussed in Including Other Resources in the Response (page 466). Then the servlet retrieves the book identifier from a request parameter and uses the identifier to retrieve information about the book from the bookstore database. Finally, the servlet generates HTML markup that describes the book information and commits the response to the client by calling the `close` method on the `PrintWriter`.

```
public class BookDetailsServlet extends HttpServlet {
    public void doGet (HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {
        // set headers before accessing the Writer
        response.setContentType("text/html");
        response.setBufferSize(8192);
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

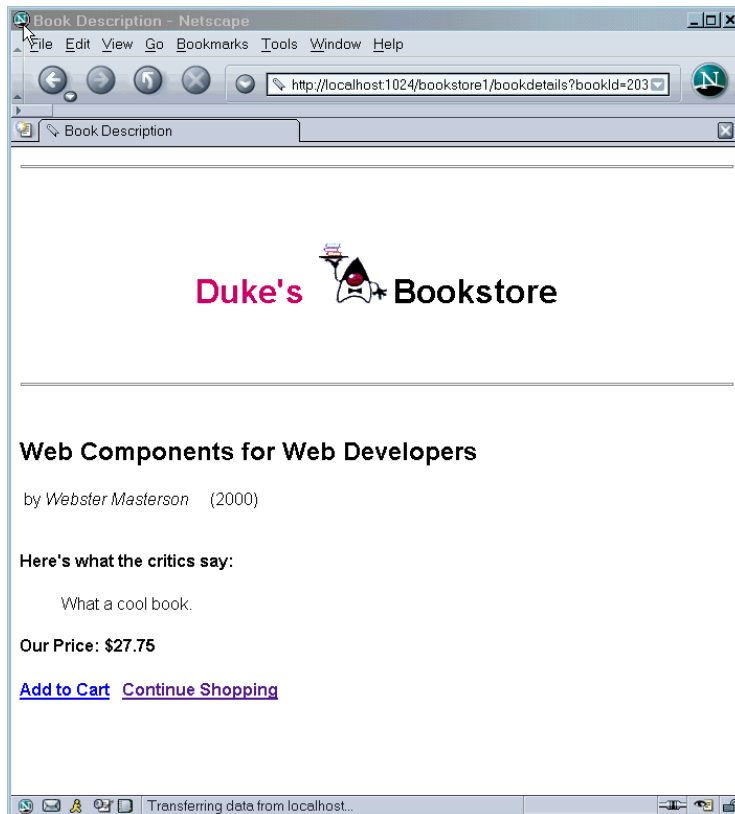
        // then write the response
        out.println("<html>" +
            "<head><title>+
            messages.getString("TitleBookDescription")
            +</title></head>");

        // Get the dispatcher; it gets the banner to the user
        RequestDispatcher dispatcher =
            getServletContext().
            getRequestDispatcher("/banner");
        if (dispatcher != null)
            dispatcher.include(request, response);

        //Get the identifier of the book to display
        String bookId = request.getParameter("bookId");
        if (bookId != null) {
            // and the information about the book
            try {
                BookDetails bd =
                    bookDB.getBookDetails(bookId);
                ...
                //Print out the information obtained
                out.println("<h2>" + bd.getTitle() + "</h2>" +
                    ...
            } catch (BookNotFoundException ex) {
                response.resetBuffer();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        throw new ServletException(ex);
    }
}
out.println("</body></html>");
out.close();
}
```

`BookDetailsServlet` generates a page that looks like:



**Figure 11–2** Book Details

## Filtering Requests and Responses

A *filter* is an object that can transform the header and content (or both) of a request or response. Filters differ from Web components in that they usually do

not themselves create a response. Instead, a filter provides functionality that can be “attached” to any kind of Web resource. As a consequence, a filter should not have any dependencies on a Web resource for which it is acting as a filter, so that it can be composable with more than one type of Web resource. The main tasks that a filter can perform are as follows:

- Query the request and act accordingly.
- Block the request and response pair from passing any further.
- Modify the request headers and data. You do this by providing a customized version of the request.
- Modify the response headers and data. You do this by providing a customized version of the response.
- Interact with external resources.

Applications of filters include authentication, logging, image conversion, data compression, encryption, tokenizing streams, and XML transformations, and so on.

You can configure a Web resource to be filtered by a chain of zero, one, or more filters in a specific order. This chain is specified when the Web application containing the component is deployed and is instantiated when a Web container loads the component.

In summary, the tasks involved in using filters include

- Programming the filter
- Programming customized requests and responses
- Specifying the filter chain for each Web resource

## Programming Filters

The filtering API is defined by the `Filter`, `FilterChain`, and `FilterConfig` interfaces in the `javax.servlet` package. You define a filter by implementing the `Filter` interface. The most important method in this interface is the `doFilter`

ter method, which is passed request, response, and filter chain objects. This method can perform the following actions:

- Examine the request headers.
- Customize the request object if it wishes to modify request headers or data.
- Customize the response object if it wishes to modify response headers or data.
- Invoke the next entity in the filter chain. If the current filter is the last filter in the chain that ends with the target Web component or static resource, the next entity is the resource at the end of the chain; otherwise, it is the next filter that was configured in the WAR. It invokes the next entity by calling the `doFilter` method on the chain object (passing in the request and response it was called with, or the wrapped versions it may have created). Alternatively, it can choose to block the request by not making the call to invoke the next entity. In the latter case, the filter is responsible for filling out the response.
- Examine response headers after it has invoked the next filter in the chain
- Throw an exception to indicate an error in processing

In addition to `doFilter`, you must implement the `init` and `destroy` methods. The `init` method is called by the container when the filter is instantiated. If you wish to pass initialization parameters to the filter, you retrieve them from the `FilterConfig` object passed to `init`.

The Duke's Bookstore application uses the filters `HitCounterFilter` and `OrderFilter` to increment and log the value of a counter when the entry and receipt servlets are accessed.

In the `doFilter` method, both filters retrieve the servlet context from the filter configuration object so that they can access the counters stored as context attributes. After the filters have completed application-specific processing, they invoke `doFilter` on the filter chain object passed into the original `doFilter` method. The elided code is discussed in the next section.

```
public final class HitCounterFilter implements Filter {
    private FilterConfig filterConfig = null;

    public void init(FilterConfig filterConfig)
        throws ServletException {
        this.filterConfig = filterConfig;
    }
    public void destroy() {
        this.filterConfig = null;
    }
}
```

```

    }
    public void doFilter(ServletRequest request,
        ServletResponse response, FilterChain chain)
        throws IOException, ServletException {
        if (filterConfig == null)
            return;
        StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
        PrintWriter writer = new PrintWriter(sw);
        Counter counter = (Counter)filterConfig.
            getServletContext().
            getAttribute("hitCounter");
        writer.println();
        writer.println("=====");
        writer.println("The number of hits is: " +
            counter.incCounter());
        writer.println("=====");
        // Log the resulting string
        writer.flush();
        System.out.println(sw.getBuffer().toString());
        ...
        chain.doFilter(request, wrapper);
        ...
    }
}

```

## Programming Customized Requests and Responses

There are many ways for a filter to modify a request or response. For example, a filter could add an attribute to the request or insert data in the response. In the Duke's Bookstore example, `HitCounterFilter` inserts the value of the counter into the response.

A filter that modifies a response must usually capture the response before it is returned to the client. The way to do this is to pass a stand-in stream to the servlet that generates the response. The stand-in stream prevents the servlet from closing the original response stream when it completes and allows the filter to modify the servlet's response.

To pass this stand-in stream to the servlet, the filter creates a response wrapper that overrides the `getWriter` or `getOutputStream` method to return this stand-in stream. The wrapper is passed to the `doFilter` method of the filter chain. Wrapper methods default to calling through to the wrapped request or response object. This approach follows the well-known Wrapper or Decorator pattern described

in *Design Patterns, Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software* (Addison-Wesley, 1995). The following sections describe how the hit counter filter described earlier and other types of filters use wrappers.

To override request methods, you wrap the request in an object that extends `ServletRequestWrapper` or `HttpServletRequestWrapper`. To override response methods, you wrap the response in an object that extends `ServletResponseWrapper` or `HttpServletResponseWrapper`.

`HitCounterFilter` wraps the response in a `CharResponseWrapper`. The wrapped response is passed to the next object in the filter chain, which is `BookStoreServlet`. `BookStoreServlet` writes its response into the stream created by `CharResponseWrapper`. When `chain.doFilter` returns, `HitCounterFilter` retrieves the servlet's response from `PrintWriter` and writes it to a buffer. The filter inserts the value of the counter into the buffer, resets the content length header of the response, and finally writes the contents of the buffer to the response stream.

```
PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
CharResponseWrapper wrapper = new CharResponseWrapper(
    (HttpServletRequest)response);
chain.doFilter(request, wrapper);
CharArrayWriter caw = new CharArrayWriter();
caw.write(wrapper.toString().substring(0,
    wrapper.toString().indexOf("</body>")-1));
caw.write("<p>\n<center>" +
    messages.getString("Visitor") + "<font color='red'>" +
    counter.getCounter() + "</font></center>");
caw.write("\n</body></html>");
response.setContentLength(caw.toString().getBytes().length);
out.write(caw.toString());
out.close();

public class CharResponseWrapper extends
    HttpServletResponseWrapper {
    private CharArrayWriter output;
    public String toString() {
        return output.toString();
    }
    public CharResponseWrapper(HttpServletRequest response){
        super(response);
        output = new CharArrayWriter();
    }
}
```

```
public PrintWriter getWriter(){  
    return new PrintWriter(output);  
}  
}
```

Figure 11–3 shows the entry page for Duke’s Bookstore with the hit counter.

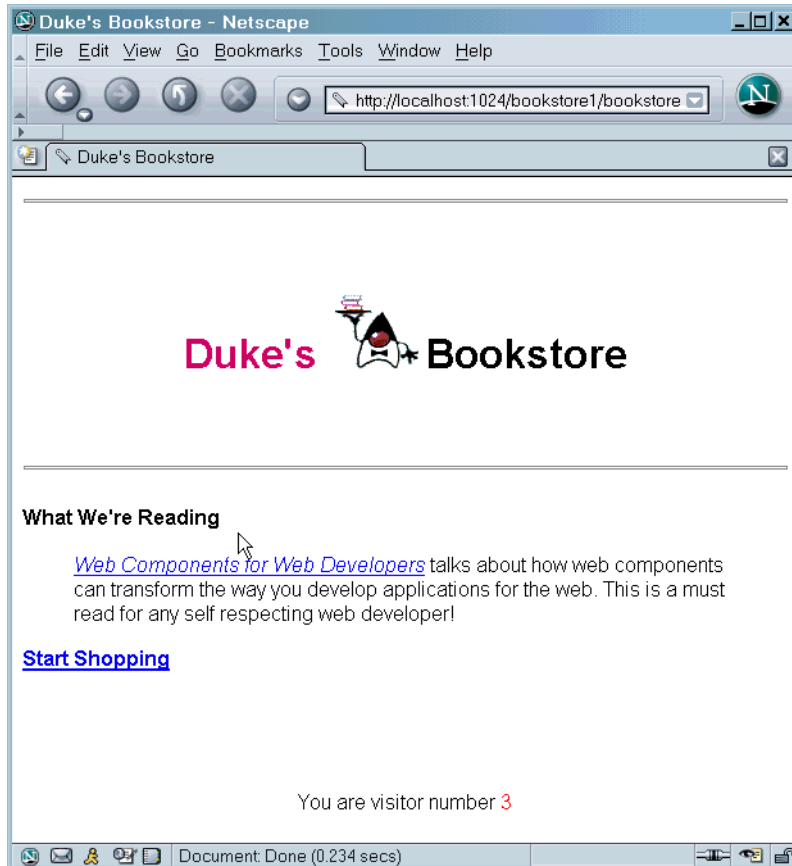


Figure 11–3 Duke’s Bookstore

## Specifying Filter Mappings

A Web container uses filter mappings to decide how to apply filters to Web resources. A filter mapping matches a filter to a Web component by name or to Web resources by URL pattern. The filters are invoked in the order in which filter mappings appear in the filter mapping list of a WAR. You specify a filter

mapping list for a WAR using a `deploytool` or by coding them directly in the Web application deployment descriptor as follows

- Declare the filter. This element creates a name for the filter and declares the filter's implementation class and initialization parameters.
- Map the filter to a Web resource by name or by URL pattern.
- Constrain how the filter will be applied to requests by choosing one of the enumerated dispatcher options:
  - REQUEST-Only when the request come directly from the client.
  - FORWARD-Only when the request has been forwarded to a component (see Transferring Control to Another Web Component, page 468).
  - INCLUDE-Only when the request is being processed by a component that has been included (see Including Other Resources in the Response, page 466).
  - ERROR-Only when the request is being processed with the error page mechanism (see Handling Errors, page 448).

You can direct the filter to be applied in any combination of the preceding situations by including multiple `dispatcher` elements. If no elements are specified, the default option is REQUEST.

If you want to log every request to a Web application, you would map the hit counter filter to the URL pattern `/*`. Step 12. in The Example Servlets (page 440) shows how to create and map the filters for the Duke's Bookstore application. Table 11–7 summarizes the filter definition and mapping list for the Duke's Bookstore application. The filters are matched by servlet name and each filter chain contains only one filter.

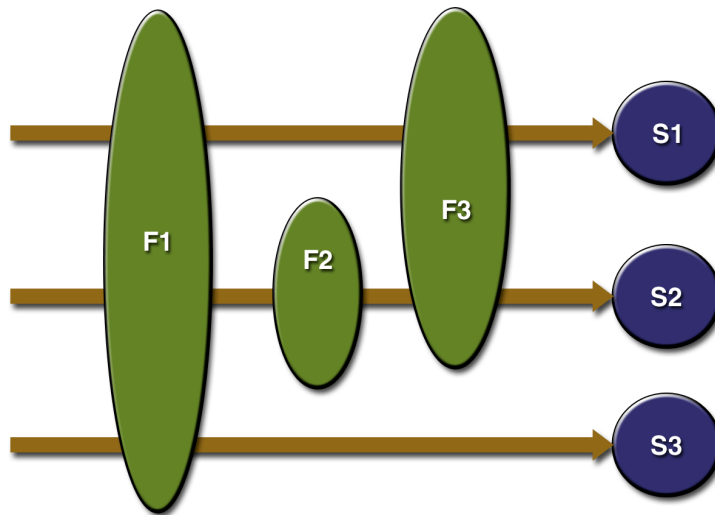
**Table 11–7** Duke's Bookstore Filter Definition and Mapping List

Filter	Class	Servlet
HitCounterFilter	<code>filters.HitCounterFilter</code>	BookStoreServlet
OrderFilter	<code>filters.OrderFilter</code>	ReceiptServlet

You can map a filter to one or more Web resources and you can map more than one filter to a Web resource. This is illustrated in Figure 11–4, where filter F1 is



mapped to servlets S1, S2, and S3, filter F2 is mapped to servlet S2, and filter F3 is mapped to servlets S1 and S2.



**Figure 11-4** Filter to Servlet Mapping

Recall that a filter chain is one of the objects passed to the `doFilter` method of a filter. This chain is formed indirectly via filter mappings. The order of the filters in the chain is the same as the order in which filter mappings appear in the Web application deployment descriptor.

When a filter is mapped to servlet S1, the Web container invokes the `doFilter` method of F1. The `doFilter` method of each filter in S1's filter chain is invoked by the preceding filter in the chain via the `chain.doFilter` method. Since S1's filter chain contains filters F1 and F3, F1's call to `chain.doFilter` invokes the `doFilter` method of filter F3. When F3's `doFilter` method completes, control returns to F1's `doFilter` method.

## Invoking Other Web Resources

Web components can invoke other Web resources in two ways: indirectly and directly. A Web component indirectly invokes another Web resource when it embeds a URL that points to another Web component in content returned to a client. In the Duke's Bookstore application, most Web components contain embedded URLs that point to other Web components. For example, `ShowCart-`

Servlet indirectly invokes the `CatalogServlet` through the embedded URL `/bookstore1/catalog`.

A Web component can also directly invoke another resource while it is executing. There are two possibilities: it can include the content of another resource, or it can forward a request to another resource.

To invoke a resource available on the server that is running a Web component, you must first obtain a `RequestDispatcher` object using the `getRequestDispatcher("URL")` method.

You can get a `RequestDispatcher` object from either a request or the Web context, however, the two methods have slightly different behavior. The method takes the path to the requested resource as an argument. A request can take a relative path (that is, one that does not begin with a `/`), but the Web context requires an absolute path. If the resource is not available, or if the server has not implemented a `RequestDispatcher` object for that type of resource, `getRequestDispatcher` will return null. Your servlet should be prepared to deal with this condition.

## Including Other Resources in the Response

It is often useful to include another Web resource, for example, banner content or copyright information, in the response returned from a Web component. To include another resource, invoke the `include` method of a `RequestDispatcher` object:

```
include(request, response);
```

If the resource is static, the `include` method enables programmatic server-side includes. If the resource is a Web component, the effect of the method is to send the request to the included Web component, execute the Web component, and then include the result of the execution in the response from the containing servlet. An included Web component has access to the request object, but it is limited in what it can do with the response object:

- It can write to the body of the response and commit a response.
- It cannot set headers or call any method (for example, `setCookie`) that affects the headers of the response.

The banner for the Duke's Bookstore application is generated by `BannerServlet`. Note that both the `doGet` and `doPost` methods are implemented because `BannerServlet` can be dispatched from either method in a calling servlet.

```
public class BannerServlet extends HttpServlet {
    public void doGet (HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {

        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        out.println("<body bgcolor=\"#ffffff\">" +
            "<center>" + "<hr> <br> &nbsp;" + "<h1>" +
            "<font size=\"+3\" color=\"#CC0066\">Duke's </font>" +
            "<img src=\"\" + request.getContextPath() +
            \"/duke.books.gif\">" +
            "<font size=\"+3\" color=\"black\">Bookstore</font>" +
            "</h1>" + "</center>" + "<br> &nbsp;" + "<hr> <br> ");
    }
    public void doPost (HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {

        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        out.println("<body bgcolor=\"#ffffff\">" +
            "<center>" + "<hr> <br> &nbsp;" + "<h1>" +
            "<font size=\"+3\" color=\"#CC0066\">Duke's </font>" +
            "<img src=\"\" + request.getContextPath() +
            \"/duke.books.gif\">" +
            "<font size=\"+3\" color=\"black\">Bookstore</font>" +
            "</h1>" + "</center>" + "<br> &nbsp;" + "<hr> <br> ");
    }
}
```

Each servlet in the Duke's Bookstore application includes the result from `BannerServlet` with the following code:

```
RequestDispatcher dispatcher =
    getServletContext().getRequestDispatcher("/banner");
if (dispatcher != null)
    dispatcher.include(request, response);
}
```

## Transferring Control to Another Web Component

In some applications, you might want to have one Web component do preliminary processing of a request and have another component generate the response. For example, you might want to partially process a request and then transfer to another component depending on the nature of the request.

To transfer control to another Web component, you invoke the `forward` method of a `RequestDispatcher`. When a request is forwarded, the request URI is set to the path of the forwarded page. The original URI and its constituent parts are saved as a request attributes `javax.servlet.forward.[request_uri|context-path|servlet_path|path_info|query_string]`. The `Dispatcher` servlet, used by a version of the Duke's Bookstore application described in The Example JSP Pages (page 550), saves the path information from the original URL, retrieves a `RequestDispatcher` from the request, and then forwards to the JSP page `template.jsp`.

```
public class Dispatcher extends HttpServlet {
    public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response) {
        RequestDispatcher dispatcher = request.
            getRequestDispatcher("/template.jsp");
        if (dispatcher != null)
            dispatcher.forward(request, response);
    }
    public void doPost(HttpServletRequest request,
        ...
    }
}
```

The `forward` method should be used to give another resource responsibility for replying to the user. If you have already accessed a `ServletOutputStream` or `PrintWriter` object within the servlet, you cannot use this method; it throws an `IllegalStateException`.

# Accessing the Web Context

The context in which Web components execute is an object that implements the `ServletContext` interface. You retrieve the Web context with the `getServletContext` method. The Web context provides methods for accessing:

- Initialization parameters
- Resources associated with the Web context
- Object-valued attributes
- Logging capabilities

The Web context is used by the Duke's Bookstore filters `filters.HitCounterFilter` and `OrderFilter`, which were discussed in *Filtering Requests and Responses* (page 458). The filters store a counter as a context attribute. Recall from *Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources* (page 450) that the counter's access methods are synchronized to prevent incompatible operations by servlets that are running concurrently. A filter retrieves the counter object with the context's `getAttribute` method. The incremented value of the counter is recorded in the log.

```
public final class HitCounterFilter implements Filter {
    private FilterConfig filterConfig = null;
    public void doFilter(ServletRequest request,
        ServletResponse response, FilterChain chain)
        throws IOException, ServletException {
        ...
        StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
        PrintWriter writer = new PrintWriter(sw);
        ServletContext context = filterConfig.
            getServletContext();
        Counter counter = (Counter)context.
            getAttribute("hitCounter");
        ...
        writer.println("The number of hits is: " +
            counter.incCounter());
        ...
        System.out.println(sw.getBuffer().toString());
        ...
    }
}
```

# Maintaining Client State

Many applications require a series of requests from a client to be associated with one another. For example, the Duke's Bookstore application saves the state of a user's shopping cart across requests. Web-based applications are responsible for maintaining such state, called a *session*, because the HTTP protocol is stateless. To support applications that need to maintain state, Java Servlet technology provides an API for managing sessions and allows several mechanisms for implementing sessions.

## Accessing a Session

Sessions are represented by an `HttpSession` object. You access a session by calling the `getSession` method of a request object. This method returns the current session associated with this request, or, if the request does not have a session, it creates one.

## Associating Attributes with a Session

You can associate object-valued attributes with a session by name. Such attributes are accessible by any Web component that belongs to the same Web context *and* is handling a request that is part of the same session.

The Duke's Bookstore application stores a customer's shopping cart as a session attribute. This allows the shopping cart to be saved between requests and also allows cooperating servlets to access the cart. `CatalogServlet` adds items to the cart; `ShowCartServlet` displays, deletes items from, and clears the cart; and `CashierServlet` retrieves the total cost of the books in the cart.

```
public class CashierServlet extends HttpServlet {
    public void doGet (HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response)
        throws ServletException, IOException {

        // Get the user's session and shopping cart
        HttpSession session = request.getSession();
        ShoppingCart cart =
            (ShoppingCart)session.
```

```
        getAttribute("cart");  
    ...  
    // Determine the total price of the user's books  
    double total = cart.getTotal();
```

## Notifying Objects That Are Associated with a Session

Recall that your application can notify Web context and session listener objects of servlet life cycle events (Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events, page 446). You can also notify objects of certain events related to their association with a session such as the following:

- When the object is added to or removed from a session. To receive this notification, your object must implement the `javax.http.HttpSessionBindingListener` interface.
- When the session to which the object is attached will be passivated or activated. A session will be passivated or activated when it is moved between virtual machines or saved to and restored from persistent storage. To receive this notification, your object must implement the `javax.http.HttpSessionActivationListener` interface.

## Session Management

Since there is no way for an HTTP client to signal that it no longer needs a session, each session has an associated timeout so that its resources can be reclaimed. The timeout period can be accessed with a session's `[get|set]MaxInactiveInterval` methods. You can also set the time-out period with `deploy-tool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the General tab.
3. Click the Advanced Setting button.
4. Enter the time-out period in the Session timeout field.

To ensure that an active session is not timed out, you should periodically access the session via service methods because this resets the session's time-to-live counter.





```
response.encodeURL(request.getContextPath() +  
    "/bookshowcart?Clear=clear") +  
    "\">" + messages.getString("ClearCart") +  
    "</a></strong>");
```

If cookies are turned off, the session is encoded in the Check Out URL as follows:

```
http://localhost:1024/bookstore1/cashier;  
jsessionid=c0o7fszeb1
```

If cookies are turned on, the URL is simply

```
http://localhost:1024/bookstore1/cashier
```

## Finalizing a Servlet

When a servlet container determines that a servlet should be removed from service (for example, when a container wants to reclaim memory resources, or when it is being shut down), it calls the `destroy` method of the `Servlet` interface. In this method, you release any resources the servlet is using and save any persistent state. The following `destroy` method releases the database object created in the `init` method described in *Initializing a Servlet* (page 452):

```
public void destroy() {  
    bookDB = null;  
}
```

All of a servlet's service methods should be complete when a servlet is removed. The server tries to ensure this by calling the `destroy` method only after all service requests have returned, or after a server-specific grace period, whichever comes first. If your servlet has operations that take a long time to run (that is, operations that may run longer than the server's grace period), the operations could still be running when `destroy` is called. You must make sure that any threads still handling client requests complete; the remainder of this section describes how to:

- Keep track of how many threads are currently running the service method
- Provide a clean shutdown by having the `destroy` method notify long-running threads of the shutdown and wait for them to complete
- Have the long-running methods poll periodically to check for shutdown and, if necessary, stop working, clean up, and return

## Tracking Service Requests

To track service requests, include in your servlet class a field that counts the number of service methods that are running. The field should have synchronized access methods to increment, decrement, and return its value.

```
public class ShutdownExample extends HttpServlet {
    private int serviceCounter = 0;
    ...
    //Access methods for serviceCounter
    protected synchronized void enteringServiceMethod() {
        serviceCounter++;
    }
    protected synchronized void leavingServiceMethod() {
        serviceCounter--;
    }
    protected synchronized int numServices() {
        return serviceCounter;
    }
}
```

The service method should increment the service counter each time the method is entered and should decrement the counter each time the method returns. This is one of the few times that your `HttpServlet` subclass should override the service method. The new method should call `super.service` to preserve all of the original service method's functionality:

```
protected void service(HttpServletRequest req,
                        HttpServletResponse resp)
                        throws ServletException, IOException {
    enteringServiceMethod();
    try {
        super.service(req, resp);
    } finally {
        leavingServiceMethod();
    }
}
```

## Notifying Methods to Shut Down

To ensure a clean shutdown, your `destroy` method should not release any shared resources until all of the service requests have completed. One part of doing this is to check the service counter. Another part is to notify the long-running meth-

ods that it is time to shut down. For this notification another field is required. The field should have the usual access methods:

```
public class ShutdownExample extends HttpServlet {
    private boolean shuttingDown;
    ...
    //Access methods for shuttingDown
    protected synchronized void setShuttingDown(boolean flag) {
        shuttingDown = flag;
    }
    protected synchronized boolean isShuttingDown() {
        return shuttingDown;
    }
}
```

An example of the destroy method using these fields to provide a clean shutdown follows:

```
public void destroy() {
    /* Check to see whether there are still service methods /*
    /* running, and if there are, tell them to stop. */
    if (numServices() > 0) {
        setShuttingDown(true);
    }

    /* Wait for the service methods to stop. */
    while(numServices() > 0) {
        try {
            Thread.sleep(interval);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
        }
    }
}
```

## Creating Polite Long-Running Methods

The final step in providing a clean shutdown is to make any long-running methods behave politely. Methods that might run for a long time should check the value of the field that notifies them of shutdowns and should interrupt their work, if necessary.

```
public void doPost(...) {
    ...
    for(i = 0; ((i < lotsOfStuffToDo) &&
        !isShuttingDown()); i++) {
```

```
        try {  
            partOfLongRunningOperation(i);  
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {  
            ...  
        }  
    }  
}
```

## Further Information

For further information on Java Servlet technology see:

- Java Servlet 2.4 Specification  
<http://java.sun.com/products/servlet/download.html#specs>
- The Java Servlets Web site  
<http://java.sun.com/products/servlet>.

---

# JavaServer Pages Technology

*Stephanie Bodoff*

**J**AVASERVER Pages (JSP) technology allows you to easily create Web content that has both static and dynamic components. JSP technology makes available all the dynamic capabilities of Java Servlet technology but provides a more natural approach to creating static content. The main features of JSP technology are

- A language for developing JSP pages, which are text-based documents that describe how to process a request and construct a response
- An expression language for accessing server-side objects
- Mechanisms for defining extensions to the JSP language

JSP technology also contains an API that is used by developers of Web containers, but this API is not covered in this tutorial.

## What Is a JSP Page?

A *JSP page* is a text document that contains two types of text: static template data, which can be expressed in any text-based format, such as HTML, SVG, WML, and XML, and JSP elements, which construct dynamic content.

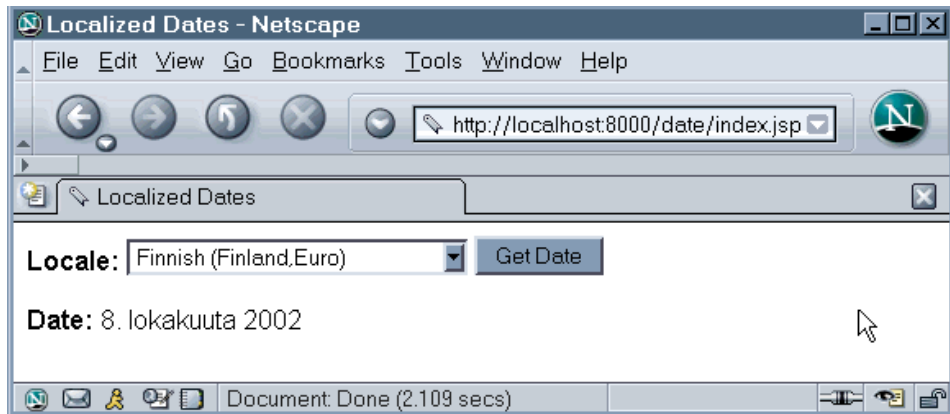
The JSP elements in a JSP page can be expressed in two syntaxes: standard and XML, though an individual page can only use one syntax. A JSP page in XML syntax is an XML document and can be manipulated by tools and APIs for XML

documents. The chapters in this tutorial that cover JSP technology currently document only the standard syntax. The XML syntax will be addressed in a future release of the tutorial. A syntax card and reference that summarizes both syntaxes is available at

<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp/docs.html#syntax>

## Example

The Web page in Figure 12–1 is a form that allows you to select a locale and displays the date in a manner appropriate to the locale.



**Figure 12–1** Localized Date Form

The source code for this example is in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/date/` directory. The JSP page, `index.jsp`, used to create the form appears below; it is a typical mixture of static HTML markup and JSP elements. If you have developed Web pages, you are probably familiar with the HTML document structure statements (`<head>`, `<body>`, and so on) and the HTML statements that create a form (`<form>`) and a menu (`<select>`).

The lines in bold in the example code contain the following types of JSP constructs:

- A page directive (**<%@page ... %>**) sets the content type returned by the page.
- Tag library directives (**<%@taglib ... %>**) import custom tag libraries.
- **jsp:useBean** creates an object containing a collection of locales and initializes an identifier that points to that object.
- JSP expression language expressions (**\${ }**) retrieve the value of object properties. The value of an are used to set tag attribute values.
- Custom tags set a variable (**c:set**), iterate over a collection of locale names (**c:forEach**), and conditionally insert HTML text into the response (**c:if**, **c:choose**, **c:when**, **c:otherwise**).
- **jsp:setProperty** sets the value of an object property.
- A function (**f:equals**) tests the equality of an attribute and the current item of a collection. (Note: a built-in == operator is usually used to test equality).

```
<%@ page contentType="text/html; charset=UTF-8" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core"
    prefix="c" %>
<%@ taglib uri="/functions" prefix="f" %>
<html>
<head><title>Localized Dates</title></head>
<body bgcolor="white">
<jsp:useBean id="locales" scope="application"
    class="mypkg.MyLocales"/>

<form name="localeForm" action="index.jsp" method="post">
<c:set var="selectedLocaleString" value="${param.locale}" />
<c:set var="selectedFlag"
    value="${!empty selectedLocaleString}" />
<b>Locale:</b>
<select name="locale">
<c:forEach var="localeString" items="${locales.localeNames}" >
<c:choose>
    <c:when test="${selectedFlag}">
        <c:choose>
            <c:when
                test="${f:equals(selectedLocaleString,
                    localeString)}" >
                <option selected>${localeString}</option>
            </c:when>
            <c:otherwise>
```

```

        <option>${localeString}</option>
    </c:otherwise>
</c:choose>
</c:when>
<c:otherwise>
    <option>${localeString}</option>
</c:otherwise>
</c:choose>
</c:forEach>
</select>
<input type="submit" name="Submit" value="Get Date">
</form>

<c:if test="${selectedFlag}" >
    <jsp:setProperty name="locales"
        property="selectedLocaleString"
        value="${selectedLocaleString}" />
    <jsp:useBean id="date" class="mypkg.MyDate"/>
    <jsp:setProperty name="date" property="locale"
        value="${locales.selectedLocale}"/>
    <b>Date: </b>${date.date}
</c:if>
</body>
</html>

```

A sample date.war is provided in *<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/*. To build, package, deploy, and execute this example:

1. In a terminal window, go to *<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/date/*.
2. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the *<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/date/build* directory.
3. Start the J2EE application server.
4. Start `deploytool`.
5. Create a Web application called `date` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
6. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to *<INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/date/*.
  - c. In the File Name field, enter `date`.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.



- e. In the WAR Display Name field, enter date.
  - f. In the Deployment Setting frame, set the Context Root field value to /date.
  - g. Click Edit.
  - h. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to <INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/date/build/. Select the index.jsp and date.jsp JSP pages and the mypkg package and click Add, then click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
  - j. Select the JSP radio button.
  - k. Click Next.
  - l. Select index.jsp from the JSP file combo box.
  - m. Click Finish.
7. Select File→Save.
  8. Deploy the application.
    - a. Select Tools→Deploy.
    - b. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
    - c. Click OK.
    - d. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
  9. Set the character encoding in your browser to UTF-8.
  10. Open the URL <http://localhost:1024/date> in a browser.

You will see a combo box whose entries are locales. Select a locale and click Get Date. You will see the date expressed in a manner appropriate for that locale.

## The Example JSP Pages

To illustrate JSP technology, this chapter rewrites each servlet in the Duke's Bookstore application introduced in The Example Servlets (page 440) as a JSP page:

**Table 12–1** Duke's Bookstore Example JSP Pages

Function	JSP Pages
Enter the bookstore	bookstore.jsp
Create the bookstore banner	banner.jsp
Browse the books offered for sale	bookcatalog.jsp
Add a book to the shopping cart	bookcatalog.jsp and bookdetails.jsp
Get detailed information on a specific book	bookdetails.jsp
Display the shopping cart	bookshowcart.jsp
Remove one or more books from the shopping cart	bookshowcart.jsp
Buy the books in the shopping cart	bookcashier.jsp
Receive an acknowledgement for the purchase	bookreceipt.jsp

The data for the bookstore application is still maintained in a database. However, two changes are made to the database helper object `database.BookDB`:

- The database helper object is rewritten to conform to JavaBeans component design patterns as described in *JavaBeans Component Design Conventions* (page 503). This change is made so that JSP pages can access the helper object using JSP language elements specific to JavaBeans components.
- Instead of accessing the bookstore database directly, the helper object goes through a data access object `database.BookDBAO`.

The implementation of the database helper object follows. The bean has two instance variables: the current book and the data access object.

```
package database;
public class BookDB {
    private String bookId = "0";
    private BookDBAO database = null;

    public BookDB () throws Exception {
    }
    public void setBookId(String bookId) {
        this.bookId = bookId;
    }
    public void setDatabase(BookDBAO database) {
        this.database = database;
    }
    public BookDetails getBookDetails()
        throws Exception {
        return (BookDetails)database.getBookDetails(bookId);
    }
    ...
}
```

This version of the Duke's Bookstore application is organized along the Model-View-Controller (MVC) architecture. The MVC architecture is a widely-used architectural approach for interactive applications that separates functionality among application objects so as to minimize the degree of coupling between the objects. To achieve this, it divides applications into three layers: model, view, and controller. Each layer handles specific tasks and has responsibilities to the other layers:

- The model represents business data and business logic or operations that govern access and modification of this business data. The model notifies views when it changes and provides the ability for the view to query the model about its state. It also provides the ability for the controller to access application functionality encapsulated by the model. In the Duke's Bookstore application, the shopping cart and database helper object contain the business logic for the application.
- The view renders the contents of a model. It gets data from the model and specifies how that data should be presented. It updates data presentation when the model changes. A view also forwards user input to a controller. The Duke's Bookstore JSP pages format the data stored in the session-scoped shopping cart and the page-scoped database helper object.

- The controller defines application behavior. It dispatches user requests and selects views for presentation. It interprets user inputs and maps them into actions to be performed by the model. In a Web application, user inputs are HTTP GET and POST requests. A controller selects the next view to display based on the user interactions and the outcome of the model operations. In the Duke's Bookstore application, the `Dispatcher` servlet is the controller. It examines the request URL, creates and initializes a session-scoped `JavaBeans` component—the shopping cart—and dispatches requests to view JSP pages.

---

**Note:** When employed in a Web application, the MVC architecture is often referred to as a Model-2 architecture. The bookstore example discussed in the previous chapter, which intermixes presentation and business logic, follows what is known as a Model-1 architecture. The Model-2 architecture is the recommended approach to designing Web applications.

---

In addition, this version of the application uses several custom tags from the JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library (JSTL) (see Chapter 13):

- `c:if` and `c:choose`, `c:when`, and `c:otherwise` for flow control
- `c:set` for setting scoped variables
- `c:url` for encoding URLs
- `fmt:message`, `fmt:formatNumber`, and `fmt:formatDate` for providing locale-sensitive messages, numbers, and dates

Custom tags are the preferred mechanism for performing a wide variety of dynamic processing tasks, including accessing databases, using enterprise services such as e-mail and directories, and flow control. In earlier versions of JSP technology, such tasks were performed with `JavaBeans` components in conjunction with scripting elements (discussed in Chapter 15). Though still available in JSP 2.0, scripting elements tend to make JSP pages more difficult to maintain because they mix presentation and logic, which is discouraged in page design. Custom tags are introduced in Using Custom Tags (page 509) and described in detail in Chapter 14.

Finally, this version of the example contains an applet to generate a dynamic digital clock in the banner. See Including an Applet (page 515) for a description of the JSP element that generates HTML for downloading the applet.

1. The source code for the application is located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore2/` directory (see Building

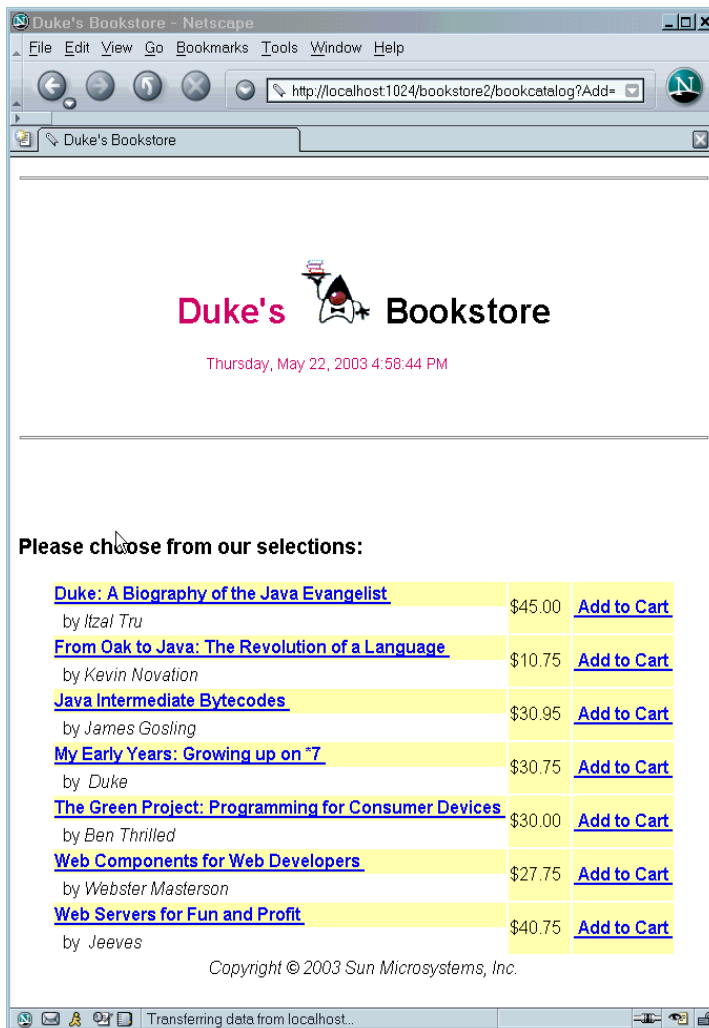
and Running the Examples, page xxi). A sample bookstore2.war is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build, package, deploy, and run the example:

1. Build and package the bookstore common files as described in Duke's Bookstore Examples (page 101).
2. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore2/`.
3. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore2/build/` directory.
4. Start the J2EE application server.
5. Perform all the operations described in Accessing Databases from Web Applications, page 102.
6. Start `deploytool`.
7. Create a Web application called bookstore2 by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
8. New Web Application Wizard
  - e. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - f. Click Browse.
  - g. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore2/`.
  - h. In the File Name field, enter `bookstore2`.
  - i. Click Choose Module File.
  - j. In the WAR Display Name field, enter `bookstore2`.
  - k. In the Context Root field, enter `/bookstore2`.
  - l. Click Edit.
  - m. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/web/bookstore2/build/`. Select the JSP pages `bookstore.jsp`, `bookdetails.jsp`, `bookcatalog.jsp`, `bookshowcart.jsp`, `bookcashier.jsp`, `bookordererror.jsp`, `bookreceipt.jsp`, `duke.books.gif`, `Dispatcher.class`, `DigitalClock.class` and the database, listeners, and template directories and click Add.
  - n. Move `/WEB-INF/classes/DigitalClass.class` to the root directory of the WAR. By default, `deploytool` packages all classes in `/WEB-INF/classes/`. Since `DigitalClock.class` is a client-side class, it must be

- stored in the root directory. To do this, simply drag `DigitalClock.class` from `/WEB-INF/classes/` to the root directory in the pane labeled Contents of bookstore2.
- o. Add the shared bookstore library. Navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/build/web/bookstore/dist/`. Select `bookstore.jar` and Click Add.
  - p. Click OK.
  - q. Click Next.
  - r. Select the Servlet radio button.
  - s. Click Next.
  - t. Select Dispatcher from the Servlet class combo box.
  - u. Click Finish.
9. Add the listener class `listeners.ContextListener` (described in Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events, page 446).
- a. Select the Event Listeners tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Select the `listeners.ContextListener` class from drop down field in the Event Listener Classes panel.
10. Add the aliases.
- a. Select the Dispatcher web component.
  - b. Select the Aliases tab.
  - c. Click Add and then type `/bookstore` in the Aliases field. Repeat to add the aliases `/bookcatalog`, `/bookdetails`, `/bookshowcart`, `/bookcashier`, `/bookordererror`, and `/bookreceipt`.
11. Add the JSTL resource bundle basename context parameter.
- a. Select the Context tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.localizationContext` for the Coded Parameter.
  - d. Enter `messages.BookstoreMessages` for the Value.
12. Set prelude and codas for all JSP pages.
- a. Select the JSP Properties tab.
  - b. Click the Add button next to the Name list.
  - c. Enter `bookstore2`.
  - d. Click the Add button next to the URL Pattern list.
  - e. Enter `/*.jsp`.

- f. Click the Edit button next to the Include Preludes list.
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Enter `/template/prelude.jspf`.
  - i. Click OK.
  - j. Click the Edit button next to the Include Codas list.
  - k. Click Add.
  - l. Enter `/template/coda.jspf`.
  - m. Click OK.
13. Add a resource reference for the database.
- a. Select the Resource Refs tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the Coded Name field.
  - d. Accept the default type `javax.sql.DataSource`.
  - e. Accept the default authorization Container.
  - f. Accept the default selected Shareable.
  - g. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the JNDI name field of the Deployment setting for `jdbc/BookDB` frame.
14. Select File→Save.
15. Deploy the application.
- a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
  - c. Click OK.
  - d. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.

16. Open the bookstore URL `http://localhost:1024/bookstore2/bookstore`. Click on the Start Shopping link and you will see the screen in Figure 12–2:



**Figure 12–2** Book Catalog

See Troubleshooting (page 445) for help with diagnosing common problems related to the database server. If the messages in your pages appear as strings of the form `??? Key ???`, the likely cause is that you have not provided the correct resource bundle basename as a context parameter.



# The Life Cycle of a JSP Page

A JSP page services requests as a servlet. Thus, the life cycle and many of the capabilities of JSP pages (in particular the dynamic aspects) are determined by Java Servlet technology. You will notice that many sections in this chapter refer to classes and methods described in Chapter 11.

When a request is mapped to a JSP page, the Web container first checks whether the JSP page's servlet is older than the JSP page. If the servlet is older, the Web container translates the JSP page into a servlet class and compiles the class. During development, one of the advantages of JSP pages over servlets is that the build process is performed automatically.

## Translation and Compilation

During the translation phase each type of data in a JSP page is treated differently. Template data is transformed into code that will emit the data into the response stream. JSP elements are treated as follows:

- Directives are used to control how the Web container translates and executes the JSP page.
- Scripting elements are inserted into the JSP page's servlet class. See Chapter 15 for details.
- Expression language expressions are passed as parameters to calls to the JSP expression evaluator.
- `jsp:[set|get]Property` elements are converted into method calls to JavaBeans components.
- `jsp:[include|forward]` elements are converted to invocations of the Java Servlet API.
- The `jsp:plugin` element is converted to browser-specific markup for activating an applet.
- Custom tags are converted into calls to the tag handler that implements the custom tag.

In the J2EE application server, the source for the servlet created from a JSP page named *pageName* is in the file:

```
<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/applications/  
j2ee-modules/context_root/pageName_jsp.java
```

For example, the source for the index page (named `index.jsp`) for the date localization example discussed at the beginning of the chapter would be named:

```
<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/applications/  
j2ee-modules/date_XXX/index_jsp.java
```

Both the translation and compilation phases can yield errors that are only observed when the page is requested for the first time. If an error is encountered during either phase, the server will return `JasperException` and a message that includes the name of the JSP page and the line where the error occurred.

Once the page has been translated and compiled, the JSP page's servlet for the most part follows the servlet life cycle described in *Servlet Life Cycle* (page 445):

1. If an instance of the JSP page's servlet does not exist, the container
  - a. Loads the JSP page's servlet class
  - b. Instantiates an instance of the servlet class
  - c. Initializes the servlet instance by calling the `jspInit` method
2. The container invokes the `_jspService` method, passing a request and response object.

If the container needs to remove the JSP page's servlet, it calls the `jspDestroy` method.

## Execution

You can control various JSP page execution parameters by using page directives. The directives that pertain to buffering output and handling errors are discussed here. Other directives are covered in the context of specific page authoring tasks throughout the chapter.

## Buffering

When a JSP page is executed, output written to the response object is automatically buffered. You can set the size of the buffer with the following page directive:

```
<%@ page buffer="none|xxxxkb" %>
```

A larger buffer allows more content to be written before anything is actually sent back to the client, thus providing the JSP page with more time to set appropriate status codes and headers or to forward to another Web resource. A smaller buffer decreases server memory load and allows the client to start receiving data more quickly.

## Handling Errors

Any number of exceptions can arise when a JSP page is executed. To specify that the Web container should forward control to an error page if an exception occurs, include the following page directive at the beginning of your JSP page:

```
<%@ page errorPage="file_name" %>
```

The Duke's Bookstore application page `prelude.jsp` contains the directive

```
<%@ page errorPage="errorpage.jsp"%>
```

The beginning of `errorpage.jsp` indicates that it is serving as an error page with the following page directive:

```
<%@ page isErrorPage="true" %>
```

This directive makes an object of type `javax.servlet.jsp.ErrorData` available to the error page, so that you can retrieve, interpret, and possibly display information about the cause of the exception in the error page. You access the error data object in an EL expression via the page context. Thus, `${pageContext.errorData.statusCode}` is used to retrieve the status code and `${pageContext.errorData.throwable}` retrieves the exception. If the exception is generated during the evaluation of an EL expression, you can retrieve the root cause of the exception with the expression `${pageContext.errorData.throwable.rootCause}`. For example, the error page for the Duke's Bookstore is:

```
<%@ page isErrorPage="true" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core"
    prefix="c" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/fmt"
    prefix="fmt" %>
<html>
<head>
<title><fmt:message key="ServerError"/></title>
</head>
```

```
<body bgcolor="white">
<h3>
<fmt:message key="ServerError"/>
</h3>
<p>
${pageContext.errorData.throwable}
<c:choose>
  <c:when test="${!empty
    pageContext.errorData.throwable.cause}">
    : ${pageContext.errorData.throwable.cause}
  </c:when>
  <c:when test="${!empty
    pageContext.errorData.throwable.rootCause}">
    : ${pageContext.errorData.throwable.rootCause}
  </c:when>
</c:choose>
</body>
</html>
```

---

**Note:** You can also define error pages for the WAR that contains a JSP page. If error pages are defined for both the WAR and a JSP page, the JSP page's error page takes precedence.

---

## Creating Static Content

You create static content in a JSP page by simply writing it as if you were creating a page that consisted only of that content. Static content can be expressed in any text-based format, such as HTML, WML, and XML. The default format is HTML. If you want to use a format other than HTML, you include a page directive with the `contentType` attribute set to the content type at the beginning of your JSP page. The purpose of the `contentType` directive is to allow the browser to correctly interpret the resulting content. So, if you want a page to contain data expressed in the wireless markup language (WML), you need to include the following directive:

```
<%@ page contentType="text/vnd.wap.wml"%>
```

A registry of content type names is kept by the IANA at:

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/>

## Response and Page Encoding

You also use the `contentType` attribute to specify the encoding of the response. For example, the date application specifies that the page should be encoded using UTF-8, an encoding that supports almost all locales, with the following page directive:

```
<%@ page contentType="text/html; charset=UTF-8" %>
```

If the response encoding weren't set, the localized dates would not be rendered correctly.

To set the source encoding of the page itself, you would use the following page directive.

```
<%@ page pageEncoding="UTF-8" %>
```

You can also set the page encoding of a set of JSP pages. The value of the page encoding varies depending on the configuration specified in the JSP configuration section of the Web application deployment descriptor (see Declaring Page Encodings, page 519).

## Creating Dynamic Content

You create dynamic content by accessing Java programming language object properties.

### Using Objects within JSP Pages

You can access a variety of objects, including enterprise beans and JavaBeans components, within a JSP page. JSP technology automatically makes some objects available, and you can also create and access application-specific objects.

### Implicit Objects

Implicit objects are created by the Web container and contain information related to a particular request, page, session, or application. Many of the objects are defined by the Java Servlet technology underlying JSP technology and are dis-

cussed at length in Chapter 11. The section Implicit Objects (page 498) explains how you access implicit objects using the JSP expression language.

## Application-Specific Objects

When possible, application behavior should be encapsulated in objects so that page designers can focus on presentation issues. Objects can be created by developers who are proficient in the Java programming language and in accessing databases and other services. The main way to create and use application-specific objects within a JSP page is to use JSP standard tags discussed in JavaBeans Components (page 503) to create JavaBeans components and set their properties, and EL expressions to access their properties. You can also access JavaBeans components and other objects in scripting elements, which are described in Chapter 15.

## Shared Objects

The conditions affecting concurrent access to shared objects described in Controlling Concurrent Access to Shared Resources (page 450) apply to objects accessed from JSP pages that run as multithreaded servlets. You can indicate how a Web container should dispatch multiple client requests with the following page directive:

```
<%@ page isThreadSafe="true|false" %>
```

When `isThreadSafe` is set to `true`, the Web container may choose to dispatch multiple concurrent client requests to the JSP page. This is the *default* setting. If using `true`, you must ensure that you properly synchronize access to any shared objects defined at the page level. This includes objects created within declarations, JavaBeans components with page scope, and attributes of the page context object (see Implicit Objects, page 498).

If `isThreadSafe` is set to `false`, requests are dispatched one at a time, in the order they were received, and access to page level objects does not have to be controlled. However, you still must ensure that access to attributes of the application or session scope objects and to JavaBeans components with application or session scope is properly synchronized.

---

**Note:** The Servlet 2.4 specification deprecates `SingleThreadModel`, which is the most common mechanism for Web containers to implement `isThreadSafe`. You are

advised against using `isThreadSafe`, as the generated servlet may contain deprecated code.

---

## Expression Language

A primary feature of JSP technology version 2.0 is its support for an expression language. An expression language makes it possible to easily access application data stored in JavaBeans components. For example, the JSP expression language allows a page author to access a bean using a simple syntax such as

```
${name}
```

for a simple variable or

```
${name.foo.bar}
```

for a nested property.

The `test` attribute of the following conditional tag is supplied with an EL expression that compares the number of items in the session-scoped bean named `cart` with 0:

```
<c:if test="${sessionScope.cart.numberOfItems > 0}">
...
</c:if>
```

The JSP expression evaluator is responsible for handling EL expressions, which may include literals and are enclosed by the `${ }` characters. For example:

```
<c:if test="${bean1.a < 3}" >
...
</c:if>
```

Any value that does not begin with `${` is treated as a literal that is parsed to the expected type using the `PropertyEditor` for the type:

```
<c:if test="true" >
...
</c:if>
```

Literal values that contain the `${` characters must be escaped as follows:

```
<mytags:example attr1="an expression is ${'$'}true}" />
```

## Deactivating Expression Evaluation

Since the pattern that identifies EL expressions—`${ }`—was not reserved in the JSP specifications before JSP 2.0, there may be applications where such a pattern is intended to pass through verbatim. To prevent the pattern from being evaluated, EL evaluation can be deactivated.

To deactivate the evaluation of EL expressions you specify the `isELIgnored` attribute of the `page` directive

```
<%@ page isELIgnored ="true|false" %>
```

The valid values of this attribute are `true` and `false`. If `true`, EL expressions are ignored when they appear in template text or tag attributes. If `false`, EL expressions are evaluated by the container.

The default value varies depending on the version of the Web application deployment descriptor. The default mode for JSP pages delivered using a Servlet 2.3 or earlier descriptor is to ignore EL expressions; this provides backwards compatibility. The default mode for JSP pages delivered with a Servlet 2.4 descriptor is to evaluate EL expressions; this automatically provides the default that most applications want. You can also deactivate EL expression evaluation for a group of JSP pages (see *Deactivating EL Evaluation*, page 518).

## Using Expressions

EL Expressions can be used in two situations:

- In template text
- In any standard or custom tag attribute that can accept an expression

The value of an expression in template text is computed and inserted into the current output. An expression *will not* be evaluated if the body of the tag is declared to be tagdependent (see *body-content Attribute*, page 565).



Three ways to set a tag attribute value:

- With a single expression construct:

```
<some:tag value="{expr}"/>
```

The expression is evaluated and the result is coerced to the attribute's expected type.

- With one or more expressions separated or surrounded by text:

```
<some:tag value="some{expr}{expr}text{expr}"/>
```

The expressions are evaluated from left to right. Each expression is coerced to a `String` and then concatenated with any intervening text. The resulting `String` is then coerced to the attribute's expected type.

- With only text:

```
<some:tag value="sometext"/>
```

In this case, the attribute's `String` value is coerced to the attribute's expected type.

Expressions used to set attribute values are evaluated in the context of an expected type. If the result of the expression evaluation does not match the expected type exactly a type conversion will be performed. For example, the expression `{1.2E4 + 1.4}` provided as the value of an attribute of type `float`, will result in the following conversion: `Float.valueOf("1.2E4 + 1.4").floatValue()`. See Section JSP2.8 of the JSP 2.0 Specification for the complete type conversion rules.

## Variables

The JSP container evaluates a variable that appears in an expression by looking up its value according to the behavior of `PageContext.findAttribute(String)`. For example, when evaluating the expression `{product}`, the container will look for `product` in the page, request, session, and application scopes and will return its value. If `product` is not found, `null` is returned. A variable that matches one of the implicit objects described in *Implicit Objects* (page 498) will return that implicit object instead of the variable's value.

Properties of variables are accessed using the `.` operator, and may be nested arbitrarily.

The JSP expression language unifies the treatment of the `.` and `[]` operators. `expr-a.expr-b` is equivalent to `a["expr-b"]`; that is, the expression `expr-b` is

used to construct a literal whose value is the identifier, and then the `[]` operator is used with that value.

To evaluate `expr-a[expr-b]`, evaluate `expr-a` into `value-a` and evaluate `expr-b` into `value-b`. If either `value-a` or `value-b` is null, return null.

- If `value-a` is a Map, return `value-a.get(value-b)`. If `!value-a.containsKey(value-b)`, then return null.
- If `value-a` is a List or array, coerce `value-b` to int and return `value-a.get(value-b)` or `Array.get(value-a, value-b)`, as appropriate. If the coercion couldn't be performed, an error is returned. If the get call returns an `IndexOutOfBoundsException`, null is returned. If the get call returns another exception, an error is returned.
- If `value-a` is a JavaBeans object, coerce `value-b` to String. If `value-b` is a readable property of `value-a`, then return the result of a get call. If the get method throws an exception, an error is returned.

## Implicit Objects

The JSP expression language defines a set of implicit objects:

- `pageContext` - The context for the JSP page. Provides access to various objects including:
  - `servletContext` - The context for the JSP page's servlet and any Web components contained in the same application. See *Accessing the Web Context* (page 469).
  - `session` - The session object for the client. See *Maintaining Client State* (page 470).
  - `request` - The request triggering the execution of the JSP page. See *Getting Information from Requests* (page 454).
  - `response` - The response returned by the JSP page. See *Constructing Responses*, page 456).

In addition, several implicit objects are available that allow easy access to the following objects:

- `param` - maps a request parameter name to a single value
- `paramValues` - maps a request parameter name to an array of values
- `header` - maps a request header name to a single value
- `headerValues` - maps a request header name to an array of values
- `cookie` - maps a cookie name to a single cookie
- `initParam` - maps a context initialization parameter name to a single value

Finally, there are objects that allow access to the various scoped variables described in Using Scope Objects (page 448).

- `pageScope` - maps page-scoped variable names to their values
- `requestScope` - maps request-scoped variable names to their values
- `sessionScope` - maps session-scoped variable names to their values
- `applicationScope` - maps application-scoped variable names to their values

When an expression references one of these objects by name, the appropriate object is returned instead of the corresponding attribute. For example: `${pageContext}` returns the `PageContext` object, even if there is an existing `pageContext` attribute containing some other value.

## Literals

The JSP expression language defines the following literals:

- Boolean: `true` and `false`
- Integer: as in Java
- Floating point: as in Java
- String: with single and double quotes. `"` is escaped as `\`, `'` is escaped as `\'`, and `\` is escaped as `\\`.
- Null: `null`

## Operators

In addition to the `.` and `[]` operators discussed in Variables (page 497), the JSP expression language provides the following operators:

- Arithmetic: `+`, `-` (binary), `*`, `/` and `div`, `%` and `mod`, `-` (unary)
- Logical: `and`, `&&`, `or`, `||`, `not`, `!`
- Relational: `==`, `eq`, `!=`, `ne`, `<`, `lt`, `>`, `gt`, `<=`, `ge`, `>=`, `le`. Comparisons may be made against other values, or against boolean, string, integer, or floating point literals.
- Empty: The empty operator is a prefix operation that can be used to determine if a value is `null` or empty.
- Conditional: `A ? B : C`. Evaluate B or C, depending on the result of the evaluation of A.

The precedence of operators highest to lowest, left to right is:

- `[]` `.`
- `()` - Used to change the precedence of operators.
- `-` (unary) `not` `!` `empty`
- `*` `/` `div` `%` `mod`
- `+` `-` (binary)
- `<` `>` `<=` `>=` `lt` `gt` `le` `ge`
- `==` `!=` `eq` `ne`
- `&&` `and`
- `||` `or`
- `?` `:`

## Reserved Words

The following words are reserved for the JSP expression language and should not be used as identifiers.

<code>and</code>	<code>eq</code>	<code>gt</code>	<code>true</code>	<code>instanceof</code>
<code>or</code>	<code>ne</code>	<code>le</code>	<code>false</code>	<code>empty</code>
<code>not</code>	<code>lt</code>	<code>ge</code>	<code>null</code>	<code>div</code> <code>mod</code>

Note that many of these words are not in the language now, but they may be in the future, so you should avoid using them.

# Examples

Table 12–2 contains example EL expressions and the result of evaluating the expressions.

**Table 12–2** Example Expressions

EL Expression	Result
<code>\${1 &gt; (4/2)}</code>	false
<code>\${4.0 &gt;= 3}</code>	true
<code>\${100.0 == 100}</code>	true
<code>\${(10*10) ne 100}</code>	false
<code>\${'a' &lt; 'b'}</code>	true
<code>\${'hip' gt 'hit'}</code>	false
<code>\${4 &gt; 3}</code>	true
<code>\${1.2E4 + 1.4}</code>	12001.4
<code>\${3 div 4}</code>	0.75
<code>\${10 mod 4}</code>	2
<code>\${!empty param.Add}</code>	True if the request parameter named Add is null or an empty string.
<code>\${pageContext.request.contextPath}</code>	The context path
<code>\${sessionScope.cart.numberOfItems}</code>	The value of the <code>numberOfItems</code> property of the session-scoped attribute named <code>cart</code>
<code>\${param['mycom.productId']}</code>	The value of the request parameter named <code>mycom.productId</code>
<code>\${header["host"]}</code>	The host
<code>\${departments[deptName]}</code>	The value of the entry named <code>deptName</code> in the <code>departments</code> map
<code>\${requestScope['javax.servlet.forward.servlet_path']}</code>	The value of the request-scoped attribute named <code>javax.servlet.forward.servlet_path</code>

## Functions

The JSP expression language allows you to define a function that can be invoked in an expression. Functions are defined using the same mechanisms as custom tags (See Using Custom Tags, page 509 and Chapter 14).

## Using Functions

Functions can appear in template text and tag attribute values.

To use a function in a JSP page, you import the tag library containing the function using a `taglib` directive. Then, you preface the function invocation with the prefix declared in the directive.

For example, the date example page `index.jsp` imports the `/functions` library and invokes the function `equals` in an expression:

```
<%@ taglib prefix="f" uri="/functions"%>
...
    <c:when
        test="${f:equals(selectedLocaleString,
            localeString)}" >
```

## Defining Functions

To define a function you program it as a public static method in a public class. The `mypkg.MyLocales` class in the date example defines a function that tests the equality of two `Strings` as follows:

```
package mypkg;
public class MyLocales {

    ...
    public static boolean equals( String l1, String l2 ) {
        return l1.equals(l2);
    }
}
```

Then, you map the function name as used in the EL expression to the defining class and function signature in a TLD. The following `functions.tld` file in the

date example maps the `equals` function to the class containing the implementation of the function `equals` and the signature of the function:

```
<function>
  <name>equals</name>
  <function-class>mypkg.MyLocales</function-class>
  <function-signature>boolean equals( java.lang.String,
    java.lang.String )</function-signature>
</function>
```

A tag library can only have one function element with any given name element.

## JavaBeans Components

JavaBeans components are Java classes that can be easily reused and composed together into applications. Any Java class that follows certain design conventions is a JavaBeans component.

JavaServer Pages technology directly supports using JavaBeans components with standard JSP language elements. You can easily create and initialize beans and get and set the values of their properties.

## JavaBeans Component Design Conventions

JavaBeans component design conventions govern the properties of the class and govern the public methods that give access to the properties.

A JavaBeans component property can be

- Read/write, read-only, or write-only
- Simple, which means it contains a single value, or indexed, which means it represents an array of values

A property does not have to be implemented by an instance variable. It must simply be accessible using public methods that conform to the following conventions:

- For each readable property, the bean must have a method of the form

```
PropertyClass getProperty() { ... }
```

- For each writable property, the bean must have a method of the form

```
setProperty(PropertyClass pc) { ... }
```

In addition to the property methods, a JavaBeans component must define a constructor that takes no parameters.

The Duke's Bookstore application JSP pages `enter.jsp`, `bookdetails.jsp`, `catalog.jsp`, and `showcart.jsp` use the `database.BookDB` and `database.BookDetails` JavaBeans components. `BookDB` provides a JavaBeans component front end to the access object `database.BookDBAO`. The JSP pages `showcart.jsp` and `cashier.jsp` access the bean `cart.ShoppingCart`, which represents a user's shopping cart.

The `BookDB` bean has two writable properties, `bookId` and `database`, and three readable properties, `bookDetails`, `numberOfBooks`, and `books`. These latter properties do not correspond to any instance variables, but are a function of the `bookId` and `database` properties.

```
package database
public class BookDB {
    private String bookId = "0";
    private BookDBAO database = null;
    public BookDB () {
    }

    public void setBookId(String bookId) {
        this.bookId = bookId;
    }
    public void setDatabase(BookDBAO database) {
        this.database = database;
    }
    public BookDetails getBookDetails() throws
        BookNotFoundException {
        return (BookDetails)database.getBookDetails(bookId);
    }
    public Collection getBooks() throws BooksNotFoundException {
        return database.getBooks();
    }
    public void buyBooks(ShoppingCart cart)
        throws OrderException {
        database.buyBooks(cart);
    }
    public int getNumberOfBooks() throws BooksNotFoundException {
        return database.getNumberOfBooks();
    }
}
```



## Creating and Using a JavaBeans Component

You declare that your JSP page will use a JavaBeans component using a `jsp:useBean` element. There are two forms:

```
<jsp:useBean id="beanName"
  class="fully_qualified_classname" scope="scope"/>
```

and

```
<jsp:useBean id="beanName"
  class="fully_qualified_classname" scope="scope">
  <jsp:setProperty .../>
</jsp:useBean>
```

The second form is used when you want to include `jsp:setProperty` statements, described in the next section, for initializing bean properties.

The `jsp:useBean` element declares that the page will use a bean that is stored within and accessible from the specified scope, which can be application, session, request, or page. If no such bean exists, the statement creates the bean and stores it as an attribute of the scope object (see Using Scope Objects, page 448). The value of the `id` attribute determines the *name* of the bean in the scope and the *identifier* used to reference the bean in EL expressions, other JSP elements, and scripting expressions (see Chapter 15). The value supplied for the `class` attribute must be a fully-qualified class name. Note that beans cannot be in the unnamed package. Thus the format of the value must be *package\_name.class\_name*.

The following element creates an instance of `mypkg.MyLocales` if none exists, stores it as an attribute of the application scope, and makes the bean available throughout the application by the identifier `locales`:

```
<jsp:useBean id="locales" scope="application"
  class="mypkg.MyLocales"/>
```

## Setting JavaBeans Component Properties

The standard way to set JavaBeans component properties in a JSP page is with the `jsp:setProperty` element. The syntax of the `jsp:setProperty` element depends on the source of the property value. Table 12–3 summarizes the various ways to set a property of a JavaBeans component using the `jsp:setProperty` element.

**Table 12–3** Valid Bean Property Assignments from String Values

Value Source	Element Syntax
String constant	<code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="<i>propName</i>" value="<i>string constant</i>" /&gt;</code>
Request parameter	<code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="<i>propName</i>" param="<i>paramName</i>" /&gt;</code>
Request parameter name matches bean property	<code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="<i>propName</i>" /&gt;</code> <code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="*" /&gt;</code>
Expression	<code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="<i>propName</i>" value="<i>expression</i>" /&gt;</code> <code>&lt;jsp:setProperty name="<i>beanName</i>" property="<i>propName</i>" &gt;  &lt;jsp:attribute name="value"&gt;  <i>expression</i>  &lt;/jsp:attribute&gt;  &lt;/jsp:setProperty&gt;</code>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>beanName</i> must be the same as that specified for the <code>id</code> attribute in a <code>useBean</code> element.</li> <li>2. There must be a <code>setPropName</code> method in the JavaBeans component.</li> <li>3. <i>paramName</i> must be a request parameter name.</li> </ol>

A property set from a constant string or request parameter must have a type listed in Table 12–4. Since both a constant and request parameter are strings, the

Web container automatically converts the value to the property's type; the conversion applied is shown in the table.

String values can be used to assign values to a property that has a `PropertyEditor` class. When that is the case, the `setAsText(String)` method is used. A conversion failure arises if the method throws an `IllegalArgumentException`.

The value assigned to an indexed property must be an array, and the rules just described apply to the elements.

**Table 12–4** Valid Property Value Assignments from String Values

Property Type	Conversion on String Value
Bean Property	Uses <code>setAsText(<i>string-literal</i>)</code>
boolean or Boolean	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Boolean.valueOf(String)</code>
byte or Byte	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Byte.valueOf(String)</code>
char or Character	As indicated in <code>java.lang.String.charAt(0)</code>
double or Double	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Double.valueOf(String)</code>
int or Integer	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Integer.valueOf(String)</code>
float or Float	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Float.valueOf(String)</code>
long or Long	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Long.valueOf(String)</code>
short or Short	As indicated in <code>java.lang.Short.valueOf(String)</code>
Object	<code>new String(<i>string-literal</i>)</code>

You use an expression to set the value of a property whose type is a compound Java programming language type. The type returned from an expression must match or be castable to the type of the property.

The Duke's Bookstore application demonstrates how to use the `setProperty` element to set the current book from a request parameter in the database helper bean in `bookstore2/web/bookdetails.jsp`:

```
<c:set var="bid" value="${param.bookId}"/>
<jsp:setProperty name="bookDB" property="bookId"
    value="${bid}" />
```

The following fragment from the page `bookstore2/web/bookshowcart.jsp` illustrates how to initialize a `BookDB` bean with a database object. Because the initialization is nested in a `useBean` element, it is only executed when the bean is created.

```
<jsp:useBean id="bookDB" class="database.BookDB" scope="page">
    <jsp:setProperty name="bookDB" property="database"
        value="${bookDBAO}" />
</jsp:useBean>
```

## Retrieving JavaBeans Component Properties

The main way to retrieve JavaBeans component properties is with the JSP expression language. Thus, to retrieve a book title, the Duke's Bookstore application uses the following expression:

```
${bookDB.bookDetails.title}
```

Another way to retrieve component properties is to use the `jsp:getProperty` element. This element converts the value of the property into a `String` and inserts the value into the response stream:

```
<jsp:getProperty name="beanName" property="propName"/>
```

Note that *beanName* must be the same as that specified for the `id` attribute in a `useBean` element, and there must be a `getPropName` method in the JavaBeans component. Although the preferred approach to getting properties is to use an EL expression, the `getProperty` element is available if you need to disable expression evaluation.

# Using Custom Tags

Custom tags are user-defined JSP language elements that encapsulate recurring tasks. Custom tags are distributed in a *tag library*, which defines a set of related custom tags and contains the objects that implement the tags.

Custom tags have the syntax

```
<prefix:tag attr1="value" ... attrN="value" />
```

or

```
<prefix:tag attr1="value" ... attrN="value" >  
  body  
</prefix:tag>
```

where *prefix* distinguishes tags for a library, *tag* is the tag identifier, and *attr1* ... *attrN* are attributes that modify the behavior of the tag.

To use a custom tag in a JSP page, you must:

- Declare the tag library containing the tag
- Make the tag library implementation available to the Web application

See Chapter 12 for detailed information on the different types of tags and how to implement tags.

## Declaring Tag Libraries

You declare that a JSP page will use tags defined in a tag library by including a *taglib* directive in the page before any custom tag from that tag library is used.

```
<%@ taglib prefix="tt" [tagdir=/WEB-INF/tags/dir | uri=URI] %>
```

The *prefix* attribute defines the prefix that distinguishes tags defined by a given tag library from those provided by other tag libraries.

If the tag library is defined with tag files (see Encapsulating Reusable Content using Tag Files, page 560), you supply the *tagdir* attribute to identify the location of the files. The value of the attribute must start with */WEB-INF/tags/* and a translation error will occur if the value points to a directory that doesn't exist or if used in conjunction with the *uri* attribute.

The `uri` attribute refers to a URI that uniquely identifies the tag library descriptor (TLD), a document that describes the tag library (See Tag Library Descriptors, page 576).

Tag library descriptor file names must have the extension `.tld`. TLD files are stored in the `WEB-INF` directory or subdirectory of the WAR file or in the `META-INF/` directory or subdirectory of a tag library packaged in a JAR. You can reference a TLD directly or indirectly.

The following `taglib` directive directly references a TLD filename:

```
<%@ taglib prefix="tlt" uri="/WEB-INF/iterator.tld"%>
```

This `taglib` directive uses a short logical name to indirectly reference the TLD:

```
<%@ taglib prefix="tlt" uri="/tlt"%>
```

The `iterator` example defines and uses a simple iteration tag. The JSP pages use a logical name to reference the TLD. A sample `iterator.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build and package the example:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/iterator/`.
2. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/iterator/build/` directory.
3. Start the J2EE server.
4. Start `deploytool`.
5. Create a Web application called `iterator` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
6. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse.
  - c. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/iterator/`.
  - d. In the File Name field, enter `iterator`.
  - e. Click Choose Module File.
  - f. In the WAR Display Name field, enter `iterator`.
  - g. In the Context Root field, enter `/iterator`.

- h. Click Edit. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/iterator/build/`. Select the `index.jsp` and `list.jsp` JSP pages and `iterator.tld` and click Add. Notice that `iterator.tld` is put into `/WEB-INF/`.
- i. Click Next.
- j. Select the JSP radio button.
- k. Click Next.
- l. Select `index.jsp` from the JSP file combo box.
- m. Click Finish.

You map a logical name to an absolute location in the Web application deployment descriptor. To specify the mapping of the logical name `/tlt` to the absolute location `/WEB-INF/iterator.tld` with `deploytool`:

1. Select the File Refs tab.
2. Click the Add button in the JSP Tag Libraries tab.
3. Enter the relative URI `/tlt` in the Coded Reference field.
4. Enter the absolute location `/WEB-INF/iterator.tld` in the Tag Library field.

You can also reference a TLD in a `taglib` directive with an absolute URI. For example, the absolute URIs for the JSTL library are:

- Core: `http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core`
- XML: `http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/xml`
- Internationalization: `http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/fmt`
- SQL: `http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/sql`
- Functions: `http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/functions`

When you reference a tag library with an absolute URI that exactly matches the URI declared in the `taglib` element of the TLD (see Tag Library Descriptors, page 576), you do not have to add the `taglib` element to `web.xml`; the JSP container automatically locates the TLD inside the JSTL library implementation.

## Including the Tag Library Implementation

In addition to declaring the tag library, you also need to make the tag library implementation available to the Web application. There are several ways to do this. Tag library implementations can be included in a WAR in an unpacked format: tag files are packaged in the `/WEB-INF/tag/` directory and tag handler classes are packaged in the `/WEB-INF/classes/` directory of the WAR. Tag libraries already packaged into a JAR file are included in the `/WEB-INF/lib/` directory of the WAR. Finally, an application server may load a tag library into all the Web applications running on the server. For example, in the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, the JSTL TLDs and libraries are distributed in the archive `appserv-jstl.jar` in `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/`. This library is automatically loaded into the classpath of all Web applications running on the J2EE application server so you don't need to add it to your Web application.

To package the iterator tag library implementation in the `/WEB-INF/classes/` directory and deploy the iterator example with `deploytool`:

1. Select the General tab.
2. Click Edit.
3. Add the iterator tag library classes.
  - a. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/docs/tutorial/examples/web/iterator/build/`.
  - b. Select the `iterator` and `myorg` packages and click Add. Notice that the tag library implementation classes are packaged into `/WEB-INF/classes/`.
4. Click OK.
5. Select File→Save.
6. Deploy the application.
  - a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
  - c. Click OK.
  - d. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.

To run the iterator application, open the URL `http://localhost:1024/iterator` in a browser.



# Reusing Content in JSP Pages

There are many mechanisms for reusing JSP content in a JSP page. Three mechanisms that can be categorized as direct reuse—the `include` directive, preludes and codas, and the `jsp:include` element—are discussed below. An indirect method of content reuse occurs when a tag file is used to define a custom tag that is used by many Web applications. Tag files are discussed in the section Encapsulating Reusable Content using Tag Files (page 560) in Chapter 14.

The `include` directive is processed when the JSP page is *translated* into a servlet class. The effect of the directive is to insert the text contained in another file—either static content or another JSP page—in the including JSP page. You would probably use the `include` directive to include banner content, copyright information, or any chunk of content that you might want to reuse in another page. The syntax for the `include` directive is as follows:

```
<%@ include file="filename" %>
```

For example, all the Duke's Bookstore application pages could include the file `banner.jspf` which contains the banner content, with the following directive:

```
<%@ include file="banner.jspf" %>
```

Another way to do a static include is with the prelude and coda mechanism described in Defining Implicit Includes (page 519). This is the approach used by the Duke's Bookstore application.

Because you must put an `include` directive in each file that reuses the resource referenced by the directive, this approach has its limitations. Preludes and codas can only be applied to the beginning and end of pages. For a more flexible approach to building pages out of content chunks, see A Template Tag Library (page 598).

The `jsp:include` element is processed when a JSP page is *executed*. The `include` action allows you to include either a static or dynamic resource in a JSP file. The results of including static and dynamic resources are quite different. If the resource is static, its content is inserted into the calling JSP file. If the resource is dynamic, the request is sent to the included resource, the included page is executed, and then the result is included in the response from the calling JSP page. The syntax for the `jsp:include` element is:

```
<jsp:include page="includedPage" />
```

The `hello2` application discussed in Updating Web Modules (page 99) includes the page that generates the response with the following statement:

```
<jsp:include page="response.jsp"/>
```

## Transferring Control to Another Web Component

The mechanism for transferring control to another Web component from a JSP page uses the functionality provided by the Java Servlet API as described in Transferring Control to Another Web Component (page 468). You access this functionality from a JSP page with the `jsp:forward` element:

```
<jsp:forward page="/main.jsp" />
```

Note that if any data has already been returned to a client, the `jsp:forward` element will fail with an `IllegalStateException`.

## `jsp:param` Element

When an `include` or `forward` element is invoked, the original request object is provided to the target page. If you wish to provide additional data to that page, you can append parameters to the request object with the `jsp:param` element:

```
<jsp:include page="..." >  
  <jsp:param name="param1" value="value1"/>  
</jsp:include>
```

When doing `jsp:include` or `jsp:forward`, the included page or forwarded page will see the original request object, with the original parameters augmented with the new parameters and new values taking precedence over existing values when applicable. For example, if the request has a parameter `A=foo` and a parameter `A=bar` is specified for forward, the forwarded request shall have `A=bar`, `foo`. Note that the new parameter has precedence.

The scope of the new parameters is the `jsp:include` or `jsp:forward` call; that is in the case of an `jsp:include` the new parameters (and values) will not apply after the include.

# Including an Applet

You can include an applet or JavaBeans component in a JSP page by using the `jsp:plugin` element. This element generates HTML that contains the appropriate client-browser-dependent constructs (`<object>` or `<embed>`) that will result in the download of the Java Plug-in software (if required) and client-side component and subsequent execution of any client-side component. The syntax for the `jsp:plugin` element is as follows:

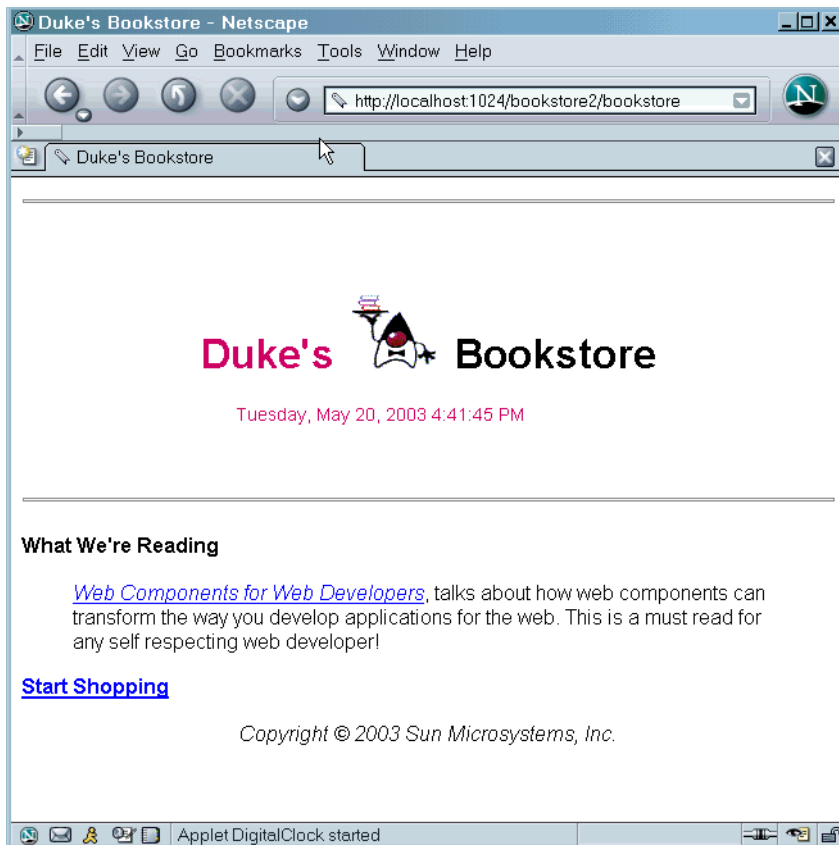
```
<jsp:plugin
  type="bean|applet"
  code="objectCode"
  codebase="objectCodebase"
  { align="alignment" }
  { archive="archiveList" }
  { height="height" }
  { hspace="hspace" }
  { jreversion="jreversion" }
  { name="componentName" }
  { vspace="vspace" }
  { width="width" }
  { nspluginurl="url" }
  { iepluginurl="url" } >
  { <jsp:params>
    { <jsp:param name="paramName" value= paramValue" /> }+
  } </jsp:params> }
  { <jsp:fallback> arbitrary_text </jsp:fallback> }
</jsp:plugin>
```

The `jsp:plugin` tag is replaced by either an `<object>` or `<embed>` tag as appropriate for the requesting client. The attributes of the `jsp:plugin` tag provide configuration data for the presentation of the element as well as the version of the plug-in required. The `nspluginurl` and `iepluginurl` attributes override the default URL where the plug-in can be downloaded.

The `jsp:params` element specifies parameters to the applet or JavaBeans component. The `jsp:fallback` element indicates the content to be used by the client browser if the plug-in cannot be started (either because `<object>` or `<embed>` is not supported by the client or because of some other problem).

If the plug-in can start but the applet or JavaBeans component cannot be found or started, a plug-in-specific message will be presented to the user, most likely a pop-up window reporting a `ClassNotFoundException`.

The Duke's Bookstore page `/template/prelude.jspf` creates the banner that displays a dynamic digital clock generated by `DigitalClock`:



**Figure 12–3** Duke's Bookstore with Applet

The `jsp:plugin` element used to download the applet follows:

```
<jsp:plugin
  type="applet"
  code="DigitalClock.class"
  codebase="/bookstore2"
  jreversion="1.4"
  align="center" height="25" width="300"
  nspluginurl="http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.1/download.html"
  iepluginurl="http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.1/download.html" >
  <jsp:params>
    <jsp:param name="language"
```

```
        value="${pageContext.request.locale.language}" />
    <jsp:param name="country"
        value="${pageContext.request.locale.country}" />
    <jsp:param name="bgcolor" value="FFFFFF" />
    <jsp:param name="fgcolor" value="CC0066" />
</jsp:params>
<jsp:fallback>
    <p>Unable to start plugin.</p>
</jsp:fallback>
</jsp:plugin>
```

## Setting Properties for Groups of JSP Pages

It is possible to specify certain properties for a group of JSP pages:

- Expression language evaluation
- Treatment of scripting elements (see Disabling Scripting, page 607)
- Page encoding
- Automatic prelude and coda includes

A JSP property group is defined by naming the group and specifying one or more URL patterns; all the properties in the group apply to the resources that match any of the URL patterns. If a resource matches URL patterns in more than one group, the pattern that is most specific applies. To define a property group with `deploytool`:

1. Select the WAR.
2. Select the JSP Properties tab.
3. Click the Add button next to the Name list.
4. Enter the name of the property group.
5. Click the Add button next to the URL Pattern list.
6. Enter the URL pattern (a / followed by a regular expression).

The following sections discuss the properties and how they are interpreted for various combinations of group properties, individual page directives, and Web application deployment descriptor version.

## Deactivating EL Evaluation

Each JSP page has a default mode for EL expression evaluation. The default value varies depending on the version of the Web application deployment descriptor. The default mode for JSP pages delivered using a Servlet 2.3 or earlier descriptor is to ignore EL expressions; this provides backwards compatibility. The default mode for JSP pages delivered with a Servlet 2.4 descriptor is to evaluate EL expressions; this automatically provides the default that most applications want. For tag files (see Encapsulating Reusable Content using Tag Files, page 560), the default is to always evaluate expressions.

You can override the default mode through the `isELIgnored` attribute of the page directive in JSP pages and the `isELIgnored` attribute of the tag directive in tag files. The default mode can also be explicitly changed by setting the value of the EL Evaluation Ignored checkbox in the JSP Properties tab. Table 12–5 summarizes the EL evaluation settings for JSP pages and their meanings:

**Table 12–5** EL Evaluation Settings for JSP Pages

JSP Configuration	Page Directive <code>isELIgnored</code>	EL Encountered
Unspecified	Unspecified	Evaluated if 2.4 web.xml Ignored if <= 2.3 web.xml
false	Unspecified	Evaluated
true	Unspecified	Ignored
Overridden by page directive	false	Evaluated
Overridden by page directive	true	Ignored

Table 12–6 summarizes the EL evaluation settings for tag files and their meanings:

**Table 12–6** EL Evaluation Settings for Tag Files

Tag Directive <code>isELIgnored</code>	EL Encountered
Unspecified	Evaluated
false	Evaluated
true	Ignored

## Declaring Page Encodings

You set the page encoding of a group of JSP pages by selecting a page encoding from the Page Encoding drop-down list. Valid values are the same as the `pageEncoding` attribute of the page directive. A translation-time error results if you define the page encoding of a JSP page with one value in the JSP configuration element and then give it a different value in a `pageEncoding` directive.

## Defining Implicit Includes

You can implicitly include preludes and codas for a group of JSP pages by adding items to the Include Preludes and Codas lists. Their values are context-relative paths that must correspond to elements in the Web application. When the elements are present, the given paths are automatically included (as in an `include` directive) at the beginning and end of each JSP page in the property group respectively. When there is more than one include or coda element in a group, they are included in the order they appear. When more than one JSP property group applies to a JSP page, the corresponding elements will be processed in the same order as they appear in the JSP configuration section.

For example, the Duke's Bookstore uses the files `/template/prelude.jspf` and `/template/coda.jspf` to include the banner and other boilerplate in each screen. To add these files to the Duke's Bookstore property group with `deploy-tool`:

1. Define a property group with name `bookstore2` and URL pattern `/*.jsp`.
2. Click the Edit button next to the Include Preludes list.

3. Click Add.
4. Enter `/template/prelude.jspf`.
5. Click OK.
6. Click the Edit button next to the Include Codas list.
7. Click Add.
8. Enter `/template/coda.jspf`.
9. Click OK.

Preludes and codas can only put the included code at the beginning and end of each file. For a more flexible approach to building pages out of content chunks, see A Template Tag Library (page 598).

## Further Information

For further information on JavaServer Pages technology see:

- JavaServer Pages 2.0 Specification  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp/download.html#specs>
- The JavaServer Pages Web site  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp>



---

# JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library

*Stephanie Bodoff*

**T**HE JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library (JSTL) encapsulates core functionality common to many JSP applications. For example, instead of iterating over lists using a scriptlet or different iteration tags from numerous vendors, JSTL defines a standard set of tags. This standardization allows you to learn a single set of tags and use them on multiple JSP containers. Also, a standard tag library is more likely to have an optimized implementation.

JSTL has support for common, structural tasks such as iteration and conditionals, tags for manipulating XML documents, internationalization tags, and tags for accessing databases using SQL. It also introduces the concept of an expression language to simplify page development. JSTL also provides a framework for integrating existing tag libraries with JSTL.

This chapter demonstrates JSTL through excerpts from the JSP version of the Duke's Bookstore application discussed in the previous chapter. It assumes that you are familiar with the material in the Using Custom Tags (page 509) section of Chapter 12.

## The Example JSP Pages

This chapter illustrates JSTL with excerpts from the JSP version of the Duke's Bookstore application discussed in Chapter 12 rewritten to replace the Java-

Beans component database helper object with direct calls to the database via the JSTL SQL tags. For most applications, it is better to encapsulate calls to a database in a bean. JSTL includes SQL tags for situations where a new application is being prototyped and the overhead of creating a bean may not be warranted.

The source for the Duke's Bookstore application is located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore4/` directory created when you unzip the tutorial bundle (see About the Examples, page xxi). A sample `bookstore4.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build, package, deploy, and run the example:

1. Build and package the bookstore common files as described in Duke's Bookstore Examples (page 101).
2. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore4/`.
3. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore4/build/` directory.
4. Start the J2EE application server.
5. Perform all the operations described in Accessing Databases from Web Applications, page 102.
6. Start `deploytool`.
7. Create a Web application called `bookstore4` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
8. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore4/`.
  - c. In the File Name field, enter `bookstore4`.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.
  - e. In the WAR Display Name field, enter `bookstore4`.
  - f. In the Context Root field, enter `/bookstore4`.
  - g. Click Edit to add the content files.
  - h. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore4/build/`. Select the JSP pages `bookstore.jsp`, `bookdetails.jsp`, `bookcatalog.jsp`, `bookshowcart.jsp`, `bookcashier.jsp`, `bookreceipt.jsp` and the database and template directories and click Add. Click OK.

- i. Add the shared bookstore library. Navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/build/web/bookstore/dist/`. Select `bookstore.jar` and Click Add.
  - j. Click OK.
  - k. Click Next.
  - l. Select the JSP radio button.
  - m. Click Next.
  - n. Select `bookstore.jsp` from the JSP Filename combo box.
  - o. Click Finish.
9. Add each of the Web components listed in Table 13–1. For each component:
- a. Select File→New→Web Application WAR.
  - b. Click the Add to Existing WAR Module radio button Since the WAR contains all of the JSP pages, you do not have to add any more content.
  - c. Click Next.
  - d. Select the JSP radio button and the Component Aliases checkbox.
  - e. Click Next.
  - f. Select the page from the JSP Filename combo box.
  - g. Click Next.
  - h. Click Add. Enter the alias.
  - i. Click Finish.

**Table 13–1** Duke's Bookstore Web Components

Web Component Name	JSP Page	Component Alias
bookstore	bookstore.jsp	/bookstore
bookcatalog	bookcatalog.jsp	/bookcatalog
bookdetails	bookdetails.jsp	/bookdetails
bookshowcart	bookshowcart.jsp	/bookshowcart
bookcashier	bookcashier.jsp	/bookcashier
bookreceipt	bookreceipt.jsp	/bookreceipt

10. Add the JSTL resource bundle basename context parameter.
  - a. Select the Context tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.localizationContext` for the Coded Parameter.
  - d. Enter `messages.BookstoreMessages` for the Value.
11. Set prelude and codas for all JSP pages.
  - a. Select the JSP Properties tab.
  - b. Click the Add button next to the Name list.
  - c. Enter `bookstore4`.
  - d. Click the Add button next to the URL Pattern list.
  - e. Enter `/*.jsp`.
  - f. Click the Edit button next to the Include Preludes list.
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Enter `/template/prelude.jspf`.
  - i. Click OK.
  - j. Click the Edit button next to the Include Codas list.
  - k. Click Add.
  - l. Enter `/template/coda.jspf`.
  - m. Click OK.
12. Add a resource reference for the database.
  - a. Select the Resource Refs tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the Coded Name field.
  - d. Accept the default type `javax.sql.DataSource`.
  - e. Accept the default authorization Container.
  - f. Accept the default selected Shareable.
  - g. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the JNDI name field of the Deployment setting for `jdbc/BookDB` frame.
13. Select File→Save.
14. Deploy the application.
  - a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. Click OK.

- c. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
15. Open the bookstore URL <http://localhost:1024/bookstore4/bookstore>.

See Troubleshooting (page 445) for help with diagnosing common problems.

## Using JSTL

JSTL includes a wide variety of tags that fit into discrete functional areas. To reflect this, as well as to give each area its own namespace, JSTL is exposed as multiple tag libraries. The URIs for the libraries are:

- Core: <http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core>
- XML: <http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/xml>
- Internationalization: <http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/fmt>
- SQL: <http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/sql>
- Functions: <http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/functions>

Table 13–2 summarizes these functional areas along with the prefixes used in this tutorial.

**Table 13–2** JSTL Tags

Area	Subfunction	Prefix
Core	Variable Support	c
	Flow Control	
	URL Management	
	Miscellaneous	
XML	Core	x
	Flow Control	
	Transformation	

**Table 13–2** JSTL Tags (Continued)

Area	Subfunction	Prefix
<b>I18n</b>	Locale	fmt
	Message formatting	
	Number and date formatting	
<b>Database</b>	SQL	sql
<b>Functions</b>	Collection length	fn
	String manipulation	

Thus, the tutorial references the JSTL core tags in JSP pages with the following taglib:

```
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core"
    prefix="c" %>
```

In addition to declaring the tag libraries, tutorial examples access the JSTL API and implementation. In the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, these are distributed in the archive `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/appserv-jstl.jar`. This library is automatically loaded into the classpath of all Web applications running on the J2EE application server, so it does not need be added to Web applications.

## Tag Collaboration

Tags usually collaborate with their environment in implicit and explicit ways. Implicit collaboration is done via a well defined interface that allows nested tags to work seamlessly with the ancestor tag exposing that interface. The JSTL conditional tags employ this mode of collaboration.

Explicit collaboration happens when a tag exposes information to its environment. JSTL tags expose information as JSP EL variables; the convention JSTL follows is to use the name `var` for any tag attribute that exports information

about the tag. For example, the `forEach` tag exposes the current item of the shopping cart it is iterating over in the following way:

```
<c:forEach var="item" items="${sessionScope.cart.items}">
    ...
</c:forEach>
```

In situations where a tag exposes more than one piece of information, the name `var` is used for the primary piece of information being exported, and an appropriate name is selected for any other secondary piece of information exposed. For example, iteration status information is exported by the `forEach` tag via the attribute `status`.

For situations where you want to use an EL variable exposed by a JSTL tag in an expression in the page's scripting language (see Chapter 15), you use the standard JSP element `jsp:useBean` to declare a scripting variable.

For example, `bookshowcart.jsp` removes a book from a shopping cart using a scriptlet. The ID of the book to be removed is passed as a request parameter. The value of the request parameter is first exposed as an EL variable (to be used later by the JSTL `sql:query` tag) and then declared as scripting variable and passed to the `cart.remove` method:

```
<c:set var="bookId" value="${param.Remove}"/>
<jsp:useBean id="bookId" type="java.lang.String" />
<% cart.remove(bookId); %>
<sql:query var="books"
    dataSource="${applicationScope.bookDS}">
    select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?
    <sql:param value="${bookId}" />
</sql:query>
```

# Core Tags

Table 13–3 summarizes the core tags, which include those related to expressions, flow control, and a generic way to access URL-based resources whose content can then be included or processed within the JSP page.

**Table 13–3** Core Tags

Area	Function	Tags	Prefix
Core	Variable Support	remove set	c
	Flow Control	choose when otherwise forEach forEachTokens if	
	URL Management	import param redirect param url param	
	Miscellaneous	catch out	

## Variable Support Tags

The set tag sets the value of an EL variable or the property of an EL variable in any of the JSP scopes (page, request, session, application). If the variable does not already exist, it is created.

The JSP EL variable or property can be set either from attribute value:

```
<c:set var="foo" scope="session" value="..." />
```



or from the body of the tag:

```
<c:set var="foo">
  ...
</c:set>
```

For example, the following sets a EL variable named `bookID` with the value of the request parameter named `Remove`:

```
<c:set var="bookId" value="${param.Remove}"/>
```

To remove an EL variable, you use the `remove` tag. When the bookstore JSP page `bookreceipt.jsp` is invoked, the shopping session is finished, so the cart session attribute is removed as follows:

```
<c:remove var="cart" scope="session"/>
```

## Flow Control Tags

To execute flow control logic, a page author must generally resort to using scriptlets. For example, the following scriptlet is used to iterate through a shopping cart:

```
<%
    Iterator i = cart.getItems().iterator();
    while (i.hasNext()) {
        ShoppingCartItem item =
            (ShoppingCartItem)i.next();
        ...
    }
%>
```

Flow control tags eliminate the need for scriptlets. The next two sections have examples that demonstrate the conditional and iterator tags.

## Conditional Tags

The `if` tag allows the conditional execution of its body according to value of a test attribute. The following example from `bookcatalog.jsp` tests whether the request parameter `Add` is empty. If the test evaluates to `true`, the page queries the database for the book record identified by the request parameter and adds the book to the shopping cart:

```
<c:if test="${!empty param.Add}">
  <c:set var="bid" value="${param.Add}"/>
  <jsp:useBean id="bid" type="java.lang.String" />
  <sql:query var="books"
    dataSource="${applicationScope.bookDS}"
    select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?
  <sql:param value="${bid}" />
</sql:query>
<c:forEach var="bookRow" begin="0" items="${books.rows}">
  <jsp:useBean id="bookRow" type="java.util.Map" />
  <jsp:useBean id="addedBook"
    class="database.BookDetails" scope="page" />
  ...
  <% cart.add(bid, addedBook); %>
  ...
</c:if>
```

The `choose` tag performs conditional block execution by the embedded `when` sub tags. It renders the body of the first `when` tag whose test condition evaluates to `true`. If none of the test conditions of nested `when` tags evaluate to `true`, then the body of an `otherwise` tag is evaluated, if present.

For example, the following sample code shows how to render text based on a customer's membership category.

```
<c:choose>
  <c:when test="${customer.category == 'trial'}" >
    ...
  </c:when>
  <c:when test="${customer.category == 'member'}" >
    ...
  </c:when>
  <c:when test="${customer.category == 'preferred'}" >
    ...
  </c:when>
```

```
<c:otherwise>
    ...
</c:otherwise>
</c:choose>
```

The `choose`, `when`, and `otherwise` tags can be used to construct an if-then-else statement as follows:

```
<c:choose>
  <c:when test="${count == 0}" >
    No records matched your selection.
  </c:when>
  <c:otherwise>
    ${count} records matched your selection.
  </c:otherwise>
</c:choose>
```

## Iterator Tags

The `forEach` tag allows you to iterate over a collection of objects. You specify the collection via the `items` attribute, and the current item is available through a scope variable named by the `item` attribute.

A large number of collection types are supported by `forEach`, including all implementations of `java.util.Collection` and `java.util.Map`. If the `items` attribute is of type `java.util.Map`, then the current item will be of type `java.util.Map.Entry`, which has the following properties:

- `key` - the key under which the item is stored in the underlying `Map`
- `value` - the value that corresponds to the key

Arrays of objects as well as arrays of primitive types (for example, `int`) are also supported. For arrays of primitive types, the current item for the iteration is automatically wrapped with its standard wrapper class (for example, `Integer` for `int`, `Float` for `float`, and so on).

Implementations of `java.util.Iterator` and `java.util.Enumeration` are supported but these must be used with caution. `Iterator` and `Enumeration` objects are not resettable so they should not be used within more than one iteration tag. Finally, `java.lang.String` objects can be iterated over if the string contains a list of comma separated values (for example: `Monday,Tuesday,Wednesday,Thursday,Friday`).

Here's the shopping cart iteration from the previous section with the `forEach` tag:

```
<c:forEach var="item" items="${sessionScope.cart.items}">
    ...
    <tr>
        <td align="right" bgcolor="#ffffff">
            ${item.quantity}
        </td>
        ...
    </c:forEach>
```

The `forTokens` tag is used to iterate over a collection of tokens separated by a delimiter.

## URL Tags

The `jsp:include` element provides for the inclusion of static and dynamic resources in the same context as the current page. However, `jsp:include` cannot access resources that reside outside of the Web application and causes unnecessary buffering when the resource included is used by another element.

In the example below, the `transform` element uses the content of the included resource as the input of its transformation. The `jsp:include` element reads the content of the response, writes it to the body content of the enclosing transform element, which then re-reads the exact same content. It would be more efficient if the `transform` element could access the input source directly and avoid the buffering involved in the body content of the transform tag.

```
<acme:transform>
    <jsp:include page="/exec/employeesList"/>
</acme:transform/>
```

The `import` tag is therefore the simple, generic way to access URL-based resources whose content can then be included and or processed within the JSP page. For example, in XML Tags (page 534), `import` is used to read in the XML document containing book information and assign the content to the scoped variable `xml`:

```
<c:import url="/books.xml" var="xml" />
<x:parse doc="${xml}" var="booklist"
    scope="application" />
```

The `param` tag, analogous to the `jsp:param` tag (see `jsp:param` Element, page 514), can be used with `import` to specify request parameters.

In Session Tracking (page 472) we discussed how an application must rewrite URLs to enable session tracking whenever the client turns off cookies. You can use the `url` tag to rewrite URLs returned from a JSP page. The tag includes the session ID in the URL only if cookies are disabled; otherwise, it returns the URL unchanged. Note that this feature requires the URL to be *relative*. The `url` tag takes `param` subtags for including parameters in the returned URL. For example, `bookcatalog.jsp` rewrites the URL used to add a book to the shopping cart as follows:

```
<c:url var="url" value="/catalog" >
  <c:param name="Add" value="${bookId}" />
</c:url>
<p><strong><a href="${url}">
```

The `redirect` tag sends an HTTP redirect to the client. The `redirect` tag takes `param` subtags for including parameters in the returned URL.

## Miscellaneous Tags

The `catch` tag provides a complement to the JSP error page mechanism. It allows page authors to recover gracefully from error conditions that they can control. Actions that are of central importance to a page should *not* be encapsulated in a `catch`, so their exceptions will propagate to an error page. Actions with secondary importance to the page should be wrapped in a `catch`, so they never cause the error page mechanism to be invoked.

The exception thrown is stored in the variable identified by `var`, which always has page scope. If no exception occurred, the scoped variable identified by `var` is removed if it existed. If `var` is missing, the exception is simply caught and not saved.

The `out` tag evaluates an expression and outputs the result of the evaluation to the current `JspWriter` object. The syntax and attributes are

```
<c:out value="value" [escapeXml="{true|false}"]
  [default="defaultValue"] />
```

If the result of the evaluation is a `java.io.Reader` object, data is first read from the `Reader` object and then written into the current `JspWriter` object. The spe-

cial processing associated with Reader objects improves performance when large amount of data must be read and then written to the response.

If escapeXml is true, the character conversions listed in Table 13–4 are applied:

**Table 13–4** Character Conversions

Character	Character Entity Code
<	&lt;
>	&gt;
&	&amp;
'	&#039;
"	&#034;

# XML Tags

A key aspect of dealing with XML documents is to be able to easily access their content. XPath, a W3C recommendation since 1999, provides an easy notation for specifying and selecting parts of an XML document. The JSTL XML tag set, listed in Table 13–5, is based on XPath (see How XPath Works, page 257).

**Table 13–5** XML Tags

Area	Function	Tags	Prefix
XML	Core	out parse set	x
	Flow Control	choose when otherwise forEach if	
	Transformation	transform param	

The XML tags use XPath as a *local* expression language; XPath expressions are always specified using attribute `select`. This means that only values specified for `select` attributes are evaluated using the XPath expression language. All other attributes are evaluated using the rules associated with the JSP 2.0 expression language.

In addition to the standard XPath syntax, the JSTL XPath engine supports the following scopes to access Web application data within an XPath expression:

- `$foo`
- `$param:`
- `$header:`
- `$cookie:`
- `$initParam:`
- `$pageScope:`
- `$requestScope:`
- `$sessionScope:`
- `$applicationScope:`

These scopes are defined in exactly the same way as their counterparts in the JSP expression language discussed in Implicit Objects (page 498). Table 13–6 shows some examples of using the scopes.

**Table 13–6** Example XPath Expressions

XPath Expression	Result
<code>\$sessionScope:profile</code>	The session-scoped EL variable named <code>profile</code>
<code>\$initParam:mycom.productId</code>	The <code>String</code> value of the <code>mycom.productId</code> context parameter

The XML tags are illustrated in another version (`bookstore5`) of the Duke's Bookstore application. This version replaces the database with an XML representation (`books.xml`) of the bookstore database. To build and install this version of the application, follow the directions in The Example JSP Pages (page 521) replacing `bookstore4` with `bookstore5` and skipping step 13., which creates the resource reference. A sample `bookstore5.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`.

## Core Tags

The core XML tags provide basic functionality to easily parse and access XML data.

The `parse` tag parses an XML document and saves the resulting object in the EL variable specified by attribute `var`. In `bookstore5`, the XML document is parsed and saved to a context attribute in `parseBooks.jsp`, which is included by all JSP pages that need access to the document:

```
<c:if test="${applicationScope:booklist == null}" >
  <c:import url="/books.xml" var="xml" />
  <x:parse doc="${xml}" var="booklist" scope="application" />
</c:if>
```

The `set` and `out` tags parallel the behavior described in Variable Support Tags (page 528) and Miscellaneous Tags (page 533) for the XPath local expression language. The `set` tag evaluates an XPath expression and sets the result into a JSP EL variable specified by attribute `var`. The `out` tag evaluates an XPath expression on the current context node and outputs the result of the evaluation to the current `JspWriter` object.

The JSP page `bookdetails.jsp` selects a book element whose `id` attribute matches the request parameter `bookId` and sets the `abook` attribute. The `out` tag then selects the book's title element and outputs the result.

```
<x:set var="abook"
  select="$applicationScope.booklist/
  books/book[@id=$param:bookId]" />
<h2><x:out select="$abook/title"/></h2>
```

As you have just seen, `x:set` stores an internal XML representation of a *node* retrieved using an XPath expression; it doesn't convert the selected node into a `String` and store it. Thus, `x:set` is primarily useful for storing parts of documents for later retrieval.

If you want to store a `String`, you need to use `x:out` within `c:set`. The `x:out` tag converts the node to a `String`, and `c:set` then stores the `String` as an EL



variable. For example, `bookdetails.jsp` stores an EL variable containing a book price, which is later provided as the value of a `fmt` tag, as follows:

```
<c:set var="price">
  <x:out select="$book/price"/>
</c:set>
<h4><fmt:message key="ItemPrice"/>:
  <fmt:formatNumber value="${price}" type="currency"/>
```

The other option, which is more direct but requires that the user have more knowledge of XPath, is to coerce the node to a String manually using XPath's `string` function.

```
<x:set var="price" select="string($book/price)"/>
```

## Flow Control Tags

The XML flow control tags parallel the behavior described in Flow Control Tags (page 529) for the XPath expression language.

The JSP page `bookcatalog.jsp` uses the `forEach` tag to display all the books contained in `booklist` as follows:

```
<x:forEach var="book"
  select="$applicationScope:booklist/books/*">
  <tr>
    <c:set var="bookId">
      <x:out select="$book/@id"/>
    </c:set>=
    <td bgcolor="#ffffaa">
      <c:url var="url"
        value="/bookdetails" >
        <c:param name="bookId" value="${bookId}" />
        <c:param name="Clear" value="0" />
      </c:url>
      <a href="${url}">
        <strong><x:out select="$book/title"/>&nbsp;
      </strong></a></td>
    <td bgcolor="#ffffaa" rowspan=2>
      <c:set var="price">
        <x:out select="$book/price"/>
      </c:set>
      <fmt:formatNumber value="${price}" type="currency"/>
      &nbsp;
    </td>
```

```
  |
```

## Transformation Tags

The `transform` tag applies a transformation, specified by a XSLT stylesheet set by the attribute `xslt`, to an XML document, specified by the attribute `doc`. If the `doc` attribute is not specified, the input XML document is read from the tag's body content.

The `param` subtag can be used along with `transform` to set transformation parameters. The attributes `name` and `value` are used to specify the parameter. The `value` attribute is optional. If it is not specified the value is retrieved from the tag's body.

## Internationalization Tags

Chapter 16 covers how to design Web applications so that they conform to the language and formatting conventions of client locales. This section describes tags that support the internationalization of JSP pages.

JSTL defines tags for: setting the locale for a page, creating locale-sensitive messages, and formatting and parsing data elements such as numbers, currencies,

dates, and times in a locale-sensitive or customized manner. Table 13–7 lists the tags.

**Table 13–7** Internationalization Tags

Area	Function	Tags	Prefix
i18n	Setting Locale	setLocale requestEncoding	fmt
	Messaging	bundle message param setBundle	
	Number and Date Formatting	formatNumber formatDate parseDate parseNumber setTimeZone timeZone	

JSTL i18n tags use a localization context to localize their data. A *localization context* contains a locale and a resource bundle instance. To specify the localization context, you define the context parameter `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.localizationContext`, whose value can be a `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.LocalizationContext` or a `String`. A `String` context parameter is interpreted as the name of a resource bundle basename. For the Duke’s Bookstore application, the context parameter is the `String` `messages.BookstoreMessages`, which is set with `deploytool` in the Context tab of the WAR inspector. This setting can be overridden in a JSP page by using the JSTL `fmt:setBundle` tag. When a request is received, JSTL automatically sets the locale based on the value retrieved from the request header and chooses the correct resource bundle using the basename specified in the context parameter.

## Setting the Locale

The `setLocale` tag is used to override the client-specified locale for a page. The `requestEncoding` tag is used to set the request’s character encoding, in order to be able to correctly decode request parameter values whose encoding is different from ISO-8859-1.

## Messaging Tags

By default, browser-sensing capabilities for locales are enabled. This means that the client determines (via its browser settings) which locale to use, and allows page authors to cater to the language preferences of their clients.

### bundle Tag

You use the `bundle` tag to specify a resource bundle for a page.

To define a resource bundle for a Web application you specify the context parameter `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.localizationContext` in the Web application deployment descriptor.

### message Tag

The `message` tag is used to output localized strings. The following tag from `bookcatalog.jsp`

```
<h3><fmt:message key="Choose"/></h3>
```

is used to output a string inviting customers to choose a book from the catalog.

The `param` subtag provides a single argument (for parametric replacement) to the compound message or pattern in its parent `message` tag. One `param` tag must be specified for each variable in the compound message or pattern. Parametric replacement takes place in the order of the `param` tags.

## Formatting Tags

JSTL provides a set of tags for parsing and formatting locale-sensitive numbers and dates.

The `formatNumber` tag is used to output localized numbers. The following tag from `bookshowcart.jsp`

```
<fmt:formatNumber value="${book.price}" type="currency"/>
```

is used to display a localized price for a book. Note that since the price is maintained in the database in dollars, the localization is somewhat simplistic, because

the `formatNumber` tag is unaware of exchange rates. The tag formats currencies but does not convert them.

Analogous tags for formatting dates (`formatDate`), and parsing numbers and dates (`parseNumber`, `parseDate`) are also available. The `timeZone` tag establishes the time zone (specified via the `value` attribute) to be used by any nested `formatDate` tags.

In `bookreceipt.jsp`, a “pretend” ship date is created and then formatted with the `formatDate` tag:

```
<jsp:useBean id="now" class="java.util.Date" />
<jsp:setProperty name="now" property="time"
  value="{now.time + 432000000}" />
<fmt:message key="ShipDate"/>
<fmt:formatDate value="{now}" type="date"
  dateStyle="full"/>.
```

## SQL Tags

The JSTL SQL tags listed in Table 13–8 are designed for quick prototyping and simple applications. For production applications, database operations are normally encapsulated in JavaBeans components.

**Table 13–8** SQL Tags

Area	Function	Tags	Prefix
Data- base		<code>setDataSource</code>	<code>sql</code>
	SQL	<code>query</code> <code>dateParam</code> <code>param</code> <code>transaction</code> <code>update</code> <code>dateParam</code> <code>param</code>	

The `setDataSource` tag is provided to allow you to set data source information for the database. You can provide a JNDI name or `DriverManager` parameters to

set the data source information. All of the Duke's Bookstore pages that have more than one SQL tag use the following statement to set the data source:

```
<sql:setDataSource dataSource="jdbc/BookDB" />
```

The query tag is used to perform an SQL query that returns a result set. For parameterized SQL queries, you use a nested param tag inside the query tag.

In `bookcatalog.jsp`, the value of the `Add` request parameter determines which book information should be retrieved from the database. This parameter is saved as the attribute name `bid` and passed to the `param` tag. Notice that the query tag obtains its data source from the context attribute `bookDS` set in the context listener.

```
<c:set var="bid" value="${param.Add}"/>
<sql:query var="books" >
    select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?
    <sql:param value="${bid}" />
</sql:query>
```

The `update` tag is used to update a database row. The `transaction` tag is used to perform a series of SQL statements atomically.

The JSP page `bookreceipt.jsp` page uses both tags to update the database inventory for each purchase. Since a shopping cart can contain more than one book, the `transaction` tag is used to wrap multiple queries and updates. First the page establishes that there is sufficient inventory, then the updates are performed.

```
<c:set var="sufficientInventory" value="true" />
<sql:transaction>
    <c:forEach var="item" items="${sessionScope.cart.items}">
        <c:set var="book" value="${item.item}" />
        <c:set var="bookId" value="${book.bookId}" />

        <sql:query var="books"
            sql="select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?" >
            <sql:param value="${bookId}" />
        </sql:query>
        <jsp:useBean id="inventory"
            class="database.BookInventory" />
        <c:forEach var="bookRow" begin="0"
            items="${books.rowsByIndex}">
            <jsp:useBean id="bookRow" type="java.lang.Object[]" />
            <jsp:setProperty name="inventory" property="quantity"
                value="${bookRow[7]}" />
        </c:forEach>
    </c:forEach>
</sql:transaction>
```

```

    <c:if test="${item.quantity > inventory.quantity}">
      <c:set var="sufficientInventory" value="false" />
      <h3><font color="red" size="+2">
        <fmt:message key="OrderError"/>
        There is insufficient inventory for
        <i>${bookRow[3]}</i>.</font></h3>
      </c:if>
    </c:forEach>
  </c:forEach>

  <c:if test="${sufficientInventory == 'true'}" />
    <c:forEach var="item" items="${sessionScope.cart.items}">
      <c:set var="book" value="${item.item}" />
      <c:set var="bookId" value="${book.bookId}" />

      <sql:query var="books"
        sql="select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?" >
        <sql:param value="${bookId}" />
      </sql:query>

      <c:forEach var="bookRow" begin="0"
        items="${books.rows}">
        <sql:update var="books" sql="update PUBLIC.books set
          inventory = inventory - ? where id = ?" >
          <sql:param value="${item.quantity}" />
          <sql:param value="${bookId}" />
        </sql:update>
      </c:forEach>
    </c:forEach>
    <h3><fmt:message key="ThankYou"/>
      ${param.cardname}.</h3><br>
  </c:if>
</sql:transaction>

```

## query Tag Result Interface

The Result interface is used to retrieve information from objects returned from a query tag.

```

public interface Result
{
    public String[] getColumnNames();
    public int getRowCount();
    public Map[] getRows();
    public Object[][] getRowsByIndex();
    public boolean isLimitedByMaxRows();
}

```

The `var` attribute set by a query tag is of type `Result`. The `getRows` method returns an array of maps that can be supplied to the `items` attribute of a `forEach` tag. The JSTL expression language converts the syntax `${result.rows}` to a call to `result.getRows`. The expression `${books.rows}` in the following example returns an array of maps.

The Duke's Bookstore page `bookdetails.jsp` retrieves the column values from the book map as follows.

The following excerpt from `bookcatalog.jsp` uses the Row interface to retrieve values from the columns of a book row using scripting language expressions. First the book row that matches a request parameter (`bid`) is retrieved from the database. Since the `bid` and `bookRow` objects are later used by tags that use scripting language expressions to set attribute values and a scriptlet that adds a book to the shopping cart, both objects are declared as scripting variables using the `jsp:useBean` tag. The page creates a bean that describes the book and scripting language expressions are used to set the book properties from book row column values. Finally the book is added to the shopping cart.



You might want to compare this version of `bookcatalog.jsp` to the versions in `JavaServer Pages Technology` (page 477) and `Custom Tags in JSP Pages` (page 549) that use a book database JavaBeans component.

```

<sql:query var="books"
  dataSource="${applicationScope.bookDS}">
  select * from PUBLIC.books where id = ?
  <sql:param value="${bid}" />
</sql:query>
<c:forEach var="bookRow" begin="0"
  items="${books.rowsByIndex}">
  <jsp:useBean id="bid" type="java.lang.String" />
  <jsp:useBean id="bookRow" type="java.lang.Object[]" />
  <jsp:useBean id="addedBook" class="database.BookDetails"
    scope="page" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="bookId"
    value="${bookRow[0]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="surname"
    value="${bookRow[1]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="firstName"
    value="${bookRow[2]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="title"
    value="${bookRow[3]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="price"
    value="${bookRow[4]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="year"
    value="${bookRow[6]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook"
    property="description"
    value="${bookRow[7]}" />
  <jsp:setProperty name="addedBook" property="inventory"
    value="${bookRow[8]}" />
  </jsp:useBean>
  <% cart.add(bid, addedBook); %>
  ...
</c:forEach>

```

# Functions

Table 13–9 lists the JSTL functions

**Table 13–9** Functions

Area	Function	Tags	Prefix
<b>Functions</b>	Collection length	length	fn
	String manipulation	toUpperCase, toLowerCase substring, substringAfter, substringBefore trim replace indexOf, startsWith, endsWith, contains, containsIgnoreCase split, join escapeXml	

While the `java.util.Collection` interface defines a `size` method, it does not conform to the JavaBeans design pattern for properties and cannot be accessed via the JSP expression language. The `length` function can be applied to any collection supported by the `c:forEach` and returns the length of the collection. When applied to a `String`, it returns the number of characters in the string.

For example, the `greeting.jsp` page of the `hello2` application introduced in Updating Web Modules (page 99) uses the `fn:length` function and `c:test` tag to determine whether to include a response page:

```
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core"
    prefix="c" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/functions"
    prefix="fn" %>
<html>
<head><title>Hello</title></head>
...
<input type="text" name="username" size="25">
<p></p>
<input type="submit" value="Submit">
<input type="reset" value="Reset">
</form>
```

```
<c:if test="${fn:length(param.username) > 0}" >
  <%@include file="response.jsp" %>
</c:if>
</body>
</html>
```

The rest of the JSTL functions are concerned with string manipulation:

- `toUpperCase`, `toLowerCase` - Changes the capitalization of a string.
- `substring`, `substringBefore`, `substringAfter` - Gets a subset of a string.
- `trim` - Trims whitespace from a string.
- `replace` - Replaces characters in a string.
- `indexOf`, `startsWith`, `endsWith`, `contains`, `containsIgnoreCase` - Checks if a string contains another string.
- `split` - Splits a string into an array.
- `join` - Joins a collection into a string.
- `escapeXml` - Escapes XML characters in a string.

## Further Information

For further information on JSTL see:

- The JSTL 1.0 Specification. This chapter documents a maintenance release, version 1.1, of the JSTL Specification. A change log for the 1.1 release is available on the specification page, and an updated version of the specification will be available during the summer.  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp/jstl/index.html#specs>
- The JSTL Web site  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp/jstl>



---

# Custom Tags in JSP Pages

*Stephanie Bodoff*

**T**HE standard JSP tags simplify JSP page development and maintenance. JSP technology also provides a mechanism for encapsulating other types of dynamic functionality in *custom tags*, which are extensions to the JSP language. Some examples of tasks that can be performed by custom tags include operations on implicit objects, processing forms, accessing databases and other enterprise services such as e-mail and directories, and flow control. Custom tags increase productivity because they can be reused across more than one application.

Custom tags are distributed in a *tag library*, which defines a set of related custom tags and contains the objects that implement the tags. The object that implements a custom tag is called a *tag handler*. JSP technology defines two types of tag handlers: simple and classic. Simple tag handlers can only be used for tags that do not use scripting elements in attribute values or the tag body. Classic tag handlers must be used if scripting elements are required. Simple tag handlers are covered in this chapter and classic tag handlers are discussed in Chapter 15.

You can write simple tag handlers with the JSP language or with the Java language. A *tag file* is a source file containing a reusable fragment of JSP code that is translated into a simple tag handler by the Web container. Tag files can be used to develop custom tags that are presentation-centric or that can take advantage of existing tag libraries, or by page authors who do not know Java. For occasions when the flexibility of the Java programming language is needed to define the

tag, JSP technology provides a simple API for developing a tag handler in the Java programming language.

This chapter assumes you are familiar with the material in Chapter 12, especially the section Using Custom Tags (page 509). For more information about tag libraries and for pointers to some freely-available libraries, see

<http://java.sun.com/products/jsp/taglibraries.html>

## What Is a Custom Tag?

A custom tag is a user-defined JSP language element. When a JSP page containing a custom tag is translated into a servlet, the tag is converted to operations on a tag handler. The Web container then invokes those operations when the JSP page's servlet is executed.

Custom tags have a rich set of features. They can

- Be customized via attributes passed from the calling page.
- Pass variables back to the calling page.
- Access all the objects available to JSP pages.
- Communicate with each other. You can create and initialize a JavaBeans component, create a public EL variable that refers to that bean in one tag, and then use the bean in another tag.
- Be nested within one another and communicate via private variables.

## The Example JSP Pages

This chapter describes the tasks involved in defining tags. The chapter illustrates the tasks with excerpts from the JSP version of the Duke's Bookstore application discussed in The Example JSP Pages (page 482) rewritten to take advantage of several new custom tags:

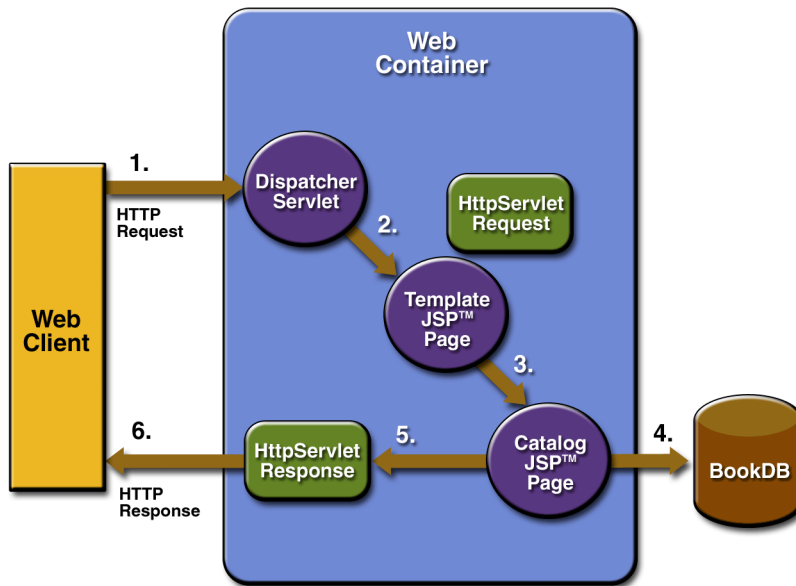
- A catalog tag for rendering the book catalog
- A shipDate tag for rendering the ship date of an order
- A template library for ensuring a common look and feel among all screens and composing screens out of content chunks

The last section in the chapter, Examples (page 596), describes several tags in detail: a simplified iteration tag and the set of tags in the `tutorial-template` tag library.

The `tutorial-template` tag library defines a set of tags for creating an application template. The template is a JSP page with placeholders for the parts that need to change with each screen. Each of these placeholders is referred to as a parameter of the template. For example, a simple template could include a title parameter for the top of the generated screen and a body parameter to refer to a JSP page for the custom content of the screen. The template is created with a set of nested tags—`definition`, `screen`, and `parameter`—that are used to build a table of screen definitions for Duke's Bookstore and with an `insert` tag to insert parameters from the table into the screen.

Figure 14–1 shows the flow of a request through the following Duke's Bookstore Web components:

- `template.jsp`, which determines the structure of each screen. It uses the `insert` tag to compose a screen from subcomponents.
- `screendefinitions.jsp`, which defines the subcomponents used by each screen. All screens have the same banner, but different title and body content (specified by the JSP Page column in Table 12–1).
- `Dispatcher`, a servlet, which processes requests and forwards to `template.jsp`.



**Figure 14–1** Request Flow Through Duke's Bookstore Components

The source code for the Duke's Bookstore application is located in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore3/` directory created when you unzip the tutorial bundle (see About the Examples, page xxi). A sample `bookstore3.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build, package, deploy, and run the example:

1. Build and package the bookstore common files as described in Duke's Bookstore Examples (page 101).
2. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/bookstore3/`.
3. Run `asant build`. This target will spawn any necessary compilations and copy files to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore3/build/`.
4. Start the J2EE application server.
5. Perform all the operations described in Accessing Databases from Web Applications, page 102.
6. Start `deploytool`.



7. Create a Web application called bookstore3.
  - a. Select File→New→Web Application WAR.
  - b. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - c. Click Browse.
  - d. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore3/`.
  - e. In the File Name field, enter bookstore3.
  - f. Click Choose Module File.
  - g. In the WAR Display Name field, enter bookstore3.
8. Add Web application files and libraries.
  - a. Click Edit.
  - b. Add the application content. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/bookstore3/build/`. Select the JSP pages bookstore.jsp, bookdetails.jsp, bookcatalog.jsp, bookshowcart.jsp, bookcashier.jsp, bookreceipt.jsp, bookordererror.jsp, Dispatcher.class and the database, listeners, and template directories and click Add. Click OK.
  - c. Add the shared bookstore library. Navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/build/web/bookstore/dist/`. Select bookstore.jar and Click Add.
9. Define the Web component.
  - a. Click Next.
  - b. Select the Servlet radio button.
  - c. Click Next.
  - d. Select Dispatcher from the Servlet class combo box.
  - e. Click Finish.
10. In the Deployment Setting frame, set the Context Root field value to `/bookstore3`.
11. Add the aliases.
  - a. Select Dispatcher.
  - b. Select the Aliases tab.
  - c. Click Add and then type `/bookstore` in the Aliases field. Repeat to add the aliases `/bookcatalog`, `/bookdetails`, `/bookshowcart`, `/bookcashier`, `/bookordererror`, and `/bookreceipt`.

12. Add the JSTL resource bundle basename context parameter.
  - a. Select the Context tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `javax.servlet.jsp.jstl.fmt.localizationContext` for the Coded Parameter.
  - d. Enter `messages.BookstoreMessages` for the Value.
13. Set prelude for all JSP pages.
  - a. Select the JSP Properties tab.
  - b. Click the Add button next to the Name list.
  - c. Enter `bookstore3`.
  - d. Click the Add button next to the URL Pattern list.
  - e. Enter `/*.jsp`.
  - f. Click the Edit button next to the Include Preludes list.
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Enter `/template/prelude.jspf`.
  - i. Click OK.
14. Add a resource reference for the database.
  - a. Select the Resource Refs tab.
  - b. Click Add.
  - c. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the Coded Name field.
  - d. Accept the default type `javax.sql.DataSource`.
  - e. Accept the default authorization Container.
  - f. Accept the default selected Shareable.
  - g. Enter `jdbc/BookDB` in the JNDI name field of the Deployment setting for `jdbc/BookDB` frame.
15. Deploy the application.
  - a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. Click OK.
  - c. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
16. Open the bookstore URL  
`http://localhost:1024/bookstore3/bookstore`.

See Troubleshooting (page 445) for help with diagnosing common problems.

# Types of Tags

JSP simple tags are invoked using XML syntax. They have a start tag and end tag, and possibly a body:

```
<tt:tag>
    body
</tt:tag>
```

A custom tag with no body is expressed as follows:

```
<tt:tag /> or <tt:tag></tt:tag>
```

## Tags with Attributes

A simple tag can have attributes. Attributes customize the behavior of a custom tag just as parameters customize the behavior of a method.

There are three types of attributes:

- Simple attributes
- Fragment attributes
- Dynamic attributes

## Simple Attributes

Simple attributes are evaluated by the container prior to being passed to the tag handler. Simple attributes are listed in the start tag and have the syntax `attr="value"`. You can set a simple attribute value from a `String` constant, an EL expression, or with a `jsp:attribute` element (see `jsp:attribute` Element, page 557). The conversion process between the constants and expressions and attribute types follows the rules described for JavaBeans component properties in *Setting JavaBeans Component Properties* (page 506).

The Duke's Bookstore page `bookcatalog.jsp` calls the `catalog` tag which has two attributes. The first attribute, a reference to a book database object, is set by an EL expression. The second attribute, which sets the color of the rows in a table that represents the bookstore catalog, is set with a `String` constant.

```
<sc:catalog bookDB ="${bookDB}" color="#cccccc">
```

## Fragment Attributes

A *JSP fragment* is a portion of JSP code passed to a tag handler that can be invoked as many times as needed. You can think of a fragment as a template that is used by a tag handler to produce customized content. Thus, unlike simple attributes which are evaluated by the container, fragment attributes are evaluated by tag handlers during tag invocation.

You declare an attribute to be a fragment by using the fragment attribute in a tag file attribute directive (see Declaring Tag Attributes in Tag Files, page 565) or by using the fragment subelement of the attribute TLD element (see Declaring Tag Attributes for Tag Handlers, page 582). You define the value of fragment attribute with a `jsp:attribute` element. When used to specify a fragment attribute, the body of the `jsp:attribute` element can only contain template text and standard and custom tags; it *cannot* contain scripting elements (see Chapter 15).

JSP fragments can be parametrized via expression language (EL) variables in the JSP code that composes the fragment. The EL variables are set by the tag handler, thus allowing the handler to customize the fragment each time it is invoked (see Declaring Tag Variables in Tag Files, page 566 and Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers, page 584).

The catalog tag discussed earlier accepts two fragments: `normalPrice`, which is displayed for a product that's full price, and `onSale`, which is displayed for a product that's on sale.

```
<sc:catalog bookDB ="${bookDB}" color="#cccccc">
  <jsp:attribute name="normalPrice">
    <fmt:formatNumber value="${price}" type="currency"/>
  </jsp:attribute>
  <jsp:attribute name="onSale">
    <strike><fmt:formatNumber value="${price}"
      type="currency"/></strike><br/>
    <font color="red"><fmt:formatNumber value="${salePrice}"
      type="currency"/></font>
  </jsp:attribute>
</sc:catalog>
```

The tag executes the `normalPrice` fragment, using the values for the `price` EL variable, if the product is full price. If the product is on sale, the tag executes the `onSale` fragment, using the `price` and `salePrice` variables.

## Dynamic Attributes

A *dynamic attribute* is an attribute that is not specified in the definition of the tag. Dynamic attributes are primarily used by tags whose attributes are treated in a uniform manner, but whose names are not necessarily known at development time.

For example, this tag accepts an arbitrary number of attributes whose values are colors and outputs a bulleted list of the attributes colored according to the values:

```
<colored:colored color1="red" color2="yellow" color3="blue"/>
```

You can also set the value of dynamic attributes with an EL expression or using the `jsp:attribute` element.

## jsp:attribute Element

The `jsp:attribute` element allows you to define the value of a tag attribute in the *body* of an XML element instead of in the value of an XML attribute.

For example, the Duke's Bookstore template page `screendefinitions.jsp` uses `jsp:attribute` to use the output of `fmt:message` to set the value of the `value` attribute of `tt:parameter`:

```
...
<tt:screen id="/bookcatalog">
  <tt:parameter name="title" direct="true">
    <jsp:attribute name="value" >
      <fmt:message key="TitleBookCatalog"/>
    </jsp:attribute>
  </tt:parameter>
  <tt:parameter name="banner" value="/template/banner.jsp"
    direct="false"/>
  <tt:parameter name="body" value="/bookcatalog.jsp"
    direct="false"/>
</tt:screen>
...
```

`jsp:attribute` accepts a `name` attribute and a `trim` attribute. The `name` attribute identifies which tag attribute is being specified. The optional `trim` attribute determines whether whitespace appearing at the beginning and end of the element body should be discarded or not. By default, the leading and trailing whitespace is discarded. The whitespace is trimmed when the JSP page is translated. If a body contains a custom tag that produces leading or trailing

whitespace, that whitespace is preserved regardless of the value of the `trim` attribute.

An empty body is equivalent to specifying "" as the value of the attribute.

The body of `jsp:attribute` is restricted according to the type of attribute being specified:

- For simple attributes that accept an EL expression, the body can be any JSP content.
- For simple attributes that do not accept an EL expression, the body can only contain template text.
- For fragment attributes, the body must not contain any scripting elements (See Chapter 15).

## Tags with Bodies

A simple tag can contain custom and core tags, HTML text, and tag-dependent body content between the start and end tag.

In the following example, the Duke's Bookstore application page `bookshow-cart.jsp` uses the JSTL `c:if` tag to print the body if the request contains a parameter named `Clear`:

```
<c:if test="${param.Clear}">
  <font color="#ff0000" size="+2"><strong>
    You just cleared your shopping cart!
  </strong><br>&nbsp;<br></font>
</c:if>
```

## jsp:body Element

You can also specify the body of a simple tag explicitly using the `jsp:body` element. If one or more attributes are specified with the `jsp:attribute` element, then `jsp:body` is the only way to specify the body of the tag. If one or more `jsp:attribute` elements appear in the body of a tag invocation but you don't include a `jsp:body` element, the tag has an empty body.

## Tags That Define Variables

A simple tag can define an EL variable that can be used within the calling page. In the following example, the `iterator` tag sets the value of the EL variable `departmentName` as it iterates through a collection of department names.

```
<tl:iterator var="departmentName" type="java.lang.String"
    group="${myorg.departmentNames}">
  <tr>
    <td><a href="list.jsp?deptName=${departmentName}">
      ${departmentName}</a></td>
    </tr>
  </tl:iterator>
```

## Communication Between Tags

Custom tags communicate with each other through shared objects. There are two types of shared objects: public and private.

In the following example, the `c:set` tag creates a public EL variable called `aVariable`, which is then reused by another tag.

```
<c:set var="aVariable" value="aValue" />
<tt:anotherTag attr1="${aVariable}" />
```

Nested tags can share private objects. In the next example, an object created by `outerTag` is available to `innerTag`. The inner tag retrieves its parent tag and then retrieves an object from the parent. Since the object is not named, the potential for naming conflicts is reduced.

```
<tt:outerTag>
  <tt:innerTag />
</tt:outerTag>
```

The Duke's Bookstore page `template.jsp` uses a set of cooperating tags that share public and private objects to define the screens of the application. These tags are described in *A Template Tag Library* (page 598).

# Encapsulating Reusable Content using Tag Files

A tag file is a source file that contains a fragment of JSP code that is reusable as a custom tag. Tag files allow you to create custom tags using JSP syntax. Just as a JSP page gets translated into a servlet class and then compiled, a tag file gets translated into a tag handler and then compiled.

The recommended file extension for a tag file is `.tag`. As is the case with JSP files, the actual tag may be composed of a top file that includes other files that contain either a complete tag or a fragment of a tag file. Just as the recommended extension for a fragment of a JSP file is `.jspx`, the recommended extension for a fragment of a tag file is `.tagf`.

The following version of the Hello, World application introduced in Chapter 3 uses a tag to generate the response. The response tag, which accepts two attributes—a greeting string and a name—is encapsulated in `response.tag`:

```
<%@ attribute name="greeting" required="true" %>
<%@ attribute name="name" required="true" %>
<h2><font color="black">${greeting}, ${name}!</font></h2>
```

The highlighted line in `greeting.jsp` page invokes the response tag if the length of the username request parameter is greater than 0:

```
<%@ taglib tagdir="/WEB-INF/tags" prefix="h" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/core"
    prefix="c" %>
<%@ taglib uri="http://java.sun.com/jsp/jstl/functions"
    prefix="fn" %>
<html>
<head><title>Hello</title></head>
<body bgcolor="white">

<c:set var="greeting" value="Hello" />
<h2>${greeting}, my name is Duke. What's yours?</h2>
<form method="get">
<input type="text" name="username" size="25">
<p></p>
<input type="submit" value="Submit">
<input type="reset" value="Reset">
</form>

<c:if test="${fn:length(param.username) > 0}" >
```



```
<h:response greeting="${greeting}"
  name="${param.username}"/>
</c:if>
</body>
</html>
```

A sample `hello3.war` is provided in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/provided-wars/`. To build, package, deploy, and run the `hello3` application:

1. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello3/`.
2. Run `asant build`. This target will copy the JSP pages to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello3/build/` directory.
3. Start `deploytool`.
4. Create a Web application called `hello3` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select `File→New→Web Application WAR`.
5. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello3/`.
  - c. In the File Name field, enter `hello3`.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.
  - e. In the WAR Display Name field enter `hello3`.
  - f. In the Context Root field, enter `/hello3`.
  - g. Click Edit to add the content files.
  - h. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/web/hello3/build/`. Select `duke.waving.gif`, `greeting.jsp`, and `response.tag` and click Add. Click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
  - j. Select the JSP radio button.
  - k. Click Next.
  - l. Select `greeting.jsp` from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - m. Click Finish.
6. Set `greeting.jsp` to be a welcome file (see Declaring Welcome Files, page 95).
  - a. Select the File Refs tab.

- b. Click Add to add a welcome file.
  - c. Select `greeting.jsp` from the drop-down list.
7. Select File→Save.
8. Deploy the application.
  - a. Select Tools→Deploy.
  - b. In the Connection Settings frame, enter the user name and password you specified when you installed the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.
  - c. Click OK.
  - d. A popup dialog will display the results of the deployment. Click Close.
9. Open your browser to `http://localhost:1024/hello3`

## Tag File Location

Tag files can be placed in one of two locations: in the `/WEB-INF/tags/` directory or subdirectory of a Web application or in a JAR file (see Packaged Tag Files, page 581) in the `/WEB-INF/lib/` directory of a Web application. Packaged tag files require a *tag library descriptor* (TLD), an XML document that contains information about a library as a whole and about each tag contained in the library. (See Tag Library Descriptors, page 576). Tag files that appear in any other location are not considered tag extensions and are ignored by the Web container.

## Tag File Directives

Directives are used to control aspects of tag file translation to a tag handler, specify aspects of the tag, attributes of the tag, and variables exposed by the tag. Table 14–1 lists the directives that you can use in tag files.

**Table 14–1** Tag File Directives

Directive	Description
<code>taglib</code>	Identical to <code>taglib</code> directive (see Declaring Tag Libraries, page 509) for JSP pages.

**Table 14–1** Tag File Directives (Continued)

Directive	Description
<code>include</code>	Identical to <code>include</code> directive (see Reusing Content in JSP Pages, page 513) for JSP pages. Note that if the included file contains syntax unsuitable for tag files, a translation error will occur.
<code>tag</code>	<p>Similar to the <code>page</code> directive in a JSP page, but applies to tag files instead of JSP pages. Like the <code>page</code> directive, a translation unit can contain more than one instance of the <code>tag</code> directive. All the attributes apply to the complete translation unit. However, there can be only one occurrence of any attribute/value defined by this directive in a given translation unit. With the exception of the <code>import</code> attribute, multiple attribute/value (re)definitions result in a translation error.</p> <p>Also used for declaring custom tag properties such as display name. See Declaring Tags (page 563).</p>
<code>attribute</code>	Declares attributes of the custom tag defined in the tag file. See body-content Attribute (page 565).
<code>variable</code>	Declares an EL variable exposed by the tag to the calling page. See Declaring Tag Variables in Tag Files (page 566).

## Declaring Tags

The `tag` directive is similar to the JSP page's `page` directive, but applies to tag files. Some of the elements in the `tag` directive appear in the `tag` element of a TLD (see Declaring Tag Handlers, page 581). Table 14–2 lists the `tag` directive attributes.

**Table 14–2** `tag` Directive Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code>display-name</code>	(optional) A short name that is intended to be displayed by tools. Defaults to the name of the tag file without the extension <code>.tag</code> .
<code>body-content</code>	(optional) Provides information on the content of the body of the tag. Can be either <code>empty</code> , <code>tagdependent</code> , or <code>scriptless</code> . A translation error will result if JSP or any other value is used. Defaults to <code>scriptless</code> . See body-content Attribute (page 565).

**Table 14–2** tag Directive Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Description
dynamic-attributes	<p>(optional) Indicates whether this tag supports additional attributes with dynamic names. The value identifies a scoped attribute in which to place a Map containing the names and values of the dynamic attributes passed during invocation of the tag.</p> <p>A translation error results if the value of the <code>dynamic-attributes</code> of a tag directive is equal to the value of a <code>name-given</code> of a variable directive or the value of a <code>name</code> attribute of an attribute directive.</p>
small-icon	(optional) Relative path, from the tag source file, of an image file containing a small icon that can be used by tools. Defaults to no small icon.
large-icon	(optional) Relative path, from the tag source file, of an image file containing a large icon that can be used by tools. Defaults to no large icon.
description	(optional) Defines an arbitrary string that describes this tag. Defaults to no description.
example	(optional) Defines an arbitrary string that presents an informal description of an example of a use of this action. Defaults to no example.
language	(optional) Carries the same syntax and semantics of the <code>language</code> attribute of the <code>page</code> directive.
import	(optional) Carries the same syntax and semantics of the <code>import</code> attribute of the <code>page</code> directive.
pageEncoding	(optional) Carries the same syntax and semantics of the <code>pageEncoding</code> attribute in the <code>page</code> directive.
isELIgnored	(optional) Carries the same syntax and semantics of the <code>isELIgnored</code> attribute of the <code>page</code> directive.

## body-content Attribute

You specify the character of a tag's body content using the `body-content` attribute:

```
bodycontent="empty | scriptless | tagdependent"
```

You must declare the body content of tags that do not accept a body as `empty`. For tags that have a body there are two options. Body content containing custom and standard tags and HTML text is specified as `scriptless`. All other types of body content—for example, SQL statements passed to the `query` tag—is specified as `tagdependent`. If no attribute is specified, the default is `scriptless`.

## Declaring Tag Attributes in Tag Files

You declare the attributes of a custom tag defined in a tag file with the `attribute` directive. A TLD has an analogous attribute element (see *Declaring Tag Attributes for Tag Handlers*, page 582). Table 14–3 lists the attribute directive attributes:

**Table 14–3** attribute Directive Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code>description</code>	(optional) Description of the attribute. Defaults to no description.
<code>name</code>	<p>The unique name of the attribute being declared. A translation error results if more than one <code>attribute</code> directive appears in the same translation unit with the same name.</p> <p>A translation error results if the value of a <code>name</code> attribute of an <code>attribute</code> directive is equal to the value of <code>dynamic-attributes</code> attribute of a <code>tag</code> directive or the value of a <code>name-given</code> attribute of a <code>variable</code> directive.</p>
<code>required</code>	(optional) Whether this attribute is required ( <code>true</code> ) or optional ( <code>false</code> ). Defaults to <code>false</code> .
<code>rtexprvalue</code>	(optional) Whether the attribute's value may be dynamically calculated at runtime by an expression. Defaults to <code>true</code> .
<code>type</code>	(optional) The runtime type of the attribute's value. Defaults to <code>java.lang.String</code> .

**Table 14–3** attribute Directive Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Description
fragment	<p>(optional) Whether this attribute is a fragment to be evaluated by the tag handler (true) or a normal attribute to be evaluated by the container prior to being passed to the tag handler.</p> <p>If this attribute is true:            You do not specify the <code>rtexprvalue</code> attribute. The container fixes the <code>rtexprvalue</code> attribute at <code>true</code>.            You do not specify the <code>type</code> attribute. The container fixes the <code>type</code> attribute at <code>javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.JspFragment</code>.</p> <p>Defaults to <code>false</code>.</p>

## Declaring Tag Variables in Tag Files

Tag attributes are used to customize tag behavior much like parameters are used to customize the behavior of object methods. In fact, using tag attributes and EL variables, is it possible to emulate various types of parameters—IN, OUT, and nested.

To emulate IN parameters, use tag attributes. A tag attribute is communicated between the calling page and the tag file when the tag is invoked. No further communication occurs between the calling page and tag file.

To emulate OUT or nested parameters, use EL variables. The variable is not initialized by the calling page, but set by the tag file. Each type of parameter is synchronized with the calling page at various points according to the scope of the variable. See Variable Synchronization (page 568) for details.

You declare an EL variable exposed by a tag file with the `variable` directive. A TLD has an analogous `variable` element (see Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers, page 584). Table 14–4 lists the `variable` directive attributes:

**Table 14–4** variable Directive Attributes

Attribute	Description
description	(optional) An optional description of this variable. Defaults to no description.

**Table 14–4** variable Directive Attributes

Attribute	Description
name-given   name-from- attribute	<p>Defines an EL variable to be used in the page invoking this tag. Either name-given or name-from-attribute must be specified. If name-given is specified, the value is the name of the variable. If name-from-attribute is specified, the value is the name of an attribute whose (translation-time) value at of the start of the tag invocation will give the name of the variable.</p> <p>Translation errors arise in the following circumstances:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Specifying neither name-given or name-from-attribute or both.</li> <li>2. If two variable directives have the same name-given.</li> <li>3. If the value of name-given attribute of a variable directive is equal to the value of a name attribute of an attribute directive or the value of dynamic-attributes attribute of a tag directive.</li> </ol>
alias	<p>Defines a variable, local to the tag file, to hold the value of the EL variable. The container will synchronize this value with the variable whose name is given in name-from-attribute.</p> <p>Required when name-from-attribute is specified. A translation error results if used without name-from-attribute.</p> <p>A translation error results if the value of alias is the same as the value of a name attribute of an attribute directive or the name-given attribute of a variable directive.</p>
variable-class	(optional) The name of the class of the variable. The default is <code>java.lang.String</code> .
declare	(optional) Whether the variable is declared or not. True is the default.
scope	(optional) The scope of the variable. Can be either <code>AT_BEGIN</code> , <code>AT_END</code> , or <code>NESTED</code> . Defaults to <code>NESTED</code> .

## Variable Synchronization

The Web container handles the synchronization of variables between a tag file and a calling page. Table 14–5 summarizes when and how each object is synchronized according to the object’s scope.

**Table 14–5** Variable Synchronization Behavior

	AT_BEGIN	NESTED	AT_END
Beginning of tag file	not synch.	save	not synch.
Before any fragment invocation via <code>jsp:invoke</code> or <code>jsp:doBody</code> (see Evaluating Fragments Passed to Tag Files, page 571)	tag→page	tag→page	not synch
End of tag file	tag→page	restore	tag→page

If `name-given` is used to specify the variable name, the name of the variable in the calling page and the name of the variable in the tag file are the same and are equal to the value of `name-given`.

The `name-from-attribute` and `alias` attributes of the `variable` directive can be used to customize the name of the variable in the calling page while using another name in the tag file. When using these attributes, the name of the variable in the calling page is set from the value of `name-from-attribute` at the time the tag was called. The name of the corresponding variable in the tag file is the value of `alias`.

## Synchronization Examples

The following examples illustrate how variable synchronization works between a tag file and its calling page. All the example JSP pages and tag files reference the JSTL core tag library with the prefix `c`. The JSP pages reference a tag file located in `/WEB-INF/tags` with the prefix `my`.



**AT\_BEGIN Scope**

In this example, the AT\_BEGIN scope is used to pass the value of the variable named `x` to the tag's body and at the end of the tag invocation.

```
<%-- callingpage.jsp --%>
<c:set var="x" value="1"/>
${x} <%-- (x == 1) --%>
<my:example>
    ${x} <%-- (x == 2) --%>
</my:example>
${x} <%-- (x == 4) --%>

<%-- example.tag --%>
<%@ variable name-given="x" scope="AT_BEGIN" %>
${x} <%-- (x == null) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="2"/>
<jsp:doBody/>
${x} <%-- (x == 2) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="4"/>
```

**NESTED Scope**

In this example, the NESTED scope is used to make a variable named `x` available only to the tag's body. The tag sets the variable to 2 and this value is passed to the calling page before the body is invoked. Since the scope is NESTED, and the calling page also had a variable named `x`, its original value, 1, is restored when the tag completes.

```
<%-- callingpage.jsp --%>
<c:set var="x" value="1"/>
${x} <%-- (x == 1) --%>
<my:example>
    ${x} <%-- (x == 2) --%>
</my:example>
${x} <%-- (x == 1) --%>

<%-- example.tag --%>
<%@ variable name-given="x" scope="NESTED" %>
${x} <%-- (x == null) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="2"/>
<jsp:doBody/>
${x} <%-- (x == 2) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="4"/>
```

**AT\_END Scope**

In this example, the AT\_END scope is used to return a value to the page. The body of the tag is not affected.

```
<!-- callingpage.jsp --%>
<c:set var="x" value="1"/>
${x} <!-- (x == 1) --%>
<my:example>
    ${x} <!-- (x == 1) --%>
</my:example>
${x} <!-- (x == 4) --%>

<!-- example.tag --%>
<%@ variable name-given="x" scope="AT_END" %>
${x} <!-- (x == null) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="2"/>
<jsp:doBody/>
${x} <!-- (x == 2) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="4"/>
```

**AT\_BEGIN and name-from-attribute**

In this example the AT\_BEGIN scope is used to pass an EL variable to the tag's body, and make it available to the calling page at the end of the tag invocation. The name of the variable is specified via the value of the attribute var. The variable is referenced by a local name, result, in the tag file.

```
<!-- callingpage.jsp --%>
<c:set var="x" value="1"/>
${x} <!-- (x == 1) --%>
<my:example var="x">
    ${x} <!-- (x == 2) --%>
    ${result} <!-- (result == null) --%>
    <c:set var="result" value="invisible"/>
</my:example>
${x} <!-- (x == 4) --%>
${result} <!-- (result == 'invisible') --%>

<!-- example.tag --%>
<%@ attribute name="var" required="true" rtexprvalue="false"%>
<%@ variable alias="result" name-from-attribute="var"
    scope="AT_BEGIN" %>
${x} <!-- (x == null) --%>
${result} <!-- (result == null) --%>
<c:set var="x" value="ignored"/>
<c:set var="result" value="2"/>
```

```
<jsp:doBody/>
${x} <!-- (x == 'ignored') --%>
${result} <!-- (result == 2) --%>
<c:set var="result" value="4"/>
```

## Evaluating Fragments Passed to Tag Files

When a tag file is executed, the Web container passes it two types of fragments: fragment attributes and the tag body, which is implemented as a fragment. Recall from the discussion of fragment attributes that fragments are evaluated by the tag handler as opposed to the Web container. Within a tag file, you use the `jsp:invoke` element to evaluate a fragment attribute and the `jsp:doBody` element to evaluate a tag file body.

The result of evaluating either type of fragment is sent to the response or stored in an EL variable for later manipulation. To store the result of evaluating a fragment to an EL variable, you specify the `var` or `varReader` attributes. If `var` is specified, the container stores the result in an EL variable of type `String` with the name specified by `var`. If `varReader` is specified, the container stores the result in an EL variable of type `java.io.Reader` with the name specified by `varReader`. The `Reader` object can then be passed to a custom tag for further processing. A translation error occurs if both `var` and `varReader` are specified.

An optional `scope` attribute indicates the scope of the resulting variable. The possible values are `page` (default), `request`, `session`, or `application`. A translation error occurs if this attribute appears without specifying the `var` or `varReader` attribute.

## Examples

### Simple Attributes

The Duke's Bookstore `shipDate` tag, defined in `shipDate.tag`, is a custom tag with a simple attribute. The tag generates the date of a book order according to the type of shipping requested.

```
<%@ taglib prefix="sc" tagdir="/WEB-INF/tags" %>
<h3><fmt:message key="ThankYou"/> ${param.cardname}.</h3><br>
<fmt:message key="With"/>
<em><fmt:message key="${param.shipping}"/></em>,
<fmt:message key="ShipDateLC"/>
<sc:shipDate shipping="${param.shipping}" />
```

The tag determines the number of days until shipment from the `shipping` attribute passed to it by the page `bookreceipt.jsp`. From the days, the tag computes the ship date. It then formats the ship date.

```
<%@ attribute name="shipping" required="true" %>

<jsp:useBean id="now" class="java.util.Date" />
<jsp:useBean id="shipDate" class="java.util.Date" />
<c:choose>
  <c:when test="${shipping == 'QuickShip'}">
    <c:set var="days" value="2" />
  </c:when>
  <c:when test="${shipping == 'NormalShip'}">
    <c:set var="days" value="5" />
  </c:when>
  <c:when test="${shipping == 'SaverShip'}">
    <c:set var="days" value="7" />
  </c:when>
</c:choose>
<jsp:setProperty name="shipDate" property="time"
  value="${now.time + 86400000 * days}" />
<fmt:formatDate value="${shipDate}" type="date"
  dateStyle="full"/>.<br><br>
```

## Simple and Fragment Attributes and Variables

The Duke's Bookstore catalog tag, defined in `catalog.tag`, is a custom tag with simple and fragment attributes and variables. The tag renders the catalog of a book database as an HTML table. The tag file declares that it sets variables named `price` and `salePrice` via `variable` directives. The fragment `normalPrice` uses the variable `price` and the fragment `onSale` uses the variables `price` and `salePrice`. Before the tag invokes the fragment attributes with the `jsp:invoke` element, the Web container passes values for the variables back to the calling page.

```
<%@ attribute name="bookDB" required="true"
    type="database.BookDB" %>
<%@ attribute name="color" required="true" %>
<%@ attribute name="normalPrice" fragment="true" %>
<%@ attribute name="onSale" fragment="true" %>

<%@ variable name-given="price" %>
<%@ variable name-given="salePrice" %>

<center>
<table>
<c:forEach var="book" begin="0" items="${bookDB.books}">
    <tr>
        <c:set var="bookId" value="${book.bookId}" />
        <td bgcolor="${color}">
            <c:url var="url" value="/bookdetails" >
                <c:param name="bookId" value="${bookId}" />
            </c:url>
            <a href="${url}"><
                strong>${book.title}&nbsp;</strong></a></td>
        <td bgcolor="${color}" rowspan=2>
            <c:set var="salePrice" value="${book.price * .85}" />
            <c:set var="price" value="${book.price}" />
            <c:choose>
                <c:when test="${book.onSale}" >
                    <jsp:invoke fragment="onSale" />
                </c:when>
                <c:otherwise>
                    <jsp:invoke fragment="normalPrice"/>
                </c:otherwise>
            </c:choose>

            &nbsp;</td>
```

```
...  
</table>  
</center>
```

The page `bookcatalog.jsp` invokes the `catalog` tag with simple attributes `bookDB`, which contains catalog data, and `color`, which customizes the coloring of the table rows. The formatting of the book price is determined by two fragment attributes—`normalPrice` and `onSale`—that are conditionally invoked by the tag according to data retrieved from the book database.

```
<sc:catalog bookDB ="${bookDB}" color="#cccccc">  
  <jsp:attribute name="normalPrice">  
    <fmt:formatNumber value="${price}" type="currency"/>  
  </jsp:attribute>  
  <jsp:attribute name="onSale">  
    <strike>  
      <fmt:formatNumber value="${price}" type="currency"/>  
    </strike><br/>  
    <font color="red">  
      <fmt:formatNumber value="${salePrice}" type="currency"/>  
    </font>  
  </jsp:attribute>  
</sc:catalog>
```

The screen produced by `bookcatalog.jsp` is shown in Figure 14–2. You can compare it to the version in Figure 12–2.

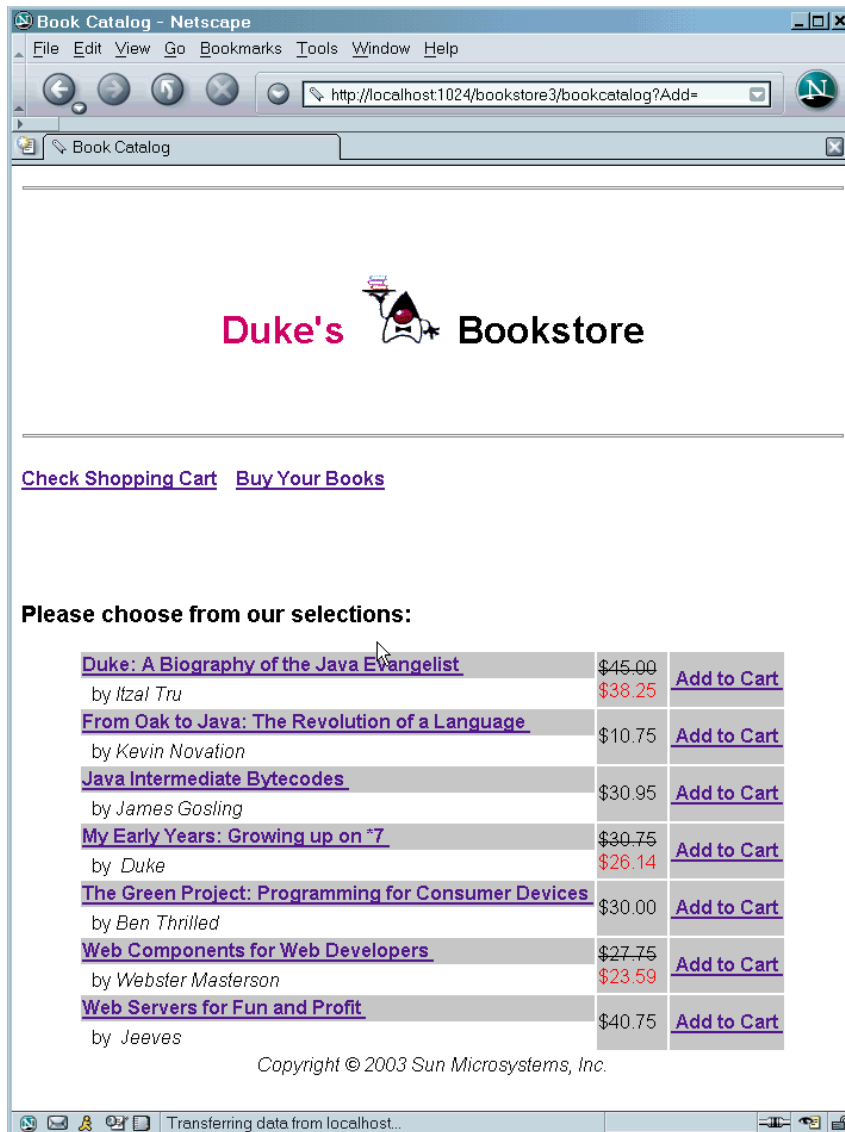


Figure 14-2 Book Catalog

## Dynamic Attributes

The following code implements the tag discussed in Dynamic Attributes (page 557). An arbitrary number of attributes whose values are colors

are stored in a Map named by the `dynamic-attributes` attribute of the tag directive. The JSTL `forEach` tag is used to iterate through the Map and the attribute keys and colored attribute values are printed in a bulleted list.

```
<%@ tag dynamic-attributes="colorMap"%>
<ul>
<c:forEach var="color" begin="0" items="${colorMap}">
  <li>${color.key} =
    <font color="${color.value}">${color.value}</font><li>
</c:forEach>
</ul>
```

## Tag Library Descriptors

If you want to redistribute your tag files or implement your custom tags with tag handlers written in Java, you need to declare the tags in a tag library descriptor (TLD). A *tag library descriptor* (TLD) is an XML document that contains information about a library as a whole and about each tag contained in the library. TLDs are used by a Web container to validate the tags and by JSP page development tools.

Tag library descriptor file names must have the extension `.tld` and must be packaged in the `/WEB-INF/` directory or subdirectory of the WAR file or in the `/META-INF/` directory or subdirectory of a tag library packaged in a JAR. If a tag is implemented as a tag file and is packaged in `/WEB-INF/tags/` or a subdirectory, a TLD will be automatically generated by the Web container, though you can provide one if you wish.

A TLD must begin with a root `taglib` element that specifies the schema and required JSP version:

```
<taglib xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee/web-
jsptaglibrary_2_0.xsd"
  version="2.0">
```



Table 14–6 lists the subelements of the `taglib` element:

**Table 14–6** `taglib` Subelements

Element	Description
<code>description</code>	(optional) A string describing the use of the tag library.
<code>display-name</code>	(optional) Name intended to be displayed by tools.
<code>icon</code>	(optional) Icon that can be used by tools.
<code>tlib-version</code>	The tag library's version.
<code>short-name</code>	(optional) Name that could be used by a JSP page authoring tool to create names with a mnemonic value.
<code>uri</code>	A URI that uniquely identifies the tag library.
<code>validator</code>	See <code>validator</code> Element (page 578).
<code>listener</code>	See <code>listener</code> Element (page 578).
<code>tag-file</code>   <code>tag</code>	Declares the tag files or tags defined in the tag library. See <code>Declaring Tag Files</code> (page 578) and <code>Declaring Tag Handlers</code> (page 581). A tag library is considered invalid if a <code>tag-file</code> element has a <code>name</code> subelement with the same content as a <code>name</code> subelement in a <code>tag</code> element.
<code>function</code>	Zero or more EL functions (see <code>Functions</code> , page 502) defined in the tag library.
<code>tag-extension</code>	(optional) Extensions that provide extra information about the tag library for tools.

This section describes the top-level elements of TLDs. Subsequent sections describe how to declare tags defined in tag files, how to declare tags defined in tag handlers, and how to declare tag attributes and variables.

## validator Element

This element defines an optional tag library validator that can be used to validate the conformance of any JSP page importing this tag library to its requirements. Table 14–7 lists the subelements of the `validator` element:

**Table 14–7** validator Subelements

Element	Description
<code>validator-class</code>	The class implementing <code>javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.TagLibraryValidator</code>
<code>init-param</code>	(optional) Initialization parameters.

## listener Element

A tag library can specify some classes that are event listeners (see *Handling Servlet Life Cycle Events*, page 446). The listeners are listed in the TLD as `listener` elements, and the Web container will instantiate the listener classes and register them in a way analogous to listeners defined at the WAR level. Unlike WAR-level listeners, the order in which the tag library listeners are registered is undefined. The only subelement of the `listener` element is the `listener-class` element, which must contain the fully qualified name of the listener class.

## Declaring Tag Files

Although not required for tag files, providing a TLD allows you to share the tag across more than one tag library and lets you import the tag library using a URI instead of the `tagdir` attribute.

## tag-file TLD Element

A tag file is declared in the TLD with a `tag-file` element, whose subelements are listed in Table 14–8:

**Table 14–8** `tag-file` Subelements

Element	Description
<code>description</code>	(optional) A description of the tag.
<code>display-name</code>	(optional) Name intended to be displayed by tools.
<code>icon</code>	(optional) Icon that can be used by tools.
<code>name</code>	The unique tag name.
<code>path</code>	Where to find the tag file implementing this tag, relative to the root of the Web application or the root of the JAR file for a tag library packaged in a JAR. This must begin with <code>/WEB-INF/tags/</code> if the tag file resides in the WAR, or <code>/META-INF/tags/</code> if the tag file resides in a JAR.
<code>example</code>	(optional) Informal description of an example use of the tag.
<code>tag-extension</code>	(optional) Extensions that provide extra information about the tag for tools.

## Unpackaged Tag Files

Tag files placed in a subdirectory of `/WEB-INF/tags/` do not require a TLD file and don't have to be packaged. Thus, to create reusable JSP code, you simply create a new tag file and place the code inside of it.

The Web container generates an implicit tag library for each directory under and including `/WEB-INF/tags/`. There are no special relationships between subdi-

rectories—they are allowed simply for organizational purposes. For example, the following Web application contains three tag libraries:

```
/WEB-INF/tags/  
/WEB-INF/tags/a.tag  
/WEB-INF/tags/b.tag  
/WEB-INF/tags/foo/  
/WEB-INF/tags/foo/c.tag  
/WEB-INF/tags/bar/baz/  
/WEB-INF/tags/bar/baz/d.tag
```

The implicit TLD for each library has the following values:

- `tlib-version` for the tag library. Defaults to 1.0.
- `short-name` is derived from the directory name. If the directory is `/WEB-INF/tags/`, the short name is simply `tags`. Otherwise, the full directory path (relative to the Web application) is taken, minus the `/WEB-INF/tags/` prefix. Then, all `/` characters are replaced with `-`, which yields the short name. Note that short names are not guaranteed to be unique.
- A `tag-file` element is considered to exist for each tag file, with the following sub-elements:
  - The name for each is the filename of the tag file, without the `.tag` extension.
  - The path for each is the path of the tag file, relative to the root of the Web application.

So, for the previous example, the implicit TLD for the `/WEB-INF/tags/bar/baz/` directory would be:

```
<taglib>  
  <tlib-version>1.0</tlib-version>  
  <short-name>bar-baz</short-name>  
  <tag-file>  
    <name>d</name>  
    <path>/WEB-INF/tags/bar/baz/d.tag</path>  
  </tag-file>  
</taglib>
```

Despite the existence of an implicit tag library, a TLD in the Web application can still create additional tags from the same tag files. To accomplish this, you add a `tag-file` element with a path that points to the tag file.

## Packaged Tag Files

Tag files can be packaged in the `/META-INF/tags/` directory in a JAR file installed in the `/WEB-INF/lib/` directory of the Web application. Tags placed here are typically part of a reusable library of tags that can be easily used in any Web application.

Tag files bundled in a JAR require a tag library descriptor. Tag files that appear in a JAR but are not defined in a TLD are ignored by the Web container.

When used in a JAR file, the `path` subelement of the `tag-file` element specifies the full path of the tag file from the root of the JAR. Therefore, it must always begin with `/META-INF/tags/`.

Tag files can also be compiled into Java classes and bundled as a tag library. This is useful when you wish to distribute a binary version of the tag library without the original source. If you choose this form of packaging you must use a tool that produces portable JSP code that uses only standard APIs.

## Declaring Tag Handlers

When tags are implemented with tag handlers written in Java, each tag in the library must be declared in the TLD with the `tag` element. The `tag` element contains the tag name, the class of its tag handler, information on the tag's attributes, and information on the variables created by the tag (see *Tags That Define Variables*, page 559).

Each attribute declaration contains an indication of whether the attribute is required, whether its value can be determined by request-time expressions, the type of the attribute, and whether the attribute is a fragment. Variable information can be given directly in the TLD or through a tag extra info class. Table 14–9 lists the subelements of the `tag` element:

**Table 14–9** tag Subelements

Element	Description
<code>description</code>	(optional) A description of the tag.
<code>display-name</code>	(optional) name intended to be displayed by tools.
<code>icon</code>	(optional) Icon that can be used by tools.

**Table 14–9** tag Subelements (Continued)

Element	Description
name	The unique tag name.
tag-class	The fully-qualified name of the tag handler class.
tei-class	(optional) Subclass of <code>javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.TagExtraInfo</code> . See Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers (page 584).
body-content	The body content type. Carries the same syntax and semantics as the <code>body-content</code> attribute of a tag directive of a tag file. See body-content Attribute (page 565).
variable	(optional) Declares an EL variable exposed by the tag to the calling page. See Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers (page 584).
attribute	Declares attributes of the custom tag. See Declaring Tag Attributes for Tag Handlers (page 582).
dynamic-attributes	Whether the tag supports additional attributes with dynamic names. Defaults to <code>false</code> . If true, the tag handler class must implement the <code>javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.DynamicAttributes</code> interface.
example	(optional) Informal description of an example use of the tag.
tag-extension	(optional) Extensions that provide extra information about the tag for tools.

## Declaring Tag Attributes for Tag Handlers

For each tag attribute, you must specify whether the attribute is required, whether the value can be determined by an expression, optionally, the type of the attribute in an `attribute` element, and whether the attribute is a fragment. If the `rtexprvalue` element is `true` or `yes`, then the `type` element defines the return type expected from any expression specified as the value of the attribute. For static values, the type is always `java.lang.String`. An attribute is specified in a

TLD in an attribute element. Table 14–10 lists the subelements of the attribute element.

**Table 14–10** attribute Subelements

Element	Description
description	(optional) A description of the attribute.
name	The unique name of the attribute being declared. A translation error results if more than one <code>attribute</code> element appears in the same tag with the same name.
required	(optional) Whether the attribute is required. The default is <code>false</code> .
rtexprvalue	(optional) Whether the attribute's value may be dynamically calculated at runtime by an EL expression. The default is <code>false</code> .
type	(optional) The runtime type of the attribute's value. Defaults to <code>java.lang.String</code> if not specified.
fragment	<p>(optional) Whether this attribute is a fragment to be evaluated by the tag handler (<code>true</code>) or a normal attribute to be evaluated by the container prior to being passed to the tag handler.</p> <p>If this attribute is <code>true</code>:</p> <p>You do not specify the <code>rtexprvalue</code> attribute. The container fixes the <code>rtexprvalue</code> attribute at <code>true</code>.</p> <p>You do not specify the <code>type</code> attribute. The container fixes the <code>type</code> attribute at <code>javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.JspFragment</code>.</p> <p>Defaults to <code>false</code>.</p>

If a tag attribute is not required, a tag handler should provide a default value.

The tag element for a tag that outputs its body if a test evaluates to `true` declares that the `test` attribute is required and that its value can be set by a runtime expression.

```
<tag>
  <name>present</name>
  <tag-class>condpkg.IfSimpleTag</tag-class>
  <body-content>scriptless</body-content>
  ...
```

```

<attribute>
  <name>test</name>
  <required>true</required>
  <rtexprvalue>true</rtexprvalue>
</attribute>
...
</tag>

```

## Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers

The example described in *Tags That Define Variables* (page 559) defines an EL variable `departmentName`:

```

<tlt:iterator var="departmentName" type="java.lang.String"
  group="{myorg.departmentNames}">
  <tr>
    <td><a href="list.jsp?deptName={departmentName}">
      {departmentName}</a></td>
    </tr>
  </tlt:iterator>

```

When the JSP page containing this tag is translated, the Web container generates code to synchronize the variable with the object referenced by the variable. To generate the code, the Web container requires certain information about the variable:

- Variable name
- Variable class
- Whether the variable refers to a new or existing object
- The availability of the variable.

There are two ways to provide this information: by specifying the variable TLD subelement or by defining a tag extra info class and including the `tei-class` element in the TLD (see *TagExtraInfo Class*, page 593). Using the `variable` element is simpler, but less dynamic. With the `variable` element, the only aspect of the variable that you can specify at runtime is its name (via the `name-from-attribute` element). If you provide this information in a tag extra info class, you can also specify the type of the variable at runtime.



Table 14–11 lists the subelements of the `variable` element.

**Table 14–11** `variable` Subelements

Element	Description
<code>description</code>	(optional) A description of the variable.
<code>name-given</code>   <code>name-from-attribute</code>	<p>Defines an EL variable to be used in the page invoking this tag. Either <code>name-given</code> or <code>name-from-attribute</code> must be specified. If <code>name-given</code> is specified, the value is the name of the variable. If <code>name-from-attribute</code> is specified, the value is the name of an attribute whose (translation-time) value at of the start of the tag invocation will give the name of the variable.</p> <p>Translation errors arise in the following circumstances:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Specifying neither <code>name-given</code> or <code>name-from-attribute</code> or both.</li> <li>2. If two <code>variable</code> elements have the same <code>name-given</code>.</li> </ol>
<code>variable-class</code>	(optional) The fully qualified name of the class of the object. <code>java.lang.String</code> is the default.
<code>declare</code>	(optional) Whether the object is declared or not. <code>True</code> is the default. A translation error results if both <code>declare</code> and <code>fragment</code> are specified.
<code>scope</code>	(optional) The scope of the variable defined. Can be either <code>AT_BEGIN</code> , <code>AT_END</code> , or <code>NESTED</code> (see Table 14–12). Defaults to <code>NESTED</code> .

**Table 14–12** Variable Availability

Value	Availability
<code>NESTED</code>	Between the start tag and the end tag.
<code>AT_BEGIN</code>	From the start tag until the scope of any enclosing tag. If there's no enclosing tag, then to the end of the page.
<code>AT_END</code>	After the end tag until the scope of any enclosing tag. If there's no enclosing tag, then to the end of the page.

You could define the following variable element for the `tlc:iterator` tag:

```
<tag>
  <variable>
    <name-given>var</name-given>
    <variable-class>java.lang.String</variable-class>
    <declare>true</declare>
    <scope>NESTED</scope>
  </variable>
</tag>
```

## Programming Simple Tag Handlers

The classes and interfaces used to implement simple tag handlers are contained in the `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext` package. Simple tag handlers implement the `SimpleTag` interface. Interfaces can be used to take an existing Java object and make it a tag handler. For most newly created handlers, you would use the `SimpleTagSupport` classes as a base class.

The heart of a simple tag handler is a single method—`doTag`—which gets invoked when the end element of the tag is encountered. Note that the default implementation of the `doTag` method of `SimpleTagSupport` does nothing.

A tag handler has access to an API that allows it to communicate with the JSP page. The entry point to the API is the JSP context object (`javax.servlet.jsp.JspContext`). `JspContext` provides access to implicit objects. `PageContext` extends `JspContext` with servlet-specific behavior. A tag handler can retrieve all the other implicit objects (request, session, and application) accessible from a JSP page through these objects. If the tag is nested, a tag handler also has access to the handler (called the *parent*) associated with the enclosing tag.

## Packaging Tag Handlers

Tag handlers can be made available to a Web application in two basic ways. The classes implementing the tag handlers can be stored in an unpacked form in the `WEB-INF/classes/` subdirectory of the Web application. Alternatively, if the library is distributed as a JAR, it is stored in the `WEB-INF/lib/` directory of the Web application.

## How Is a Simple Tag Handler Invoked?

The `SimpleTag` interface defines the basic protocol between a simple tag handler and a JSP page's servlet. The JSP page's servlet invokes the `setJspContext`, `setParent`, and attribute setting methods before calling `doStartTag`.

```
ATag t = new ATag();
t.setJspContext(...);
t.setParent(...);
t.setAttribute1(value1);
t.setAttribute2(value2);
...
t.setJspBody(new JspFragment(...))
t.doTag();
```

The following sections describe the methods that you need to develop for each type of tag introduced in *Types of Tags* (page 555).

## Basic Tags

The handler for a basic tag without a body must implement the `doTag` method of the `SimpleTag` interface. The `doTag` method is invoked when the start tag is encountered.

The basic tag discussed in the first section,

```
<tt:basic />
```

would be implemented by the following tag handler:

```
public HelloWorldSimpleTag extends SimpleTagSupport {
    public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
        getJspContext().getOut().write("Hello, world.");
    }
}
```

## Tags with Attributes

### Defining Attributes in a Tag Handler

For each tag attribute, you must define a set method in the tag handler that conforms to the JavaBeans architecture conventions. For example, the tag handler for the JSTL `c:if` tag,

```
<c:if test="${Clear}">
```

contains the following method:

```
public void setTest(boolean test) {  
    this.test = test;  
}
```

### Attribute Validation

The documentation for a tag library should describe valid values for tag attributes. When a JSP page is translated, a Web container will enforce any constraints contained in the TLD element for each attribute.

The attributes passed to a tag can also be validated at translation time with the `validate` method of a class derived from `TagExtraInfo`. This class is also used to provide information about variables defined by the tag (see `TagExtraInfo` Class, page 593).

The `validate` method is passed the attribute information in a `TagData` object, which contains attribute-value tuples for each of the tag's attributes. Since the validation occurs at translation time, the value of an attribute that is computed at request time will be set to `TagData.REQUEST_TIME_VALUE`.

The tag `<tt:twa attr1="value1"/>` has the following TLD attribute element:

```
<attribute>  
    <name>attr1</name>  
    <required>true</required>  
    <rtexprvalue>true</rtexprvalue>  
</attribute>
```

This declaration indicates that the value of `attr1` can be determined at runtime.

The following `validate` method checks that the value of `attr1` is a valid Boolean value. Note that since the value of `attr1` can be computed at runtime, `validate` must check whether the tag user has chosen to provide a runtime value.

```
public class TwaTEI extends TagExtraInfo {
    public ValidationMessage[] validate(TagData data) {
        Object o = data.getAttribute("attr1");
        if (o != null && o != TagData.REQUEST_TIME_VALUE) {
            if (((String)o).toLowerCase().equals("true") ||
                ((String)o).toLowerCase().equals("false") )
                return null;
            else
                return new ValidationMessage(data.getId(),
                    "Invalid boolean value.");
        }
        else
            return null;
    }
}
```

## Dynamic Attributes

Tag handlers that support dynamic attributes must declare that they do so in the tag element of the TLD (see *Declaring Tag Handlers*, page 581). In addition, your tag handler must implement the `setDynamicAttribute` method of the `DynamicAttributes` interface. For each attribute specified in the tag invocation that does not have a corresponding attribute element in the TLD, the Web container calls `setDynamicAttribute`, passing in the namespace of the attribute (or null if in the default namespace), the name of the attribute, and the value of the attribute. You must implement the `setDynamicAttribute` method to remember the names and values of the dynamic attributes so that they can be used later on when `doTag` is executed. If the `setDynamicAttribute` method an exception, the `doTag` method is not invoked for the tag, and the exception must be treated in the same manner as if it came from an attribute setter method.

The following implementation of `setDynamicAttribute` saves the attribute names and values in lists. Then, in the `doTag` method, the names and values are echoed to the response in an HTML list.

```
private ArrayList keys = new ArrayList();
private ArrayList values = new ArrayList();

public void setDynamicAttribute(String uri,
    String localName, Object value ) throws JspException {
```

```

        keys.add( localName );
        values.add( value );
    }

    public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
        JspWriter out = getJspContext().getOut();
        for( int i = 0; i < keys.size(); i++ ) {
            String key = (String)keys.get( i );
            Object value = values.get( i );
            out.println( "<li>" + key + " = " + value + "</li>" );
        }
    }
}

```

## Tags with Bodies

A tag handler for a tag with a body is implemented differently depending on whether or not the tag handler needs to manipulate the body. A tag handler manipulates the body when it reads or modifies the contents of the body.

### Tag Handler Does Not Manipulate the Body

If a tag handler needs to simply evaluate the body, it gets the body with the `getJspBody` method of `SimpleTag` and then evaluates the body with the `invoke` method.

The following tag handler accepts a `test` parameter and evaluates the body of the tag if the test evaluates to true. The body of the tag is encapsulated in a JSP fragment. If the test is true, the handler retrieves the fragment with the `getJspBody` method. The `invoke` method directs all output to a supplied writer or to the `JspWriter` returned by the `getOut` method of the `JspContext` associated with the tag handler if the writer is `null`.

```

public class IfSimpleTag extends SimpleTagSupport {
    private boolean test;
    public void setTest(boolean test) {
        this.test = test;
    }
    public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
        if(test){
            getJspBody().invoke(null);
        }
    }
}

```

## Tag Handler Manipulates the Body

If the tag handler needs to manipulate the body, the tag handler must capture the body in a `StringWriter`. The `invoke` method directs all output to a supplied writer. Then the modified body is written to the `JspWriter` returned by the `getOut` method of the `JspContext`. Thus, a tag that converts its body to upper case could be written as follows:

```
public class SimpleWriter extends SimpleTagSupport {
    public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
        StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
        jspBody.invoke(sw);
        jspContext().
            getOut().println(sw.toString().toUpperCase());
    }
}
```

## Tags That Define Variables

Similar communication mechanisms exist for communication between JSP page and tag handlers as for JSP pages and tag files.

To emulate IN parameters, use tag attributes. A tag attribute is communicated between the calling page and the tag handler when the tag is invoked. No further communication occurs between the calling page and tag handler.

To emulate OUT or nested parameters, use variables with availability `AT_BEGIN`, `AT_END`, or `NESTED`. The variable is not initialized by the calling page, but set by the tag handler.

For `AT_BEGIN` availability, the variable is available in the calling page from the start tag until the scope of any enclosing tag. If there's no enclosing tag, then the variable is available to the end of the page. For `AT_END` availability, the variable is available in the calling page after the end tag until the scope of any enclosing tag. If there's no enclosing tag, then the variable is available to the end of the page. For nested parameters, the variable is available in the calling page between the start tag and the end tag.

When you develop a tag handler you are responsible for creating and setting the object referenced by the variable into a context accessible from the page. You do this by using the `JspContext().setAttribute(name, value)` or `JspContext.setAttribute(name, value, scope)` method. You retrieve the page context with the `getJspContext` method of `SimpleTag`.

Typically, an attribute passed to the custom tag specifies the name of the variable and the value of the variable is dependent on another attribute. For example, the `iterator` tag retrieves the name of the variable from the `var` attribute and determines the value of the variable from a computation performed on the `group` attribute.

```
public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
    if (iterator == null)
        return;
    while (iterator.hasNext()) {
        getJspContext().setAttribute(var, iterator.next());
        getJspBody().invoke(null);
    }
}

public void setVar(String var) {
    this.var = var;
}

public void setGroup(Collection group) {
    this.group = group;
    if(group.size() > 0)
        iterator = group.iterator();
}
```

The scope that an variable can have is summarized in Table 14–13. The scope constrains the accessibility and lifetime of the object.

**Table 14–13** Scope of Objects

Name	Accessible From	Lifetime
page	Current page	Until the response has been sent back to the user or the request is passed to a new page
request	Current page and any included or forwarded pages	Until the response has been sent back to the user
session	Current request and any subsequent request from the same browser (subject to session lifetime)	The life of the user's session
application	Current and any future request in the same Web application	The life of the application



## TagExtraInfo Class

In Declaring Tag Variables for Tag Handlers (page 584) we discussed how to provide information about tag variable in the tag library descriptor. Here we describe another approach: defining a tag extra info class. You define a tag extra info class by extending the class `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.TagExtraInfo`. A `TagExtraInfo` must implement the `getVariableInfo` method to return an array of `VariableInfo` objects containing the following information:

- Variable name
- Variable class
- Whether the variable refers to a new object
- The availability of the variable

The Web container passes a parameter of type `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext.TagData` to the `getVariableInfo` method that contains attribute-value tuples for each of the tag's attributes. These attributes can be used to provide the `VariableInfo` object with an EL variable's name and class.

The following example demonstrates how to provide information about the variable created by the iterator tag in a tag extra info class. Since the name (`var`) and class (`type`) of the variable are passed in as tag attributes, they can be retrieved with the `data.getAttributeString` method and used to fill in the `VariableInfo` constructor. To allow the variable `var` to be used only within the tag body, the scope of the object is set to be `NESTED`.

```
package iterator;
public class IteratorTei extends TagExtraInfo {
    public VariableInfo[] getVariableInfo(TagData data) {
        String type = data.getAttributeString("type");
        if (type == null)
            type = "java.lang.Object";
        return new VariableInfo[] {
            new VariableInfo(data.getAttributeString("var"),
                type,
                true,
                VariableInfo.NESTED)
        };
    }
}
```

The fully qualified name of the tag extra info class defined for an EL variable must be declared in the TLD in the `tei-class` subelement of the `tag` element. Thus, the `tei-class` element for `IteratorTei` would be as follows:

```
<tei-class>
  iterator.IteratorTei
</tei-class>
```

## Cooperating Tags

Tags cooperate by sharing objects. JSP technology supports two styles of object sharing.

The first style requires that a shared object be named and stored in the page context (one of the implicit objects accessible to both JSP pages and tag handlers). To access objects created and named by another tag, a tag handler uses the `pageContext.getAttribute(name, scope)` method.

In the second style of object sharing, an object created by the enclosing tag handler of a group of nested tags is available to all inner tag handlers. This form of object sharing has the advantage that it uses a private namespace for the objects, thus reducing the potential for naming conflicts.

To access an object created by an enclosing tag, a tag handler must first obtain its enclosing tag with the static method `SimpleTagSupport.findAncestorWithClass(from, class)` or the `SimpleTagSupport.getParent` method. The former method should be used when a specific nesting of tag handlers cannot be guaranteed. Once the ancestor has been retrieved, a tag handler can access any statically or dynamically created objects. Statically created objects are members of the parent. Private objects can also be created dynamically. Such objects can be stored in a tag handler with the `setValue` method and retrieved with the `getValue` method.

The following example illustrates a tag handler that supports both the named and private object approaches to sharing objects. In the example, the handler for a query tag checks whether an attribute named `connectionId` has been set. If the `connectionId` attribute has been set, the handler retrieves the connection object from the page context. Otherwise, the tag handler first retrieves the tag handler for the enclosing tag, and then retrieves the connection object from that handler.

```

public class QueryTag extends SimpleTagSupport {
    public int doTag() throws JspException {
        String cid = getConnectionId();
        Connection connection;
        if (cid != null) {
            // there is a connection id, use it
            connection = (Connection)pageContext.
                getAttribute(cid);
        } else {
            ConnectionTag ancestorTag =
                (ConnectionTag)findAncestorWithClass(this,
                    ConnectionTag.class);
            if (ancestorTag == null) {
                throw new JspTagException("A query without
                    a connection attribute must be nested
                    within a connection tag.");
            }
            connection = ancestorTag.getConnection();
            ...
        }
    }
}

```

The query tag implemented by this tag handler could be used in either of the following ways:

```

<tt:connection cid="con01" ... >
    ...
</tt:connection>
<tt:query id="balances" connectionId="con01">
    SELECT account, balance FROM acct_table
    where customer_number = ?
    <tt:param value="${requestScope.custNumber}" />
</tt:query>

<tt:connection ... >
    <tt:query cid="balances">
        SELECT account, balance FROM acct_table
        where customer_number = ?
        <tt:param value="${requestScope.custNumber}" />
    </tt:query>
</tt:connection>

```

The TLD for the tag handler indicates that the `connectionId` attribute is optional with the following declaration:

```
<tag>
...
<attribute>
  <name>connectionId</name>
  <required>false</required>
</attribute>
</tag>
```

## Examples

The custom tags described in this section demonstrate solutions to two recurring problems in developing JSP applications: minimizing the amount of Java programming in JSP pages and ensuring a common look and feel across applications. In doing so, they illustrate many of the styles of tags discussed in the first part of the chapter.

### An Iteration Tag

Constructing page content that is dependent on dynamically generated data often requires the use of flow control scripting statements. By moving the flow control logic to tag handlers, flow control tags reduce the amount of scripting needed in JSP pages.

The `iterator` tag retrieves objects from a collection stored in a JavaBeans component and assigns them to an EL variable. This tag is a very simplified example of the `an iterator` tag. Web applications requiring such functionality should use the JSTL `forEach` tag, which is discussed in *Iterator Tags* (page 531). The body of the tag retrieves information from the variable. While elements remain in the collection, the `iterator` tag causes the body to be reevaluated.

### JSP Page

The `index.jsp` page invokes the `iterator` tag to iterate through a collection of department names. Each item in the collection is assigned to the `department-Name` variable.

```

<%@ taglib uri="/tlt" prefix="tlt" %>
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Departments</title>
  </head>
  <body bgcolor="white">
    <jsp:useBean id="myorg" class="myorg.Organization"/>
    <table border=2 cellpadding=3 cellspacing=3>
      <tr>
        <td><b>Departments</b></td>
      </tr>
      <tlt:iterator var="departmentName" type="java.lang.String"
        group="{myorg.departmentNames}">
        <tr>
          <td><a href="list.jsp?deptName=${departmentName}">
            ${departmentName}</a></td>
          </tr>
        </tlt:iterator>
      </table>
    </body>
  </html>

```

## Tag Handler

The tag handler passes the current element of the group back to the page in an EL variable called `var`, which is accessed using the expression language in the calling page. After the variable is set, the body is evaluated with the `invoke` method.

```

public void doTag() throws JspException, IOException {
    if (iterator == null)
        return;
    while (iterator.hasNext()) {
        getJspContext().setAttribute(var, iterator.next());
        getJspBody().invoke(null);
    }
}

public void setVar(String var) {
    this.var = var;
}

public void setGroup(Collection group) {
    this.group = group;
    if (group.size() > 0)
        iterator = group.iterator();
}

```

## A Template Tag Library

A template provides a way to separate the common elements that are part of each screen from the elements that change with each screen of an application. Putting all the common elements together into one file makes it easier to maintain and enforce a consistent look and feel in all the screens. It also makes development of individual screens easier because the designer can focus on portions of a screen that are specific to that screen while the template takes care of the common portions.

The template is a JSP page with placeholders for the parts that need to change with each screen. Each of these placeholders is referred to as a *parameter* of the template. For example, a simple template could include a title parameter for the top of the generated screen and a body parameter to refer to a JSP page for the custom content of the screen.

The template uses a set of nested tags—definition, screen, and parameter—to define a table of screen definitions and uses an insert tag to insert parameters from a screen definition into a specific application screen.

## JSP Pages

The template for the Duke's Bookstore example, `template.jsp`, is shown below. This page includes a JSP page that creates the screen definition and then uses the insert tag to insert parameters from the definition into the application screen.

```
<%@ taglib uri="/tutorial-template" prefix="tt" %>
<%@ page errorPage="/template/errorinclude.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="/template/screendefinitions.jsp" %>
<html>
<head>
<title>
<tt:insert definition="bookstore" parameter="title"/>
</title>
</head>
<body bgcolor="#FFFFFF">
  <tt:insert definition="bookstore" parameter="banner"/>
  <tt:insert definition="bookstore" parameter="body"/>
  <center><em>Copyright &copy; 2002 Sun Microsystems, Inc. </
em></center>
</body>
</html>
```

screendefinitions.jsp creates a screen definition based on a request attribute selectedScreen:

```
<tt:definition name="bookstore"
screen="${requestScope
['javax.servlet.forward.servlet_path']}">
  <tt:screen id="/bookstore">
    <tt:parameter name="title" value="Duke's Bookstore"
      direct="true"/>
    <tt:parameter name="banner" value="/template/banner.jsp"
      direct="false"/>
    <tt:parameter name="body" value="/bookstore.jsp"
      direct="false"/>
  </tt:screen>
  <tt:screen id="/bookcatalog">
    <tt:parameter name="title" direct="true">
      <jsp:attribute name="value" >
        <fmt:message key="TitleBookCatalog"/>
      </jsp:attribute>
    </tt:parameter>
    <tt:parameter name="banner" value="/template/banner.jsp"
      direct="false"/>
    <tt:parameter name="body" value="/bookcatalog.jsp"
      direct="false"/>
  </tt:screen>
  ...
</tt:definition>
```

The template is instantiated by the Dispatcher servlet. Dispatcher first gets the requested screen and stores it as an attribute of the request. This is necessary because when the request is forwarded to template.jsp, the request URL doesn't contain the original request (for example, /bookstore3/catalog) but instead reflects the path (/bookstore3/template.jsp) of the forwarded page. Then Dispatcher performs business logic based on the request URL, which updates model objects. Finally, the servlet dispatches the request to template.jsp:

```
public class Dispatcher extends HttpServlet {
  public void doGet(HttpServletRequest request,
    HttpServletResponse response) {
    String bookId = null;
    BookDetails book = null;
    String clear = null;
    BookDBAO bookDBAO =
      (BookDBAO)getContext().
        getAttribute("bookDBAO");
```

```

HttpSession session = request.getSession();
String selectedScreen = request.getServletPath();
ShoppingCart cart = (ShoppingCart)session.
    getAttribute("cart");
if (cart == null) {
    cart = new ShoppingCart();
    session.setAttribute("cart", cart);
}
request.setAttribute("selectedScreen",
    request.getServletPath());
if (selectedScreen.equals("/bookcatalog")) {
    bookId = request.getParameter("Add");
    if (!bookId.equals("")) {
        try {
            book = bookDBAO.getBookDetails(bookId);
            if ( book.getOnSale() ) {
                double sale = book.getPrice() * .85;
                Float salePrice = new Float(sale);
                book.setPrice(salePrice.floatValue());
            }
            cart.add(bookId, book);
        } catch (BookNotFoundException ex) {
            // not possible
        }
    }
} else if (selectedScreen.equals("/bookshowcart")) {
    bookId =request.getParameter("Remove");
    if (bookId != null) {
        cart.remove(bookId);
    }
    clear = request.getParameter("Clear");
    if (clear != null && clear.equals("clear")) {
        cart.clear();
    }
} else if (selectedScreen.equals("/bookreceipt")) {
    // Update the inventory
    try {
        bookDBAO.buyBooks(cart);
    } catch (OrderException ex) {
        request.setAttribute("selectedScreen",
            "/bookOrderError");
    }
}
try {
    request.
        getRequestDispatcher(
            "/template/template.jsp").
        forward(request, response);
}

```



```

        } catch(Exception ex) {
            ex.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public void doPost(HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response) {
        request.setAttribute("selectedScreen",
            request.getServletPath());
        try {
            request.
                getRequestDispatcher(
                    "/template/template.jsp").
                forward(request, response);
        } catch(Exception ex) {
            ex.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}

```

## Tag Handlers

The template tag library contains four tag handlers—`DefinitionTag`, `ScreenTag`, `ParameterTag`, and `InsertTag`—that demonstrate the use of cooperating tags. `DefinitionTag`, `ScreenTag`, and `ParameterTag` comprise a set of nested tag handlers that share private objects. `DefinitionTag` creates a public object named `bookstore` that is used by `InsertTag`.

In `doTag`, `DefinitionTag` creates a private object named `screens` that contains a hash table of screen definitions. A screen definition consists of a screen identifier and a set of parameters associated with the screen. These parameters are loaded when the body of the definition tag, which contains nested screen and parameter tags, is invoked. `DefinitionTag` creates a public object of class `Definition`, selects a screen definition from the `screens` object based on the URL passed in the request, and uses it to initialize a public `Definition` object.

```

public int doTag() {
    try {
        screens = new HashMap();
        getJspBody().invoke(null);
        Definition definition = new Definition();
        PageContext context = (PageContext) getJspContext();
        ArrayList params = (ArrayList) screens.get(screenId);
        Iterator ir = null;
        if (params != null) {
            ir = params.iterator();
        }
    }
}

```

```

        while (ir.hasNext())
            definition.setParam((Parameter)ir.next());
        // put the definition in the page context
        context.setAttribute(definitionName, definition,
            context.APPLICATION_SCOPE);
    }
}

```

The table of screen definitions is filled in by `ScreenTag` and `ParameterTag` from text provided as attributes to these tags. Table 14–14 shows the contents of the screen definitions hash table for the Duke’s Bookstore application.

**Table 14–14** Screen Definitions

Screen Id	Title	Banner	Body
/bookstore	Duke’s Bookstore	/banner.jsp	/bookstore.jsp
/bookcatalog	Book Catalog	/banner.jsp	/bookcatalog.jsp
/bookdetails	Book Description	/banner.jsp	/bookdetails.jsp
/bookshowcart	Shopping Cart	/banner.jsp	/bookshowcart.jsp
/bookcashier	Cashier	/banner.jsp	/bookcashier.jsp
/bookreceipt	Receipt	/banner.jsp	/bookreceipt.jsp

If the URL passed in the request is `/bookstore`, the Definition contains the items from the first row of Table 14–14:

**Table 14–15** Definition for URL `/bookstore`

Title	Banner	Body
Duke’s Bookstore	/banner.jsp	/bookstore.jsp

The parameters for the URL `/bookstore` are shown in Table 14–16. The parameters specify that the value of the `title` parameter, Duke’s Bookstore, should be

inserted directly into the output stream, but the values of banner and body should be dynamically included.

**Table 14–16** Parameters for the URL /bookstore

Parameter Name	Parameter Value	isDirect
title	Duke's Bookstore	true
banner	/banner.jsp	false
body	/bookstore.jsp	false

InsertTag inserts parameters of the screen definition into the response. In the doTag method, it retrieves the definition object from the page context and then inserts the parameter value. If the parameter is direct, it is directly inserted into the response; otherwise, the request is sent to the parameter, and the response is dynamically included into the overall response.

```
public void doTag() throws JspTagException {
    Definition definition = null;
    Parameter parameter = null;
    boolean directInclude = false;
    PageContext context = (PageContext)getJspContext();

    // get the definition from the page context
    definition = (Definition)context.getAttribute(
        definitionName, context.APPLICATION_SCOPE);
    // get the parameter
    if (parameterName != null && definition != null)
        parameter = (Parameter)
            definition.getParam(parameterName);

    if (parameter != null)
        directInclude = parameter.isDirect();

    try {
        // if parameter is direct, print to out
        if (directInclude && parameter != null)
            context.getOut().print(parameter.getValue());
        // if parameter is indirect,
        include results of dispatching to page
    } else {
```

```
        if ((parameter != null) &&
            (parameter.getValue() != null))
            context.include(parameter.getValue());
    }
} catch (Exception ex) {
    throw new JspTagException(ex.getMessage());
}
}
```

---

# Scripting in JSP Pages

*Stephanie Bodoff*

**J**SP scripting elements allow you to use Java programming language statements in your JSP pages. Scripting elements are typically used to create and access objects, define methods, and manage the flow of control. Many tasks that require the use of scripts can be eliminated by using custom tag libraries, in particular the JSP Standard Tag Library. Since one of the goals of JSP technology is to separate static template data from the code needed to dynamically generate content, very sparing use of JSP scripting is recommended. Nevertheless, there may be some circumstances that require its use.

There are three ways to create and use objects in scripting elements:

- Instance and class variables of the JSP page's servlet class are created in *declarations* and accessed in *scriptlets* and *expressions*.
- Local variables of the JSP page's servlet class are created and used in *scriptlets* and *expressions*.
- Attributes of scope objects (see Using Scope Objects, page 448) are created and used in *scriptlets* and *expressions*.

This chapter briefly describes the syntax and usage of JSP scripting elements.

## The Example JSP Pages

This chapter illustrates JSP scripting elements using a version of the `hello2` example introduced in Chapter 3—`webclient`—that accesses a Web service. To build, package, deploy, and run the `webclient` example:

1. Build and deploy the JAX-RPC Web service MyHelloService described in Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC (page 326).
2. In a terminal window, go to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/webclient/`.
3. Run `asant build`. This target copies the JSP pages to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/webclient/build/` directory and runs `wscompile` to generate the JAX-RPC client stubs.
4. Start `deploytool`.
5. Create a Web application called `webclient` by running the New Web Application Wizard. Select File→New→Web Application WAR.
6. New Web Application Wizard
  - a. Select the Create New Stand-Alone WAR Module radio button.
  - b. Click Browse and in the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/webclient/`.
  - c. In the File Name field, enter `webclient`.
  - d. Click Choose Module File.
  - e. In the WAR Display Name field enter `webclient`.
  - f. In the Context Root field, enter `/webclient`.
  - g. Click Edit to add the content files.
  - h. In the Edit Contents dialog, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/webclient/build/`. Select `duke.waving.gif`, `greeting.jsp`, `response.jsp`, and the `webclient` directory and click Add.
  - i. Click OK.
  - j. Click Next.
  - k. Select the JSP radio button.
  - l. Click Next.
  - m. Select `greeting.jsp` from the Servlet Class combo box.
  - n. Click Finish.
7. Add an alias to the greeting Web component.
  - a. Select the greeting Web component.
  - b. Select the Aliases tab.
  - c. Click Add to add a new mapping.
  - d. Type `/greeting` in the aliases list.

8. Select File→Save.
9. Deploy the WAR.
10. Open your browser to `http://localhost:1024/webclient/greeting`

## Using Scripting

JSP technology allows a container to support any scripting language that can call Java objects. If you wish to use a scripting language other than the default, `java`, you must specify it in the `language` attribute of the page directive at the beginning of a JSP page:

```
<%@ page language="scripting language" %>
```

Since scripting elements are converted to programming language statements in the JSP page's servlet class, you must import any classes and packages used by a JSP page. If the page language is `java`, you import a class or package with the `import` attribute of the page directive:

```
<%@ page import="fully_qualified_classname, packagename.*" %>
```

The `webclient` JSP page `response.jsp` imports the classes needed to access the JAX-RPC stub class and the Web service client classes with the following page directive:

```
<%@ page import="javax.xml.rpc.Stub,webclient.*" %>
```

## Disabling Scripting

By default, scripting in JSP pages is valid. Since scripting can make pages difficult to maintain, some JSP page authors or page authoring groups may want to follow a methodology where scripting elements are not allowed.

You can invalidate scripting for a group of JSP pages with `deploytool` by setting the value of the Scripting Invalid checkbox in the JSP Properties tab of a WAR. For information on how to define a group of JSP pages, see *Setting Properties for Groups of JSP Pages* (page 517). When scripting is invalid, scriptlets, scripting expressions, and declarations will produce a translation error if present

in any of the pages in the group. Table 15–1 summarizes the scripting settings and their meanings:

**Table 15–1** Scripting Settings

JSP Configuration	Scripting Encountered
unspecified	Valid
false	Valid
true	Translation Error

## Declarations

A *JSP declaration* is used to declare variables and methods in a page’s scripting language. The syntax for a declaration is as follows:

```
<%! scripting language declaration %>
```

When the scripting language is the Java programming language, variables and methods in JSP declarations become declarations in the JSP page’s servlet class.

## Initializing and Finalizing a JSP Page

You can customize the initialization process to allow the JSP page to read persistent configuration data, initialize resources, and perform any other one-time activities by overriding the `jspInit` method of the `JspPage` interface. You release resources using the `jspDestroy` method. The methods are defined using JSP declarations.

For example, an older version of the Duke’s Bookstore application retrieved the object that accesses the bookstore database from the context and stored a reference to the object in the variable `bookDBAO` in the `jspInit` method. The variable



definition and the initialization and finalization methods `jspInit` and `jspDestroy` were defined in a declaration:

```
<%!  
private BookDBAO bookDBAO;  
public void jspInit() {  
    bookDBAO =  
        (BookDBAO)getContext().getAttribute("bookDB");  
    if (bookDBAO == null)  
        System.out.println("Couldn't get database.");  
}  
%>
```

When the JSP page was removed from service, the `jspDestroy` method released the `BookDBAO` variable.

```
<%!  
public void jspDestroy() {  
    bookDBAO = null;  
}  
%>
```

## Scriptlets

A *JSP scriptlet* is used to contain any code fragment that is valid for the scripting language used in a page. The syntax for a scriptlet is as follows:

```
<%  
    scripting language statements  
%>
```

When the scripting language is set to `java`, a scriptlet is transformed into a Java programming language statement fragment and is inserted into the service method of the JSP page's servlet. A programming language variable created within a scriptlet is accessible from anywhere within the JSP page.

In the Web service version of the `hello2` application, `greeting.jsp` contains a scriptlet to retrieve the request parameter named `username` and test whether it is empty. If the `if` statement evaluates to true, the response page is included. Since

the `if` statement opens a block, the HTML markup would be followed by a scriptlet that closes the block.

```
<%
    String username = request.getParameter("username");
    if ( username != null && username.length() > 0 ) {
%>
    <%@include file="response.jsp" %>
<%
    }
%>
```

## Expressions

A *JSP expression* is used to insert the value of a scripting language expression, converted into a string, into the data stream returned to the client. When the scripting language is the Java programming language, an expression is transformed into a statement that converts the value of the expression into a `String` object and inserts it into the implicit out object.

The syntax for an expression is as follows:

```
<%= scripting language expression %>
```

Note that a semicolon is not allowed within a JSP expression, even if the same expression has a semicolon when you use it within a scriptlet.

In the Web service version of the `hello2` application, `response.jsp` contains the following scriptlet which creates a JAX-RPC stub, sets the endpoint on the stub, and then invokes the `sayHello` method on the stub, passing the user name retrieved from a request parameter:

```
<%
    String resp = null;
    try {
        Stub stub = (Stub)(new
            MyHelloService_Impl().getHelloIFPort());
        stub._setProperty(
            javax.xml.rpc.Stub.ENDPOINT_ADDRESS_PROPERTY,
            "http://localhost:1024/hello-jaxrpc/hello");
        HelloIF hello = (HelloIF)stub;
        resp =
            hello.sayHello(request.getParameter("username"));
    }
}
```

```
        } catch (Exception ex) {  
            resp = ex.toString();  
        }  
    %>
```

A scripting expression is then used to insert the value of `resp` into the output stream:

```
<h2><font color="black"><%= resp %>!/</font></h2>
```

## Programming Tags That Accept Scripting Elements

Tag that accept scripting elements in attribute values or the body cannot be programmed as simple tags; they must be implemented as classic tags. The following sections describe the TLD elements and JSP tag extension API specific to classic tag handlers. All other TLD elements are the same as for simple tags.

### TLD Elements

You specify the character of a classic tag's body content using the `body-content` element:

```
<body-content>empty | JSP | tagdependent</body-content>
```

You must declare the body content of tags that do not have a body as `empty`. For tags that have a body, there are two options. Body content containing custom and core tags, scripting elements, and HTML text is categorized as `JSP`. All other types of body content—for example, SQL statements passed to the `query` tag—would be labeled `tagdependent`.

### Tag Handlers

Classic tag handlers are written with the Java language and implement either the `Tag`, `IterationTag`, or `BodyTag` interface. Interfaces can be used to take an existing Java object and make it a tag handler. For newly created handlers, you can use the `TagSupport` and `BodyTagSupport` classes as base classes.

The classes and interfaces used to implement classic tag handlers are contained in the `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext` package. Classic tag handlers implement either the `Tag`, `IterationTag`, or `BodyTag` interface. Interfaces can be used to take an existing Java object and make it a tag handler. For newly created classic tag handlers, you can use the `TagSupport` and `BodyTagSupport` classes as base classes. These classes and interfaces are contained in the `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext` package.

Tag handler methods defined by the `Tag` and `BodyTag` interfaces are called by the JSP page's servlet at various points during the evaluation of the tag. When the start element of a custom tag is encountered, the JSP page's servlet calls methods to initialize the appropriate handler and then invokes the handler's `doStartTag` method. When the end element of a custom tag is encountered, the handler's `doEndTag` method is invoked for all but simple tags. Additional methods are invoked in between when a tag handler needs to manipulate the body of the tag. For further information, see *Tags with Bodies* (page 614). In order to provide a tag handler implementation, you must implement the methods, summarized in Table 15–2, that are invoked at various stages of processing the tag.

**Table 15–2** Tag Handler Methods

Tag Type	Interface	Methods
Basic	<code>Tag</code>	<code>doStartTag</code> , <code>doEndTag</code>
Attributes	<code>Tag</code>	<code>doStartTag</code> , <code>doEndTag</code> , <code>setAttribute1, ..., N</code> , <code>release</code>
Body	<code>Tag</code>	<code>doStartTag</code> , <code>doEndTag</code> , <code>release</code>
Body, iterative evaluation	<code>IterationTag</code>	<code>doStartTag</code> , <code>doAfterBody</code> , <code>doEndTag</code> , <code>release</code>
Body, manipulation	<code>BodyTag</code>	<code>doStartTag</code> , <code>doEndTag</code> , <code>release</code> , <code>doInitBody</code> , <code>doAfterBody</code>

A tag handler has access to an API that allows it to communicate with the JSP page. The entry points to the API are two objects: the JSP context (`javax.servlet.jsp.JspContext`) for simple tag handlers and the page context (`javax.servlet.jsp.PageContext`) for classic tag handlers. `JspContext` provides access to implicit objects. `PageContext` extends `JspContext` with HTTP-specific behavior. A tag handler can retrieve all the other implicit objects

(request, session, and application) accessible from a JSP page through these objects. In addition, implicit objects can have named attributes associated with them. Such attributes are accessed using `[set|get]Attribute` methods.

If the tag is nested, a tag handler also has access to the handler (called the *parent*) associated with the enclosing tag.

## How Is a Classic Tag Handler Invoked?

The `Tag` interface defines the basic protocol between a tag handler and a JSP page's servlet. It defines the life cycle and the methods to be invoked when the start and end tags are encountered.

The JSP page's servlet invokes the `setPageContext`, `setParent`, and attribute setting methods before calling `doStartTag`. The JSP page's servlet also guarantees that `release` will be invoked on the tag handler before the end of the page.

Here is a typical tag handler method invocation sequence:

```
ATag t = new ATag();
t.setPageContext(...);
t.setParent(...);
t.setAttribute1(value1);
t.setAttribute2(value2);
t.doStartTag();
t.doEndTag();
t.release();
```

The `BodyTag` interface extends `Tag` by defining additional methods that let a tag handler access its body. The interface provides three new methods:

- `setBodyContent`—Creates body content and adds to the tag handler
- `doInitBody`—Called before evaluation of the tag body
- `doAfterBody`—Called after evaluation of the tag body

A typical invocation sequence is:

```
t.doStartTag();
out = pageContext.pushBody();
t.setBodyContent(out);
// perform any initialization needed after body content is set
t.doInitBody();
t.doAfterBody();
// while doAfterBody returns EVAL_BODY_AGAIN we
// iterate body evaluation
```

```
...  
t.doAfterBody();  
t.doEndTag();  
out = pageContext.popBody();  
t.release();
```

## Tags with Bodies

A tag handler for a tag with a body is implemented differently depending on whether or not the tag handler needs to manipulate the body. A tag handler manipulates the body when it reads or modifies the contents of the body.

### Tag Handler Does Not Manipulate the Body

If the tag handler does not need to manipulate the body, the tag handler should implement the `Tag` interface. If the tag handler implements the `Tag` interface and the body of the tag needs to be evaluated, the `doStartTag` method needs to return `EVAL_BODY_INCLUDE`; otherwise it should return `SKIP_BODY`.

If a tag handler needs to iteratively evaluate the body, it should implement the `IterationTag` interface. The tag handler should return `EVAL_BODY_AGAIN` `doAfterBody` method if it determines that the body needs to be evaluated again.

### Tag Handler Manipulates the Body

If the tag handler needs to manipulate the body, the tag handler must implement `BodyTag` (or be derived from `BodyTagSupport`).

When a tag handler implements the `BodyTag` interface, it must implement the `doInitBody` and the `doAfterBody` methods. These methods manipulate body content passed to the tag handler by the JSP page's servlet.

Body content supports several methods to read and write its contents. A tag handler can use the body content's `getString` or `getReader` methods to extract information from the body, and the `writeOut(out)` method to write the body contents to an out stream. The writer supplied to the `writeOut` method is obtained using the tag handler's `getPreviousOut` method. This method is used to ensure that a tag handler's results are available to an enclosing tag handler.

If the body of the tag needs to be evaluated, the `doStartTag` method needs to return `EVAL_BODY_BUFFERED`; otherwise, it should return `SKIP_BODY`.

**doInitBody Method**

The `doInitBody` method is called after the body content is set but before it is evaluated. You generally use this method to perform any initialization that depends on the body content.

**doAfterBody Method**

The `doAfterBody` method is called *after* the body content is evaluated. `doAfterBody` must return an indication of whether to continue evaluating the body. Thus, if the body should be evaluated again, as would be the case if you were implementing an iteration tag, `doAfterBody` should return `EVAL_BODY_AGAIN`; otherwise, `doAfterBody` should return `SKIP_BODY`.

The following example reads the content of the body (which contains a SQL query) and passes it to an object that executes the query. Since the body does not need to be reevaluated, `doAfterBody` returns `SKIP_BODY`.

```
public class QueryTag extends BodyTagSupport {
    public int doAfterBody() throws JspTagException {
        BodyContent bc = getBodyContent();
        // get the bc as string
        String query = bc.getString();
        // clean up
        bc.clearBody();
        try {
            Statement stmt = connection.createStatement();
            result = stmt.executeQuery(query);
        } catch (SQLException e) {
            throw new JspTagException("QueryTag: " +
                e.getMessage());
        }
        return SKIP_BODY;
    }
}
```

**release Method**

A tag handler should reset its state and release any private resources in the `release` method.

## Cooperating Tags

Tags cooperate by sharing objects. JSP technology supports two styles of object sharing.

The first style requires that a shared object be named and stored in the page context (one of the implicit objects accessible to both JSP pages and tag handlers). To access objects created and named by another tag, a tag handler uses the `pageContext.getAttribute(name, scope)` method.

In the second style of object sharing, an object created by the enclosing tag handler of a group of nested tags is available to all inner tag handlers. This form of object sharing has the advantage that it uses a private namespace for the objects, thus reducing the potential for naming conflicts.

To access an object created by an enclosing tag, a tag handler must first obtain its enclosing tag with the static method `TagSupport.findAncestorWithClass(from, class)` or the `TagSupport.getParent` method. The former method should be used when a specific nesting of tag handlers cannot be guaranteed. Once the ancestor has been retrieved, a tag handler can access any statically or dynamically created objects. Statically created objects are members of the parent. Private objects can also be created dynamically. Such objects can be stored in a tag handler with the `setValue` method and retrieved with the `getValue` method.

The following example illustrates a tag handler that supports both the named and private object approaches to sharing objects. In the example, the handler for a query tag checks whether an attribute named `connectionId` has been set. If the `connection` attribute has been set, the handler retrieves the connection object from the page context. Otherwise, the tag handler first retrieves the tag handler for the enclosing tag, and then retrieves the connection object from that handler.

```
public class QueryTag extends BodyTagSupport {
    public int doStartTag() throws JspException {
        String cid = getConnectionId();
        Connection connection;
        if (cid != null) {
            // there is a connection id, use it
            connection = (Connection)pageContext.
                getAttribute(cid);
        } else {
            ConnectionTag ancestorTag =
                (ConnectionTag)findAncestorWithClass(this,
                    ConnectionTag.class);
            if (ancestorTag == null) {
                throw new JspTagException("A query without
                    a connection attribute must be nested
                    within a connection tag.");
            }
            connection = ancestorTag.getConnection();
        }
    }
}
```



```

    }
  }
}

```

The query tag implemented by this tag handler could be used in either of the following ways:

```

<tt:connection cid="con01" ... >
  ...
</tt:connection>
<tt:query id="balances" connectionId="con01">
  SELECT account, balance FROM acct_table
    where customer_number = ?
  <tt:param value="${requestScope.custNumber}" />
</tt:query>

<tt:connection ... >
  <tt:query cid="balances">
    SELECT account, balance FROM acct_table
      where customer_number = ?
    <tt:param value="${requestScope.custNumber}" />
  </tt:query>
</tt:connection>

```

The TLD for the tag handler indicates that the `connectionId` attribute is optional with the following declaration:

```

<tag>
  ...
  <attribute>
    <name>connectionId</name>
    <required>false</required>
  </attribute>
</tag>

```

## Tags That Define Variables

The mechanisms for defining EL variables in classic tags are similar to those described in Chapter 14. You must declare the variable in a `variable` element of the TLD or in a tag extra info class. You use `PageContext().setAttribute(name, value)` or `PageContext.setAttribute(name, value, scope)` methods in the tag handler to create or update an association between a name accessible in the page context and the object that

is the value of the variable. For classic tag handlers, Table 15–3 illustrates how the availability of a variable affects when you may want to set or update the variable’s value.

**Table 15–3** Scripting Variable Availability

Value	Availability	In Methods
NESTED	Between the start tag and the end tag	doStartTag, doInitBody, and doAfterBody.
AT_BEGIN	From the start tag until the end of the page	doStartTag, doInitBody, doAfterBody, and doEndTag.
AT_END	After the end tag until the end of the page	doEndTag

An EL variable defined by a custom tag can also be accessed in a scripting expression. For example, the Web service described in the previous section could be encapsulated in a custom tag that returns the response in an EL variable named by the `var` attribute and then `var` could be accessed in a scripting expression as follows:

```
<ws:hello var="response"
  name="<%=request.getParameter("username")%>" />
<h2><font color="black"><%= response %>!</font></h2>
```

Remember that in situations where scripting is not allowed:

- In a tag body where the body-content is declared as `scriptless`
- In a page where scripting is specified to be invalid

you wouldn’t be able to access the EL variable in a scriptlet or expression. Instead, you would have to use the JSP expression language to access the variable.

---

# Internationalizing and Localizing Web Applications

*Stephanie Bodoff*

*Internationalization* is the process of preparing an application to support more than one language and data format. *Localization* is the process of adapting an internationalized application to support a specific region or locale. Examples of locale-dependent information include messages and user interface labels, character sets and encoding, and date and currency formats. Although all client user interfaces should be internationalized and localized, it is particularly important for Web applications because of the global nature of the Web.

## Java Platform Localization Classes

In the Java 2 platform, `java.util.Locale` represents a specific geographical, political, or cultural region. The string representation of a locale consists of the international standard 2-character abbreviation for language and country and an optional variant, all separated by underscore `_` characters. Examples of locale strings include `fr` (French), `de_CH` (Swiss German), and `en_US_POSIX` (United States English on a POSIX-compliant platform).

Locale-sensitive data is stored in a `java.util.ResourceBundle`. A resource bundle contains key-value pairs, where the keys uniquely identify a locale-specific object in the bundle. A resource bundle can be backed by a text file (properties resource bundle) or a class (list resource bundle) containing the pairs. A resource bundle instance is constructed by appending a locale string representation to a base name.

For more details on internationalization and localization in the Java 2 platform, see

<http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/i18n/index.html>

In the Web technology chapters, the Duke's Bookstore example contains resource bundles with the base name `messages.BookstoreMessages` for the locales `en_US` and `es_ES`. See Internationalization Tags (page 538) for information on the JSTL i18n tags.

## Providing Localized Messages and Labels

Messages and labels should be tailored according to the conventions of a user's language and region. There are two approaches to providing localized messages and labels in a Web application:

- Provide a version of the JSP page in each of the target locales and have a controller servlet dispatch the request to the appropriate page depending on the requested locale. This approach is useful if large amounts of data on a page or an entire Web application need to be internationalized.
- Isolate any locale-sensitive data on a page into resource bundles, and access the data so that the corresponding translated message is fetched automatically and inserted into the page. Thus, instead of creating strings directly in your code, you create a resource bundle that contains translations and read the translations from that bundle using the corresponding key.

The Duke's Bookstore application follows the second approach. Here are a few lines from the default resource bundle `messages.BookstoreMessages.java`:

```
{ "TitleCashier", "Cashier"},
{ "TitleBookDescription", "Book Description"},
{ "Visitor", "You are visitor number " },
{ "What", "What We're Reading"},
{ "Talk", " talks about how Web components can transform the way
you develop applications for the Web. This is a must read for
any self respecting Web developer!" },
{ "Start", "Start Shopping"},
```

To get the correct strings for a given user, a Web component retrieves the locale (set by a browser language preference) from the request using the `getLocale` method, opens the resource bundle for that locale, and then saves the bundle as a session attribute (see *Associating Attributes with a Session*, page 470):

```
ResourceBundle messages = (ResourceBundle)session.
    getAttribute("messages");
if (messages == null) {
    Locale locale=request.getLocale();
    messages = ResourceBundle.
        getBundle("messages.BookstoreMessages", locale);
    session.setAttribute("messages", messages);
}
```

A Web component retrieves the resource bundle from the session:

```
ResourceBundle messages =
    (ResourceBundle)session.getAttribute("messages");
```

and looks up the string associated with the key `TitleCashier` as follows:

```
messages.getString("TitleCashier");
```

The JSP versions of the Duke's Bookstore application uses the `fmt:message` tag to provide localized strings for introductory messages, HTML link text, button labels, and error messages. For more information on the JSTL messaging tags, see *Messaging Tags* (page 540).

# Date and Number Formatting

Java programs use the `DateFormat.getDateInstance(int, locale)` to parse and format dates in a locale-sensitive manner. Java programs use the `NumberFormat.getXXXInstance(locale)` method, where *XXX* can be `Currency`, `Number`, or `Percent`, to parse and format numerical values in a locale-sensitive manner. The servlet version of Duke's Bookstore uses the currency version of this method to format book prices.

JSTL applications use the `fmt:formatDate` and `fmt:parseDate` tags to handle localized dates, and `fmt:formatNumber` and `fmt:parseNumber` tags to handle localized numbers, including currency values. For more information on the JSTL formatting tags, see *Formatting Tags* (page 540). The JSTL version of Duke's bookstore uses the `fmt:formatNumber` tag to format book prices and the `fmt:formatDate` tag to format delivery dates.

# Character Sets and Encodings

## Character Sets

A *character set* is a set of textual and graphic symbols, each of which is mapped to a set of nonnegative integers.

The first character set used in computing was ASCII. It is limited in that it can only represent American English. ASCII contains upper- and lower-case Latin alphabets, numerals, punctuation, a set of control codes, and a few miscellaneous symbols.

Unicode defines a standardized, universal character set that can be extended to accommodate additions. Unicode characters may be represented as escape sequences, using the notation `\uXXXX`, where *XXXX* is the character's 16-bit representation in hexadecimal when the Java program source file encoding doesn't support Unicode. For example, the Spanish version of the Duke's Bookstore message file uses Unicode for non-ASCII characters:

```
{"TitleCashier", "Cajero"},  
{"TitleBookDescription", "Descripci" + "\u00f3" + "n del  
Libro"},  
{"Visitor", "Es visitanten" + "\u00fa" + "mero "},  
{"What", "Qu" + "\u00e9" + " libros leemos"},
```

```
{"Talk", " describe como componentes de software de web pueden  
transformar la manera en que desrrollamos aplicaciones para el  
web. Este libro es obligatorio para cualquier programador de  
respeto!"},  
{"Start", "Empezar a Comprar"}},
```

## Character Encoding

A *character encoding* maps a character set to units of a specific width, and defines byte serialization and ordering rules. Many character sets have more than one encoding. For example, Java programs can represent Japanese character sets using the EUC-JP or Shift-JIS encodings, among others. Each encoding has rules for representing and serializing a character set.

The ISO 8859 series defines thirteen character encodings that can represent texts in dozens of languages. Each ISO 8859 character encoding may have up to 256 characters. ISO 8859-1 (Latin-1) comprises the ASCII character set, characters with diacritics (accents, diaereses, cedillas, circumflexes, and so on), and additional symbols.

UTF-8 (Unicode Transformation Format, 8 bit form) is a variable-width character encoding that encodes 16-bit Unicode characters as one to four bytes. A byte in UTF-8 is equivalent to 7-bit ASCII if its high-order bit is zero; otherwise, the character comprises a variable number of bytes.

UTF-8 is compatible with the majority of existing Web content and provides access to the Unicode character set. Current versions of browsers and email clients support UTF-8. In addition, many new Web standards specify UTF-8 as their character encoding. For example, UTF-8 is one of the two required encodings for XML documents (the other is UTF-16).

See Appendix A for more information on character encodings in the Java 2 platform.

Web components usually use `PrintWriter` to produce responses, which automatically encodes using ISO 8859-1. Servlets may also output binary data with `OutputStream` classes, which perform no encoding. An application that uses a character set that cannot use the default encoding must explicitly set a different encoding.

For Web components, three encodings must be considered:

- Request
- Page (JSP pages)
- Response

## Request Encoding

The *request encoding* is the character encoding in which parameters in an incoming request are interpreted. Currently, many browsers do not send a request encoding qualifier with the `Content-Type` header. In such cases, a Web container will use the default encoding—ISO-8859-1—to parse request data.

If the client hasn't set character encoding and the request data is encoded with a different encoding than the default, the data won't be interpreted correctly. To remedy this situation, you can use the `ServletRequest.setCharacterEncoding(String enc)` method to override the character encoding supplied by the container. This method must be called prior to reading request parameters or reading input using `getReader`. To control the request encoding from JSP pages, you can use the JSTL `fmt:requestEncoding` tag.

This method must be called prior to parsing any request parameters or reading any input from the request. Calling this method once data has been read will not affect the encoding.

## Page Encoding

For JSP pages, the *page encoding* is the character encoding in which the file is encoded. The page encoding is determined from the following sources:

- The Page Encoding value of a JSP property group (see Setting Properties for Groups of JSP Pages, page 517) whose URL pattern matches the page.
- The `pageEncoding` attribute of the page directive of the page. It is a translation-time error to name different encodings in the `pageEncoding` attribute of the page directive of a JSP page and in a JSP property group.
- The `CHARSET` value of the `contentType` attribute of the page directive.

If none of the above is provided, ISO-8859-1 is used as the default page encoding.

The `pageEncoding` and `contentType` attributes determine the page character encoding of only the file that physically contains the page directive. A Web con-



tainer raises a translation-time error if an unsupported page encoding is specified.

## Response Encoding

The *response encoding* is the character encoding of the textual response generated from a Web component. The response encoding must be set appropriately so that the characters are rendered correctly for a given locale. A Web container sets an initial response encoding for a JSP page from the following sources:

- The CHARSET value of the contentType attribute of the page directive.
- The encoding specified by the pageEncoding attribute of the page directive
- The Page Encoding value of a JSP property group whose URL pattern matches the page.

If none of the above is provided, ISO-8859-1 is used as the default response encoding.

The `setCharacterEncoding`, `setContentType`, and `setLocale` methods can be called repeatedly to change the character encoding. Calls made after the servlet response's `getWriter` method has been called or after the response is committed have no effect on the character encoding. Data is sent to the response stream on buffer flushes for buffered pages, or on encountering the first content on unbuffered pages. Calls to `setContentType` set the character encoding only if the given content type string provides a value for the charset attribute. Calls to `setLocale` set the character encoding only if neither `setCharacterEncoding` nor `setContentType` has set the character encoding before. To control the response encoding from JSP pages, you can use the JSTL `fmt.setLocale` tag.

The first application in Chapter 12 allows a user to choose an English string representation of a locale from all the locales available to the Java 2 platform and then outputs a date localized for that locale. To ensure that the characters in the date can be rendered correctly for a wide variety of character sets, the JSP page that generates the date sets the response encoding to UTF-8 with the following directive:

```
<%@ page contentType="text/html; charset=UTF-8" %>
```

## Further Information

For a detailed discussion on internationalizing Web applications, see the Java BluePrints for the Enterprise:

<http://java.sun.com/blueprints/enterprise>

---

# New Features for EJB 2.1 Technology

*Ian Evans, Dale Green*

Beta Note: This chapter is intended for advanced developers who are already familiar with EJB technology. To learn the basics about EJB technology, see the 1.3 version of The J2EE Tutorial.

## Overview

The J2EE 1.4 Application Server includes an implementation of the EJB 2.1 specifications. The new features for 2.1 include the following:

- Web service endpoints implemented by stateless session beans
- Timer service
- Message-driven bean generalization with corresponding support in J2EE Connector 1.5
- EJB QL enhancements

The following sections provide examples that illustrate the first two items on the list. For information about the last two items, see the EJB 2.1 specifications.

## Web Service Endpoints

A Web service client can access J2EE applications in two ways. First, the client can access a Web service created with JAX-RPC. Behind the scenes, JAX-RPC uses a servlet to implement the Web service. (For more information on JAX-RPC, see the chapter, Building Web Services With JAX-RPC, page 323.) Second, a Web service client can access a stateless session bean through the service endpoint interface of the bean. Other types of enterprise beans cannot be accessed by Web service clients.

Provided that it uses the correct protocols (SOAP, HTTP, WSDL), any Web service client can access a stateless session bean, whether or not the client is written in the Java programming language. The client doesn't even "know" what technology implements the service—stateless session bean, JAX-RPC, or some other technology. Because of this flexibility, you can integrate J2EE applications with Web services.

## Web Service Example: HelloServiceEJB

The files for this example are in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/helloservice/` directory.

HelloServiceEJB is a stateless session bean that implements a single method, `sayHello`. This method matches the `sayHello` invoked by the clients described in Creating Web Service Clients with JAX-RPC (page 332). Later in this section, you'll test the HelloServiceEJB by running one of these JAX-RPC clients.

## Source Code for HelloServiceEJB

The source files for this example, `HelloService.java` and `HelloServiceBean.java`, are located in the `helloservice/src/` subdirectory.

## Web Service Endpoint Interface

HelloIF is the bean's Web service endpoint interface. It provides the client's view of the Web service, hiding the stateless session bean from the client. A Web service endpoint interface must conform to the rules of a JAX-RPC service endpoint interface. For a summary of those rules, see Coding the Service Endpoint

Interface and Implementation Class (page 327). Here is the source code for the HelloIF interface:

```
package helloservice;
import java.rmi.RemoteException;
import java.rmi.Remote;

public interface HelloIF extends Remote {

    public String sayHello(String name) throws RemoteException;
}
```

## Stateless Session Bean Implementation Class

The HelloServiceBean class implements the sayHello method defined by the HelloService interface. The interface decouples the implementation class from the type of client access. For example, if you added remote and home interfaces to HelloServiceEJB, the methods of the HelloServiceBean class could also be accessed by remote clients that are J2EE components. No changes to the HelloServiceBean class would be necessary. The source code for the HelloServiceBean class follows:

```
package helloservice;
import java.rmi.RemoteException;
import javax.ejb.SessionBean;
import javax.ejb.SessionContext;

public class HelloServiceBean implements SessionBean {

    public String sayHello(String name) {

        return "Hello " + name + "from HelloServiceEJB";
    }

    public HelloServiceBean() {}
    public void ejbCreate() {}
    public void ejbRemove() {}
    public void ejbActivate() {}
    public void ejbPassivate() {}
    public void setSessionContext(SessionContext sc) {}
}
```

## Building HelloServiceEJB

In a terminal window, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/hello-service/` directory. To build HelloServiceEJB, type the following command:

```
asant build-service
```

This command performs the following tasks:

- Compiles the bean's source code files
- Creates the `MyHelloService.wsd1` file by running the following `wscompile` command:

```
wscompile -define -d build/output -nd build -classpath build -  
mapping build/mapping.xml config-interface.xml
```

The `wscompile` tool writes the `MyHelloService.wsd1` file to the `hello-service/build/` subdirectory. For more information about the `wscompile` tool, see [Building Web Services With JAX-RPC](#) (page 323).

Use `deploytool` to package and deploy this example.

## Creating the Application

In this section, you'll create a J2EE application named `HelloService`, storing it in the file `HelloService.ear`.

1. In `deploytool`, select `File→New→Application EAR`.
2. Click `Browse`.
3. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/hello-service/`.
4. In the `File Name` field, enter `HelloService.ear`.
5. Click `New Application`.
6. Click `OK`.
7. Verify that the `HelloService.ear` file resides in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/hello-service/`.

## Packaging the Enterprise Bean

Start the Edit Enterprise Bean wizard by selecting File→New→Enterprise Java-Bean JAR. The wizard displays the following dialog boxes.

1. Introduction dialog box
  - a. Read the explanatory text for an overview of the wizard's features.
  - b. Click Next.
2. EJB JAR dialog box
  - a. Select the button labelled Create New JAR Module in Application.
  - b. In the combo box below this button, select HelloService.
  - c. In the JAR Display Name field, enter HelloServiceJAR.
  - d. Click Edit.
  - e. In the tree under Available Files, locate the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/helloservice/build/` directory.
  - f. In the Available Files tree select `mapping.xml` and `MyHelloService.wsdl`.
  - g. Select these classes from the `.../helloservice/build/helloservice/` directory: `HelloIF.class` and `HelloServiceBean.class`.
  - h. Click Add.
  - i. Click OK.
  - j. Click Next.
3. General dialog box
  - a. Under Bean Type, select the Session button.
  - b. Select the Stateless button.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Class combo box, select `helloservice>HelloServiceBean`.
  - d. In the Enterprise Bean Name field, enter `HelloServiceEJB`.
  - e. Click Next.
4. In the Configuration Options dialog box, click Next. The wizard will automatically select the Yes button for Expose Bean as Web Service Endpoint.
5. In the Choose Service dialog box:
  - a. Select `META-INF/wsdl/MyHelloService.wsdl` in the WSDL File combo box.

- b. Select `mapping.xml` from the Mapping File combo box.
  - c. Make sure `MyHelloService` is in the Service Name and Service Display Name edit boxes.
6. In the Web Service Endpoint dialog box:
  - a. Select `helloservice.HelloIF` in the Service Endpoint Interface combo box.
  - b. In the WSDL Port section, set the Namespace to `urn:Foo`, and the Local Part to `HelloIFPort`.
  - c. In the Deployment Settings section, set the Endpoing Address URI to `hello-ejb/hello`.
  - d. Click Next.
7. In the Review Settings dialog box:
  - a. Optional: Examine the EJB deployment descriptor.
  - b. Click Finish.

## Deploying the Enterprise Application

Now that the J2EE application contains the enterprise bean, it is ready for deployment.

1. Select the `HelloService` application.
2. Select `Tools→Deploy`.
3. Under Connection Settings, enter the user name and password for the J2EE application server.
4. Click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box click Close when the deployment completes.
6. Verify the deployment.
  - a. In the tree, expand the Servers node and select the host that is running the J2EE application server.
  - b. In the Deployed Objects table, make sure that `HelloService` is listed and its status is Running.



## Building the Web Service Client

In the next section, to test the Web service implemented by `HelloServiceEJB`, you will run the JAX-RPC client described in Building Web Services With JAX-RPC (page 323).

To build the static stub client, perform these steps:

1. Go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/hello-service/` directory and type:

```
asant build
```

2. Go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/staticstub/` directory and type:

```
asant build
```

3. Edit the `build.properties` file and change the `endpoint.address` property to

```
http://localhost:1024/hello-ejb/hello
```

For details about creating the JAX-RPC service and client, see these sections: Creating a Web Service with JAX-RPC (page 326) and Static Stub Client Example (page 332).

## Running the Web Service Client

Verify that the `HelloServiceEJB` has been deployed by clicking on the target application server in the Servers tree in `deploytool`. In the Deployed Objects tree you should see `HelloService`.

To run the client, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jaxrpc/staticstub/` directory and enter:

```
asant run
```

The client should display the following line:

```
Hello Duke! (from HelloServiceEJB)
```

## Timer Service

Applications that model business work-flows often rely on timed notifications. The timer service of the EJB container enables you to schedule timed notifications for all types of enterprise beans except for stateful session beans. You can schedule a timed notification to occur at a specific time, after a duration of time, or at timed intervals. For example, you could set timers to go off at 10:30 AM on May 23, in 30 days, or every 12 hours.

When a timer expires (goes off), the EJB container calls the `ejbTimeout` method of the bean's implementation class. The `ejbTimeout` method contains the business logic that handles the timed event. Because `ejbTimeout` is defined by the `javax.ejb.TimerObject` interface, the bean class must implement `TimerObject`.

There are four interfaces in the `javax.ejb` package that are related to timers:

- `TimerObject`
- `Timer`
- `TimerHandle`
- `TimerService`

## Creating Timers

To create a timer, the bean invokes one of the `createTimer` methods of the `TimerService` interface. (For details on the method signatures, see the `TimerService` API documentation.) When the bean invokes `createTimer`, the timer service begins to count down the timer duration.

The bean described in The `TimerSessionEJB` Example (page 636) creates a timer as follows:

```
TimerService timerService = context.getTimerService();
Timer timer = timerService.createTimer(intervalDuration,
    "created timer");
```

In the `TimerSessionEJB` example, `createTimer` is invoked in a business method, which is called by a client. An entity bean can also create a timer in a business method. If you want to create a timer for each instance of an entity bean, you could code the `createTimer` call in the bean's `ejbCreate` method.

Timers are persistent. If the server is shut down (or even crashes), timers are saved and will become active again when the server is restarted. If a timer expires while the server is down, the container will call `ejbTimeout` when the server is restarted.

A timer for an entity bean is associated with the bean's identity—that is, with a particular instance of the bean. If an entity bean sets a timer in `ejbCreate`, for example, each bean instance will have its own timer. In contrast, stateless session and message-driven beans do not have unique timers for each instance.

The `Date` and `long` parameters of the `createTimer` methods represent time with the resolution of milliseconds. However, because the timer service is not intended for real-time applications, a callback to `ejbTimeout` might not occur with millisecond precision. The timer service is for business applications, which typically measure time in hours, days, or longer durations.

## Cancelling and Saving Timers

Timers may cancelled by the following events:

- When a single-event timer expires, the EJB container calls `ejbTimeout` and then cancels the timer.
- When an entity bean instance is removed, the container cancels the timers associated with the instance.
- When the bean invokes the `cancel` method of the `Timer` interface, the container cancels the timer.

If a method is invoked on a cancelled timer, the container throws the `javax.ejb.NoSuchObjectLocalException`.

To save a `Timer` object for future reference, invoke its `getHandle` method and store the `TimerHandle` object in a database. (A `TimerHandle` object is serializable.) To re-instantiate the `Timer` object, retrieve the handle from the database and invoke `getTimer` on the handle. A `TimerHandle` object cannot be passed as an argument of a method defined in a remote or Web service interface. In other words, remote clients and Web service clients cannot access a bean's `TimerHandle` object. Local clients, however, do not have this restriction.

## Getting Timer Information

In addition to defining the `cancel` and `getHandle` methods, the `Timer` interface also defines methods for obtaining information about timers:

```
public long getTimeRemaining();  
public java.util.Date getNextTimeout();  
public java.io.Serializable getInfo();
```

The `getInfo` method returns the object that was the last parameter of the `createTimer` invocation. For example, in the `createTimer` code snippet of the preceding section, this information parameter is a `String` object with the value, `created timer`.

To retrieve all of a bean's active timers, call the `getTimers` method of the `TimerService` interface. The `getTimers` method returns a collection of `Timer` objects.

## Transactions and Timers

An enterprise bean usually creates a timer within a transaction. If this transaction is rolled back, the timer creation is also rolled back. Similarly, if a bean cancels a timer within a transaction that gets rolled back, the timer cancellation is rolled back. In this case, the timer's duration is reset as if the cancellation had never occurred.

In beans with container-managed transactions, the `ejbTimeout` method usually has the `RequiresNew` transaction attribute. With this attribute, the EJB container begins the new transaction before calling `ejbTimeout`. If the transaction is rolled back, the container will try to call `ejbTimeout` at least one more time.

## The TimerSessionEJB Example

The source code for this example is in the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/src/` directory.

`TimerSessionEJB` is a stateless session bean that shows how to set a timer. The implementation class for `TimerSessionEJB` is called `TimerSessionBean`. In the source code listing of `TimerSessionBean` that follows, note the `myCreateTimer` and `ejbTimeout` methods. Because it's a business method, `myCreateTimer` is defined in the bean's remote interface (`TimerSession`) and may be invoked by

the client. In this example, the client invokes `myCreateTimer` with an interval duration of 30000 milliseconds. The `myCreateTimer` method fetches a `TimerService` object from the bean's `SessionContext`. Then it creates a new timer by invoking the `createTimer` method of `TimerService`. Now that the timer is set, the EJB container will invoke the `ejbTimer` method of `TimerSessionBean` when the timer expires—in about 30 seconds. Here's the source code for the `TimerSessionBean` class:

```
import javax.ejb.*;

public class TimerSessionBean implements SessionBean,
    TimedObject {

    private SessionContext context;

    public TimerHandle myCreateTimer(long intervalDuration) {

        System.out.println
            ("TimerSessionBean: start createTimer ");
        TimerService timerService =
            context.getTimerService();
        Timer timer =
            timerService.createTimer(intervalDuration,
                "created timer");
    }

    public void ejbTimeout(Timer timer) {

        System.out.println("TimerSessionBean: ejbTimeout ");
    }

    public void setSessionContext(SessionContext sc) {
        System.out.println("TimerSessionBean:
            setSessionContext");
        context = sc;
    }

    public void ejbCreate() {
        System.out.println("TimerSessionBean: ejbCreate");
    }

    public TimerSessionBean() {}
    public void ejbRemove() {}
    public void ejbActivate() {}
    public void ejbPassivate() {}

}
```

---

**Note:** To run the TimerSessionEJB example, you must start the PointBase server before you start the J2EE application server. If you don't start the PointBase server, or if you start it after the J2EE application server, then you will get a `java.rmi.RemoteException` with the message, EJB Timer service not available.

---

## Building TimerSessionEJB

In a terminal window, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/` directory. To build TimerSessionEJB, type the following command:

```
asant build
```

Use `deploytool` to package and deploy this example.

## Creating the Application

In this section, you'll create a J2EE application named `TimerSession`, storing it in the file `TimerSession.ear`.

1. In `deploytool`, select `File→New→Application EAR`.
2. Click `Browse`.
3. In the file chooser, navigate to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/`.
4. In the `File Name` field, enter `TimerSession.ear`.
5. Click `New Application`.
6. Click `OK`.
7. Verify that the `TimerSession.ear` file resides in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/`.

## Packaging the Enterprise Bean

Start the `Edit Enterprise Bean` wizard by selecting `File→New→Enterprise Java-Bean JAR`. The wizard displays the following dialog boxes.

1. In the `Introduction` dialog box:
  - a. Read the explanatory text for an overview of the wizard's features.

- b. Click Next.
- 2. In the EJB JAR dialog box:
  - a. Select the button labelled Create New JAR Module in Application.
  - b. In the combo box below this button, select `TimerSession`.
  - c. In the JAR Display Name field, enter `TimerSessionJAR`.
  - d. Click Edit.
  - e. In the tree under Available Files, locate the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/build/` directory.
  - f. Select these classes: `TimerSession.class`, `TimerSessionBean.class`, and `TimerSessionHome.class`.
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
- 3. General dialog box
  - a. Under Bean Type, select the Session button.
  - b. Select the Stateless button.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Class combo box, select `TimerSessionBean`.
  - d. In the Enterprise Bean Name field, enter `TimerSessionEJB`.
  - e. In the Remote Interfaces section, select `TimerSessionHome` for the Remote Home Interface and `TimerSession` for the Remote Interface.
- 4. In the Configure Options dialog box:
  - a. Select No for Expose Bean as Web Service Endpoint.
  - b. Click Next.
- 5. In the Review Settings dialog box:
  - a. Optional: Examine the EJB deployment descriptor.
  - b. Click Finish.

## Compiling the Application Client

The application client files are compiled at the same time as the enterprise bean files.

## Packaging the Application Client

To package an application client component, you run the New Application Client wizard of the `deploytool`. During this process the wizard performs the following tasks.

- Creates the application client's deployment descriptor
- Puts the deployment descriptor and client files into a JAR file
- Adds the JAR file to the application's `TimerSession.ear` file

To start the New Application Client wizard, select `File→New→Application Client JAR`. The wizard displays the following dialog boxes.

1. Introduction dialog box
  - a. Read the explanatory text for an overview of the wizard's features.
  - b. Click Next.
2. JAR File Contents dialog box
  - a. Select the button labelled `Create New AppClient Module in Application`.
  - b. In the combo box below this button, select `TimerSession`.
  - c. In the `AppClient Display Name` field, enter `TimerSessionClient`.
  - d. Click Edit.
  - e. In the tree under `Available Files`, locate the `<INSTALL>/examples/ejb/timersession/build` directory.
  - f. Select the `TimerSessionClient.class` file
  - g. Click Add.
  - h. Click OK.
  - i. Click Next.
3. General dialog box
  - a. In the `Main Class` combo box, select `TimerSessionClient`.
  - b. Click Next.
  - c. Click Finish.



## Specifying the Application Client's Enterprise Bean Reference

When it invokes the lookup method, the `TimerSessionClient` refers to the home of an enterprise bean:

```
Object objref =  
    initial.lookup("java:comp/env/ejb/SimpleTimerSession");
```

You specify this reference as follows.

1. In the tree, select `TimerSessionClient`.
2. Select the EJB Refs tab.
3. Click Add.
4. In the Coded Name field, enter `ejb/SimpleTimerSession`.
5. In the EJB Type field, select Session.
6. In the Interfaces field, select Remote.
7. In the Home Interface field, enter `timersession.TimerSessionHome`.
8. In the Local/Remote Interface field, enter `timersession.TimerSession`.
9. In the Enterprise Bean Name field, enter `TimerSessionEJB`.
10. Click OK.

## Mapping the Enterprise Bean Reference

To map the enterprise bean references in the clients to the JNDI name of the bean, follow these steps.

1. In the tree, select `TimerSession`.
2. Select the JNDI Names tab.
3. In the Application table, note that the JNDI name for the enterprise bean is `TimerSessionEJB`.
4. In the References table enter `TimerSessionEJB` in the JNDI Name column for each row.

## Deploying the Enterprise Application

Now that the J2EE application contains the components, it is ready for deployment.

1. Select the TimerSession application.
2. Select Tools→Deploy.
3. Under Connection Settings, enter the user name and password for the J2EE application server.
4. Click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box click Close when the deployment completes.
6. Verify the deployment.
  - a. In the tree, expand the Servers node and select the host that is running the J2EE server.
  - b. In the Deployed Objects table, make sure that TimerSession is listed and its status is Running.

## Getting the Application Client Stub Files

You need to get the application client stub files before you can run the client. To get the client stub files, do the following:

1. In deploytool expand the Servers node and select the host that is running the J2EE server.
2. In the Deployed Objects table, select TimerSession.
3. Click the Client JAR button.
4. In the Directory Input dialog box, enter the fully qualified path to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/`.
5. Click Select.
6. Click OK.
7. Click OK.
8. Verify the TimerSessionClient.jar file is located in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/`.

## Running the J2EE Application Client

To run the J2EE application client, perform the following steps.

1. In a terminal window, go to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/ejb/timersession/` directory.
2. Type the following command:

```
appclient -client TimerSessionClient.jar
```

3. In the terminal window, the client displays these lines:

```
Creating a timer with an interval duration of 30000 ms.
```

The output from the timer is sent to the `server.log` located in the `<INSTALL>/domains/<domain name>/server/logs/` directory. After about 30 seconds, open up `server.log` in a text editor and you will see the following lines:

```
TimerSessionBean: setSessionContext
TimerSessionBean: ejbCreate
TimerSessionBean: start createTimer
TimerSessionBean: ejbTimeout
```

---

**Note:** You must have started the PointBase server before you started the J2EE application server in order to run this example. If you get a `java.rmi.RemoteException` with the message `EJB Timer service not available`, the PointBase server is either not running, or was not started before the J2EE application server.

---



---

# Security

*Eric Jendrock and Debbie Bode Carson*

**T**HE J2EE application programming model insulates developers from mechanism-specific implementation details of application security. The J2EE platform provides this insulation in a way that enhances the portability of applications, allowing them to be deployed in diverse security environments.

Some of the material in this chapter assumes that you have an understanding of basic security concepts. To learn more about these concepts, we highly recommend that you explore the Security trail in *The Java™ Tutorial* (see <http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/security1.2/index.html>) before you begin this chapter.

## Overview

The J2EE platform defines declarative contracts between those who develop and assemble application components and those who configure applications in operational environments. In the context of application security, application providers are required to declare the security requirements of their applications in such a way that these requirements can be satisfied during application configuration. The *declarative security* mechanisms used in an application are expressed in a declarative syntax in a document called a *deployment descriptor*. An application deployer then employs container-specific tools to map the application requirements that are in a deployment descriptor to security mechanisms that are implemented by J2EE servers or Web containers.

*Programmatic security* refers to security decisions that are made by security-aware applications. Programmatic security is useful when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application. For example, an application might make authorization decisions based on the time of day, the parameters of a call, or the internal state of an enterprise bean or Web component. Another application might restrict access based on user information stored in a database.

J2EE and Web Services applications are made up of components that can be deployed into different containers. These components are used to build a multi-tier enterprise application. The goal of the J2EE security architecture is to achieve end-to-end security by securing each tier.

The tiers can contain both protected and unprotected resources. Often, you need to protect resources to ensure that only authorized users have access. *Authorization* provides controlled access to protected resources. Authorization is based on identification and authentication. *Identification* is a process that enables recognition of an entity by a system, and *authentication* is a process that verifies the identity of a user, device, or other entity in a computer system, usually as a prerequisite to allowing access to resources in a system.

Authorization and authentication are not required to access unprotected resources. Accessing a resource without authentication is referred to as *unauthenticated* or *anonymous* access.

## Users, Realms, and Groups

A J2EE user is similar to an operating system user. Typically, both types of users represent people. However, these two types of users are not the same. The J2EE server authentication service has no knowledge of the user name and password you provide when you log on to the operating system. The J2EE server authentication service is not connected to the security mechanism of the operating system. The two security services manage users that belong to different realms.

The J2EE server's authentication service includes the following components:

- *Realm* - For a Web application, a realm is a complete database of *roles*, *users*, and *groups* that identify valid users of a Web application (or a set of Web applications). For a J2EE application, a realm is a collection of users that are controlled by the same authentication policy.
- *User* - An individual (or application program) identity that has been authenticated (authentication was discussed in the previous section). In a

Web application, a user can have a set of *roles* associated with that identity, which entitles them to access all resources protected by those roles. In a J2EE application, users can be associated with a group, which categorizes users by common traits.

- *Group* - A set of authenticated *users* classified by common traits such as job title or customer profile. In most cases for Web applications, you will map users directly to roles and have no need to define a group.
- *Role* - An abstract name for the permission to access a particular set of resources in a Web application. A *role* can be compared to a key that can open a lock. Many people might have a copy of the key, and the lock doesn't care who you are, just that you have the right key.

The J2EE server authentication service governs users in multiple realms. Certificates are used with the HTTPS protocol to authenticate Web browser clients. To verify the identity of a user in the *certificate* realm, the authentication service verifies an X.509 certificate. For step-by-step instructions, see *Setting Up Digital Certificates*, page 663. The common name field of the X.509 certificate is used as the principal name.

In most cases, the J2EE server authentication service verifies user identity by checking the *file* realm. This realm is used for the authentication of all clients except for Web browser clients that use the HTTPS protocol and certificates.

A J2EE user of the *file* realm can belong to a J2EE group. (A user in the *certificate* realm cannot.) A *J2EE group* is a category of users classified by common traits, such as job title or customer profile. For example, most customers of an e-commerce application might belong to the *CUSTOMER* group, but the big spenders would belong to the *PREFERRED* group. Categorizing users into groups makes it easier to control the access of large numbers of users. The section *EJB-Tier Security*, page 668 explains how to control user access to enterprise beans.

## Security Roles

When you design an enterprise bean or Web component, you should always think about the kinds of users who will access the component. For example, a Web application for a Human Resources department might have a different request URL for someone who has been assigned the role of *admin* than for someone who has been assigned the role of *director*. The *admin* role may let you view some employee data, but the *director* role enables you to view salary information. Each of these *security roles* is an abstract logical grouping of users that is defined by the person who assembles the application. When an application

is deployed, the deployer will map the roles to security identities in the operational environment.

A J2EE group also represents a category of users, but it has a different scope from a role. A J2EE group is designated for the entire J2EE server, whereas a role covers only a specific application in a J2EE server.

To create a role for a J2EE application, you declare it for the application EAR file. For example, you could use the following procedure to create a role with `deploytool`:

1. Select an application.
2. In the Roles tabbed pane, click Add to add a row to the table.
3. In the Name column, enter the security role name, `bankCustomer` for example.
4. Click the folded-paper icon to add a description of the security role, `Customer-of-Bank` for example.
5. Click OK.

## Declaring and Linking Role References

A *security role reference* allows an enterprise bean or Web component to reference an existing security role. A security role is an application-specific logical grouping of users, classified by common traits such as customer profile or job title. When an application is deployed, roles are mapped to security identities, such as *principals* (identities assigned to users as a result of authentication) or groups, in the operational environment. Based on this, a user with a certain security role has associated access rights to a J2EE application. The link is the actual name of the security role that is being referenced.

During application assembly, the assembler creates security roles for the application and associates these roles with available security mechanisms. The assembler then resolves the security role references in individual servlets and JSP pages by linking them to roles defined for the application.

The security role reference defines a mapping between the name of a role that is called from a Web component using `isUserInRole(String name)` (see Using Programmatic Security in the Web Tier, page 660) or from an enterprise bean using `isCallerInRole(String name)` (see Using Programmatic Security in the EJB Tier, page 669) and the name of a security role that has been defined for the application.



For example, use `deploytool` to map the security role reference `cust` to the security role with role name `bankCustomer`:

1. Select the application.
2. Select the Security Role Mapping tabbed pane.
3. Select the `bankCustomer` entry in the Role names referenced pane. This role name would have been previously defined for the application as described in Security Roles, page 647.
4. Click Add User/Group to Role.
5. Select the available user name from the User name tab.
6. Click Map to Role.
7. Select the component that you want to create a role reference in.
8. Select the Security tabbed pane.
9. Select Use Caller ID (default) or Run As Role.
10. Click Add in the Role names referenced in code pane.
11. Enter `cust` in the Role name text field.
12. Select `bankCustomer` in the Role Link pull-down menu.

In this example, `isUserInRole("bankCustomer")` and `isUserInRole("cust")` will both return `true`.

Because a coded name is linked to a role name, you can change the role name at a later time without having to change the coded name. For example, if you were to change the role name from `bankCustomer` to something else, you wouldn't need to change the `cust` name in the code. You would, however, need to relink the `cust` coded name to the new role name.

## Mapping Roles to Users and Groups

When you are developing a J2EE application, you don't need to know what roles have been defined for the realm in which the application will be run. In the J2EE platform, the security architecture provides a mechanism for automatically mapping the roles defined in the application to the roles defined in the runtime realm. After your application has been deployed, the administrator of the J2EE server will map the roles of the application to the users, groups, or roles of the files realm.

Use `deploytool` to map roles defined for an application to J2EE users and/or groups:

1. Select the J2EE application.
2. In the Security tab, select the appropriate role from the Role Name list.
3. Click Add.
4. In the Users or Groups dialog box, select the users or groups that should be assigned to the selected role.

## Web-Tier Security

The Web-tier security model used in this release of the J2EE platform is based on the Java Servlet specification. This specification can be downloaded from <http://java.sun.com/products/servlet/download.html>.

Your Web application is defined using a standard J2EE `web.xml` deployment descriptor. The deployment descriptor must indicate which version of the Web application schema (2.3 or 2.4) it is using, and the elements specified within the deployment descriptor must comply with the rules for processing that version of the deployment descriptor. For version 2.4 of the Java Servlet Specification, this is “SRV.13.3, Rules for Processing the Deployment Descriptor”. For more information on deployment descriptors, see Chapter 3, *Getting Started with Web Applications*.

The deployment descriptor is used to convey the elements and configuration information of a Web application. Security in a Web application is configured using `deploytool` to set the following options. When the settings are entered in `deploytool`, they are saved to a `web.xml` deployment descriptor which is contained in the WAR. To view the generated deployment descriptor, select Descriptor Viewer from `deploytool`'s Tools menu. Use the Security pane of `deploytool` to configure the following Security elements for a Web application WAR file. See *Setting Security Requirements Using deploytool*, page 653 for more information on using `deploytool` to accomplish these tasks:

- User Authentication Method

The User Authentication Method box on the Security tab of `deploytool` enables you to specify how the user is prompted to login in. If specified, the user must be authenticated before it can access any resource that is

constrained by a Security Constraint. The User Authentication Method is discussed in *Configuring Login Authentication*, page 658.

- Security Constraints

The Security Constraint is used to define the access privileges to a collection of resources using their URL mapping. Security constraints are discussed in *Controlling Access to Web Resources*, page 652.

- Web Resource Collections

The Web Resource Collections is part of a security constraint and describes a URL pattern and HTTP method pair that refer to resources that need to be protected. Web Resource Collections are discussed in *Protecting Web Resources*, page 651.

- Network Security Requirement

The Network Security Requirement is used to configure HTTP basic or form-based authentication over SSL. Select a Network Security Requirement for each Security Constraint. Network Security Requirements are discussed in *Using SSL to Enhance the Confidentiality of HTTP Basic and Form-Based Authentication*, page 659.

- Authorized Roles

The Authorized Roles section represents which roles from a defined group for the realm are authorized to access this Web Resource Collection. Authorized roles are discussed in *Security Roles*, page 647.

These elements of the deployment descriptor may be entered directly into the `web.xml` file, or created using an application deployment tool, such as `deploytool`. This document describes creating the deployment descriptor using `deploytool`.

Some elements of Web application security need to be addressed in the deployment descriptor for the Web server, rather than the deployment descriptor for the Web application. This information is discussed in *Installing and Configuring SSL Support*, page 662, *Using Programmatic Security in the Web Tier*, page 660, and *Security Roles*, page 647.

## Protecting Web Resources

You can protect Web resources by specifying a security constraint. A *security constraint* determines who is authorized to access a *Web resource collection*, a list of URL patterns and HTTP methods that describe a set of resources to be

protected. Security constraints can be defined using an application deployment tool, such as `deploytool`, or using a deployment descriptor.

If you try to access a protected Web resource as an unauthenticated user, the Web container will try to authenticate you. The container will only accept the request after you have proven your identity to the container and have been granted permission to access the resource.

Security constraints only work on the original request URI, not on calls made via a `RequestDispatcher` (which include `<jsp:include>` and `<jsp:forward>`). Inside the application, it is assumed that the application itself has complete access to all resources and would not forward a user request unless it had decided that the requesting user had access also.

## Controlling Access to Web Resources

You can set up a security constraint using an application deployment tool, such as `deploytool`, or by coding the information directly into the deployment descriptor between `<security-constraint>``</security-constraint>` tags. When you define security constraints, you need to make sure you have addressed the following issues:

- Set up login authentication (discussed in [Configuring Login Authentication](#), page 658).
- Add a security constraint.
- Add a Web resource collection.
- Define and include an authorized security role (discussed in [Security Roles](#), page 647).
- Identify URL patterns to constrain.
- Identify HTTP methods to constrain (POST, GET).
- Specify whether there are any guarantees on how the data will be transported between client and server (NONE, INTEGRAL, CONFIDENTIAL).

If, for example, we were to create a deployment descriptor for a simple application using `deploytool`, we would follow the steps in [Setting Security Requirements Using `deploytool`](#), page 653.

## Setting Security Requirements Using deploytool

To set security requirements for a WAR, select the WAR in the `deploytool` tree, then select the Security tabbed pane. In the Security tabbed pane, you can define how users are authenticated to the server and which users have access to particular resources.

### 1. Choose the Authentication Method.

Authentication refers to the method by which a client verifies the identity of a user to a server. The authentication methods supported in this release are shown below and are discussed in more detail in *Authenticating Users of Web Resources*, page 656. Select one of the following authentication methods from the Authentication Method list:

- a. None
- b. Basic
- c. Client Certificate
- d. Digest
- e. Form Based

If you selected **Basic** or **Digest** authentication, click **Settings** to go to the User Authentication Settings dialog and enter the Realm Name. If you selected **Form Based** authentication, click **Settings** to enter the go to the User Authentication Settings dialog and enter the Realm Name, Login Page, and Error Page.

### 2. Define a Security Constraint.

In the Security Constraints section of the screen, you can define the security constraints for accessing the content of your WAR file. Click the **Add** button adjacent to the Security Constraints field to add a security constraint. Double-click the cell containing the Security Constraint to change its name. Each Security Constraint consists of:

- a. A Web Resource Collection, which describes a URL pattern and HTTP method pair that refer to resources that need to be protected.
- b. An Authorization Constraint, which is a set of roles that are defined to have access to the Web Resource Collection.
- c. A User Data Constraint, which defines whether a resource is accessed with confidentiality protection, integrity protection, or no protection.

### 3. Define a Web Resource Collection for this Security Constraint.

With the security constraint selected, click the Add button adjacent to the Web Resource Collections field to add a Web resource collection to the security constraint. A Web Resource Collection is part of a Security Constraint and describes a URL pattern and HTTP method pair that refer to resources that need to be protected. Double-click the cell containing the Web Resource Collection to edit its name.

4. Edit the contents of the Web Resource Collection by selecting it in the list, then clicking the Edit button. The Edit Contents dialog box displays. Use it to add individual files or whole directories to the Web resource collection, to add a URL pattern, or to specify which HTTP methods will be governed by this Web Resource Collection.
  - a. Select the files and directories that you want to the Web Resource Collection (WRC) in the top text field and then click the Add button to add them to the Web Resource Collection.
  - b. Add URL patterns to the Web Resource Collection by clicking Add URL and entering the URL in the edit field.
  - c. Specify which HTTP Methods are to be added to the Web application. The options are: Delete, Get, Head, Options, Post, Put, and Trace. You must select at least one of the HTTP methods.
  - d. Click OK to return to the Security tabbed pane. The contents of the WRC display in the box beside the Edit button.
5. Select the Network Security Requirement for this Security Constraint. The choices are None, Integral, and Confidential.
  - a. Specify NONE when the application does not require a security constraint.
  - b. Specify CONFIDENTIAL when the application requires that data be transmitted so as to prevent other entities from observing the contents of the transmission.
  - c. Specify INTEGRAL when the application requires that the data be sent between client and server in such a way that it cannot be changed in transit.

If you specify CONFIDENTIAL or INTEGRAL as a security constraint, that type of security constraint applies to all requests that match the URL patterns in the Web Resource Collection, not just to the login dialog. For further discussion on Network Security Requirements, see *Using SSL to Enhance the Confidentiality of HTTP Basic and Form-Based Authentication*, page 659

6. Select which roles are authorized to access the secure application. In the Authorized Roles pane, click Edit to specify which defined roles are authorized to access this secure application.

Select the role for which you want to authorize access from the list of Roles and click the Add button to add it to the list of Authorized Roles.

If Roles have not been defined for this application, click the Edit Roles button and add the Roles for this application. If you add Roles in this fashion, make sure to select the Security Role Mapping tab and map the roles to the appropriate users and groups. For more information on Role Mapping, see Mapping Roles to Users and Groups, page 649.

7. To add security specifically to a JSP page or to a servlet in the application, select the JSP page or servlet in the deploytool tree and select the Security tab. For more information on the options displayed on this page, see Declaring and Linking Role References, page 648.

The resulting deployment descriptor, which can be viewed by selecting the WAR file in the deploytool tree and then selecting Descriptor Viewer from the Tools menu, might look something like this:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<web-app
    version="2.4"
    xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee
        http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee/web-app_2_4.xsd"
    >
    <display-name>SimpleWebWar</display-name>
    <servlet>
        <display-name>GreetingServlet</display-name>
        <servlet-name>GreetingServlet</servlet-name>
        <servlet-class>GreetingServlet</servlet-class>
    </servlet>

    <!-- SECURITY-ROLE-REF -->
    <security-role-ref>
        <role-name>SimpleAppUser</role-name>
        <role-link>user</role-link>
    </security-role-ref>
</servlet>
<session-config>
    <session-timeout>30</session-timeout>
</session-config>
```

```

<!-- SECURITY CONSTRAINT -->
<security-constraint>
  <display-name>SecurityConstraint1</display-name>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>WRCollection1</web-resource-name>
    <http-method>GET</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>WRCollection2</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/WEB-INF/classes/GreetingServlet.class
      </url-pattern>
    <http-method>POST</http-method>
    <http-method>GET</http-method>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <auth-constraint>
    <role-name>admin</role-name>
  </auth-constraint>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>
      CONFIDENTIAL
    </transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>

<!-- LOGIN AUTHENTICATION -->
<login-config>
  <auth-method>BASIC</auth-method>
</login-config>

<!-- SECURITY ROLES -->
<security-role>
  <role-name>user</role-name>
</security-role>
<security-role>
  <role-name>mgr</role-name>
</security-role>
<security-role>
  <role-name>admin</role-name>
</security-role>

</web-app>

```

## Authenticating Users of Web Resources

When you try to access a protected Web resource, the Web container activates the authentication mechanism that has been configured for that resource. With a



Web Application selected in the `deploytool` tree, select the Security tabbed pane and select one of the following User Authentication Methods:

- None

If you do not specify one of the following methods, the user will not be authenticated.

- Basic

If you specify *HTTP basic authentication*, the Web server will authenticate a user by using the user name and password obtained from the Web client.

- Client Certificate

*Client-certificate authentication* is a more secure method of authentication than either basic or form-based authentication. It uses HTTP over SSL, in which the server and, optionally, the client authenticate one another with Public Key Certificates. *Secure Sockets Layer* (SSL) provides data encryption, server authentication, message integrity, and optional client authentication for a TCP/IP connection. You can think of a *public key certificate* as the digital equivalent of a passport. It is issued by a trusted organization, which is called a *certificate authority* (CA), and provides identification for the bearer. If you specify client-certificate authentication, the Web server will authenticate the client using the client's *X.509 certificate*, a public key certificate that conforms to a standard that is defined by X.509 Public Key Infrastructure (PKI). Prior to running an application that uses SSL, you must configure SSL support on the server (see *Installing and Configuring SSL Support*, page 662) and set up the public key certificate (see *Setting Up Digital Certificates*, page 663).

- Digest

*Digested password authentication* supports the concept of digesting user passwords. This causes the stored version of the passwords to be encoded in a form that is not easily reversible, but that the Web server can still utilize for authentication.

From a user perspective, digest authentication acts almost identically to basic authentication in that it triggers a login dialog. The difference between basic and digest authentication is that on the network connection between the browser and the server, the password is encrypted, even on a non-SSL connection. In the server, the password can be stored in clear text or encrypted text, which is true for all login methods and is independent of the choice that the application deployer makes.

- Form-based

If you specify *form-based authentication*, you can customize the login screen and error pages that are presented to the end user by an HTTP browser.

Neither form-based authentication nor HTTP basic authentication is particularly secure. In form-based authentication, the content of the user dialog is sent as plain text, and the target server is not authenticated. Basic authentication sends user names and passwords over the Internet as text that is uu-encoded, but not encrypted. This form of authentication, which uses Base64 encoding, can expose your user names and passwords unless all connections are over SSL. If someone can intercept the transmission, the user name and password information can easily be decoded.

## Configuring Login Authentication

You can set up login authentication using an application deployment tool, such as `deploytool`, or by coding the information directly into the deployment descriptor between `<login-config></login-config>` tags. To configure the authentication mechanism that the Web resources in a WAR will use, select the WAR in the `deploytool` tree, and select the Security tabbed pane, then proceed as follows:

- Specify one of the User Authentication Methods described in Authenticating Users of Web Resources, page 656.
- Specify a security realm. Basic, form-based, and digest authentication have realm parameters. Select the Settings button beside the User Authentication Mechanism field to specify the realm. If omitted, the default realm is assumed.
- If the authentication method is specified as Form-based, specify a form login page and form error page. Select the Settings button beside the User Authentication Mechanism field to specify the Login Page and the Error Page to be used for form-based authentication.

The form login page defines the location of the form that will be used to authenticate the user. The form error page is the resource that responds to a failed authentication.

The `<form-login-page>` element Login Page parameter provides the URI of a Web resource relative to the document root that will be used to authenticate the user. The login page can be an HTML page, a JSP page, or a servlet, and must return an HTML page containing a form that conforms to specific naming conventions (see the Servlet 2.4 specification for more information on these require-

ments). The Error Page parameter requires a URI of a Web resource relative to the document root that send a response when authentication has failed.

A *Universal Resource Identifier* (URI), is a globally unique identifier for a resource. A *Universal Resource Locator* (URL) is a kind of URI that specifies the retrieval protocol (http or https for Web applications) and physical location of a resource (host name and host-relative path).

In the Java Servlet specification, the request URI is the part of a URL *after* the host name and port. For example, in the URL `http://localhost:8080/myApp/jsp/hello.jsp`, the request URI would be `/jsp/hello.jsp`. The request URI is further subdivided into the context path (which decides which Web application should process the request) and the rest of the path that is used to select the target servlet.

## Using SSL to Enhance the Confidentiality of HTTP Basic and Form-Based Authentication

Passwords are not protected for confidentiality with HTTP basic or form-based authentication, meaning that passwords sent between a client and a server on a non-protected session can be viewed and intercepted by third parties. To overcome this limitation, you can run these authentication protocols over an SSL-protected session and ensure that all message content is protected for confidentiality.

To configure HTTP basic or form-based authentication over SSL, specify `CONFIDENTIAL` or `INTEGRAL` as the Network Security Requirement on the WAR's Security page in `deploytool`. Specify `CONFIDENTIAL` when the application requires that data be transmitted so as to prevent other entities from observing the contents of the transmission. Specify `INTEGRAL` when the application requires that the data be sent between client and server in such a way that it cannot be changed in transit.

If you specify `CONFIDENTIAL` or `INTEGRAL` as a security constraint, that type of security constraint applies to all requests that match the URL patterns in the Web resource collection, not just to the login dialog.

---

**Note: Good Security Practice:** If you are using sessions, once you switch to SSL you should never accept any further requests for that session that are non-SSL. For example, a shopping site might not use SSL until the checkout page, then it may switch to using SSL in order to accept your card number. After switching to SSL, you should stop listening to non-SSL requests for this session. The reason for this

practice is that the session ID itself was non-encrypted on the earlier communications, which is not so bad when you're just doing your shopping, but once the credit card information is stored in the session, you don't want a bad guy trying to fake the purchase transaction against your credit card. This practice could be easily implemented using a filter.

---

## Using Programmatic Security in the Web Tier

Programmatic security is used by security-aware applications when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of the application. Programmatic security consists of the following methods of the `HttpServletRequest` interface:

- `getRemoteUser` - used to determine the user name with which the client authenticated.
- `isUserInRole` - used to determine if a user is in a specific security role.
- `getUserPrincipal` - returns a `java.security.Principal` object.

These APIs allow servlets to make business logic decisions based on the logical role of the remote user. They also allow the servlet to determine the principal name of the current user.

For example, to use the `isUserInRole("admin")` method in your application, you need to do the following with `deploytool`:

1. Select the Web component (servlet, in this case).
2. Select the Security tab.
3. In the Role names referenced in code pane, click Add.
4. Enter `admin` in the Role name field.
5. Select the available Role Link from the pull-down. The role names that appear in the Role links pull-down menu have previously been defined for the application. See Security Roles, page 647 for information about defining role names for an application.

## Creating the Login Form

The content of the login form in an HTML page, JSP page, or servlet for a login page should be as follows:

```
<form method="POST" action="j_security_check" >
  <input type="text" name="j_username" >
  <input type="password" name="j_password" >
</form>
```

See the Servlet 2.4 specification for additional information.

## Protecting Web Resources

Many applications feature unprotected Web content, which any caller can access without authentication. In the Web tier, unrestricted access is provided simply by not configuring a security constraint for that particular request URI. It is common to have some unprotected resources and some protected resources. In this case, you will have security constraints and a login method defined, but it will not be used to control access to the unprotected resources. The user won't be asked to log on until the first time they enter a protected request URI.

In the Java Servlet specification, the request URI is the part of a URL *after* the host name and port. For example, let's say you have an e-commerce site with a browsable catalog you would want anyone to be able to access and a shopping cart area for customers only. You could set up the paths for your Web application so that the pattern `/cart/*` is protected, but nothing else is protected. Assuming the application is installed at context path `/myapp`,

- `http://localhost:8080/myapp/index.jsp` is *not* protected
- `http://localhost:8080/myapp/cart/index.jsp` is protected

A user will not be prompted to log in until the first time that user accesses a resource in the cart subdirectory.

To set this up, select the WAR file's Security tabbed pane in `deploytool` and,

1. Add or select a Security Constraint.
2. Add or select a Web Resource Collection.
3. With the Security Constraint and Web Resource Collection selected, click the Edit button.

4. Click the Add URL Pattern button to identify the URL pattern that is protected. Click OK.
5. Select the HTTP Methods to be protected. Click OK.

When the WAR file is deployed, access to these resources will be protected.

## Installing and Configuring SSL Support

### What is Secure Socket Layer Technology?

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is a technology that allows Web browsers and Web servers to communicate over a secured connection. In this secure connection, the data that is being sent is encrypted before being sent, then decrypted upon receipt and prior to processing. Both the browser and the server encrypt all traffic before sending any data. SSL addresses the following important security considerations.

- **Authentication**

During your initial attempt to communicate with a Web server over a secure connection, that server will present your Web browser with a set of credentials in the form of a server certificate. The purpose of the certificate is to verify that the site is who and what it claims to be. In some cases, the server may request a certificate that the client is who and what it claims to be (which is known as client authentication).

- **Confidentiality**

When data is being passed between the client and server on a network, third parties can view and intercept this data. SSL responses are encrypted so that the data cannot be deciphered by the third-party and the data remains confidential.

- **Integrity**

When data is being passed between the client and server on a network, third parties can view and intercept this data. SSL helps guarantee that the data will not be modified in transit by that third party.

## Setting Up Digital Certificates

In order to use SSL, a J2EE server must have an associated certificate for each external interface, or IP address, that accepts secure connections. The theory behind this design is that a server should provide some kind of reasonable assurance that its owner is who you think it is, particularly before receiving any sensitive information. It may be useful to think of a certificate as a “digital driver’s license” for an Internet address. It states with which company the site is associated, along with some basic contact information about the site owner or administrator.

The digital certificate is cryptographically signed by its owner and is difficult for anyone else to forge. For sites involved in e-commerce, or any other business transaction in which authentication of identity is important, a certificate can be purchased from a well-known Certificate Authority (CA) such as Verisign or Thawte.

If authentication is not really a concern, such as if an administrator simply wants to ensure that data being transmitted and received by the server is private and cannot be snooped by anyone eavesdropping on the connection, you can simply save the time and expense involved in obtaining a CA certificate and simply use a self-signed certificate.

SSL uses *public key cryptography*, which is based on *key pairs*. Key pairs contain one public key and one private key. If data is encrypted with one key, it can only be decrypted with the other key of the pair. This property of is fundamental to establishing trust and privacy in transactions. For example, using SSL, the server computes a value and encrypts the value using its private key. The encrypted value is called a *digital signature*. The client decrypts the encrypted value using the server’s public key and compares the value to its own computed value. If the two values match, the client can trust that the signature is authentic since only the private key could have been used to produce such a signature.

Digital certificates are used with the HTTPS protocol to authenticate Web clients. The HTTPS service of most Web servers will not run unless a digital certificate has been installed. Use the procedure outlined below to set up a digital certificate that can be used by your Web server to enable SSL.

One tool that can be used to set up a digital certificate is `keytool`, a key and certificate management utility that ships with J2EE 1.4 Application Server. It enables users to administer their own public/private key pairs and associated certificates for use in self-authentication (where the user authenticates himself/herself to other users/services) or data integrity and authentication services, using

digital signatures. It also allows users to cache the public keys (in the form of certificates) of their communicating peers. For a better understanding of public key cryptography, read the `keytool` documentation at <http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.1/docs/tooldocs/solaris/keytool.html>.

A certificate is a digitally-signed statement from one entity (person, company, etc.), saying that the public key (and some other information) of some other entity has a particular value. When data is digitally signed, the signature can be verified to check the data integrity and authenticity. *Integrity* means that the data has not been modified or tampered with, and *authenticity* means the data indeed comes from whoever claims to have created and signed it.

The `keytool` stores the keys and certificates in a file termed a *keystore*. The default keystore implementation implements the keystore as a file. It protects private keys with a password. For more information on `keytool`, read its documentation at <http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.1/docs/tooldocs/solaris/keytool.html>.

You can create a self-signed certificate by following the instructions in Creating a Client Certificate for Mutual Authentication, page 664.

## Creating a Client Certificate for Mutual Authentication

To create a client certificate:

1. Use `keytool` to create a client certificate in a keystore file of your choice:

```
keytool -genkey -keyalg RSA -alias client -keystore  
client.keystore
```

You will be prompted for a password. Enter `changeit`, the default password. When requested, enter the name, organization, and other prompts for the client. Do not enter anything at the `Key password for <client>` prompt, just press Return.

2. Export the new client certificate from the keystore to a certificate file:

```
keytool -keystore client.keystore -export -alias client  
-file client.cer
```

3. Enter the keystore password (`changeit`). `Keytool` returns this message:

```
Certificate stored in file <client.cer>
```



4. Import the new client certificate into the server's trustStore file `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/config/cacerts.jks`. This allows the server to trust the client during SSL mutual authentication.

```
keytool -import -alias root -keystore $J2EE_HOME/domains/
domain1/server/config/ cacerts.jks
-file client.cer
```

5. Enter the keystore password (changeit). Keytool returns this message:

```
Owner: CN=J2EE Client, OU=Java Web Services, O=Sun, L=Santa
Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Issuer: CN=J2EE Client, OU=Java Web Services, O=Sun, L=Santa
Clara, ST=CA, C=US
Serial number: 3e39e66a
Valid from: Thu Jan 30 18:58:50 PST 2003 until: Wed Apr 30
19:58:50 PDT 2003
Certificate fingerprints:
MD5: 5A:B0:4C:88:4E:F8:EF:E9:E5:8B:53:BD:D0:AA:8E:5A
SHA1:90:00:36:5B:E0:A7:A2:BD:67:DB:EA:37:B9:61:3E:26:B3:89:
46:
32
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore
```

For an example application that uses mutual authentication, see *Configuring Mutual Authentication*, page 813. For information on verifying that mutual authentication is running, see *Verifying Mutual Authentication is Running*, page 666.

## Obtaining a Digitally-Signed Certificate

This example assumes a keystore named `client.keystore` (created in *Creating a Client Certificate for Mutual Authentication*, page 664) and the certificate request file `csr_filename`.

1. Get your certificate digitally signed by a CA. To do this,
  - a. Generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR).
 

```
keytool -certreq -alias client -keyalg RSA
-file <csr_filename> -keystore client.keystore
```
  - b. Send the contents of the `csr_filename` for signing.
  - c. If you are using Verisign CA, go to <http://digitalid.verisign.com/>. Verisign will send the signed certificate in E-mail. Store this certificate in a file.

- d. Import the signed certificate that you received in E-mail into the server's trustStore:

```
keytool -import -alias client -trustcacerts -file
<signed_cert_file> -keystore
<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/config/cacerts.jks
```

2. Import the certificate (if using a CA-signed certificate).

If your certificate will be signed by a Certification Authority (CA), you must import the CA certificate. You may skip this step if you are using only the self-signed certificate. If you are using a self-signed certificate or a certificate signed by a CA that your browser does not recognize, a dialog will be triggered the first time a user tries to access the server. The user can then choose to trust the certificate for this session only or permanently.

## Verifying Mutual Authentication is Running

You can verify that mutual authentication is working by obtaining debug messages. This should be done at the client end, and this examples shows how to pass a system property in targets.xml so that targets.xml forks a client with `javax.net.debug` in its system properties.

To enable debug messages for SSL mutual authentication, pass the system property `javax.net.debug=ssl,handshake`, which will provide information on whether mutual authentication is working or not. This can be done by adding the sysproperty to targets.xml file as shown in **bold**:

```
<java
  fork="on"
  classpath="${dist}/${client-jar}:${j2ee-path}"
  classname="${client-class}" >
  <arg value="${trustStore}" />
  <arg value="${trustStorePassword}" />
  <arg value="${key-store}" />
  <arg value="${key-store-password}" />
  <arg value="${endpoint-address}" />
  <sysproperty key="javax.net.debug"
    value="ssl,handshake" />
  <sysproperty key="javax.net.ssl.keyStore"
    value="${key-store}" />
  <sysproperty key="javax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword"
    value="${key-store-password}" /
</java>
```

## Miscellaneous Commands for Certificates

- To check the contents of a keystore that contains a certificate with an alias server:  
`keytool -list -keystore server.keystore -alias server -v`
- To check the contents of the cacerts file:  
`keytool -list -keystore cacerts.jks`

## Verifying SSL Support

For testing purposes, and to verify that SSL support has been correctly installed, load the default introduction page with a URL that connects to port defined in the server deployment descriptor:

```
https://localhost:1043/
```

The https in this URL indicates that the browser should be using the SSL protocol.

The first time a user loads this application, the New Site Certificate dialog displays. Select Next to move through the series of New Site Certificate dialogs, select Finish when you reach the last dialog. The certificates will only display the first time. When you accept the certificates, subsequent hits to this site assume that you still trust the content.

## General Tips on Running SSL

The SSL protocol is designed to be as efficient as securely possible. However, encryption/decryption is a computationally expensive process from a performance standpoint. It is not strictly necessary to run an entire Web application over SSL, and it is customary for a developer to decide which pages require a secure connection and which do not. Pages that might require a secure connection include login pages, personal information pages, shopping cart checkouts, or any pages where credit card information could possibly be transmitted. Any page within an application can be requested over a secure socket by simply prefixing the address with https: instead of http:. Any pages which absolutely require a secure connection should check the protocol type associated with the page request and take the appropriate action if https: is not specified.

Using name-based virtual hosts on a secured connection can be problematic. This is a design limitation of the SSL protocol itself. The SSL handshake, where

the client browser accepts the server certificate, must occur before the HTTP request is accessed. As a result, the request information containing the virtual host name cannot be determined prior to authentication, and it is therefore not possible to assign multiple certificates to a single IP address. If all virtual hosts on a single IP address need to authenticate against the same certificate, the addition of multiple virtual hosts should not interfere with normal SSL operations on the server. Be aware, however, that most client browsers will compare the server's domain name against the domain name listed in the certificate, if any (applicable primarily to official, CA-signed certificates). If the domain names do not match, these browsers will display a warning to the client. In general, only address-based virtual hosts are commonly used with SSL in a production environment.

## EJB-Tier Security

The following sections describe declarative and programmatic security mechanisms that can be used to protect resources in the EJB tier. The protected resources include methods of enterprise beans that are called from application clients, Web components, or other enterprise beans.

You can protect EJB-tier resources by doing the following:

- Declaring method permissions
- Mapping roles to J2EE users and groups

For information about mapping roles to J2EE users and groups, see Mapping Roles to Users and Groups, page 649.

## Declaring Method Permissions

After you've defined the roles (see Security Roles, page 647), you can define the method permissions of an enterprise bean. Method permissions indicate which

roles are allowed to invoke which methods. You can define method permissions in different ways.

- You can apply method permissions to all of the methods of the specified enterprise bean's home, component, and/or Web service endpoint interfaces.
- You can apply method permissions to the specified method of the specified enterprise bean. If the enterprise bean contains multiple methods with the same method name, the method permission applies to all of the methods.
- If the enterprise bean contains multiple methods with the same method name but the methods have different method parameters (such as `create(a,b)` and `create(a,b,c)`), you can apply method permissions by specifying the method parameters.

## Using Programmatic Security in the EJB Tier

Programmatic security in the EJB tier consists of the `getCallerPrincipal` and the `isCallerInRole` methods. You can use the `getCallerPrincipal` method to determine the caller of the enterprise bean, and the `isCallerInRole` method to determine if the caller has the specified role.

The `getCallerPrincipal` method of the `EJBContext` interface returns the `java.security.Principal` object that identifies the caller of the enterprise bean. (In this case, a principal is the same as a user.) In the following example, the `getUser` method of an enterprise bean returns the name of the J2EE user that invoked it:

```
public String getUser() {  
    return context.getCallerPrincipal().getName();  
}
```

You can determine whether an enterprise bean's caller belongs to the Customer role.

```
boolean result = context.isCallerInRole("Customer");
```

## Unauthenticated User Name

Web applications accept unauthenticated Web clients and allow these clients to make calls to the EJB container. The EJB specification requires a security credential for accessing EJB methods. Typically, the credential will be that of a generic unauthenticated user.

## Application Client-Tier Security

Authentication requirements for J2EE application clients are the same as the requirements for other J2EE components. Access to protected resources in either the EJB tier or the Web tier requires user authentication, whereas access to unprotected resources does not.

An application client can use the Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) for authentication. JAAS implements a Java version of the standard Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM) framework, which permits applications to remain independent from underlying authentication technologies. You can plug new or updated authentication technologies under an application without making any modifications to the application itself. Applications enable the authentication process by instantiating a `LoginContext` object, which, in turn, references a configuration to determine the authentication technologies or login modules that will be used to perform the authentication.

A typical login module could prompt for and verify a user name and password. Other modules could read and verify a voice or fingerprint sample.

In some cases, a login module needs to communicate with the user to obtain authentication information. Login modules use a `javax.security.auth.callback.CallbackHandler` for this purpose. Applications implement the `CallbackHandler` interface and pass it to the login context, which forwards it directly to the underlying login modules. A login module uses the callback handler both to gather input (such as a password or smart card PIN number) from users or to supply information (such as status information) to users. By allowing the application to specify the callback handler, an underlying login module can remain independent of the different ways applications interact with users.

For example, the implementation of a callback handler for a GUI application might display a window to solicit user input. Or, the implementation of a callback handler for a command line tool might simply prompt the user for input directly from the command line.

The login module passes an array of appropriate callbacks to the callback handler's `handle` method (for example, a `NameCallback` for the user name and a `PasswordCallback` for the password), and the callback handler performs the requested user interaction and sets appropriate values in the callbacks. For example, to process a `NameCallback`, the `CallbackHandler` may prompt for a name, retrieve the value from the user, and call the `setName` method of the `NameCallback` to store the name.

## EIS-Tier Security

In the EIS tier, an application component requests a connection to an EIS resource. As part of this connection, the EIS may require a sign-on to the resource. The application component provider has two choices for the design of the EIS sign-on:

- With the container-managed sign-on approach, the application component lets the container take the responsibility of configuring and managing the EIS sign-on. The container determines the user name and password for establishing a connection to an EIS instance.
- With the component-managed sign-on approach, the application component code manages EIS sign-on by including code that performs the sign-on process to an EIS.

## Container-Managed Sign-On

With container-managed sign-on, an application component does not have to pass any security information for signing on to the resource to the `getConnection()` method. The security information is supplied by the container, as shown in the following example.

```
// Business method in an application component
Context initctx = new InitialContext();

// Perform JNDI lookup to obtain a connection factory
javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory cxf =
    (javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory)initctx.lookup(
        "java:comp/env/eis/MainframeCxFactory");

// Invoke factory to obtain a connection. The security
// information is not passed in the getConnection method
javax.resource.cci.Connection cx = cxf.getConnection();
...
```

## Component-Managed Sign-On

With component-managed sign-on, an application component is responsible for passing the security information that is needed for signing on to the resource to the `getConnection()` method. Security information could be a user name and password, for example, as shown here:

```
// Method in an application component
Context initctx = new InitialContext();

// Perform JNDI lookup to obtain a connection factory
javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory cxf =
    (javax.resource.cci.ConnectionFactory)initctx.lookup(
        "java:comp/env/eis/MainframeCxFactory");

// Get a new ConnectionSpec
com.myeis.ConnectionSpecImpl properties = //..

// Invoke factory to obtain a connection
properties.setUserName("...");
properties.setPassword("...");
javax.resource.cci.Connection cx =
    cxf.getConnection(properties);
...
```

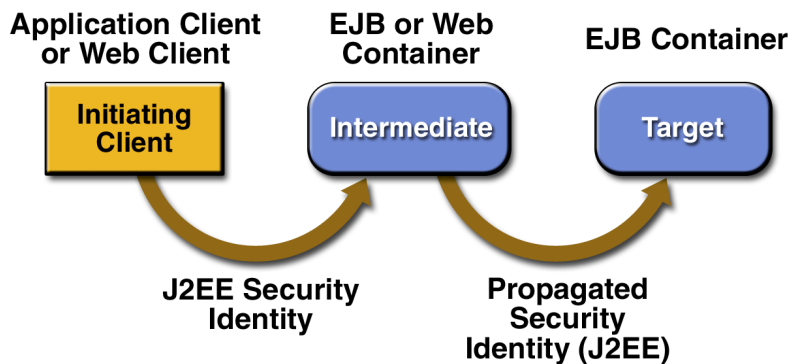
## Configuring Resource Adapter Security

1. In addition to configuring the sign-on, you can also configure security settings for the resource adapter.



## Propagating Security Identity

When you deploy an enterprise bean or Web component, you can specify the security identity that will be propagated (illustrated in Figure 18–1) to enterprise beans invoked from within that component.



**Figure 18–1** Security Identity Propagation

You can choose one of the following propagation styles:

- The caller identity of the intermediate component is propagated to the target enterprise bean. This technique is used when the target container trusts the intermediate container.
- A specific identity is propagated to the target enterprise bean. This technique is used when the target container expects access via a specific identity.

## Configuring a Component's Propagated Security Identity

1. Select the enterprise bean to configure.
2. In the Security Identity pane, select which security identity should be propagated to the beans that this enterprise bean calls:
  - Choose Use Caller ID if you want the principal of this enterprise bean's caller to be propagated to other beans that it calls.

- Choose Run as Specified Role and select the role from the menu if you want a security identity other than the caller's identity propagated to other beans.
3. If the role that you want to use as the security identity is not in the list, click Edit Roles and add it.

You may also click on the Edit Roles and type in a role not in the list.

1. Select the Web component to configure.
2. In the Security Identity pane, select Use Caller ID if the caller ID is to be propagated to methods of other components called from this Web component. Otherwise, select Run as Role and select a role from the list of known roles in the WAR file.
3. If the role that you want to use as the security identity is not in the list, click Edit Roles and add it.

## Configuring Client Authentication

If an application component in an application client container accesses a protected method on a bean, use client authentication.

## Trust between Containers

When an enterprise bean is designed so that either the original caller identity or a designated identity is used to call a target bean, the target bean will receive the propagated identity only; it will *not* receive any authentication data.

There is no way for the target container to authenticate the propagated security identity. However, since the security identity is used in authorization checks (for example, method permissions or with the `isCallerInRole()` method), it is vitally important that the security identity be authentic. Since there is no authentication data available to authenticate the propagated identity, the target must trust that the calling container has propagated an authenticated security identity.

By default, the J2EE 1.4 Application Server is configured to trust identities that are propagated from different containers. Therefore, there are no special steps that you need to take to set up a trust relationship.

# Using Java Authorization Contract for Containers

Java Authorization Contract for Containers (JACC) is a set of security contracts defined for the EJB and Web containers. The containers in the J2EE server restrict client access to the resources and services they contain based on the client's identity.

JACC contracts enhance this functionality by defining roles as collections of permissions and new subclasses of the `java.security.Permission` class. JACC contracts also provide a means for containers to make access decisions by operating on these permissions and defines the mechanism by which authorization providers are installed and configured for use by containers.

JACC contracts provide the following benefits:

- JACC moves security administration and decision-making responsibility from the container to the security providers.
- JACC enables the use of a common policy across different security systems.
- J2EE system integrators can integrate containers with existing authorization policy infrastructure.



---

# J2EE Connector Architecture

*Dale Green and Beth Stearns*

**T**HE other chapters in this book are intended for business application developers, but this chapter is for advanced users such as system integrators and tools developers.

The J2EE Connector architecture enables J2EE components such as enterprise beans to interact with enterprise information systems (EISs). EIS software includes various types of systems: enterprise resource planning (ERP), main-frame transaction processing, and non-relational databases, among others. The J2EE Connector architecture simplifies the integration of diverse EISs. Each EIS requires just one implementation of the J2EE Connector architecture. Because an implementation adheres to the J2EE Connector Specification, it is portable across all compliant J2EE servers.

## About Resource Adapters

A *resource adapter* is a J2EE component that implements the J2EE Connector architecture for a specific EIS. It is through the resource adapter that a J2EE application and an EIS communicate with each other (see Figure 19–1).

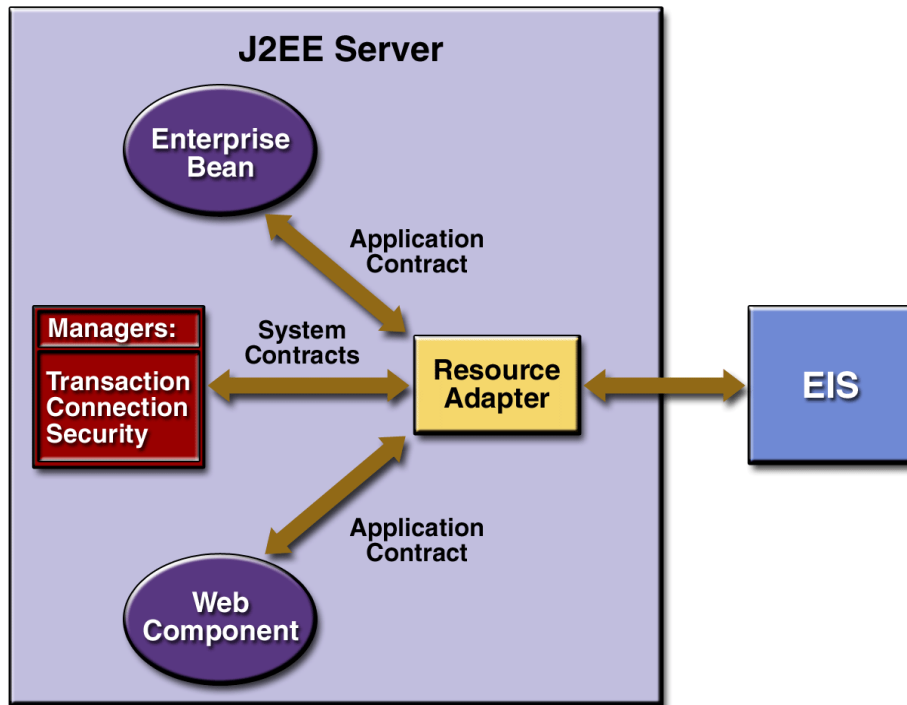
Stored in a Resource Adapter Archive (RAR) file, a resource adapter may be deployed on any J2EE server, much like the EAR file of a J2EE application. A RAR file may be contained in an EAR file or it may exist as a separate file.

A resource adapter is analogous to a JDBC driver. Both provide a standard API through which an application can access a resource that is outside the J2EE server. For a resource adapter, the outside resource is an EIS; for a JDBC driver, it is a DBMS. Resource adapters and JDBC drivers are rarely created by application developers. In most cases, both types of software are built by vendors who sell products such as tools, servers, or integration software.

## Resource Adapter Contracts

Figure 19–1 shows the application and system contracts, the two principal contracts implemented by a resource adapter. The application contract defines the API through which a J2EE component such as an enterprise bean accesses the EIS. This API is the only view that the component has of the EIS. The resource adapter itself and its system contracts are transparent to the J2EE component.

The system contracts link the resource adapter to important services—connection, transaction, and security—that are managed by the J2EE server.



**Figure 19–1** Accessing an EIS Through a Resource Adapter

The connection management contract supports connection pooling, a technique that enhances application performance and scalability. Connection pooling is transparent to the application, which simply obtains a connection to the EIS.

Because of the transaction management contract, a call to the EIS may be enclosed in an XA transaction. XA transactions are global—they may contain calls to multiple EISs, databases, and enterprise bean business methods. Although often appropriate, XA transactions are not mandatory. Instead, an application may use local transactions, which are managed by the individual EIS, or it may use no transactions at all.

To protect the information in an EIS, the security management contract provides these mechanisms: authentication, authorization, and secure communication between the J2EE server and the EIS.

## Connector 1.5 Resource Adapters

With the latest release of the Connector architecture (Connector 1.5), EISs and external systems can supply resource adapters for connecting from an EIS to a J2EE application server. The architecture specifies additional contracts, including a lifecycle management contract, a work management contract, and pluggability contracts for message providers and for importing transactions. By following the specification, a resource adapter provider has the flexibility to implement those services that it desires or needs.

## Extending Messaging Capabilities

To enable external systems to connect to a J2EE application server, the Connector architecture has extended the capabilities of message-driven beans to handle messages from any message provider. That is, message-driven beans are no longer limited to handling JMS messages. Instead, EISs and message providers can plug any message provider, including their own custom or proprietary message providers, into a J2EE container.

To use this feature, a message provider or an EIS provides a resource adapter according to the Connector 1.5-specified contract. The contract details APIs for message handling and message delivery. A conforming resource adapter is assured of the ability to send messages from any provider to a message-driven bean, plus it can be plugged into a J2EE container in a standard manner.

## Work Management Contract

The Connector 1.5 work management contract ensures that resource adapters use threads in the proper, recommended manner. It also enables the J2EE application server to manage threads for resource adapters.

Resource adapters that improperly use threads can create problems for the entire application server environment. For example, a resource adapter might create too many threads or it might not properly release threads it has created. Poor thread handling inhibits application server shutdown. It also impacts the application server's performance because creating and destroying threads are expensive operations.

The work management contract establishes a means for the application server to pool and reuse threads, similar to pooling and reusing connections. By adhering to this contract, the resource adapter does not have to manage threads itself.



Instead, the resource adapter has the application server create and provide needed threads. When the resource adapter is finished with a given thread, it returns the thread to the application server. The application server manages the thread: it can return the thread to a pool and reuse it later, or it may destroy the thread. Handling threads in this manner results in increased application server performance and more efficient use of resources.

In addition to moving thread management to the application server, the Connector 1.5 architecture also provides a flexible model for a resource adapter that uses threads:

- The requesting thread can choose to block—stop its own execution—until the work thread completes.
- Or, the requesting thread can block while it waits to get the thread. When the application server provides a work thread, then the requesting thread and the work thread execute in parallel.
- The resource adapter can opt to submit the work for the thread to a queue. The thread executes the work from the queue at some later point. The resource adapter continues its own execution from the point it submitted the work to the queue, regardless of when the thread executes it.

With the latter two approaches, the resource adapter and the thread may execute simultaneously or independently from each other. For these approaches, the contract specifies a listener mechanism to notify the resource adapter that the thread has completed its operation. The resource adapter can also specify the execution context for the thread and the work management contract controls the context in which the thread executes.

## Transaction Inflow

The Connector 1.5 architecture also expands the transaction support for resource adapters. Previously, transaction flow went from the J2EE application server to an EIS. That is, the transaction started from an enterprise bean on the J2EE application server, and the same transaction remained in force during operations on the EIS.

Now, transactions can be imported from an EIS to the J2EE application server. The architecture specifies how to propagate the transaction context from the EIS. For example, a transaction can be started by the EIS, such as a CICs system. Within the same CICs transaction, a connection can be made through a resource adapter to an enterprise bean on the application server. The enterprise bean does

its work under the CICs transaction context and commits within that transaction context.

The Connector 1.5 architecture also specifies how the container participates in transaction completion and how it handles crash recovery to ensure that data integrity is not lost.

## Lifecycle Management

The Connector 1.5 architecture specifies a lifecycle management contract that allows an application server to manage the lifecycle of a resource adapter. This contract provides a mechanism for the application server to bootstrap a resource adapter instance during the instance's deployment or application server startup. It also provides a means for the application server to notify the resource adapter instance when it is undeployed or when an orderly shutdown of the application server takes place.

## Common Client Interface

This section describes how components use the Connector architecture Common Client Interface (CCI) API and a resource adapter to access data from an EIS.

Defined by the J2EE Connector architecture specification, the CCI defines a set of interfaces and classes whose methods allow a client to perform typical data access operations. The CCI interfaces and classes are as follows:

- **ConnectionFactory**: Provides an application component with a **Connection** instance to an EIS.
- **Connection**: Represents the connection to the underlying EIS.
- **ConnectionSpec**: Provides a means for an application component to pass connection-request-specific properties to the **ConnectionFactory** when making a connection request.
- **Interaction**: Provides a means for an application component to execute EIS functions, such as database stored procedures.
- **InteractionSpec**: Holds properties pertaining to an application component's interaction with an EIS.
- **Record**: The superclass for the different kinds of record instances. Record instances may be **MappedRecord**, **IndexedRecord**, or **ResultSet** instances, which all inherit from the **Record** interface.
- **RecordFactory**: Provides an application component with a **Record** instance.
- **IndexedRecord**: Represents an ordered collection of **Record** instances based on the `java.util.List` interface.

A client or application component that uses the CCI to interact with an underlying EIS does so in a prescribed manner. The component must establish a connection to the EIS's resource manager, and it does so using the **ConnectionFactory**. The **Connection** object represents the actual connection to the EIS and is used for subsequent interactions with the EIS.

The component performs its interactions with the EIS, such as accessing data from a specific table, using an **Interaction** object. The application component defines the **Interaction** object using an **InteractionSpec** object. When the application component reads data from the EIS (such as from database tables) or writes to those tables, it does so using a particular type of **Record** instance, either a **MappedRecord**, **IndexedRecord**, or **ResultSet** instance. Just as the **ConnectionFactory** creates **Connection** instances, a **RecordFactory** creates **Record** instances.

Note, too, that a client application that relies on a CCI resource adapter is very much like any other J2EE client that uses enterprise bean methods.



---

# The Java Message Service API

*Kim Haase*

**T**HIS chapter provides an introduction to the Java Message Service Application Programming Interface (the JMS API). It contains the following sections:

- Overview
- Basic JMS API Concepts
- The JMS API Programming Model
- Writing Simple JMS Client Applications
- Creating Robust JMS Applications
- Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application
- Further Information

## Overview

This overview of the JMS API answers the following questions.

- What Is Messaging?
- What Is the JMS API?
- When Can You Use the JMS API?
- How Does the JMS API Work with the J2EE Platform?

## What Is Messaging?

Messaging is a method of communication between software components or applications. A messaging system is a peer-to-peer facility: A messaging client can send messages to, and receive messages from, any other client. Each client connects to a messaging agent that provides facilities for creating, sending, receiving, and reading messages.

Messaging enables distributed communication that is *loosely coupled*. A component sends a message to a destination, and the recipient can retrieve the message from the destination. However, the sender and the receiver do not have to be available at the same time in order to communicate. In fact, the sender does not need to know anything about the receiver; nor does the receiver need to know anything about the sender. The sender and the receiver need to know only what message format and what destination to use. In this respect, messaging differs from tightly coupled technologies, such as Remote Method Invocation (RMI), which require an application to know a remote application's methods.

Messaging also differs from electronic mail (e-mail), which is a method of communication between people or between software applications and people. Messaging is used for communication between software applications or software components.

## What Is the JMS API?

The Java Message Service is a Java API that allows applications to create, send, receive, and read messages. Designed by Sun and several partner companies, the JMS API defines a common set of interfaces and associated semantics that allow programs written in the Java programming language to communicate with other messaging implementations.

The JMS API minimizes the set of concepts a programmer must learn to use messaging products but provides enough features to support sophisticated messaging applications. It also strives to maximize the portability of JMS applications across JMS providers in the same messaging domain.

The JMS API enables communication that is not only loosely coupled but also

- **Asynchronous.** A JMS provider can deliver messages to a client as they arrive; a client does not have to request messages in order to receive them.

- **Reliable.** The JMS API can ensure that a message is delivered once and only once. Lower levels of reliability are available for applications that can afford to miss messages or to receive duplicate messages.

The JMS Specification was first published in August 1998. The latest version of the JMS Specification is Version 1.1, which was released in April 2002. You can download a copy of the Specification from the JMS Web site, <http://java.sun.com/products/jms/>.

## When Can You Use the JMS API?

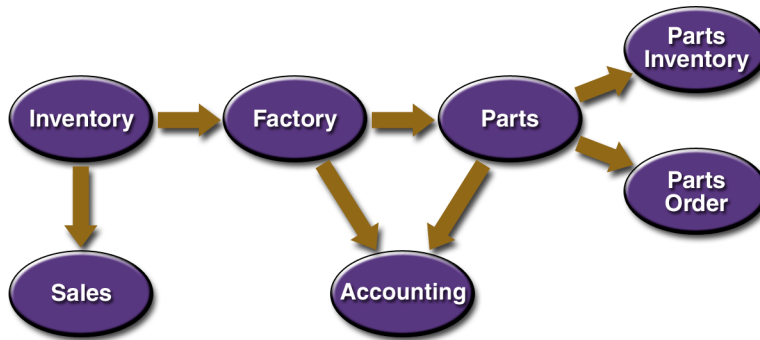
An enterprise application provider is likely to choose a messaging API over a tightly coupled API, such as Remote Procedure Call (RPC), under the following circumstances.

- The provider wants the components not to depend on information about other components' interfaces, so that components can be easily replaced.
- The provider wants the application to run whether or not all components are up and running simultaneously.
- The application business model allows a component to send information to another and to continue to operate without receiving an immediate response.

For example, components of an enterprise application for an automobile manufacturer can use the JMS API in situations like these.

- The inventory component can send a message to the factory component when the inventory level for a product goes below a certain level, so the factory can make more cars.
- The factory component can send a message to the parts components so that the factory can assemble the parts it needs.
- The parts components in turn can send messages to their own inventory and order components to update their inventories and to order new parts from suppliers.
- Both the factory and the parts components can send messages to the accounting component to update their budget numbers.
- The business can publish updated catalog items to its sales force.

Using messaging for these tasks allows the various components to interact with one another efficiently, without tying up network or other resources. Figure 20–1 illustrates how this simple example might work.



**Figure 20–1** Messaging in an Enterprise Application

Manufacturing is only one example of how an enterprise can use the JMS API. Retail applications, financial services applications, health services applications, and many others can make use of messaging.

## How Does the JMS API Work with the J2EE Platform?

When the JMS API was introduced in 1998, its most important purpose was to allow Java applications to access existing messaging-oriented middleware (MOM) systems, such as MQSeries from IBM. Since that time, many vendors have adopted and implemented the JMS API, so that a JMS product can now provide a complete messaging capability for an enterprise.

Since the 1.3 release of the J2EE platform (“the J2EE 1.3 platform”), the JMS API has been an integral part of the platform, and application developers can use messaging with components using J2EE APIs (“J2EE components”).

The JMS API in the J2EE platform has the following features.

- Application clients, Enterprise JavaBeans (EJB) components, and Web components can send or synchronously receive a JMS message. Application clients can in addition receive JMS messages asynchronously. (Applets, however, are not required to support the JMS API.)
- Message-driven beans, which are a kind of enterprise bean, enable the asynchronous consumption of messages. A JMS provider may optionally implement concurrent processing of messages by message-driven beans.



- Message sends and receives can participate in distributed transactions.

The JMS API enhances the J2EE platform by simplifying enterprise development, allowing loosely coupled, reliable, asynchronous interactions among J2EE components and legacy systems capable of messaging. A developer can easily add new behavior to a J2EE application with existing business events by adding a new message-driven bean to operate on specific business events. The J2EE platform's EJB container architecture, moreover, enhances the JMS API by providing support for distributed transactions and allowing for the concurrent consumption of messages.

Another J2EE platform technology, the J2EE Connector Architecture, provides tight integration between J2EE applications and existing Enterprise Information (EIS) systems. The JMS API, on the other hand, allows for a very loosely coupled interaction between J2EE applications and existing EIS systems.

At the 1.4 release of the J2EE platform, the JMS provider may be integrated with the application server using the J2EE Connector Architecture. You access the JMS provider through a resource adapter. For more information, see the Enterprise JavaBeans Specification, v2.1, and the J2EE Connector Architecture Specification, v1.5.

## Basic JMS API Concepts

This section introduces the most basic JMS API concepts, the ones you must know to get started writing simple JMS client applications:

- JMS API Architecture
- Messaging Domains
- Message Consumption

The next section introduces the JMS API programming model. Later sections cover more advanced concepts, including the ones you need to write J2EE applications that use message-driven beans.

## JMS API Architecture

A JMS application is composed of the following parts.

- A *JMS provider* is a messaging system that implements the JMS interfaces and provides administrative and control features. An implementation of the J2EE platform at release 1.3 and above includes a JMS provider.
- *JMS clients* are the programs or components, written in the Java programming language, that produce and consume messages. Any J2EE component can act as a JMS client.
- *Messages* are the objects that communicate information between JMS clients.
- *Administered objects* are preconfigured JMS objects created by an administrator for the use of clients. The two kinds of administered objects are destinations and connection factories, which are described in Administered Objects (page 695).

Figure 20–2 illustrates the way these parts interact. Administrative tools allow you to bind destinations and connection factories into a Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) API namespace. A JMS client can then look up the administered objects in the namespace and then establish a logical connection to the same objects through the JMS provider.

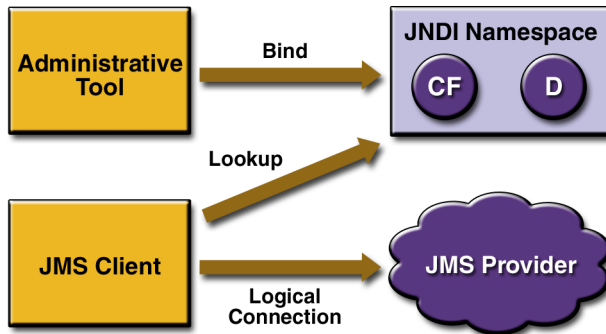


Figure 20–2 JMS API Architecture

## Messaging Domains

Before the JMS API existed, most messaging products supported either the *point-to-point* or the *publish/subscribe* approach to messaging. The JMS Specifi-

cation provides a separate domain for each approach and defines compliance for each domain. A standalone JMS provider may implement one or both domains. A J2EE provider must implement both domains.

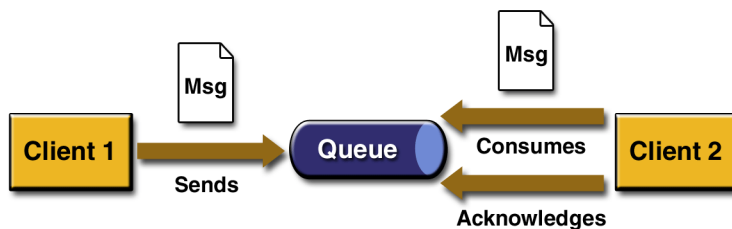
In fact, most implementations of the JMS API provide support for both the point-to-point and the publish/subscribe domains, and some JMS clients combine the use of both domains in a single application. In this way, the JMS API has extended the power and flexibility of messaging products.

The JMS 1.1 Specification goes one step further: it provides common interfaces that enable you to use the JMS API in a way that is not specific to either domain. The following subsections describe the two messaging domains and then describes this new way of programming using common interfaces.

## Point-to-Point Messaging Domain

A point-to-point (PTP) product or application is built around the concept of message queues, senders, and receivers. Each message is addressed to a specific queue, and receiving clients extract messages from the queue(s) established to hold their messages. Queues retain all messages sent to them until the messages are consumed or until the messages expire.

PTP messaging has the following characteristics and is illustrated in Figure 20–3.



**Figure 20–3** Point-to-Point Messaging

- Each message has only one consumer.
- A sender and a receiver of a message have no timing dependencies. The receiver can fetch the message whether or not it was running when the client sent the message.
- The receiver acknowledges the successful processing of a message.

Use PTP messaging when every message you send must be processed successfully by one consumer.

## Publish/Subscribe Messaging Domain

In a publish/subscribe (pub/sub) product or application, clients address messages to a topic. Publishers and subscribers are generally anonymous and may dynamically publish or subscribe to the content hierarchy. The system takes care of distributing the messages arriving from a topic's multiple publishers to its multiple subscribers. Topics retain messages only as long as it takes to distribute them to current subscribers.

Pub/sub messaging has the following characteristics.

- Each message may have multiple consumers.
- Publishers and subscribers have a timing dependency. A client that subscribes to a topic can consume only messages published after the client has created a subscription, and the subscriber must continue to be active in order for it to consume messages.

The JMS API relaxes this timing dependency to some extent by allowing clients to create *durable subscriptions*. Durable subscriptions can receive messages sent while the subscribers are not active. Durable subscriptions provide the flexibility and reliability of queues but still allow clients to send messages to many recipients. For more information about durable subscriptions, see *Creating Durable Subscriptions* (page 731).

Use pub/sub messaging when each message can be processed by zero, one, or many consumers. Figure 20–4 illustrates pub/sub messaging.

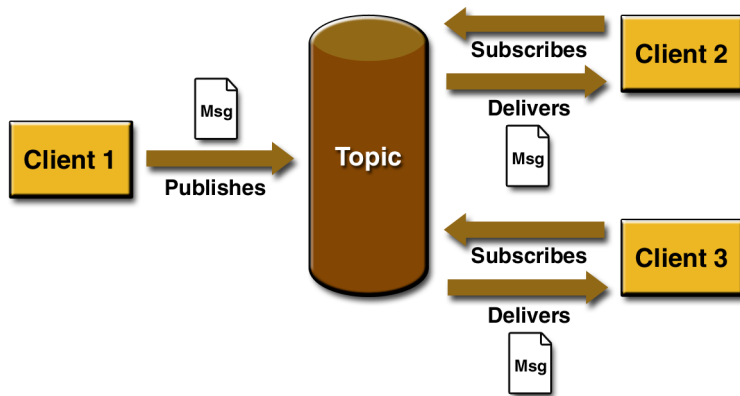


Figure 20–4 Publish/Subscribe Messaging

## Programming with the Common Interfaces

Version 1.1 of the JMS API allows you to use the same code to access either the PTP or the pub/sub domain. The administered objects that you use remain domain-specific, and the behavior of the application will depend partly on whether you are using a queue or a topic. However, the code itself can be common to both domains, making your applications flexible and reusable. This tutorial describes and illustrates these common interfaces.

## Message Consumption

Messaging products are inherently asynchronous: there is no fundamental timing dependency between the production and the consumption of a message. However, the JMS Specification uses this term in a more precise sense. Messages can be consumed in either of two ways:

- **Synchronously.** A subscriber or a receiver explicitly fetches the message from the destination by calling the `receive` method. The `receive` method can block until a message arrives or can time out if a message does not arrive within a specified time limit.
- **Asynchronously.** A client can register a *message listener* with a consumer. A message listener is similar to an event listener. Whenever a message arrives at the destination, the JMS provider delivers the message by calling

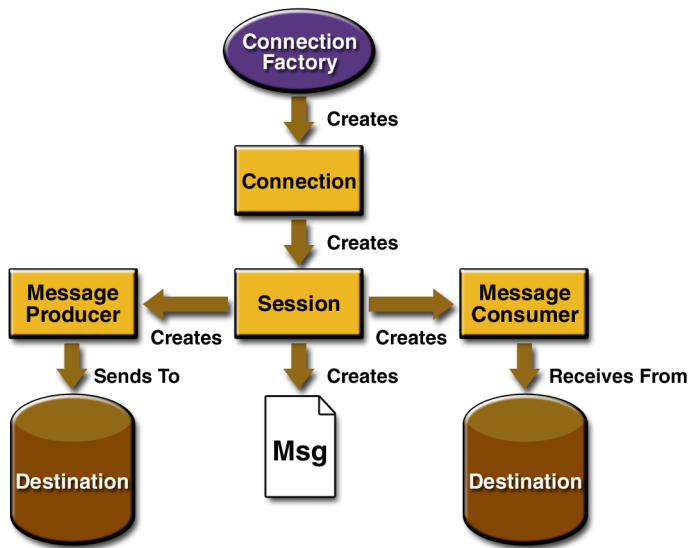
the listener's `onMessage` method, which acts on the contents of the message.

## The JMS API Programming Model

The basic building blocks of a JMS application consist of

- Administered Objects: connection factories and destinations
- Connections
- Sessions
- Message Producers
- Message Consumers
- Messages

Figure 20–5 shows how all these objects fit together in a JMS client application.



**Figure 20–5** The JMS API Programming Model

This section describes all these objects briefly and provides sample commands and code snippets that show how to create and use the objects. The last section briefly describes JMS API exception handling.

Examples that show how to combine all these objects in applications appear in later sections. For more details, see the JMS API documentation, which is part of the J2EE API documentation.

## Administered Objects

Two parts of a JMS application—destinations and connection factories—are best maintained administratively rather than programmatically. The technology underlying these objects is likely to be very different from one implementation of the JMS API to another. Therefore, the management of these objects belongs with other administrative tasks that vary from provider to provider.

JMS clients access these objects through interfaces that are portable, so a client application can run with little or no change on more than one implementation of the JMS API. Ordinarily, an administrator configures administered objects in a JNDI namespace, and JMS clients then look them up, using the JNDI API. J2EE applications always use the JNDI API.

With the J2EE Application Server, you use a tool called `asadmin` to perform administrative tasks. For help on the tool, type `asadmin` with no arguments.

## Connection Factories

A *connection factory* is the object a client uses to create a connection with a provider. A connection factory encapsulates a set of connection configuration parameters that has been defined by an administrator. Each connection factory is an instance of either the `QueueConnectionFactory` or the `TopicConnectionFactory` interface.

With the J2EE Application Server, you create new queue or topic connection factories by using the following commands (all on one line):

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype  
javax.jms.QueueConnectionFactory --property  
imqBrokerHostPort=7676:imqBrokerHostName=localhost jndi_name
```

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype  
javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory --property  
imqBrokerHostPort=7676:imqBrokerHostName=localhost jndi_name
```

At the beginning of a JMS client program, you usually perform a JNDI lookup of the connection factory. The connection factory itself is specific to one domain or the other. However, you normally assign it to a `ConnectionFactory` object.

Calling the `InitialContext` method with no parameters results in a search of the current classpath for a vendor-specific file named `jndi.properties`. This file indicates which JNDI implementation to use and which namespace to use.

For example, the following code fragment obtains an `InitialContext` object and uses it to look up the `QueueConnectionFactory` and the `TopicConnectionFactory` by name, then assigns each to a `ConnectionFactory` object:

```
Context ctx = new InitialContext();

ConnectionFactory connectionFactory1 =
    (ConnectionFactory) ctx.lookup("QueueConnectionFactory");

ConnectionFactory connectionFactory2 =
    (ConnectionFactory) ctx.lookup("TopicConnectionFactory");
```

## Destinations

A *destination* is the object a client uses to specify the target of messages it produces and the source of messages it consumes. In the PTP messaging domain, destinations are called queues. In the pub/sub messaging domain, destinations are called topics.

Creating destinations using the J2EE Application Server is a two-step process. You create a JMS resource that specifies the JNDI name of the destination. You also create a physical destination to which the JNDI name refers.

To create a queue, you would use the following commands (all on one line)

```
asadmin create-jmsdest --user admin --desttype queue
    queuename

asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype
    javax.jms.Queue --property imqDestinationName=queuename
    jndiname
```



To create a topic, you would use the following commands:

```
asadmin create-jmsdest --user admin --desttype topic  
topicname
```

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype  
javax.jms.Topic --property imqDestinationName=topicname  
jndiname
```

A JMS application may use multiple queues and/or topics.

In addition to looking up a connection factory, you usually look up a destination. Like connection factories, destinations are specific to one domain or the other. You normally assign the destination to a `Destination` object. In order to preserve the semantics of queues and topics, however, you cast the object to a destination of the appropriate type.

For example, the following line of code performs a JNDI lookup of the previously created topic `MyTopic` and assigns it to a `Destination` object, after casting it to a `Topic` object:

```
Destination myDest = (Topic) ctx.lookup("MyTopic");
```

The following line of code looks up a queue named `MyQueue` and assigns it to a `Destination` object, after casting it to a `Queue` object:

```
Destination myDest = (Queue) ctx.lookup("MyQueue");
```

With the common interfaces, you can mix or match connection factories and destinations. That is, you can look up a `QueueConnectionFactory` and use it with a `Topic`, and you can look up a `TopicConnectionFactory` and use it with a `Queue`. The behavior of the application will depend on the kind of destination you use, not on the kind of connection factory you use.

## Connections

A *connection* encapsulates a virtual connection with a JMS provider. A connection could represent an open TCP/IP socket between a client and a provider service daemon. You use a connection to create one or more sessions.

Connections implement the `Connection` interface. Once you have a `ConnectionFactory` object, you can use it to create a `Connection`:

```
Connection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection();
```

When an application completes, you need to close any connections that you have created. Failure to close a connection can cause resources not to be released by the JMS provider. Closing a connection also closes its sessions and their message producers and message consumers.

```
connection.close();
```

Before your application can consume messages, you must call the connection's `start` method; for details, see [Message Consumers](#) (page 699). If you want to stop message delivery temporarily without closing the connection, you call the `stop` method.

## Sessions

A *session* is a single-threaded context for producing and consuming messages. You use sessions to create message producers, message consumers, and messages. Sessions serialize the execution of message listeners; for details, see [Message Listeners](#) (page 700).

A session provides a transactional context with which to group a set of sends and receives into an atomic unit of work. For details, see [Using JMS API Local Transactions](#) (page 735).

Sessions implement the `Session` interface. After you create a `Connection` object, you use it to create a `Session`:

```
Session session = connection.createSession(false,  
    Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);
```

The first argument means that the session is not transacted; the second means that the session automatically acknowledges messages when they have been received successfully. (For more information, see [Controlling Message Acknowledgment](#), page 724.)

To create a transacted session, use the following code:

```
Session session = connection.createSession(true, 0);
```

Here, the first argument means that the session is transacted; the second indicates that message acknowledgment is not specified for transacted sessions. For more information on transactions, see *Using JMS API Local Transactions* (page 735). For the way JMS transactions work in J2EE applications, see *Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application* (page 743).

## Message Producers

A *message producer* is an object created by a session and is used for sending messages to a destination. It implements the `MessageProducer` interface.

You use a `Session` to create a `MessageProducer` for a destination. Here, the first example creates a producer for the destination `myQueue`, the second for the destination `myTopic`:

```
MessageProducer producer = session.createProducer(myQueue);
```

```
MessageProducer producer = session.createProducer(myTopic);
```

You can create an unidentified producer by specifying `null` as the argument to `createProducer`. With an unidentified producer, you can wait to specify which destination to send the message to until you send a message.

Once you have created a message producer, you can use it to send messages, using the `send` method:

```
producer.send(message);
```

You have to create the messages first; see *Messages* (page 702).

If you created an unidentified producer, use an overloaded `send` method that specifies the destination as the first parameter. For example:

```
MessageProducer anon_prod = session.createProducer(null);
```

```
anon_prod.send(myQueue, message);
```

## Message Consumers

A *message consumer* is an object created by a session and is used for receiving messages sent to a destination. A message consumer allows a JMS client to register interest in a destination with a JMS provider. The JMS provider manages

the delivery of messages from a destination to the registered consumers of the destination.

A message consumer implements the `MessageConsumer` interface.

For example, you use a `Session` to create a `MessageConsumer` for either a queue or a topic:

```
MessageConsumer consumer = session.createConsumer(myQueue);
```

```
MessageConsumer consumer = session.createConsumer(myTopic);
```

You use the `Session.createDurableSubscriber` method to create a durable topic subscriber. This method is valid only if you are using a topic. For details, see [Creating Durable Subscriptions](#) (page 731).

Once you have created a message consumer, it becomes active, and you can use it to receive messages. You can use the `close` method for a `MessageConsumer` to make the message consumer inactive. Message delivery does not begin until you start the connection you created by calling the `start` method. (Remember always to call the `start` method; forgetting to start the connection is one of the most common JMS programming errors.)

You use the `receive` method to consume a message synchronously. You can use this method at any time after you call the `start` method:

```
connection.start();  
Message m = consumer.receive();
```

```
connection.start();  
Message m = consumer.receive(1000); // time out after a second
```

To consume a message asynchronously, you use a message listener, described in [Message Listeners](#) (page 700).

## Message Listeners

A *message listener* is an object that acts as an asynchronous event handler for messages. This object implements the `MessageListener` interface, which contains one method, `onMessage`. In the `onMessage` method, you define the actions to be taken when a message arrives.

You register the message listener with a specific `MessageConsumer` by using the `setMessageListener` method. For example, if you define a class named `Lis-`

tener that implements the `MessageListener` interface, you can register the message listener as follows:

```
Listener myListener = new Listener();
consumer.setMessageListener(myListener);
```

After you register the message listener, you call the `start` method on the `Connection` to begin message delivery. (If you call `start` before you register the message listener, you are likely to miss messages.)

Once message delivery begins, the message consumer automatically calls the message listener's `onMessage` method whenever a message is delivered. The `onMessage` method takes one argument of type `Message`, which your implementation of the method can cast to any of the other message types (see *Message Bodies*, page 704).

A message listener is not specific to a particular destination type. The same listener can obtain messages from either a queue or a topic, depending on the type of destination for which the message consumer was created. A message listener does, however, usually expect a specific message type and format. Moreover, if it needs to reply to messages, a message listener must either assume a particular destination type or obtain the destination type of the message and create a producer for that destination type.

Your `onMessage` method should handle all exceptions. It must not throw checked exceptions, and throwing a `RuntimeException` is considered a programming error.

The session used to create the message consumer serializes the execution of all message listeners registered with the session. At any time, only one of the session's message listeners is running.

In the J2EE platform, a message-driven bean is a special kind of message listener. For details, see *Using Message-Driven Beans* (page 745).

## Message Selectors

If your messaging application needs to filter the messages it receives, you can use a JMS API message selector, which allows a message consumer to specify the messages it is interested in. Message selectors assign the work of filtering messages to the JMS provider rather than to the application. For an example of an application that uses a message selector, see *A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean* (page 767).

A message selector is a `String` that contains an expression. The syntax of the expression is based on a subset of the SQL92 conditional expression syntax. The message selector in the example selects any message with a `NewsType` property that is set to the value `'Sports'` or `'Opinion'`:

```
NewsType = 'Sports' OR NewsType = 'Opinion'
```

The `createConsumer` and `createDurableSubscriber` methods allow you to specify a message selector as an argument when you create a message consumer.

The message consumer then receives only messages whose headers and properties match the selector. (See [Message Headers](#), page 702, and [Message Properties](#), page 703). A message selector cannot select messages on the basis of the content of the message body.

## Messages

The ultimate purpose of a JMS application is to produce and to consume messages that can then be used by other software applications. JMS messages have a basic format that is simple but highly flexible, allowing you to create messages that match formats used by non-JMS applications on heterogeneous platforms.

A JMS message has three parts: a header, properties, and a body. Only the header is required. The following sections describe these parts:

- Message Headers
- Message Properties (optional)
- Message Bodies (optional)

For complete documentation of message headers, properties, and bodies, see the documentation of the `Message` interface in the API documentation.

## Message Headers

A JMS message header contains a number of predefined fields that contain values that both clients and providers use to identify and to route messages. Table 20–1 lists the JMS message header fields and indicates how their values are set. For example, every message has a unique identifier, represented in the header field `JMSMessageID`. The value of another header field, `JMSDestination`, represents the queue or the topic to which the message is sent. Other fields include a timestamp and a priority level.

Each header field has associated setter and getter methods, which are documented in the description of the `Message` interface. Some header fields are intended to be set by a client, but many are set automatically by the `send` or the `publish` method, which overrides any client-set values.

**Table 20–1** How JMS Message Header Field Values Are Set

Header Field	Set By
JMSDestination	send or publish method
JMSDeliveryMode	send or publish method
JMSExpiration	send or publish method
JMSPriority	send or publish method
JMSMessageID	send or publish method
JMSTimestamp	send or publish method
JMSCorrelationID	Client
JMSReplyTo	Client
JMSType	Client
JMSRedelivered	JMS provider

## Message Properties

You can create and set properties for messages if you need values in addition to those provided by the header fields. You can use properties to provide compatibility with other messaging systems, or you can use them to create message selectors (see *Message Selectors*, page 701). For an example of setting a property to be used as a message selector, see *A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean* (page 767).

The JMS API provides some predefined property names that a provider may support. The use of either these predefined properties or user-defined properties is optional.

## Message Bodies

The JMS API defines five message body formats, also called message types, which allow you to send and to receive data in many different forms and provide compatibility with existing messaging formats. Table 20–2 describes these message types.

**Table 20–2** JMS Message Types

Message Type	Body Contains
TextMessage	A <code>java.lang.String</code> object (for example, the contents of an Extensible Markup Language file).
MapMessage	A set of name/value pairs, with names as <code>String</code> objects and values as primitive types in the Java programming language. The entries can be accessed sequentially by enumerator or randomly by name. The order of the entries is undefined.
BytesMessage	A stream of uninterpreted bytes. This message type is for literally encoding a body to match an existing message format.
StreamMessage	A stream of primitive values in the Java programming language, filled and read sequentially.
ObjectMessage	A <code>Serializable</code> object in the Java programming language.
Message	Nothing. Composed of header fields and properties only. This message type is useful when a message body is not required.

The JMS API provides methods for creating messages of each type and for filling in their contents. For example, to create and send a `TextMessage`, you might use the following statements:

```
TextMessage message = session.createTextMessage();
message.setText(msg_text);    // msg_text is a String
producer.send(message);
```

At the consuming end, a message arrives as a generic `Message` object and must be cast to the appropriate message type. You can use one or more getter methods



to extract the message contents. The following code fragment uses the `getText` method:

```
Message m = consumer.receive();
if (m instanceof TextMessage) {
    TextMessage message = (TextMessage) m;
    System.out.println("Reading message: " + message.getText());
} else {
    // Handle error
}
```

## Exception Handling

The root class for exceptions thrown by JMS API methods is `JMSEException`. Catching `JMSEException` provides a generic way of handling all exceptions related to the JMS API. The `JMSEException` class includes the following subclasses, which are described in the API documentation:

- `IllegalStateException`
- `InvalidClientIDException`
- `InvalidDestinationException`
- `InvalidSelectorException`
- `JMSSecurityException`
- `MessageEOFException`
- `MessageFormatException`
- `MessageNotReadableException`
- `MessageNotWriteableException`
- `ResourceAllocationException`
- `TransactionInProgressException`
- `TransactionRolledBackException`

All the examples in the tutorial catch and handle `JMSEException` when it is appropriate to do so.

## Writing Simple JMS Client Applications

This section shows how to create, package, and run simple JMS client programs packaged as standalone J2EE application clients. These clients access a server

based on J2EE technology (“J2EE server”). The clients demonstrate the basic tasks that a JMS application must perform:

- Creating a connection and a session
- Creating message producers and consumers
- Sending and receiving messages

In a J2EE application, some of these tasks are performed, in whole or in part, by the container. If you learn about these tasks, you will have a good basis for understanding how a JMS application works on the J2EE platform.

The section covers the following topics:

- Setting your environment to run J2EE applications
- An example that uses synchronous message receives
- An example that uses a message listener
- Running JMS clients on multiple systems

Each example uses two programs: one that sends messages and one that receives them. You can run the programs in two terminal windows.

When you write a JMS application to run in a J2EE application, you use many of the same methods in much the same sequence as you do for a standalone application client. However, there are some significant differences. Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application (page 743) describes these differences, and the next chapter provides examples that illustrate them.

# Setting Your Environment for Running Applications

Before you can run the examples, you need to ensure that your environment is set appropriately. Table 20–3 shows how to set the environment variables needed to run J2EE applications on Microsoft Windows and UNIX platforms.

**Table 20–3** Environment Settings for Compiling and Running J2EE Applications

Platform	Variable Name	Values
Microsoft Windows	%JAVA_HOME%	Directory in which the Java 2 SDK, Standard Edition, version 1.4, is installed
	%PATH%	Include <J2EE_HOME>\bin
UNIX	\$JAVA_HOME	Directory in which the Java 2 SDK, Standard Edition, version 1.4, is installed
	\$PATH	Include <J2EE_HOME>/bin

When you install the tutorial, a `build.properties` file is created in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/`. In this file, the property `j2ee.home` is set to the location of your J2EE Application Server installation.

The examples for this section are in the following directory:

`<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/`

## A Simple Example of Synchronous Message Receives

This section describes the sending and receiving programs in an example that uses the `receive` method to consume messages synchronously. This section then explains how to compile, package, and run the programs, using the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.

The following sections describe the steps in creating and running the example:

- Writing the Client Programs
- Compiling the Clients
- Starting the JMS Provider
- Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples
- Packaging the Clients
- Running the Clients

## Writing the Client Programs

The sending program, `SimpleProducer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Performs a JNDI lookup of the `ConnectionFactory` and `Destination`:

```
/*
 * Create a JNDI API InitialContext object if none exists
 * yet.
 */
try {
    jndiContext = new InitialContext();
} catch (NamingException e) {
    System.out.println("Could not create JNDI API " +
        "context: " + e.toString());
    System.exit(1);
}

/*
 * Look up connection factory and destination. If either
 * does not exist, exit. If you look up a
 * TopicConnectionFactory instead of a
 * QueueConnectionFactory, program behavior is the same.
 */
try {
    connectionFactory = (ConnectionFactory)
        jndiContext.lookup("jms/QueueConnectionFactory");
    if (destType.equals("queue")) {
        dest = (Queue) jndiContext.lookup(destName);
    } else if (destType.equals("topic")) {
        dest = (Topic) jndiContext.lookup(destName);
    } else {
```

```

        throw new Exception("Invalid destination type" +
            "; must be queue or topic");
    }
} catch (Exception e) {
    System.out.println("JNDI API lookup failed: " +
        e.toString());
    System.exit(1);
}
}

2. Creates a Connection and a Session:
connection = connectionFactory.createConnection();
session = connection.createSession(false,
    Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);

3. Creates a MessageProducer and a TextMessage:
producer = session.createProducer(dest);
message = session.createTextMessage();

4. Sends one or more messages to the destination:
for (int i = 0; i < NUM_MSGS; i++) {
    message.setText("This is message " + (i + 1));
    System.out.println("Sending message: " +
        message.getText());
    producer.send(message);
}

5. Sends an empty control message to indicate the end of the message stream:
producer.send(session.createMessage());

6. Closes the connection in a finally block, automatically closing the ses-
sion and MessageProducer:
} finally {
    if (connection != null) {
        try {
            connection.close();
        } catch (JMSException e) {}
    }
}
}

```

The receiving program, `SimpleSynchConsumer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Performs a JNDI lookup of the `ConnectionFactory` and `Destination`.

2. Creates a Connection and a Session
3. Creates a MessageConsumer:
 

```
consumer = session.createConsumer(dest);
```
4. Starts the connection, causing message delivery to begin:
 

```
connection.start();
```
5. Receives the messages sent to the destination until the end-of-message-stream control message is received:
 

```
while (true) {
    Message m = consumer.receive(1);
    if (m != null) {
        if (m instanceof TextMessage) {
            message = (TextMessage) m;
            System.out.println("Reading message: " +
                message.getText());
        } else {
            break;
        }
    }
}
```
6. Closes the connection in a finally block, automatically closing the session and MessageConsumer.

The receive method can be used in several ways to perform a synchronous receive. If you specify no arguments or an argument of 0, the method blocks indefinitely until a message arrives:

```
Message m = consumer.receive();
```

```
Message m = consumer.receive(0);
```

For a simple client program, this may not matter. But if you do not want your program to consume system resources unnecessarily, use a timed synchronous receive. Do one of the following:

- Call the receive method with a timeout argument greater than 0:
 

```
Message m = consumer.receive(1); // 1 millisecond
```
- Call the receiveNowait method, which receives a message only if one is available:
 

```
Message m = consumer.receiveNowait();
```

The `SimpleSynchConsumer` program uses an indefinite `while` loop to receive messages, calling `receive` with a timeout argument. Calling `receiveNowait` would have the same effect.

## Compiling the Clients

You can compile the examples using the `asant` tool.

To compile the examples, do the following.

1. Verify that you have set the environment variables shown in Table 20–3.
2. In a terminal window, go to the following directory:  
`<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/`
3. Type the following command:  
`asant build`

This command uses the `build.xml` file in the `simple` directory to compile all the source files in the directory. The class files are placed in the `build` directory.

## Starting the JMS Provider

When you use the J2EE Application Server, your JMS provider is the Application Server. Start the server as follows:

- On Windows systems, choose `Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Start Application Server`.
- On UNIX systems, use the following command:  
`asadmin start-domain`

## Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples

If you are in a hurry, you can create the administered objects described in this section by using the following `asant` target:

```
asant create-resources
```

This target is in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/common/targets.xml`, so you can use it from any of the JMS examples directories.

To create these objects manually, use the `asadmin` command. The following commands create two connection factories:

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype
javax.jms.QueueConnectionFactory --property
imqAddressList=localhost jms/QueueConnectionFactory

asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype
javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory --property
imqAddressList=localhost jms/TopicConnectionFactory
```

The following `asadmin` commands create a queue whose JNDI name is `jms/Queue` and a topic whose JNDI name is `jms/Topic`.

```
asadmin create-jmsdest --user admin --desttype queue
PhysicalQueue

asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype
javax.jms.Queue --property imqDestinationName=PhysicalQueue
jms/Queue

asadmin create-jmsdest --user admin --desttype topic
PhysicalTopic

asadmin create-jms-resource --user admin --resourcetype
javax.jms.Topic --property imqDestinationName=PhysicalTopic
jms/Topic
```

After you create these objects, reconfigure the server, then stop and restart the server:

```
asant reconfig_common
asadmin stop-domain
asadmin start-domain
```

To verify that the destinations and resources have been created, use the following commands:

```
asadmin list-jmsdest --user admin

asadmin list-jms-resources --user admin
```



## Packaging the Clients

In order to run these examples using the J2EE Application Server, you need to package each one in a standalone client JAR file.

First, start the J2EE Deploytool:

- On Windows systems, choose Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Deploytool.
- On UNIX systems, use the `deploytool` command.

Package the SimpleProducer example as follows:

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
2. Select the radio button labeled Create New Stand-Alone AppClient Module.
3. Click Browse next to the AppClient Location field and navigate to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/` directory.
4. Type SimpleProducer in the File Name field.
5. Type SimpleProducer in the AppClient Display Name field.
6. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
7. In the dialog box, locate the build directory. Select SimpleProducer.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK
8. In the General screen, select SimpleProducer in the Main Class combo box.
9. Click Next.
10. Click Finish.

Package the SimpleSynchConsumer example the same way, except for the following:

- In Step 4, type SimpleSynchConsumer.jar in the File Name field.
- In Step 5, type SimpleSynchConsumer in the AppClient Display Name field.
- In Step 7, select SimpleSynchConsumer.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
- In Step 8, select SimpleSynchConsumer in the Main Class combo box.

## Running the Clients

You run the sample programs using the `appclient` command. Each of the programs takes command-line arguments: a destination name, a destination type, and, for `SimpleProducer`, a number of messages.

Run the clients as follows.

1. Run the `SimpleProducer` program, sending three messages to the queue `jms/Queue`:

```
appclient -client SimpleProducer.jar jms/Queue queue 3
```

The output of the program looks like this, along with some output from the `AppClient` container:

```
Destination name is jms/Queue, type is queue
Sending message: This is message 1
Sending message: This is message 2
Sending message: This is message 3
```

The messages are now in the queue, waiting to be received.

2. In the same window, run the `SimpleSynchConsumer` program, specifying the queue name and type:

```
appclient -client SimpleSynchConsumer.jar jms/Queue queue
```

The output of the program looks like this:

```
Destination name is jms/Queue, type is queue
Reading message: This is message 1
Reading message: This is message 2
Reading message: This is message 3
```

3. Now try running the programs in the opposite order. Run the `SimpleSynchConsumer` program. It displays the queue name and then appears to hang, waiting for messages.
4. In a different terminal window, run the `SimpleProducer` program. When the messages have been sent, the `SimpleSynchConsumer` program receives them and exits.

5. Now run the `SimpleProducer` program using a topic instead of a queue. On a Microsoft Windows system, the command looks like this:

```
appclient -client SimpleProducer.jar jms/Topic topic 3
```

The output of the program looks like this:

```
Destination name is jms/Topic, type is topic
Sending message: This is message 1
Sending message: This is message 2
Sending message: This is message 3
```

6. Now run the SimpleSynchConsumer program using the topic. On a Microsoft Windows system, the command looks like this:

```
appclient -client SimpleSynchConsumer.jar jms/Topic topic
```

The result, however, is different. Because you are using a topic, messages that were sent before you started the consumer cannot be received. (See Publish/Subscribe Messaging Domain, page 692, for details.) Instead of receiving the messages, the program appears to hang.

7. Run the SimpleProducer program again in another terminal window. Now the SimpleSynchConsumer program receives the messages:

```
Destination name is jms/Topic, type is topic
Reading message: This is message 1
Reading message: This is message 2
Reading message: This is message 3
```

## A Simple Example of Asynchronous Message Consumption

This section describes the receiving programs in an example that uses a message listener to consume messages asynchronously. This section then explains how to compile and run the programs, using the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.

The following sections describe the steps in creating and running the example:

- Writing the client programs
- Compiling the clients
- Starting the JMS provider
- Creating the JMS administered objects
- Running the clients
- Deleting the destinations and stopping the server

## Writing the Client Programs

The sending program is `SimpleProducer.java`, the same program used in the example in *A Simple Example of Synchronous Message Receives* (page 707). You may, however, want to comment out the following line of code, where the producer sends a non-text control message to indicate the end of the messages:

```
producer.send(session.createMessage());
```

An asynchronous consumer normally runs indefinitely. This one runs until the user types the letter q or Q to stop the program, so it does not use the non-text control message.

The receiving program, `SimpleAsynchConsumer.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Performs a JNDI lookup of the `ConnectionFactory` and `Destination`
2. Creates a `Connection` and a `Session`
3. Creates a `MessageConsumer`
4. Creates an instance of the `TextListener` class and registers it as the message listener for the `MessageConsumer`:

```
listener = new TextListener();
consumer.setMessageListener(listener);
```

5. Starts the connection, causing message delivery to begin
6. Listens for the messages published to the destination, stopping when the user types the character q or Q:

```
System.out.println("To end program, type Q or q, " +
    "then <return>");
inputStreamReader = new InputStreamReader(System.in);
while (!((answer == 'q') || (answer == 'Q'))) {
    try {
        answer = (char) inputStreamReader.read();
    } catch (IOException e) {
        System.out.println("I/O exception: "
            + e.toString());
    }
}
```

7. Closes the connection, which automatically closes the session and `MessageConsumer`

The message listener, `TextListener.java`, follows these steps:

1. When a message arrives, the `onMessage` method is called automatically.
2. The `onMessage` method converts the incoming message to a `TextMessage` and displays its content. If the message is not a text message, it reports this fact:

```
public void onMessage(Message message) {
    TextMessage msg = null;

    try {
        if (message instanceof TextMessage) {
            msg = (TextMessage) message;
            System.out.println("Reading message: " +
                               msg.getText());
        } else {
            System.out.println("Message is not a " +
                               "TextMessage");
        }
    } catch (JMSEException e) {
        System.out.println("JMSEException in onMessage(): " +
                           e.toString());
    } catch (Throwable t) {
        System.out.println("Exception in onMessage(): " +
                           t.getMessage());
    }
}
```

## Compiling the Clients

To compile the example, do the following.

1. Verify that you have set the environment variables shown in Table 20–3.
2. Compile the programs if you did not do so before or if you edited `SimpleProducer.java` as described in Writing the Client Programs (page 716):  
`asant build`

## Starting the JMS Provider

If you did not do so before, start the J2EE Application Server in another terminal window.

You will use the connection factories and destinations you created in Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples (page 711).

## Packaging the SimpleAsynchConsumer Client

If you did not do so before, start the J2EE Deploytool.

Package the SimpleAsynchConsumer example as follows:

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
2. Select the radio button labeled Create New Stand-Alone AppClient Module.
3. Click Browse next to the AppClient Location field and navigate to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/` directory.
4. Type SimpleAsynchConsumer in the File Name field.
5. Type SimpleAsynchConsumer in the AppClient Display Name field.
6. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
7. In the dialog box, locate the build directory. Select SimpleAsynchConsumer.class and TextListener.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK
8. In the General screen, select SimpleAsynchConsumer in the Main Class combo box.
9. Click Next.
10. Click Finish.

If you did not already package the SimpleProducer program, do so by following the instructions in Packaging the Clients (page 713).

## Running the Clients

As before, you run the sample programs using the `appclient` command.

Run the clients as follows.

1. Run the SimpleAsynchConsumer program, specifying the topic `jms/Topic` and its type.  
`appclient -client SimpleAsynchConsumer.jar jms/Topic topic`

The program displays the following lines and appears to hang:

```
Destination name is jms/Topic, type is topic  
To end program, type Q or q, then <return>
```

2. In another terminal window, run the SimpleProducer program, sending three messages. The commands look like this:

```
appclient -client SimpleProducer.jar jms/Topic topic 3
```

The output of the program looks like this:

```
Destination name is jms/Topic, type is topic  
Sending message: This is message 1  
Sending message: This is message 2  
Sending message: This is message 3
```

In the other window, the SimpleAsynchConsumer program displays the following:

```
Destination name is jms/Topic, type is topic  
To end program, type Q or q, then <return>  
Reading message: This is message 1  
Reading message: This is message 2  
Reading message: This is message 3
```

If you did not edit SimpleProducer.java, the following line also appears:

```
Message is not a TextMessage
```

3. Type Q or q to stop the program.
4. Now run the programs using a queue. In this case, as with the synchronous example, you can run the SimpleProducer program first, because there is no timing dependency between the sender and receiver:

```
appclient -client SimpleProducer.jar jms/Queue queue 3
```

The output of the program looks like this:

```
Destination name is jms/Queue, type is queue  
Sending message: This is message 1  
Sending message: This is message 2  
Sending message: This is message 3
```

5. Run the SimpleAsynchConsumer program:

```
appclient -client SimpleAsynchConsumer.jar jms/Queue queue
```

The output of the program looks like this:

```

Destination name is jms/Queue, type is queue
To end program, type Q or q, then <return>
Reading message: This is message 1
Reading message: This is message 2
Reading message: This is message 3

```

6. Type Q or q to stop the program.

## Running JMS Client Programs on Multiple Systems

JMS client programs can communicate with each other when they are running on different systems in a network. The systems must be visible to each other by name—the UNIX host name or the Microsoft Windows computer name—and must both be running the J2EE server. You do not have to install the tutorial on both systems; you can use the tutorial installed on earth if you have access to the file system on earth.

Suppose that you want to run the `SimpleProducer` program on one system, mars, and the `SimpleSynchConsumer` program on another system, earth. To do so, follow these steps.

1. Start the J2EE Application Server on earth.
2. Start the J2EE Application Server on mars.
3. On earth, create a `QueueConnectionFactory` object, using the following asant target:

```
asant add-local-factory
```

This command creates a connection factory named `jms/EarthQueueConnectionFactory`.

4. On mars, create a connection factory with the same name that points to the server on earth. Use the following command, replacing *sys-name* with the name of your remote system:

```

asadmin create-jms-resource --resourcetype
javax.jms.QueueConnectionFactory --property
imqAddressList=sys-name jms/EarthQueueConnectionFactory

```

You can also use the asant target `add-remote-factory`.

If the JMS service on the remote system uses a port number other than the default (7676), use the syntax `imqAddressList=sys-name:port-number`.



5. Reconfigure the server:

```
asant reconfig_common
```

6. Stop and restart the server.

7. To verify that the factories were created, use the following command:

```
asadmin list-jms-resources --user admin
```

8. In each source program, change the line that looks up the connection factory so that it refers to the new connection factory:

```
connectionFactory = (ConnectionFactory)
    jndiContext.lookup("jms/EarthQueueConnectionFactory");
```

9. Recompile the programs:

```
asant build
```

10. Repackage the SimpleProducer and SimpleSynchConsumer programs as described in Packaging the Clients (page 713). Name the files ProducerRemote.jar and SynchConsumerRemote.jar if you don't want to overwrite the other JAR files.

11. Run SimpleProducer on mars:

```
appclient -client ProducerRemote.jar jms/Queue queue 3
```

12. Run SimpleSynchConsumer on earth:

```
appclient -client SynchConsumerRemote.jar jms/Queue queue
```

Because both connection factories have the same name, you can run either the producer or the consumer on either system. (Note: A bug in the JMS provider in the J2EE Application Server may cause a runtime failure to create a connection to systems that use the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol [DHCP] to obtain an IP address.)

For examples showing how to deploy J2EE applications on two different systems, see *An Application Example that Consumes Messages from a Remote J2EE Server* (page 790) and *An Application Example that Deploys a Message-Driven Bean on Two J2EE Servers* (page 799).

## Deleting the Connection Factory and Stopping the Server

You will need the connection factory `jms/EarthQueueConnectionFactory` in the next chapter. However, if you wish to delete it, use the following command:

```
asant delete-factory
```

Remember to delete the connection factory on both systems.

You can use the `delete-resources` target to delete the destinations and connection factories you created in *Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples* (page 711). However, we recommend that you keep them, because they will be used in most of the JMS examples. Once you have created them, they will be available whenever you restart the J2EE Application Server.

Delete the class files for the programs as follows:

```
asant clean
```

If you wish, you can manually delete the client JAR files.

You can stop the J2EE Application Server as well, but you will need it to run the sample programs in the next section.

## Creating Robust JMS Applications

This section explains how to use features of the JMS API to achieve the level of reliability and performance your application requires. Many people choose to implement JMS applications because they cannot tolerate dropped or duplicate messages and require that every message be received once and only once. The JMS API provides this functionality.

The most reliable way to produce a message is to send a `PERSISTENT` message within a transaction. JMS messages are `PERSISTENT` by default. A *transaction* is a unit of work into which you can group a series of operations, such as message sends and receives, so that the operations either all succeed or all fail. For details, see *Specifying Message Persistence* (page 728) and *Using JMS API Local Transactions* (page 735).

The most reliable way to consume a message is to do so within a transaction, either from a queue or from a durable subscription to a topic. For details, see

Creating Temporary Destinations (page 730), Creating Durable Subscriptions (page 731), and Using JMS API Local Transactions (page 735).

For other applications, a lower level of reliability can reduce overhead and improve performance. You can send messages with varying priority levels—see Setting Message Priority Levels (page 729)—and you can set them to expire after a certain length of time (see Allowing Messages to Expire, page 729).

The JMS API provides several ways to achieve various kinds and degrees of reliability. This section divides them into two categories:

- Using Basic Reliability Mechanisms
- Using Advanced Reliability Mechanisms

The following sections describe these features as they apply to JMS clients. Some of the features work differently in J2EE applications; in these cases, the differences are noted here and are explained in detail in Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application (page 743).

This section includes three sample programs, which you can find in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/src/`, along with a utility class called `SampleUtilities.java`.

To compile the programs in advance and create the administered objects they use, go to this directory and use the following `asant` targets:

```
asant build
asant add-objects
asant reconfig_common
```

Stop and restart the server:

```
asadmin stop-domain
asadmin start-domain
```

## Using Basic Reliability Mechanisms

The basic mechanisms for achieving or affecting reliable message delivery are as follows:

- **Controlling message acknowledgment.** You can specify various levels of control over message acknowledgment.
- **Specifying message persistence.** You can specify that messages are persistent, meaning that they must not be lost in the event of a provider failure.
- **Setting message priority levels.** You can set various priority levels for messages, which can affect the order in which the messages are delivered.
- **Allowing messages to expire.** You can specify an expiration time for messages, so that they will not be delivered if they are obsolete.
- **Creating temporary destinations.** You can create temporary destinations that last only for the duration of the connection in which they are created.

## Controlling Message Acknowledgment

Until a JMS message has been acknowledged, it is not considered to be successfully consumed. The successful consumption of a message ordinarily takes place in three stages.

1. The client receives the message.
2. The client processes the message.
3. The message is acknowledged. Acknowledgment is initiated either by the JMS provider or by the client, depending on the session acknowledgment mode.

In transacted sessions (see *Using JMS API Local Transactions*, page 735), acknowledgment happens automatically when a transaction is committed. If a transaction is rolled back, all consumed messages are redelivered.

In nontransacted sessions, when and how a message is acknowledged depends on the value specified as the second argument of the `createSession` method. The three possible argument values are:

- `Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE`. The session automatically acknowledges a client's receipt of a message either when the client has successfully returned from a call to `receive` or when the `MessageListener` it has called to process the message returns successfully. A synchronous receive

in an `AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` session is the one exception to the rule that message consumption is a three-stage process as described above.

In this case, the receipt and acknowledgment take place in one step, followed by the processing of the message.

- `Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE`. A client acknowledges a message by calling the message's `acknowledge` method. In this mode, acknowledgment takes place on the session level: Acknowledging a consumed message automatically acknowledges the receipt of *all* messages that have been consumed by its session. For example, if a message consumer consumes ten messages and then acknowledges the fifth message delivered, all ten messages are acknowledged.
- `Session.DUPS_OK_ACKNOWLEDGE`. This option instructs the session to lazily acknowledge the delivery of messages. This is likely to result in the delivery of some duplicate messages if the JMS provider fails, so it should be used only by consumers that can tolerate duplicate messages. (If the JMS provider redelivers a message, it must set the value of the `JMSRedelivered` message header to `true`.) This option can reduce session overhead by minimizing the work the session does to prevent duplicates.

If messages have been received from a queue but not acknowledged when a session terminates, the JMS provider retains them and redelivers them when a consumer next accesses the queue. The provider also retains unacknowledged messages for a terminated session with a durable `TopicSubscriber`. (See *Creating Durable Subscriptions*, page 731.) Unacknowledged messages for a nondurable `TopicSubscriber` are dropped when the session is closed.

If you use a queue or a durable subscription, you can use the `Session.recover` method to stop a nontransacted session and restart it with its first unacknowledged message. In effect, the session's series of delivered messages is reset to the point after its last acknowledged message. The messages it now delivers may be different from those that were originally delivered, if messages have expired or higher-priority messages have arrived. For a nondurable `TopicSubscriber`, the provider may drop unacknowledged messages when its session is recovered.

The sample program in the next section demonstrates two ways to ensure that a message will not be acknowledged until processing of the message is complete.

## A Message Acknowledgment Example

The `AckEquivExample.java` program in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/src/` shows how the

following two scenarios both ensure that a message will not be acknowledged until processing of it is complete:

- Using an asynchronous message consumer—a message listener—in an `AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` session
- Using a synchronous receiver in a `CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE` session

With a message listener, the automatic acknowledgment happens when the `onMessage` method returns—that is, after message processing has finished. With a synchronous receiver, the client acknowledges the message after processing is complete. (If you use `AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE` with a synchronous receive, the acknowledgment happens immediately after the receive call; if any subsequent processing steps fail, the message cannot be redelivered.)

The program contains a `SynchSender` class, a `SynchReceiver` class, an `AsynchSubscriber` class with a `TextListener` class, a `MultiplePublisher` class, a `main` method, and a method that runs the other classes' threads.

The program uses the following objects:

- `jms/Queue` and `jms/Topic`, the queue and topic that you created in Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples (page 711)
- `ControlQueue`, an additional queue
- `jms/DurableTopicConnectionFactory`, a connection factory with a client ID (see Creating Durable Subscriptions (page 731) for more information)

If you did not use the `asant` target `add-objects` to create the objects, use the following commands to add the objects for this example only:

```
asant add-ctrlQ
asant add-durable-factory
```

If you did not do so previously, compile the source file:

```
asant build
```

To package the program, perform the following steps:

1. If you did not do so before, start the J2EE Deploytool.
2. Choose `File→New→Application Client JAR` to start the Application Client Wizard.
3. Select the radio button labeled `Create New Stand-Alone AppClient Module`.

4. Click Browse next to the AppClient Location field and navigate to the <INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/ directory.
5. Type AckEquivExample in the File Name field.
6. Type AckEquivExample in the AppClient Display Name field.
7. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
8. In the dialog box, locate the build directory. Select the seven classes whose names begin with AckEquivExample from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
9. Select the two classes whose names begin with SampleUtilities from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
10. In the General screen, select AckEquivExample in the Main Class combo box.
11. Click Next.
12. Click Finish.

To run the program, use the following command:

```
appclient -client AckEquivExample.jar
```

The output, interspersed with other messages from the AppClient container, looks like this:

```
Queue name is ControlQueue
Queue name is jms/Queue
Topic name is jms/Topic
Connection factory name is jms/DurableTopicConnectionFactory
SENDER: Created client-acknowledge session
SENDER: Sending message: Here is a client-acknowledge message
RECEIVER: Created client-acknowledge session
RECEIVER: Processing message: Here is a client-acknowledge
message
RECEIVER: Now I'll acknowledge the message
PUBLISHER: Created auto-acknowledge session
SUBSCRIBER: Created auto-acknowledge session
PUBLISHER: Receiving synchronize messages from ControlQueue;
count = 1
SUBSCRIBER: Sending synchronize message to ControlQueue
PUBLISHER: Received synchronize message; expect 0 more
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
message 1
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
message 2
SUBSCRIBER: Processing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
```

```
message 1
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
message 3
SUBSCRIBER: Processing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
message 2
SUBSCRIBER: Processing message: Here is an auto-acknowledge
message 3
```

## Specifying Message Persistence

The JMS API supports two delivery modes for messages to specify whether messages are lost if the JMS provider fails. These delivery modes are fields of the `DeliveryMode` interface.

- The `PERSISTENT` delivery mode, which is the default, instructs the JMS provider to take extra care to ensure that a message is not lost in transit in case of a JMS provider failure. A message sent with this delivery mode is logged to stable storage when it is sent.
- The `NON_PERSISTENT` delivery mode does not require the JMS provider to store the message or otherwise guarantee that it is not lost if the provider fails.

You can specify the delivery mode in either of two ways.

- You can use the `setDeliveryMode` method of the `MessageProducer` interface to set the delivery mode for all messages sent by that producer. For example, the following call sets the delivery mode to `NON_PERSISTENT` for a producer:
- You can use the long form of the `send` or the `publish` method to set the delivery mode for a specific message. The second argument sets the delivery mode. For example, the following `send` call sets the delivery mode for message to `NON_PERSISTENT`:

```
producer.setDeliveryMode(DeliveryMode.NON_PERSISTENT);
```

```
producer.send(message, DeliveryMode.NON_PERSISTENT, 3,
10000);
```

The third and fourth arguments set the priority level and expiration time, which are described in the next two subsections.

If you do not specify a delivery mode, the default is `PERSISTENT`. Using the `NON_PERSISTENT` delivery mode may improve performance and reduce storage overhead, but you should use it only if your application can afford to miss messages.



## Setting Message Priority Levels

You can use message priority levels to instruct the JMS provider to deliver urgent messages first. You can set the priority level in either of two ways.

- You can use the `setPriority` method of the `MessageProducer` interface to set the priority level for all messages sent by that producer. For example, the following call sets a priority level of 7 for a producer:

```
producer.setPriority(7);
```

- You can use the long form of the `send` or the `publish` method to set the priority level for a specific message. The third argument sets the priority level. For example, the following `send` call sets the priority level for message to 3:

```
producer.send(message, DeliveryMode.NON_PERSISTENT, 3,  
10000);
```

The ten levels of priority range from 0 (lowest) to 9 (highest). If you do not specify a priority level, the default level is 4. A JMS provider tries to deliver higher-priority messages before lower-priority ones but does not have to deliver messages in exact order of priority.

## Allowing Messages to Expire

By default, a message never expires. If a message will become obsolete after a certain period, however, you may want to set an expiration time. You can do this in either of two ways.

- You can use the `setTimeToLive` method of the `MessageProducer` interface to set a default expiration time for all messages sent by that producer. For example, the following call sets a time to live of one minute for a producer:

```
producer.setTimeToLive(60000);
```

- You can use the long form of the `send` or the `publish` method to set an expiration time for a specific message. The fourth argument sets the expiration time in milliseconds. For example, the following `send` call sets a time to live of 10 seconds:

```
producer.send(message, DeliveryMode.NON_PERSISTENT, 3,  
10000);
```

If the specified *timeToLive* value is 0, the message never expires.

When the message is sent, the specified *timeToLive* is added to the current time to give the expiration time. Any message not delivered before the specified expiration time is destroyed. The destruction of obsolete messages conserves storage and computing resources.

## Creating Temporary Destinations

Normally, you create JMS destinations—queues and topics—administratively rather than programmatically. Your JMS provider includes a tool that you use to create and to remove destinations, and it is common for destinations to be long lasting.

The JMS API also enables you to create destinations—`TemporaryQueue` and `TemporaryTopic` objects—that last only for the duration of the connection in which they are created. You create these destinations dynamically, using the `Session.createTemporaryQueue` and the `Session.createTemporaryTopic` methods.

The only message consumers that can consume from a temporary destination are those created by the same connection that created the destination. Any message producer can send to the temporary destination. If you close the connection that a temporary destination belongs to, the destination is closed and its contents lost.

You can use temporary destinations to implement a simple request/reply mechanism. If you create a temporary destination and specify it as the value of the `JMSReplyTo` message header field when you send a message, the consumer of the message can use the value of the `JMSReplyTo` field as the destination to which it sends a reply. The consumer can also reference the original request by setting the `JMSCorrelationID` header field of the reply message to the value of the `JMSMessageID` header field of the request. For example, an `onMessage` method may create a session so that it can send a reply to the message it receives. It can use code like the following:

```
producer = session.createProducer(msg.getJMSReplyTo());
replyMsg = session.createTextMessage("Consumer " +
    "processed message: " + msg.getText());
replyMsg.setJMSCorrelationID(msg.getJMSMessageID());
producer.send(replyMsg);
```

For more examples, see Chapter 21.

# Using Advanced Reliability Mechanisms

The more advanced mechanisms for achieving reliable message delivery are the following:

- **Creating durable subscriptions.** You can create durable topic subscriptions, which receive messages published while the subscriber is not active. Durable subscriptions offer the reliability of queues to the publish/subscribe message domain.
- **Using local transactions.** You can use local transactions, which allow you to group a series of sends and receives into an atomic unit of work. Transactions are rolled back if they fail at any time.

## Creating Durable Subscriptions

To ensure that a pub/sub application receives all published messages, use PERSISTENT delivery mode for the publishers. In addition, use durable subscriptions for the subscribers.

The `Session.createConsumer` method creates a nondurable subscriber if a topic is specified as the destination. A nondurable subscriber can receive only messages that are published while it is active.

At the cost of higher overhead, you can use the `Session.createDurableSubscriber` method to create a durable subscriber. A durable subscription can have only one active subscriber at a time.

A durable subscriber registers a durable subscription with a unique identity that is retained by the JMS provider. Subsequent subscriber objects with the same identity resume the subscription in the state in which it was left by the previous subscriber. If a durable subscription has no active subscriber, the JMS provider retains the subscription's messages until they are received by the subscription or until they expire.

You establish the unique identity of a durable subscriber by setting the following:

- A client ID for the connection
- A topic and a subscription name for the subscriber

You set the client ID administratively for a client-specific connection factory using the `asadmin` command. For example (all on one line):

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --resourcetype  
javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory --property  
imqAddressList=localhost:imqConfiguredClientID=MyID  
jms/DurableTopicConnectionFactory
```

After using this connection factory to create the connection and the session, you call the `createDurableSubscriber` method with two arguments—the topic and a string that specifies the name of the subscription:

```
String subName = "MySub";  
MessageConsumer topicSubscriber =  
    session.createDurableSubscriber(myTopic, subName);
```

The subscriber becomes active after you start the `Connection` or `TopicConnection`. Later on, you might close the subscriber:

```
topicSubscriber.close();
```

The JMS provider stores the messages sent or published to the topic, as it would store messages sent to a queue. If the program or another application calls `createDurableSubscriber` with the same connection factory and its client ID, the same topic, and the same subscription name, the subscription is reactivated, and the JMS provider delivers the messages that were published while the subscriber was inactive.

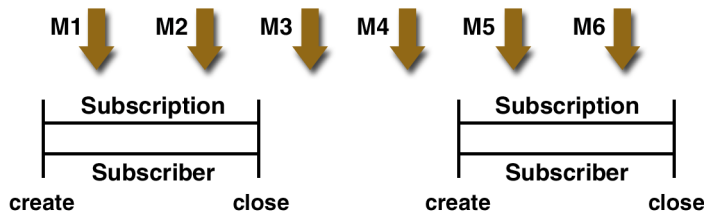
To delete a durable subscription, first close the subscriber, and then use the `unsubscribe` method, with the subscription name as the argument:

```
topicSubscriber.close();  
session.unsubscribe("MySub");
```

The `unsubscribe` method deletes the state that the provider maintains for the subscriber.

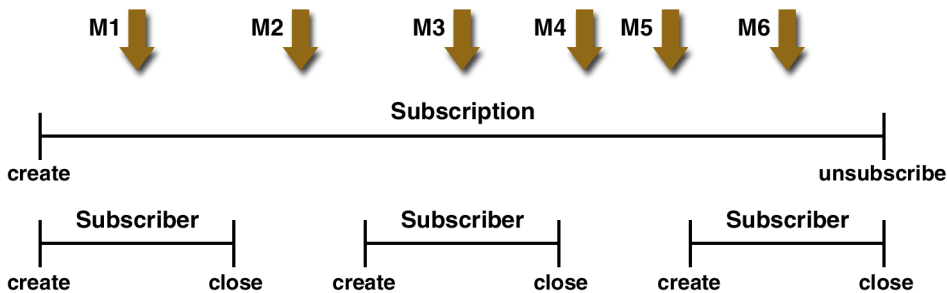
Figure 20–6 and Figure 20–7 show the difference between a nondurable and a durable subscriber. With an ordinary, nondurable, subscriber, the subscriber and the subscription begin and end at the same point and are, in effect, identical. When a subscriber is closed, the subscription ends as well. Here, `create` stands for a call to `Session.createConsumer` with a `Topic` argument, and `close` stands for a call to `MessageConsumer.close`. Any messages published to the topic between the time of the first `close` and the time of the second `create` are

not consumed by the subscriber. In Figure 20–6, the subscriber consumes messages M1, M2, M5, and M6, but messages M3 and M4 are lost.



**Figure 20–6** Nondurable Subscribers and Subscriptions

With a durable subscriber, the subscriber can be closed and recreated, but the subscription continues to exist and to hold messages until the application calls the unsubscribe method. In Figure 20–7, create stands for a call to `Session.createDurableSubscriber`, close stands for a call to `MessageConsumer.close`, and unsubscribe stands for a call to `Session.unsubscribe`. Messages published while the subscriber is closed are received when the subscriber is created again. So even though messages M2, M4, and M5 arrive while the subscriber is closed, they are not lost.



**Figure 20–7** A Durable Subscriber and Subscription

See [A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean \(page 767\)](#) for an example of a J2EE application that uses durable subscriptions. See [A Message Acknowledgment Example \(page 725\)](#) and the next section for examples of client applications that use durable subscriptions.

## A Durable Subscription Example

The `DurableSubscriberExample.java` program in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/src/` shows how durable subscriptions work. It demonstrates that a durable subscription is active even when the subscriber is not active. The program contains a `DurableSubscriber` class, a `MultiplePublisher` class, a main method, and a method that instantiates the classes and calls their methods in sequence.

The program begins like any publish/subscribe program: The subscriber starts, the publisher publishes some messages, and the subscriber receives them. At this point, the subscriber closes itself. The publisher then publishes some messages while the subscriber is not active. The subscriber then restarts and receives the messages.

Before you run this program, compile the source file and create a connection factory with a client ID. If you did not already do so in A Message Acknowledgment Example (page 725), use the following commands:

```
asant build
asant add-durable-factory
asadmin reconfig_common
```

To package the program, perform the following steps:

1. If you did not do so before, start the J2EE Deploytool.
2. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
3. Select the radio button labeled Create New Stand-Alone AppClient Module.
4. Click Browse next to the AppClient Location field and navigate to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/` directory.
5. Type `DurableSubscriberExample` in the File Name field.
6. Type `DurableSubscriberExample` in the AppClient Display Name field.
7. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
8. In the dialog box, locate the build directory. Select the five classes whose names begin with `DurableSubscriberExample` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
9. Select the two classes whose names begin with `SampleUtilities` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.

10. In the General screen, select `DurableSubscriberExample` in the Main Class combo box.
11. Click Next.
12. Click Finish.

Use the following command to run the program. The destination is `jms/Topic`:

```
appclient -client DurableSubscriberExample.jar
```

The output looks something like this:

```
Connection factory without client ID is
jms/TopicConnectionFactory
Connection factory with client ID is
jms/DurableTopicConnectionFactory
Topic name is jms/Topic
Starting subscriber
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 1
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 1
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 2
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 2
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 3
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 3
Closing subscriber
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 4
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 5
PUBLISHER: Publishing message: Here is a message 6
Starting subscriber
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 4
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 5
SUBSCRIBER: Reading message: Here is a message 6
Closing subscriber
Unsubscribing from durable subscription
```

## Using JMS API Local Transactions

You can group a series of operations together into an atomic unit of work called a transaction. If any one of the operations fails, the transaction can be rolled back, and the operations can be attempted again from the beginning. If all the operations succeed, the transaction can be committed.

In a JMS client, you can use local transactions to group message sends and receives. The JMS API `Session` interface provides `commit` and `rollback` methods that you can use in a JMS client. A transaction commit means that all produced messages are sent and all consumed messages are acknowledged. A

transaction rollback means that all produced messages are destroyed and all consumed messages are recovered and redelivered unless they have expired (see *Allowing Messages to Expire*, page 729).

A transacted session is always involved in a transaction. As soon as the `commit` or the `rollback` method is called, one transaction ends and another transaction begins. Closing a transacted session rolls back its transaction in progress, including any pending sends and receives.

In an Enterprise JavaBeans component, you cannot use the `Session.commit` and `Session.rollback` methods. Instead, you use distributed transactions, which are described in *Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application* (page 743).

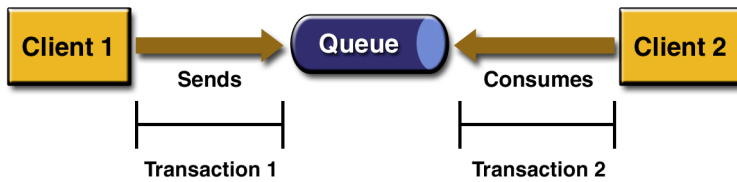
You can combine several sends and receives in a single JMS API local transaction. If you do so, you need to be careful about the order of the operations. You will have no problems if the transaction consists of all sends or all receives or if the receives come before the sends. But if you try to use a request-reply mechanism, whereby you send a message and then try to receive a reply to the sent message in the same transaction, the program will hang, because the send cannot take place until the transaction is committed. The following code fragment illustrates the problem:

```
// Don't do this!
outMsg.setJMSReplyTo(replyQueue);
producer.send(outQueue, outMsg);
consumer = session.createConsumer(replyQueue);
inMsg = consumer.receive();
session.commit();
```

Because a message sent during a transaction is not actually sent until the transaction is committed, the transaction cannot contain any receives that depend on that message's having been sent.

In addition, the production and the consumption of a message cannot both be part of the same transaction. The reason is that the transactions take place between the clients and the JMS provider, which intervenes between the production and the consumption of the message. Figure 20–8 illustrates this interaction.





**Figure 20–8** Using JMS API Local Transactions

The sending of one or more messages to one or more destinations by Client 1 can form a single transaction, because it forms a single set of interactions with the JMS provider using a single session. Similarly, the receiving of one or more messages from one or more destinations by Client 2 also forms a single transaction using a single session. But because the two clients have no direct interaction and are using two different sessions, no transactions can take place between them.

Another way of putting this is that the act of producing and/or consuming messages in a session can be transactional, but the act of producing and consuming a specific message across different sessions cannot be transactional.

This is the fundamental difference between messaging and synchronized processing. Instead of tightly coupling the sending and receiving of data, message producers and consumers use an alternative approach to reliability, one that is built on a JMS provider's ability to supply a once-and-only-once message delivery guarantee.

When you create a session, you specify whether it is transacted. The first argument to the `createSession` method is a boolean value. A value of `true` means that the session is transacted; a value of `false` means that it is not transacted. The second argument to this method is the acknowledgment mode, which is relevant only to nontransacted sessions (see *Controlling Message Acknowledgment*, page 724). If the session is transacted, the second argument is ignored, so it is a good idea to specify `0` to make the meaning of your code clear. For example:

```
session = connection.createSession(true, 0);
```

The `commit` and the `rollback` methods for local transactions are associated with the session. You can combine queue and topic operations in a single transaction if you use the same session to perform the operations. For instance, you can use

the same session to receive a message from a queue and send a message to a topic in the same transaction.

You can pass a client program's session to a message listener's constructor function and use it to create a message producer, so that you can use the same session for receives and sends in asynchronous message consumers.

The next section provides an example of the use of JMS API local transactions.

## A Local Transaction Example

The `TransactedExample.java` program in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/src/` demonstrates the use of transactions in a JMS client application. This example shows how to use a queue and a topic in a single transaction as well as how to pass a session to a message listener's constructor function. The program represents a highly simplified e-Commerce application, in which the following things happen.

1. A retailer sends a `MapMessage` to the vendor order queue, ordering a quantity of computers, and waits for the vendor's reply:

```
producer =
    session.createProducer(vendorOrderQueue);
outMessage = session.createMapMessage();
outMessage.setString("Item", "Computer(s)");
outMessage.setInt("Quantity", quantity);
outMessage.setJMSReplyTo(retailerConfirmQueue);
producer.send(outMessage);
System.out.println("Retailer: ordered " +
    quantity + " computer(s)");
```

```
orderConfirmReceiver =
    session.createConsumer(retailerConfirmQueue);
connection.start();
```

2. The vendor receives the retailer's order message and sends an order message to the supplier order topic in one transaction. This JMS transaction uses a single session, so we can combine a receive from a queue with a send to a topic. Here is the code that uses the same session to create a consumer for a queue and a producer for a topic:

```
vendorOrderReceiver =
    session.createConsumer(vendorOrderQueue);
supplierOrderProducer =
    session.createProducer(supplierOrderTopic);
```

The following code receives the incoming message, sends an outgoing message, and commits the session. The message processing has been removed to keep the sequence simple:

```
inMessage = vendorOrderReceiver.receive();
// Process the incoming message and format the outgoing mes-
// sage
...
supplierOrderProducer.send(orderMessage);
...
session.commit();
```

3. Each supplier receives the order from the order topic, checks its inventory, then sends the items ordered to the queue named in the order message's JMSReplyTo field. If it does not have enough in stock, the supplier sends what it has. The synchronous receive from the topic and the send to the queue take place in one JMS transaction.

```
receiver = session.createConsumer(orderTopic);
...
inMessage = receiver.receive();
if (inMessage instanceof MapMessage) {
    orderMessage = (MapMessage) inMessage;
    // Process message
    MessageProducer producer =
        session.createProducer((Queue)
            orderMessage.getJMSReplyTo());
    outMessage = session.createMapMessage();
    // Add content to message
    producer.send(outMessage);
    // Display message contents
    session.commit();
```

4. The vendor receives the replies from the suppliers from its confirmation queue and updates the state of the order. Messages are processed by an asynchronous message listener; this step illustrates using JMS transactions with a message listener.

```
MapMessage component = (MapMessage) message;
...
orderNumber =
    component.getInt("VendorOrderNumber");
Order order =
```

```
Order.getOrder(orderNumber).processSubOrder(component);
session.commit();
```

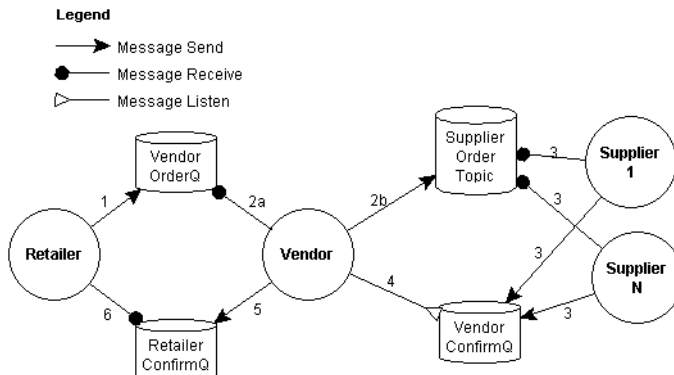
5. When all outstanding replies are processed for a given order, the vendor message listener sends a message notifying the retailer whether it can fulfill the order.

```
Queue replyQueue =
    (Queue) order.order.getJMSReplyTo();
MessageProducer producer =
    session.createProducer(replyQueue);
MapMessage retailerConfirmMessage =
    session.createMapMessage();
// Format the message
producer.send(retailerConfirmMessage);
session.commit();
```

6. The retailer receives the message from the vendor:

```
inMessage =
    (MapMessage) orderConfirmReceiver.receive();
```

Figure 20–9 illustrates these steps.



**Figure 20–9** Transactions: JMS Client Example

The program contains five classes: Retailer, Vendor, GenericSupplier, VendorMessageListener, and Order. The program also contains a main method and a method that runs the threads of the Retailer, Vendor, and two supplier classes.

All the messages use the `MapMessage` message type. Synchronous receives are used for all message reception except for the case of the vendor processing the replies of the suppliers. These replies are processed asynchronously and demonstrate how to use transactions within a message listener.

At random intervals, the `Vendor` class throws an exception to simulate a database problem and cause a rollback.

All classes except `Retailer` use transacted sessions.

The program uses three queues named `AQueue`, `BQueue`, and `CQueue`, and one topic named `OTopic`. Before you run the program,

1. Compile the program if you did not do so previously:  
`asant build`
2. Create the queues and topic. If you did not already use the `add-objects` target, use the following commands:  
`asant add-A`  
`asant add-B`  
`asant add-C`  
`asant add-OT`  
`asadmin reconfig_common`
3. To verify that the destinations were created, use the following commands:  
`asadmin list-jms-resources`  
`asadmin list-jmsdest`

To package the program, perform the following steps:

1. If you did not do so before, start the J2EE Deploytool.
2. Choose `File→New→Application Client JAR` to start the Application Client Wizard.
3. Select the radio button labeled `Create New Stand-Alone AppClient Module`.
4. Click `Browse` next to the `AppClient Location` field and navigate to the `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/advanced/` directory.
5. Type `TransactedExample` in the `File Name` field.
6. Type `TransactedExample` in the `AppClient Display Name` field.
7. Click the `Edit` button next to the `Contents` text area.
8. In the dialog box, locate the `build` directory. Select the six classes whose names begin with `TransactedExample` from the `Available Files` tree area and click `Add`, then `OK`.

9. Select the two classes whose names begin with `SampleUtilities` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
10. In the General screen, select `TransactedExample` in the Main Class combo box.
11. Click Next.
12. Click Finish.

Run the program, specifying the number of computers to be ordered. To order three computers, use the following command:

```
appclient -client TransactedExample.jar 3
```

The output looks something like this:

```
Quantity to be ordered is 3
Retailer: ordered 3 computer(s)
Vendor: Retailer ordered 3 Computer(s)
Vendor: ordered 3 monitor(s) and hard drive(s)
Monitor Supplier: Vendor ordered 3 Monitor(s)
Monitor Supplier: sent 3 Monitor(s)
    Monitor Supplier: committed transaction
    Vendor: committed transaction 1
Hard Drive Supplier: Vendor ordered 3 Hard Drive(s)
Hard Drive Supplier: sent 1 Hard Drive(s)
Vendor: Completed processing for order 1
    Hard Drive Supplier: committed transaction
Vendor: unable to send 3 computer(s)
    Vendor: committed transaction 2
Retailer: Order not filled
Retailer: placing another order
Retailer: ordered 6 computer(s)
Vendor: JMSEException occurred: javax.jms.JMSEException:
Simulated database concurrent access exception
javax.jms.JMSEException: Simulated database concurrent access
exception
    at TransactedExample$Vendor.run(Unknown Source)
    Vendor: rolled back transaction 1
Vendor: Retailer ordered 6 Computer(s)
Vendor: ordered 6 monitor(s) and hard drive(s)
Monitor Supplier: Vendor ordered 6 Monitor(s)
Hard Drive Supplier: Vendor ordered 6 Hard Drive(s)
Monitor Supplier: sent 6 Monitor(s)
    Monitor Supplier: committed transaction
Hard Drive Supplier: sent 6 Hard Drive(s)
    Hard Drive Supplier: committed transaction
    Vendor: committed transaction 1
```

```
Vendor: Completed processing for order 2  
Vendor: sent 6 computer(s)  
Retailer: Order filled  
Vendor: committed transaction 2
```

When you have finished with the sample applications for this section, remove the destinations and connection factory with the following command:

```
asant delete-objects
```

Reconfigure the server after you remove the objects:

```
asant reconfig_common
```

Use the following command to remove the class files:

```
asant clean
```

If you wish, you can manually remove the client JAR files.

## Using the JMS API in a J2EE Application

This section describes the ways in which using the JMS API in a J2EE application differs from using it in a standalone client application:

- Using session and entity beans to produce and to synchronously receive messages
- Using message-driven beans to receive messages asynchronously
- Managing distributed transactions
- Using application clients and Web components
- Specifying deployment descriptors

A general rule new at J2EE version 1.4 applies to all J2EE components that use EJB or Web containers:

Any component within an EJB or Web container must have no more than one JMS session per JMS connection.

This rule does not apply to application clients.

## Using Session and Entity Beans to Produce and to Synchronously Receive Messages

A J2EE application that produces messages or synchronously receives them may use either a session bean or an entity bean to perform these operations. The example in *A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean* (page 767) uses a stateless session bean to publish messages to a topic.

Because a blocking synchronous receive ties up server resources, it is not a good programming practice to use such a receive call in an enterprise bean. Instead, use a timed synchronous receive, or use a message-driven bean to receive messages asynchronously. For details about blocking and timed synchronous receives, see *Writing the Client Programs* (page 708).

Using the JMS API in a J2EE application is in many ways similar to using it in a standalone client. The main differences are in administered objects, resource management, and transactions.

## Administered Objects

The J2EE Platform Specification recommends that you use `java:comp/env/jms` as the environment subcontext for JNDI lookups of connection factories and destinations. With the J2EE Application Server, you use the J2EE Deploytool, commonly known as the deploytool, to specify JNDI names that correspond to those in your source code.

Instead of looking up a JMS API connection factory or destination each time it is used in a method, it is recommended that you look up these instances once in the enterprise bean's `ejbCreate` method and cache them for the lifetime of the enterprise bean.

## Resource Management

JMS API resources are a JMS API connection and a JMS API session. In general, it is important to release JMS resources when they are no longer being used. Here are some useful practices to follow.

- If you wish to maintain a JMS API resource only for the life span of a business method, it is a good idea to close the resource in a `finally` block within the method.



- If you would like to maintain a JMS API resource for the life span of an enterprise bean instance, it is a good idea to use the component's `ejbCreate` method to create the resource and to use the component's `ejbRemove` method to close the resource. If you use a stateful session bean or an entity bean and you wish to maintain the JMS API resource in a cached state, you must close the resource in the `ejbPassivate` method and set its value to `null`, and you must create it again in the `ejbActivate` method.

## Transactions

Instead of using local transactions, you use the `deploytool` to specify container-managed transactions for bean methods that perform sends or receives, allowing the EJB container to handle transaction demarcation.

You can use bean-managed transactions and the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface's transaction demarcation methods, but you should do so only if your application has special requirements and you are an expert in using transactions. Usually, container-managed transactions produce the most efficient and correct behavior. This tutorial does not provide any examples of bean-managed transactions.

## Using Message-Driven Beans

As we noted in *How Does the JMS API Work with the J2EE Platform?* (page 688), the J2EE platform supports a special kind of enterprise bean, the message-driven bean, which allows J2EE applications to process JMS messages asynchronously. Session beans and entity beans allow you to send messages and to receive them synchronously but not asynchronously.

A message-driven bean is a message listener that can reliably consume messages from a queue or a durable subscription. The messages may be sent by any J2EE component—from an application client, another enterprise bean, or a Web component—or from an application or a system that does not use J2EE technology.

Like a message listener in a standalone JMS client, a message-driven bean contains an `onMessage` method that is called automatically when a message arrives. Like a message listener, a message-driven bean class may implement helper methods invoked by the `onMessage` method to aid in message processing.

A message-driven bean differs from a standalone client's message listener in the following ways, however:

- Setup tasks performed by the EJB container
- Interfaces and methods the bean class must implement

The EJB container automatically performs several setup tasks that a standalone client has to do:

- Creating a message consumer to receive the messages. Instead of creating a message consumer in your source code, you associate the message-driven bean with a destination and a connection factory at deployment time. If you want to specify a durable subscription or use a message selector, you do this at deployment time also.
- Registering the message listener. You must not call `setMessageListener`.
- Specifying a message acknowledgment mode. (For details, see *Managing Distributed Transactions*, page 748.)

If JMS is integrated with the application server using a resource adapter, the JMS resource adapter handles these tasks for the EJB container. It creates a connection factory for the message-driven bean to use. You use an activation configuration specification to specify properties for the connection factory, such as a durable subscription, a message selector, or an acknowledgment mode. See *Specifying Activation Configuration Properties for Message-Driven Beans* (page 756) for details. The examples in Chapter 21 show how the JMS resource adapter works in the J2EE 1.4 Application Server.

Your message-driven bean class must implement the following, in addition to the `onMessage` method:

- The `javax.ejb.MessageDrivenBean` and the `javax.jms.MessageListener` interfaces
- The `ejbCreate` method, which has the following signature:

```
public void ejbCreate() {}
```

If your message-driven bean produces messages or does synchronous receives from another destination, you use its `ejbCreate` method to look up JMS API connection factories and destinations and to create the JMS API connection.

- The `ejbRemove` method, which has the following signature:
- ```
public void ejbRemove() {}
```

If you used the message-driven bean's `ejbCreate` method to create the JMS API connection, you ordinarily use the `ejbRemove` method to close the connection.

- The `setMessageDrivenContext` method. A `MessageDrivenContext` object provides some additional methods that you can use for transaction management. The method has the following signature:

```
public void setMessageDrivenContext(MessageDrivenContext
    mdc) {}
```

The main difference between a message-driven bean and other enterprise beans is that a message-driven bean has no home or remote interface. Instead, it has only a bean class.

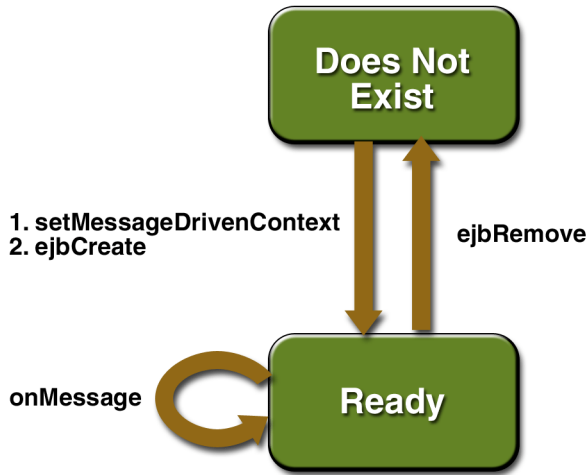
A message-driven bean is similar in some ways to a stateless session bean: its instances are relatively short-lived and retain no state for a specific client. The instance variables of the message-driven bean instance can contain some state across the handling of client messages: for example, a JMS API connection, an open database connection, or an object reference to an enterprise bean object.

Like a stateless session bean, a message-driven bean can have many interchangeable instances running at the same time. The container can pool these instances to allow streams of messages to be processed concurrently. Concurrency can affect the order in which messages are delivered, so you should write your application to handle messages that arrive out of sequence. See *A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with an Entity Bean* (page 777) for an example.

To create a new instance of a message-driven bean, the container instantiates the bean and then

- Calls the `setMessageDrivenContext` method to pass the context object to the instance
- Calls the instance's `ejbCreate` method

Figure 20–10 shows the life cycle of a message-driven bean.



**Figure 20–10** Life Cycle of a Message-Driven Bean

## Managing Distributed Transactions

JMS client applications use JMS API local transactions, described in Using JMS API Local Transactions (page 735), which allow the grouping of sends and receives within a specific JMS session. J2EE applications commonly use distributed transactions in order to ensure the integrity of accesses to external resources. For example, distributed transactions allow multiple applications to perform atomic updates on the same database, and they allow a single application to perform atomic updates on multiple databases.

In a J2EE application that uses the JMS API, you can use transactions to combine message sends or receives with database updates and other resource manager operations. You can access resources from multiple application components within a single transaction. For example, a servlet may start a transaction, access multiple databases, invoke an enterprise bean that sends a JMS message, invoke another enterprise bean that modifies an EIS system using the Connector architecture, and finally commit the transaction. Your application cannot, however, both send a JMS message and receive a reply to it within the same transaction; the restriction described in Using JMS API Local Transactions (page 735) still applies.

Distributed transactions can be either of two kinds:

- **Container-managed transactions.** The EJB container controls the integrity of your transactions without your having to call `commit` or `rollback`. Container-managed transactions are recommended for J2EE applications that use the JMS API. You can specify appropriate transaction attributes for your enterprise bean methods.

Use the `Required` transaction attribute to ensure that a method is always part of a transaction. If a transaction is in progress when the method is called, the method will be part of that transaction; if not, a new transaction will be started before the method is called and will be committed when the method returns.

- **Bean-managed transactions.** You can use these in conjunction with the `javax.transaction.UserTransaction` interface, which provides its own `commit` and `rollback` methods that you can use to delimit transaction boundaries. Bean-managed transactions are recommended only for those experienced in programming transactions.

You can use either container-managed transactions or bean-managed transactions with message-driven beans.

To ensure that all messages are received and handled within the context of a transaction, use container-managed transactions and specify the `Required` transaction attribute for the `onMessage` method. This means that if there is no transaction in progress, a new transaction will be started before the method is called and will be committed when the method returns.

When you use container-managed transactions, you can call the following `MessageDrivenContext` methods:

- `setRollbackOnly`. Use this method for error handling. If an exception occurs, `setRollbackOnly` marks the current transaction so that the only possible outcome of the transaction is a rollback.
- `getRollbackOnly`. Use this method to test whether the current transaction has been marked for rollback.

If you use bean-managed transactions, the delivery of a message to the `onMessage` method takes place outside of the distributed transaction context. The transaction begins when you call the `UserTransaction.begin` method within the `onMessage` method and ends when you call `UserTransaction.commit`. Any call to the `Connection.createSession` method must take place within the transaction. If you call `UserTransaction.rollback`, the message is not redeliv-

ered, whereas calling `setRollbackOnly` for container-managed transactions does cause a message to be redelivered.

Neither the JMS API Specification nor the Enterprise JavaBeans Specification (available from <http://java.sun.com/products/ejb/>) specifies how to handle calls to JMS API methods outside transaction boundaries. The Enterprise JavaBeans Specification does state that the EJB container is responsible for acknowledging a message that is successfully processed by the `onMessage` method of a message-driven bean that uses bean-managed transactions. Using bean-managed transactions allows you to process the message by using more than one transaction or to have some parts of the message processing take place outside a transaction context. In most cases, however, container-managed transactions provide greater reliability and are therefore preferable.

When you create a session in an enterprise bean, the container ignores the arguments you specify, because it manages all transactional properties for enterprise beans. It is still a good idea to specify arguments of `true` and `0` to the `createSession` method to make this situation clear:

```
session = connection.createSession(true, 0);
```

When you use container-managed transactions, you usually specify the `Required` transaction attribute for your enterprise bean's business methods.

You do not specify a message acknowledgment mode when you create a message-driven bean that uses container-managed transactions. The container acknowledges the message automatically when it commits the transaction.

If a message-driven bean uses bean-managed transactions, the message receipt cannot be part of the bean-managed transaction, so the container acknowledges the message outside of the transaction. When you package a message-driven bean using the `deploytool`, you use activation configuration properties to specify the acknowledgment mode. See Table 20–7 on page 756 for details.

If the `onMessage` method throws a `RuntimeException`, the container does not acknowledge processing the message. In that case, the JMS provider will redeliver the unacknowledged message in the future.

## Using the JMS API with Application Clients and Web Components

An application client can use the JMS API in much the same way a standalone client program does. It can produce messages, and it can consume messages by using either synchronous receives or message listeners. See *A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API* (page 760) for an example of an application client that produces messages; see *A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with an Entity Bean* (page 777) and *An Application Example that Deploys a Message-Driven Bean on Two J2EE Servers* (page 799) for examples of using application clients to produce and to consume messages.

The J2EE Platform Specification does not impose strict constraints on how Web components should use the JMS API. In the J2EE 1.4 Application Server, a Web component—one that uses either the Java Servlet API or *JavaServerPages* (JSP) technology—may send messages and consume them synchronously but may not consume them asynchronously.

Because a blocking synchronous receive ties up server resources, it is not a good programming practice to use such a `receive` call in a Web component. Instead, use a timed synchronous receive. For details about blocking and timed synchronous receives, see *Writing the Client Programs* (page 708).

## Specifying Deployment Descriptors

When you package a J2EE application, you provide deployment descriptors for the application and its modules. This section describes the deployment descriptor elements specific to an application that uses the JMS API and message-driven beans. At release 1.4 of the J2EE platform, message-driven beans can be configured to consume messages from other messaging sources in addition to JMS providers.

At release 1.4 of the J2EE platform, application servers must be able to support both DTDs and XML schemas. The order in which you specify elements in deployment descriptors is not significant when you use DTDs, but it is significant when you use XML schemas. Therefore, it is a good idea to use the J2EE `deploytool` provided with the J2EE Application Server to create the deployment descriptors for you.

This section covers the following topics:

- Deployment descriptor elements for connection factories and destinations
- Deployment descriptor elements for message-driven beans
- Deployment descriptor elements specified at run time
- Specifying activation configuration properties for message-driven beans

## Deployment Descriptor Elements for Connection Factories and Destinations

Modules that send messages or receive messages synchronously use the elements listed in Table 20–4. These elements describe the JMS resources referenced in module source code: connection factories and destinations. The XML Schema files used by the J2EE Application Server are in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/schemas/`. You use these elements in deployment descriptors for application clients, enterprise beans, and Web components.

**Table 20–4** Deployment Descriptor Elements for Connection Factories and Destinations

| Element Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>&lt;resource-ref&gt;</code> | Contains a declaration of the enterprise bean's reference to an external resource, such as a JMS API connection factory. Contains the elements <code>&lt;res-ref-name&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;res-type&gt;</code> , and <code>&lt;res-auth&gt;</code> .                                                                                              |
| <code>&lt;res-ref-name&gt;</code> | Specifies the coded name of a resource manager connection factory reference, such as <code>jms/MyConnectionFactory</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>&lt;res-type&gt;</code>     | Specifies the type of the data source. The type is specified by the Java interface expected to be implemented by the connection factory. For JMS connection factories, the allowed interfaces are <code>javax.jms.ConnectionFactory</code> , <code>javax.jms.QueueConnectionFactory</code> , and <code>javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory</code> .    |
| <code>&lt;res-auth&gt;</code>     | Specifies whether the enterprise bean code signs on programmatically to the resource manager ( <code>Application</code> ) or whether the Container will sign on to the resource manager on behalf of the bean. In the latter case, the Container uses information that is supplied by the Deployer. Normally, the value is <code>Container</code> . |



**Table 20–4** Deployment Descriptor Elements for Connection Factories and Destinations

| Element Name                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>&lt;res-sharing-scope&gt;</code>            | Specifies whether connections obtained through the given resource manager connection factory reference can be shared. Normally, the value is <code>Shareable</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-ref&gt;</code>      | Specifies a reference to a message destination associated with a resource in the module's environment. Contains the elements <code>&lt;message-destination-ref-name&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;message-destination-type&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;message-destination-usage&gt;</code> , and <code>&lt;message-destination-link&gt;</code> . It is recommended that the <code>&lt;message-destination-ref&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;message-destination&gt;</code> elements be used instead of the <code>&lt;resource-env-ref&gt;</code> element that was introduced at release 1.3 of the J2EE platform. |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-ref-name&gt;</code> | Specifies the coded name of a message destination reference. The name is a JNDI name relative to the <code>java:comp/env</code> context, such as <code>jms/NewHi reTopic</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-type&gt;</code>     | Specifies the type of the destination. The type is specified by the Java interface expected to be implemented by the destination. For JMS destinations, the allowed interfaces are <code>javax.jms.Topic</code> and <code>javax.jms.Queue</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-usage&gt;</code>    | Specifies the use of the message destination indicated by the reference. Must be one of the following: <code>Consumes</code> , <code>Produces</code> , or <code>ConsumesProduces</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-link&gt;</code>     | Links a message destination reference or message-driven bean to a message destination. For example, if the <code>&lt;message-destination&gt;</code> element has the <code>&lt;message-destination-name&gt;</code> value <code>PhysicalTopic</code> , specify <code>PhysicalTopic</code> as the value of the <code>&lt;message-destination-link&gt;</code> element.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>&lt;message-destination&gt;</code>          | Specifies a message destination. The logical destination described by this element is mapped to a physical destination by the Deployer. Contains a <code>&lt;message-destination-name&gt;</code> element. In the J2EE Application Server, the name you specify here is the name of the destination you created with the <code>asadmin create-jmsdest</code> command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-name&gt;</code>     | Specifies a name for a message destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## Deployment Descriptor Elements for Message-Driven Beans

The deployment descriptor for a message-driven bean is similar to the deployment descriptor for a session or entity bean in many respects. It includes the messaging-specific elements listed in Table 20–5. The XML Schema files used by the J2EE Application Server are in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/schemas/`.

**Table 20–5** Deployment Descriptor Elements for Message-Driven Beans

| Element Name                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>&lt;message-driven&gt;</code>                   | Declares a message-driven bean within an <code>&lt;enterprise-beans&gt;</code> element.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>&lt;messaging-type&gt;</code>                   | Specifies the message listener interface of the message-driven bean. If the <code>&lt;messaging-type&gt;</code> element is not specified, it is assumed to be <code>javax.jms.MessageListener</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-type&gt;</code>         | Specifies the type of the destination. The type is specified by the Java interface expected to be implemented by the destination, such as <code>javax.jms.Topic</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-link&gt;</code>         | Links a message destination reference or message-driven bean to a message destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>&lt;activation-config&gt;</code>                | Defines information about the expected configuration properties of the message-driven bean in its operational environment. This may include information about message acknowledgement, message selector, expected destination type, and so on. For details, see <i>Specifying Activation Configuration Properties for Message-Driven Beans</i> (page 756). Contains a set of <code>&lt;activation-config-property&gt;</code> elements. |
| <code>&lt;activation-config-property&gt;</code>       | Contains an <code>&lt;activation-config-property-name&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;activation-config-property-value&gt;</code> pair for a message-driven bean.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>&lt;activation-config-property-name&gt;</code>  | Contains the name for an activation configuration property of a message-driven bean.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>&lt;activation-config-property-value&gt;</code> | Contains the value for an activation configuration property of a message-driven bean.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Deployment Descriptor Elements Specified at Runtime

The runtime deployment descriptors for an application specify the runtime linkages between the connection factories and destinations specified in source code and the actual resources in the JNDI namespace. Runtime deployment descriptors vary from one application server to another. This section describes the elements used in the J2EE Application Server runtime deployment descriptors, which are named `sun-application.xml`, `sun-application-client.xml`, `sun-ejb-jar.xml`, and so on. The Document Type Definitions (DTDs) for these deployment descriptors are in the directory `<J2EE_HOME>/lib/dtds/`.

Table 20–6 lists these elements.

**Table 20–6** Runtime Deployment Descriptor Elements

| Element Name                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>&lt;mdb-resource-adapter&gt;</code>       | Specifies the module ID of the resource adapter that is responsible for delivering messages to the message-driven bean, as well as the runtime configuration information for the bean. Contains the required element <code>&lt;resource-adapter-mid&gt;</code> and, optionally, an <code>&lt;activation-config&gt;</code> element. |
| <code>&lt;resource-adapter-mid&gt;</code>       | Specifies the module ID of the resource adapter. If you are using the resource adapter that is part of the J2EE Application Server, this value is <code>jmsra</code> .                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>&lt;resource-ref&gt;</code>               | Specifies the runtime bindings of a resource reference. Contains the elements <code>&lt;res-ref-name&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;jndi-name&gt;</code> and, optionally, <code>&lt;default-resource-principal&gt;</code> .                                                                                                              |
| <code>&lt;res-ref-name&gt;</code>               | Specifies the coded name of a JMS connection factory, such as <code>jms/MyConnectionFactory</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>&lt;default-resource-principal&gt;</code> | Specifies the username and password to be used to access the connection factory, using the <code>&lt;name&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;password&gt;</code> elements.                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Table 20–6** Runtime Deployment Descriptor Elements

| Element Name                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>&lt;message-destination&gt;</code>      | Specifies the name and JNDI name of a logical message destination. Contains the elements <code>&lt;message-destination-name&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;jndi-name&gt;</code> .                               |
| <code>&lt;message-destination-name&gt;</code> | Specifies the name of a logical message destination. This logical name, which was also specified by the module deployment descriptor (see Table 20–4), is now linked to the JNDI name of the destination. |
| <code>&lt;jndi-name&gt;</code>                | The JNDI name of a JMS resource, which may be either a connection factory or a destination. This is the name you specified when you created the resource administratively.                                |

## Specifying Activation Configuration Properties for Message-Driven Beans

Activation configuration properties are needed to configure message-driven beans at release 1.4 of the J2EE platform if the JMS API is integrated using a J2EE Connector Architecture resource adapter. This section describes the properties you may specify for message-driven beans that consume JMS messages.

You may specify these properties either in the enterprise bean deployment descriptor or in the runtime deployment descriptor, or both. Any properties specified in the runtime deployment descriptor override the properties specified in the enterprise bean deployment descriptor.

Table 20–7 lists these properties.

**Table 20–7** Activation Configuration Property Names and Values

| Property Name                | Description and Values                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>destinationType</code> | (Required) The interface type of the destination, either <code>javax.jms.Topic</code> or <code>javax.jms.Queue</code> . |

**Table 20–7** Activation Configuration Property Names and Values

| Property Name                       | Description and Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>destination</code>            | (Required) The name of the destination in the JNDI namespace, such as <code>jms/Topic</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>messageSelector</code>        | A message selector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>subscriptionDurability</code> | <p>A value of <code>Durable</code> indicates that the message-driven bean is a durable subscriber to a topic. If the value is <code>Durable</code>, then the <code>clientId</code> and <code>subscriptionName</code> properties must also be specified.</p> <p>A value of <code>NonDurable</code> specifies that the bean is not using a durable subscription. If omitted, the bean is assumed to be a nondurable subscriber if the <code>destinationType</code> value is <code>javax.jms.Topic</code>.</p> |
| <code>clientId</code>               | The client ID of the connection factory used by the message-driven bean, if it is using a durable subscription.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>subscriptionName</code>       | The name of the subscription, which identifies the subscription uniquely in conjunction with the topic name and the <code>clientId</code> value, if the bean is using a durable subscription.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>acknowledgeMode</code>        | The acknowledgment mode of the bean, either <code>Auto-acknowledge</code> or <code>Dups-ok-acknowledge</code> . If not specified, assumed to be <code>Auto-acknowledge</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>addressList</code>            | The URL of a remote connection factory, using the format <code>system-name[:port-number]</code> , as described in Running JMS Client Programs on Multiple Systems (page 720). Used for a message-driven bean that consumes messages from a remote destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## Further Information

For more information about JMS, see the following:

- Java Message Service website:  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jms/index.html>
- Java Message Service specification, version 1.1, available from:  
<http://java.sun.com/products/jms/docs.html>

---

# J2EE Examples Using the JMS API

*Kim Haase*

This chapter provides examples that show how to use the JMS API within a J2EE application in the following ways:

- Using an application client to send messages that are consumed by a message-driven bean
- Using a session bean to send messages that are consumed by a message-driven bean using a message selector and a durable subscription
- Using an application client to send messages that are consumed by two message-driven beans; the information from them is stored in an entity bean
- Using an application client to send messages that are consumed by a message-driven bean on a remote server
- Using an application client to send messages that are consumed by message-driven beans on two different servers

The examples are in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/
```

To build and run the examples, you will do the following:

1. Use the asant tool to create resources and compile the example
2. Use the J2EE Deploytool (deploytool) to package and deploy the example

### 3. Use the `apclient` command to run the client

Each example has a `build.xml` file that refers to a `targets.xml` file and a `build.properties` file in the following directory:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/common/
```

The following directory contains built versions of each application:

```
<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/provided-ears
```

If you run into difficulty at any time, you can open the appropriate EAR file in the `deploytool` and compare that file to your own version.

## A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API

This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a simple J2EE application that uses the JMS API. The application in this section uses the following components:

- An application client that sends several messages to a queue
- A message-driven bean that asynchronously receives and processes the messages

The section covers the following topics:

- Writing the Application Components
- Creating and Packaging the Application
- Deploying the Application
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application
- Undeploying and Removing the Application

You will find the source files for this section in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/clientmdb/`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

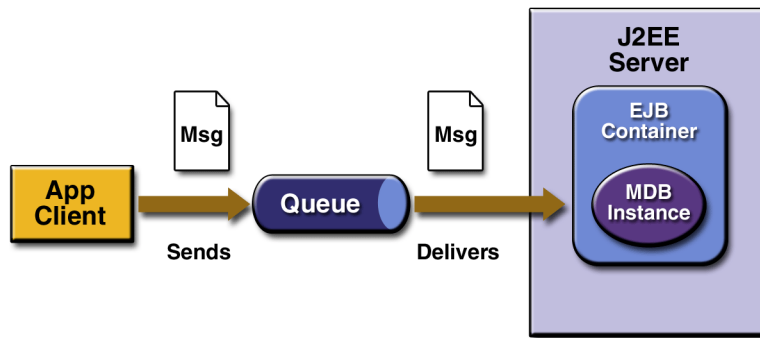


# Writing the Application Components

This first and simplest application contains the following components:

- An application client that sends several messages to a queue
- A message-driven bean that asynchronously receives and processes the messages

Figure 21–1 illustrates the structure of this application.



**Figure 21–1** A Simple J2EE Application: Client to Message-Driven Bean

The application client sends messages to the queue. The JMS provider—in this case, the J2EE server—delivers the messages to the message-driven bean instances, which then process the messages.

Writing the components of this application involves

- Coding the Application Client: `SimpleClient.java`
- Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `MessageBean.java`

## Coding the Application Client: `SimpleClient.java`

The application client class, `src/SimpleClient.java`, is almost identical to `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/SimpleProducer.java`

in Writing the Client Programs (page 708). The only significant differences are as follows.

- You do not specify the destination name and type on the command line. Instead, the client obtains the queue name through a Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI) API lookup.
- You do not specify the number of messages on the command line; the number of messages is set at 3 for simplicity, and no end-of-messages message is sent.
- The JNDI lookup uses the `java:comp/env/jms` naming context.

## Coding the Message-Driven Bean: MessageBean.java

The message-driven bean class, `src/MessageBean.java`, implements the methods `setMessageDrivenContext`, `ejbCreate`, `onMessage`, and `ejbRemove`. The `onMessage` method, almost identical to that of `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/simple/TextListener.java` in Writing the Client Programs (page 708), casts the incoming message to a `TextMessage` and displays the text. The only significant difference is that it calls the `MessageDrivenContext.setRollbackOnly` method in case of an exception. This method rolls back the transaction so that the message will be redelivered.

## Creating and Packaging the Application

This example uses a connection factory named `jms/QueueConnectionFactory` and a queue named `jms/Queue`, both of which you created in Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples (page 711).

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server
2. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application
3. Packaging the Application Client
4. Packaging the Message-Driven Bean
5. Updating the JNDI Names

## Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server

1. Use the `build` target to compile the source files:  
`asant build`
2. Start the J2EE Application Server, if it is not already running.

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application

1. Start the deploytool:  
On Windows systems, choose `Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Deploytool`.  
On UNIX systems, use the `deploytool` command.
2. Choose `File→New→Application EAR`.
3. Click `Browse` next to the `Application File Name` field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `clientmdb`.
4. In the `File Name` field, type `ClientMDBApp`.
5. Click `New Application`.
6. Click `OK`.

## Packaging the Application Client

To package the application client, perform the following steps:

1. Choose `File→New→Application Client JAR` to start the `Application Client Wizard`.
2. In the `JAR File Contents` screen:
  - a. Verify that `Create New AppClient Module in Application` is selected and that the application is `ClientMDBApp`.
  - b. In the `AppClient Display Name` field, type `SimpleClient`.
  - c. Click the `Edit` button next to the `Contents` text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the `build/client/` directory. Select `SimpleClient.class` from the `Available Files` tree area and click `Add`, then `OK`.

3. In the General screen, select `client.SimpleClient` in the Main Class combo box.
4. In the Message Destination References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type `jms/QueueName` in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose `javax.jms.Queue` from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose Produces from the Usage menu.
  - d. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field.
5. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `jms/MyConnectionFactory` in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.
  - d. Type `jms/QueueConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.
6. Click Finish.
7. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `SimpleClient` appears in the Producers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field.

## Packaging the Message-Driven Bean

To package the message-driven bean, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select Create New JAR Module in Application and verify that the application is `ClientMDBApp`.
  - b. In the JAR Display Name field, type `MDBJAR`.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the `build/mdb/` directory. Select `MessageBean.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.

3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Message-Driven radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose `mdb.MessageBean`.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, accept the default value, `MessageBean`.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Transaction Management box.
5. In the Message-Driven Bean Settings screen:
  - a. For the Message Listener Interface, accept the default, `javax.jms.MessageListener`. (You accept this default in every example.)
  - b. Click Add in the Activation Configuration Properties area. This is where you specify the required activation configuration properties for the bean.
  - c. Type destination in the Property Name field and `PhysicalQueue` in the Value field.
  - d. Click Add again.
  - e. Type `destinationType` in the Property Name field and `javax.jms.Queue` in the Value field.
  - f. Choose `javax.jms.Queue` from the Destination Type menu.
  - g. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field.
  - h. Click Deployment Settings. In the dialog box, type `jmsra` in the Resource Adapter field and click OK.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
7. Click Finish.
8. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, `SimpleClient` appears in the Producers area, and `MessageBean` appears in the Consumers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field.

## Updating the JNDI Names

In the J2EE Application Server, the JNDI name for a message-driven bean is the destination it receives messages from, not the bean name.

1. Select the application and click the JNDI Names tab.
2. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field for the `MessageBean` component.

Verify that the JNDI names for the application components are correct. They should appear as shown in Table 21–1 and Table 21–2.

**Table 21–2** References Pane for `ClientMDBApp`

|          |              |                          |                             |
|----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Resource | SimpleClient | jms/MyConnection-Factory | jms/QueueConnection-Factory |
|----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|

## Deploying the Application

1. Choose **File**→**Save** to save the application.
2. Choose **Tools**→**Deploy**.
3. In the dialog box, type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click **OK**.
4. In the **Distribute Module** dialog box, click **Close** when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application

1. In the **deploytool**, select the server node.
2. Select `ClientMDBApp` from the list of deployed objects, then click **Client Jar**.
3. Choose **Browse** to navigate to the directory from which you will run the client. Specify the `clientmdb` directory, click **Select**, then click **OK**. Click **OK** in the information dialog. You will find a file named `ClientMDBApp-Client.jar` in the specified directory.
4. To run the client, use the following command:  

```
appclient -client ClientMDBAppClient.jar
```

The program output in the terminal window looks something like this:

```
Sending message: This is message 1  
Sending message: This is message 2  
Sending message: This is message 3
```

The output from the message-driven bean appears in the server log file, `<J2EE_HOME>/domains/domain1/server/logs/server.log`:

```
In MessageBean.MessageBean()  
In MessageBean.setMessageDrivenContext()  
In MessageBean.ejbCreate()  
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 1  
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 2  
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 3
```

## Undeploying and Removing the Application

To undeploy and remove the application, perform the following steps:

1. Select the deployed application in the server pane and click Undeploy.
2. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose File→Close.
3. Remove the build directory created by the build target:  
`asant clean`
4. If you wish, stop the server:  
`asadmin stop-domain`

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

## A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with a Session Bean

This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a J2EE application that uses the JMS API in conjunction with a session bean. The application contains the following components:

- An application client that invokes an enterprise bean
- A session bean that publishes several messages to a topic

- A message-driven bean that receives and processes the messages, using a durable topic subscriber and a message selector

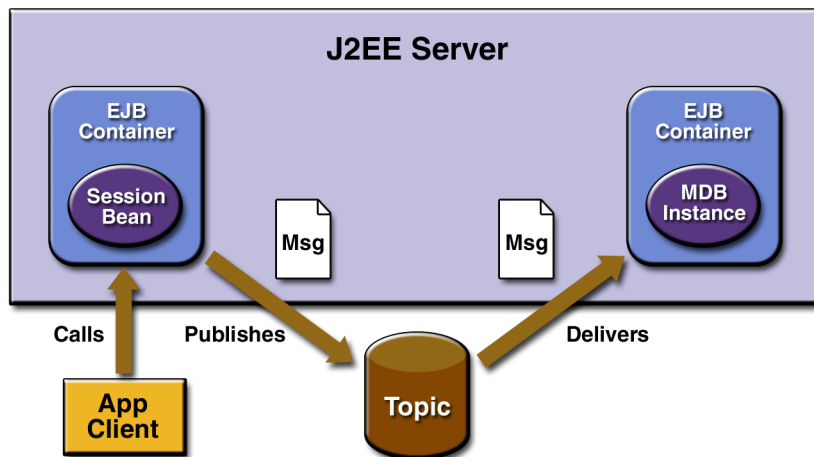
The section covers the following topics:

- Writing the Application Components
- Creating and Packaging the Application
- Deploying the Application
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application
- Undeploying and Removing the Application

You will find the source files for this section in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/clientsessionmdb/`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

## Writing the Application Components

This application demonstrates how to send messages from an enterprise bean—in this case, a session bean—rather than from an application client, as in the example in *A Message-Driven Bean Example* (page 763). Figure 21–2 illustrates the structure of this application.



**Figure 21–2** A J2EE Application: Client to Session Bean to Message-Driven Bean

The Publisher enterprise bean in this example is the enterprise-application equivalent of a wire-service news feed that categorizes news events into six news cate-



gories. The message-driven bean could represent a newsroom, where the Sports desk, for example, would set up a subscription for all news events pertaining to sports.

The application client in the example obtains a handle to the Publisher enterprise bean's remote home interface and calls the enterprise bean's business method. The enterprise bean creates 18 text messages. For each message, it sets a `String` property randomly to one of six values representing the news categories and then publishes the message to a topic. The message-driven bean uses a message selector for the property to limit which of the published messages it receives.

Writing the components of the application involves

- Coding the Application Client: `MyAppClient.java`
- Coding the Publisher Session Bean
- Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `MessageBean.java`

## Coding the Application Client: `MyAppClient.java`

The application client program, `src/MyAppClient.java`, performs no JMS API operations and so is simpler than the client program in *A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API* (page 760). The program obtains a handle to the Publisher enterprise bean's remote home interface, using the JNDI naming context `java:comp/env`. The program then creates an instance of the bean and calls the bean's business method twice.

## Coding the Publisher Session Bean

The Publisher bean is a stateless session bean with one `create` method and one business method. The Publisher bean uses remote interfaces rather than local interfaces because it is accessed from outside the EJB container.

The remote home interface source file is `src/PublisherHome.java`.

The remote interface, `src/PublisherRemote.java`, declares a single business method, `publishNews`.

The bean class, `src/PublisherBean.java`, implements the `publishNews` method and its helper method `chooseType`. The bean class also implements the required methods `ejbCreate`, `setSessionContext`, `ejbRemove`, `ejbActivate`, and `ejbPassivate`.

The `ejbCreate` method of the bean class allocates resources—in this case, by looking up the `ConnectionFactory` and the topic and creating the `Connection`. The business method `publishNews` creates a `Session` and a `MessageProducer` and publishes the messages.

The `ejbRemove` method must deallocate the resources that were allocated by the `ejbCreate` method. In this case, the `ejbRemove` method closes the `Connection`.

## Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `MessageBean.java`

The message-driven bean class, `src/MessageBean.java`, is identical to the one in *A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API* (page 760). However, the deployment descriptor will be different, because the bean is using a topic with a durable subscription, instead of a queue.

## Creating and Packaging the Application

This example uses the topic named `jms/Topic` and the connection factory `jms/TopicConnectionFactory`, which you created in *Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples* (page 711).

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server
2. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application
3. Packaging the Application Client
4. Packaging the Session Bean
5. Packaging the Message-Driven Bean
6. Updating the JNDI Names

## Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server

1. Use the `build` target to compile the source files:  

```
asant build
```
2. Start the J2EE Application Server, if it is not already running.

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application

1. Start the deploytool.
2. Choose File→New→Application EAR.
3. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `clientsessionmdb`.
4. In the File Name field, type `ClientSessionMDBApp`.
5. Click New Application.
6. Click OK.

## Packaging the Application Client

To package the application client, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
2. In the JAR File Contents screen:
  - a. Verify that Create New AppClient Module in Application is selected and that the application is `ClientSessionMDBApp`.
  - b. In the AppClient Display Name field, type `MyAppClient`.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the `build/client/` directory. Select `MyAppClient.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen, choose `client.MyAppClient` in the Main Class combo box.
4. In the Enterprise Bean References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type `ejb/remote/Publisher` in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose Session from the EJB Type menu.
  - c. Choose Remote from the Interfaces menu.
  - d. Type `sb.PublisherHome` in the Home Interface field.
  - e. Type `sb.PublisherRemote` in the Local/Remote Interface field.
  - f. Leave the Enterprise Bean Name field blank.

The client accesses the bean from outside of the EJB container, so the session bean uses remote interfaces that are accessed through the JNDI name.

5. When you return to the Enterprise Bean References screen, select the bean. In the Deployment Settings area, select JNDI Name and type Publisher in the field.
6. Click Finish.

## Packaging the Session Bean

To package the session bean, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select Create New JAR Module in Application and verify that the application is ClientSessionMDBApp. In the JAR Display Name field, type EBJAR.
  - b. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - c. In the dialog box, locate the build/sb/ directory. Select PublisherBean.class, PublisherHome.class, and PublisherRemote.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Session radio button.
  - b. Choose the Stateless radio button.
  - c. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose sb.PublisherBean.
  - d. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, type Publisher.
  - e. In the Remote Interfaces area, choose sb.PublisherHome from the Remote Home Interface menu and sb.PublisherRemote from the Remote Interface menu.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Message Destination References, Resource References, and Transaction Management boxes.
5. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
6. In the Message Destination References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type jms/TopicName in the Coded Name field.

- b. Choose `javax.jms.Topic` from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose Produces from the Usage menu.
  - d. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field.
7. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `jms/MyConnectionFactory` in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.
  - d. Type `jms/TopicConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.
8. Click Finish.
9. Click the EBJAR node, then click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `Publisher` appears in the Producers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Topic` in the JNDI Name field.

## Packaging the Message-Driven Bean

You will package the message-driven bean in the same JAR file as the session bean, for greater efficiency.

To package the message-driven bean, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Choose Add to Existing JAR Module and verify that the module is EBJAR (`ClientSessionMDBApp`).
  - b. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - c. In the dialog box, locate the `build/mdb/` directory. Select `MessageBean.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Message-Driven radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose `mdb.MessageBean`.

- c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, accept the default value, MessageBean.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Transaction Management box.
5. In the Message-Driven Bean Settings screen:
  - a. Click Add in the Activation Configuration Properties area six times to type the property names and values shown in Table 21–3.
  - b. Choose `javax.jms.Topic` from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose `PhysicalTopic` from the Destination Name menu.
  - d. Click Deployment Settings. In the dialog box, type `jsra` in the Resource Adapter field and click OK.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
7. Click Finish.
8. Click the Message Destinations tab. You will see that MessageBean now appears in the Consumers area.

The activation configuration property values for the bean are shown in Table 21–3.

**Table 21–3** Activation Configuration Properties for a Durable Subscriber

| Property Name                       | Value                                                    |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>destinationType</code>        | <code>javax.jms.Topic</code>                             |
| <code>destination</code>            | <code>PhysicalTopic</code>                               |
| <code>messageSelector</code>        | <code>NewsType = 'Sports' OR NewsType = 'Opinion'</code> |
| <code>subscriptionDurability</code> | <code>Durable</code>                                     |
| <code>clientId</code>               | <code>MyID</code>                                        |
| <code>subscriptionName</code>       | <code>MySub</code>                                       |

## Updating the JNDI Names

You need to update the JNDI name for the message-driven bean so that it specifies the destination it receives messages from, not the bean name.

1. Select the application and click the JNDI Names tab.
2. Type `jms/Topic` in the JNDI Name field for the `MessageBean` component.

Verify that the JNDI names for the application components are correct. They should appear as shown in Table 21–4 and Table 21–5.

**Table 21–4** Application Pane for `ClientSessionMDBApp`

|     |           |           |
|-----|-----------|-----------|
| EJB | Publisher | Publisher |
|-----|-----------|-----------|

**Table 21–5** References Pane for `ClientSessionMDBApp`

|          |             |                          |                             |
|----------|-------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| EJB Ref  | MyAppClient | ejb/remote/Publisher     | Publisher                   |
| Resource | Publisher   | jms/MyConnection-Factory | jms/TopicConnection-Factory |

## Deploying the Application

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
4. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application

1. In the deploytool, select the server node.
2. Select `ClientSessionMDBApp` from the list of deployed objects, then click Client Jar.

3. Choose Browse to navigate to the directory from which you will run the client. Specify the `clientsessionmdb` directory, click Select, then click OK. Click OK in the information dialog. You will find a file named `ClientSessionMDBAppClient.jar` in the specified directory.
4. To run the client, use the following command:  

```
appclient -client ClientSessionMDBAppClient.jar
```

The program output in the terminal window looks something like this:

```
Looking up EJB reference
Looked up home
Narrowed home
Got the EJB
```

The output from the enterprise beans appears in the server log. The Publisher session bean sends two sets of 18 messages numbered 0 through 17. Because of the message selector, the message-driven bean receives only the messages whose `NewsType` property is `Sports` or `Opinion`.

Suppose that the last few messages from the Publisher session bean look like this:

```
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 12: Business
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 13: Opinion
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 14: Living/Arts
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 15: Sports
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 16: Living/Arts
PUBLISHER: Setting message text to: Item 17: Living/Arts
```

Because of the message selector, the last messages received by the message-driven bean will be the following:

```
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: Item 13: Opinion
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: Item 15: Sports
```

If you like, you can rewrite the message selector to receive different messages.

## Undeploying and Removing the Application

To undeploy and remove the application, perform the following steps:

1. Select the deployed application in the server pane and click Undeploy.



2. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose File→Close.
3. Remove the build directory created by the build target:

```
asant clean
```

4. If you wish, stop the server:

```
asadmin stop-domain
```

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

## A J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API with an Entity Bean

This section explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a J2EE application that uses the JMS API with an entity bean. The application uses the following components:

- An application client that both sends and receives messages
- Two message-driven beans
- An entity bean that uses container-managed persistence

The section covers the following topics:

- Overview of the Human Resources Application
- Writing the Application Components
- Creating and Packaging the Application
- Deploying the Application
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application
- Undeploying and Removing the Application

You will find the source files for this section in the directory `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/clientmdbentity/`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

## Overview of the Human Resources Application

This application simulates, in a simplified way, the work flow of a company's human resources (HR) department when it processes a new hire. This applica-

tion also demonstrates how to use the J2EE platform to accomplish a task that many JMS client applications perform.

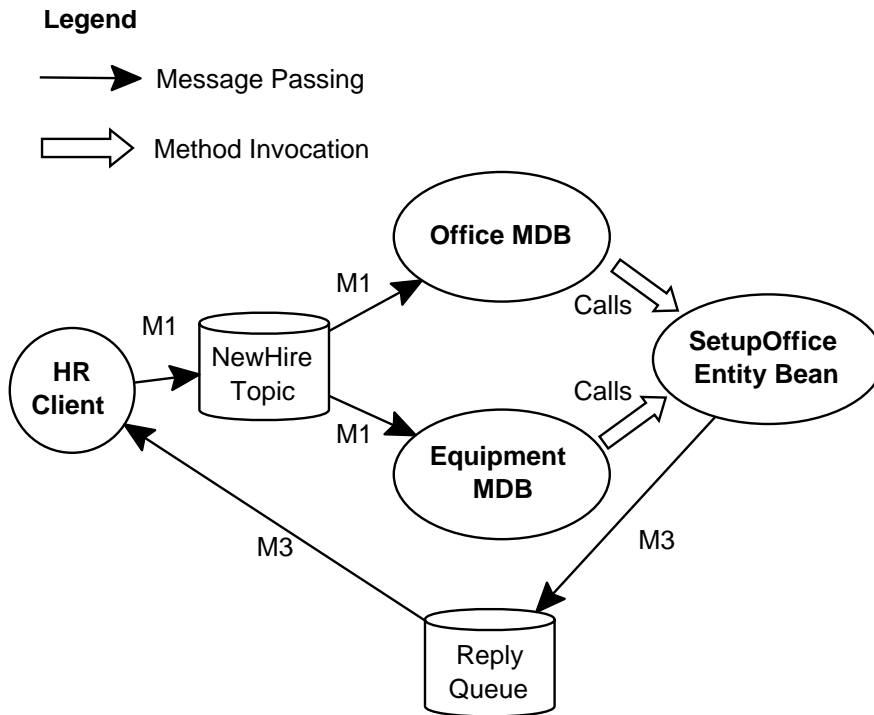
A JMS client must often wait for several messages from various sources. It then uses the information in all these messages to assemble a message that it then sends to another destination. The common term for this process is *joining messages*. Such a task must be transactional, with all the receives and the send as a single transaction. If all the messages are not received successfully, the transaction can be rolled back. For a client example that illustrates this task, see A Local Transaction Example (page 738).

A message-driven bean can process only one message at a time in a transaction. To provide the ability to join messages, a J2EE application can have the message-driven bean store the interim information in an entity bean. The entity bean can then determine whether all the information has been received; when it has, the entity bean can create and send the message to the other destination. Once it has completed its task, the entity bean can remove itself.

The basic steps of the application are as follows.

1. The HR department's application client generates an employee ID for each new hire and then publishes a message containing the new hire's name and employee ID. The client then creates a temporary queue with a message listener that waits for a reply to the message.
2. Two message-driven beans process each message: One bean assigns the new hire's office number, and one bean assigns the new hire's equipment. The first bean to process the message creates an entity bean to store the information it has generated. The second bean locates the existing entity bean and adds its information.
3. When both the office and the equipment have been assigned, the entity bean sends to the reply queue a message describing the assignments, then removes itself. The application client's message listener retrieves the information.

Figure 21–3 illustrates the structure of this application. An actual HR application would have more components, of course; other beans could set up payroll and benefits records, schedule orientation, and so on.



**Figure 21–3** A J2EE Application: Client to Message-Driven Beans to Entity Bean

## Writing the Application Components

Writing the components of the application involves

- Coding the Application Client: `HumanResourceClient.java`
- Coding the Message-Driven Beans
- Coding the Entity Bean

## Coding the Application Client: HumanResourceClient.java

The application client program, `src/HumanResourceClient.java`, performs the following steps:

1. Uses the JNDI naming context `java:comp/env` to look up a `ConnectionFactory` and a topic
2. Creates a `TemporaryQueue` to receive notification of processing that occurs, based on new-hire events it has published
3. Creates a `MessageConsumer` for the `TemporaryQueue`, sets the `MessageConsumer`'s message listener, and starts the connection
4. Creates a `MessageProducer` and a `MapMessage`
5. Creates five new employees with randomly generated names, positions, and ID numbers (in sequence) and publishes five messages containing this information

The message listener, `HRLListener`, waits for messages that contain the assigned office and equipment for each employee. When a message arrives, the message listener displays the information received and checks to see whether all five messages have arrived yet. When they have, the message listener notifies the main program, which then exits.

## Coding the Message-Driven Beans

This example uses two message-driven beans, `src/ReserveEquipmentMsgBean.java` and `src/ReserveOfficeMsgBean.java`. The beans take the following steps.

1. The `ejbCreate` method gets a handle to the local home interface of the entity bean.
2. The `onMessage` method retrieves the information in the message. The `ReserveEquipmentMsgBean`'s `onMessage` method chooses equipment, based on the new hire's position; the `ReserveOfficeMsgBean`'s `onMessage` method randomly generates an office number.
3. After a slight delay to simulate real-world processing hitches, the `onMessage` method calls a helper method, `compose`.
4. The `compose` method either creates or finds, by primary key, the `SetupOffice` entity bean and uses it to store the equipment or the office information in the database.

## Coding the Entity Bean

The `SetupOffice` bean is an entity bean that uses a local interface. The local interface allows the entity bean and the message-driven beans to be packaged in the same EJB JAR file for maximum efficiency. The entity bean has these components:

- The local home interface, `SetupOfficeLocalHome.java`
- The local interface, `SetupOfficeLocal.java`
- The bean class, `SetupOfficeBean.java`

The local home interface source file is `src/SetupOfficeLocalHome.java`. It declares the create method, called `createLocal` for a bean that uses a local interface, and one finder method, `findByPrimaryKey`.

The local interface, `src/SetupOfficeLocal.java`, declares several business methods that get and manipulate new-hire data.

The bean class, `src/SetupOfficeBean.java`, implements the business methods and their helper method, `checkIfSetupComplete`. The bean class also implements the required methods `ejbCreateLocal`, `ejbPostCreateLocal`, `setEntityContext`, `unsetEntityContext`, `ejbRemove`, `ejbActivate`, `ejbPassivate`, `ejbLoad`, and `ejbStore`. The `ejbFindByPrimaryKey` method is generated automatically.

The only methods called by the message-driven beans are the business methods declared in the local interface, the `findByPrimaryKey` method, and the `createLocal` method. The entity bean uses container-managed persistence, so all database calls are generated automatically.

## Creating and Packaging the Application

This example uses a connection factory named `jms/TopicConnectionFactory` and a topic named `jms/Topic`, both of which you probably created in the previous chapter. If not, see *Creating the JMS Administered Objects for the Simple Examples* (page 711) for instructions.

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Starting the PointBase Database Server
2. Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server
3. Creating Database Resources

4. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application
5. Packaging the Application Client
6. Packaging the Message-Driven Beans
7. Packaging the Entity Bean
8. Updating the JNDI Names

## Starting the PointBase Database Server

The PointBase software is included with the J2EE Application Server download bundle. You may also run this example with databases provided by other vendors.

The PointBase server should be started before you start the J2EE Application Server. If the J2EE Application Server is running, stop it as follows:

- On Windows systems, choose Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Stop Application Server.
- On UNIX systems, use the following command:  
`asadmin stop-domain`

From the command line prompt, start the PointBase database server.

- On Windows systems, choose Start→Programs→Sun Microsystems→J2EE 1.4 SDK→Start PointBase.
- On UNIX systems, use the following command:  
`<J2EE_HOME>/pointbase/tools/serveroption/startserver.sh`

## Compiling the Source Files and Starting the J2EE Application Server

1. Use the build target to compile the source files:  
`asant build`
2. Start the J2EE Application Server.

## Creating Database Resources

In order to use entity beans that use container-managed persistence with the J2EE Application Server, you must create a JDBC connection pool, a JDBC resource, and a persistence resource. The tutorial provides asant targets for all

of these. The first two targets are in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/common/targets.xml`. The last one is in the file `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/client-mdbentity/build.xml`. Perform the following steps:

1. Create a JDBC connection pool named `ejb-tutorial-pool`:  
`asant create-jdbc-connection-pool_common`
2. Create a JDBC resource named `jdbc/ejbTutorialDB`:  
`asant create-jdbc-resource_common`
3. Create a persistence resource named `jdo/cmp-clientmdbentity`:  
`asant create-persistence-resource`
4. Reconfigure the server:  
`asant reconfig_common`

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Application

1. Start the deploytool.
2. Choose File→New→Application EAR.
3. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `clientmdbentity`.
4. In the File Name field, type `ClientMDBEntityApp`.
5. Click New Application.
6. Click OK.

## Packaging the Application Client

To package the application client, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
2. In the JAR File Contents screen:
  - a. Verify that Create New AppClient Module in Application is selected and that the application is `ClientMDBEntityApp`.
  - b. In the AppClient Display Name field, type `HumanResourceClient`.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.

- d. In the dialog box, locate the `build/client/` directory. Select `HumanResourceClient.class` and `HumanResourceClient$HRLListener.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen, select `client.HumanResourceClient` in the Main Class combo box.
4. In the Message Destination References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type `jms/NewHireTopic` in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose `javax.jms.Topic` from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose Produces from the Usage menu.
  - d. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field.
5. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `jms/MyConnectionFactory` in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.
  - d. Type `jms/TopicConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.
6. Click Finish.
7. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `HumanResourceClient` appears in the Producers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Topic` in the JNDI Name field.

## Packaging the Message-Driven Beans

Follow these instructions twice, first for the Equipment message-driven bean and then for the Office message-driven bean.

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select Create New JAR Module in Application and verify that the application is `ClientMDBEntityApp`. The second time, choose Add to Existing JAR Module.



- b. In the JAR Display Name field, type EBJAR. (You only do this the first time.)
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the build/eb/ directory. Select ReserveEquipmentMsgBean.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK. (The second time, choose ReserveOfficeMsgBean.class.)
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Message-Driven radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose eb.ReserveEquipmentMsgBean (the second time, choose eb.ReserveOfficeMsgBean).
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, type EquipmentMDB (the second time, type OfficeMDB).
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Enterprise Bean References and Transaction Management boxes.
5. In the Message-Driven Bean Settings screen:
  - a. Click Add in the Activation Configuration Properties area.
  - b. Type destination in the Property Name field and PhysicalTopic in the Value field.
  - c. Click Add again.
  - d. Type destinationType in the Property Name field and javax.jms.Topic in the Value field.
  - e. Choose javax.jms.Topic from the Destination Type menu.
  - f. Type PhysicalTopic in the Destination Name field.
  - g. Click Deployment Settings. In the dialog box, type jmsra in the Resource Adapter field and click OK.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
7. In the Enterprise Bean References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type ejb/local/SetupOffice in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose Entity from the EJB Type menu.
  - c. Choose Local from the Interfaces menu.
  - d. Type eb.SetupOfficeLocalHome in the Home Interface field.
  - e. Type eb.SetupOfficeLocal in the Local/Remote Interface field.
  - f. Type SetupOffice in the Enterprise Bean Name field.

The entity bean uses local interfaces, so the message-driven beans access the bean through the bean name rather than the JNDI name.

## Packaging the Entity Bean

To package the entity bean, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Choose Add to Existing JAR Module and verify that the module is EBJAR (ClientMDBEntityApp).
  - b. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - c. In the dialog box, locate the build/eb/ directory. Select SetupOfficeBean.class, SetupOfficeLocal.class, and SetupOfficeLocalHome.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Entity radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose eb.SetupOfficeBean.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, type SetupOffice.
  - d. In the Local Interfaces area, choose eb.SetupOfficeLocalHome from the Local Home Interface menu and eb.SetupOfficeLocal from the Local Interface menu.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Resource References and Transaction Management boxes.
5. In the Entity Settings screen:
  - a. Select the radio button labeled Container-Managed Persistence (2.0).
  - b. Select the checkboxes next to all six fields in the Fields To Be Persisted area: employeeId, employeeName, equipmentList, officeNumber, serializedReplyDestination, and replyCorrelationMsgId.
  - c. In the Abstract Schema Name field, type SetupOfficeSchema.
  - d. In the Primary Key Class field, type java.lang.String.
  - e. In the Primary Key Field Name field, select employeeId.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
7. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.

- b. Type `javax.jms.MyConnectionFactory` in the Coded Name field.
- c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.
- d. Type `javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.

You don't need to specify any message destinations for this bean, because the bean uses a temporary destination for the reply message.

Now, specify the message destinations for the enterprise bean JAR file. Click the EBJAR node, then click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:

1. Click Add.
2. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, `HumanResourceClient` appears in the Producers area, and the names of the message-driven beans appear in the Consumers area.
3. Type `javax.jms.Topic` in the JNDI Name field.

Now, specify the CMP resources for the bean.

1. Click the Cmp Resource tab.
2. In the Jndi Name field, type `jdo/cmp-clientmdbentity`.
3. In the Database Table combo box, select the two checkboxes labeled Create table on deploy and Delete table on undeploy.
4. Choose `pointbase` from the Vendor Name menu.

## Updating the JNDI Names

In the J2EE Application Server, the JNDI name for a message-driven bean is the destination it receives messages from, not the bean name.

1. Select the application and click the JNDI Names tab.
2. Type `javax.jms.Topic` in the JNDI Name field for both `EquipmentMDB` and `OfficeMDB`.

Leave the JNDI Name field for the EJB references empty, because you are accessing the entity bean through a local interface.

Verify that the JNDI names for the application components are correct. They should appear as shown in Table 21–6 and Table 21–7.

**Table 21–7** References Pane for ClientMDBEntityApp

|          |                     |                          |                             |
|----------|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| EJB Ref  | OfficeMDB           | ejb/local/SetupOffice    |                             |
| Resource | HumanResourceClient | jms/MyConnection-Factory | jms/TopicConnection-Factory |

## Deploying the Application

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
4. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application

1. In the deploytool, select the server node.
2. Select ClientMDBEntityApp from the list of deployed objects, then click Client Jar.
3. Choose Browse to navigate to the directory from which you will run the client. Specify the clientmdbentity directory. When you reach the directory, click Select, then click OK. Click OK in the information dialog. You will find a file named ClientMDBEntityAppClient.jar in the specified directory.
4. To run the client, use the following command:  

```
appclient -client ClientMDBEntityAppClient.jar
```

The program output in the terminal window looks something like this:

```
INFO: Binding name:'java:comp/env/jms/NewHireTopic'
PUBLISHER: Setting hire ID to 25, name Gertrude Bourbon,
position Senior Programmer
PUBLISHER: Setting hire ID to 26, name Jack Verdon, position
Manager
PUBLISHER: Setting hire ID to 27, name Fred Tudor, position
Manager
```

```
PUBLISHER: Setting hire ID to 28, name Fred Martin, position
Programmer
PUBLISHER: Setting hire ID to 29, name Mary Stuart, position
Manager
Waiting for 5 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 25
  Name: Gertrude Bourbon
  Equipment: Laptop
  Office number: 183
Waiting for 4 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 26
  Name: Jack Verdon
  Equipment: Pager
  Office number: 20
Waiting for 3 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 27
  Name: Fred Tudor
  Equipment: Pager
  Office number: 51
Waiting for 2 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 28
  Name: Fred Martin
  Equipment: Desktop System
  Office number: 141
Waiting for 1 message(s)
New hire event processed:
  Employee ID: 29
  Name: Mary Stuart
  Equipment: Pager
  Office number: 238
```

The output from the enterprise beans appears in the server log. For each employee, the application first creates the entity bean, then finds it. You may see runtime errors in the server log about transactions and primary keys, and transaction rollbacks may occur. The fact that the client runs correctly in spite of these errors is one of the advantages of container-managed transactions.

## Undeploying and Removing the Application

To undeploy and remove the application, perform the following steps:

1. Select the deployed application in the server pane and click Undeploy.
2. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose File→Close.
3. Remove the build directory:

```
asant clean
```

4. If you wish, stop the server:

```
asadmin stop-domain
```

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

## An Application Example that Consumes Messages from a Remote J2EE Server

This section and the following section both explain how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a pair of J2EE applications that use the JMS API and run on two J2EE servers. A common practice is to deploy different components of an enterprise application on different systems within a company, and these examples illustrate on a small scale how to do this for an application that uses the JMS API.

However, the two examples work in slightly different ways. In this first example, the deployment information for a message-driven bean specifies the remote server from which it will *consume* messages. In the next example, the same bean is deployed on two different servers, so it is the client application that specifies the servers (one local, one remote) to which it is *sending* messages.

This first example divides the example in A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API (page 760) into two applications, one containing the application client and the other containing the message-driven bean.

The section covers the following topics:

- Overview of the Applications
- Writing the Application Components
- Creating and Packaging the Applications
- Deploying the Applications
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client
- Undeploying and Removing the Applications

You will find the source files for this section in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/consumerremote/`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

## Overview of the Applications

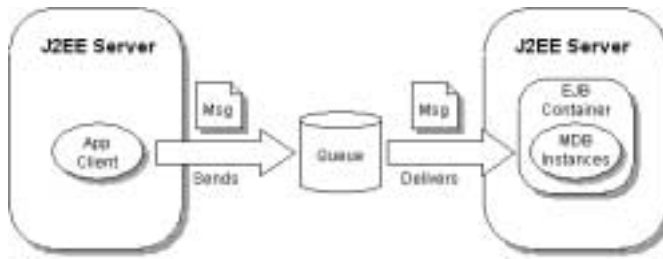
Except for the fact that it is packaged as two separate applications, this example is almost identical to the one in A Simple J2EE Application that Uses the JMS API (page 760):

- One application contains the application client, which sends three messages to a queue. The only difference is that it uses a connection factory that points to the remote system.
- The other application contains the message-driven bean.

The basic steps of the applications are as follows.

1. The administrator starts two J2EE servers, one on each system.
2. On one server, the administrator deploys the client application, which sends three messages to a queue.
3. On the other server, the administrator deploys the message-driven bean application, which specifies the URL of the server where the client is deployed.
4. The message-driven bean consumes the messages.

Figure 21–4 illustrates the structure of this application. You can see that it is almost identical to Figure 21–1 except that there are two J2EE servers. The queue is not associated with either server; it must exist on both servers.



**Figure 21–4** A J2EE Application that Consumes Messages from a Remote Server

## Writing the Application Components

Writing the components of the applications involves

- Coding the application client
- Coding the message-driven bean

The application client, `earthclient/src/SimpleClient.java`, is identical to the one in Coding the Application Client: `SimpleClient.java` (page 761).

Similarly, the message-driven bean, `marssmdb/src/MessageBean.java`, is identical to the one in Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `MessageBean.java` (page 762).

The only major difference is that the client and bean are packaged in two separate applications.

## Creating and Packaging the Applications

This example uses the connection factory named `jms/QueueConnectionFactory` and the queue named `jms/Queue`, both of which you created in Writing Simple JMS Client Applications (page 705).

We'll suppose, as we did in Running JMS Client Programs on Multiple Systems (page 720), that the two servers are named `earth` and `mars`.

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Starting the J2EE Application Server and Compiling the Source Files
2. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Applications



3. Packaging the Application Client
4. Packaging the Message-Driven Bean
5. Verifying and Updating the JNDI Names

## Starting the J2EE Application Server and Compiling the Source Files

Which system you use to package and deploy the application and which system you use to run the client depends on your network configuration. If both systems are visible to each other, it does not matter which system you use for which tasks. If only one system is visible to the other, do the packaging and deployment on the system from which the other system is visible, and run the client on the other system. These instructions assume that earth is visible from mars, but mars is not visible from earth.

1. Start the J2EE Application Server on earth, if it is not already running.
2. Start the J2EE Application Server on mars, if it is not already running.
3. Also on mars, go to the directory `earthclient`. Compile the source files:  
`asant build`
4. Also on mars, go to the directory `marsmdb`. Compile the source files:  
`asant build`

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Applications

On mars, do the following to create the application for the client:

1. Start the deploytool.
2. Choose File→New→Application EAR.
3. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `earthclient`.
4. In the File Name field, type `EarthClientApp`.
5. Click New Application.
6. Click OK.

On mars, do the following to create the application for the message-driven bean:

7. Choose File→New→Application EAR.

8. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory marsmdb.
9. In the File Name field, type MarsMDBApp.
10. Click New Application.
11. Click OK.

## Packaging the Application Client

Perform the following steps to package the application client:

1. Choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
2. In the JAR File Contents screen:
  - a. Verify that Create New AppClient Module in Application is selected and that the application is EarthClientApp.
  - b. In the AppClient Display Name field, type SimpleClient.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the earthclient/build/ directory. Select SimpleClient.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen, select SimpleClient in the Main Class combo box.
4. In the Message Destination References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type jms/QueueName in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose javax.jms.Queue from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose Produces from the Usage menu.
  - d. Type PhysicalQueue in the Destination Name field.
5. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type jms/MyConnectionFactory in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose javax.jms.ConnectionFactory from the Type menu.
  - d. Type jms/QueueConnectionFactory in the JNDI name field and j2ee in both the User Name and Password fields.
6. Click Finish.

7. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `SimpleClient` appears in the Producers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field.

## Packaging the Message-Driven Bean

Perform the following steps to package the message-driven bean:

1. Choose File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select Create New JAR Module in Application and verify that the application is `MarsMDBApp`.
  - b. In the JAR Display Name field, type `MDBJAR`.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the `marshdb/build/` directory. Select `MessageBean.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Message-Driven radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose `MessageBean`.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, accept the default name, `MessageBean`.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Transaction Management box.
5. In the Message-Driven Bean Settings screen:
  - a. Click Add in the Activation Configuration Properties area.
  - b. Type `destination` in the Property Name field and `PhysicalQueue` in the Value field.
  - c. Click Add again.
  - d. Type `destinationType` in the Property Name field and `javax.jms.Queue` in the Value field.
  - e. Click Add again.

- f. Type `addressList` in the Property Name field and the name of the remote system in the Value field. This means that the bean will consume messages from the remote system.
  - g. Choose `javax.jms.Queue` from the Destination Type menu.
  - h. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field.
  - i. Click Deployment Settings. In the dialog box, type `jmsra` in the Resource Adapter field and click OK.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
  7. Click Finish.
  8. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
    - a. Click Add.
    - b. Type `PhysicalQueue` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `MessageBean` appears in the Consumers area.
    - c. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field.

## Verifying and Updating the JNDI Names

In the J2EE Application Server, the JNDI name for a message-driven bean is the destination it receives messages from, not the bean name. You need to update the JNDI name for the `MarsMDBApp` application and verify it for the `EarthClientApp` application.

1. Select the `MarsMDBApp` application and click the JNDI Names tab.
2. Type `jms/Queue` in the JNDI Name field for `MessageBean`.

The JNDI name for the application should appear as shown in Table 21–8. Only the Application Pane has any content.

Select the `EarthClientApp` application and click the JNDI Names tab.

The JNDI name for the application should appear as shown in Table 21–9. Only the References Pane has any content.

**Table 21–9** References Pane for `EarthClientApp`

|          |              |                          |                             |
|----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Resource | SimpleClient | jms/MyConnection-Factory | jms/QueueConnection-Factory |
|----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|

## Deploying the Applications

Before you can deploy the applications, you must add the remote server. Perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→Add Server.
2. Type the name of the remote system in the Server Name field and click OK.
3. The server appears in the tree under Servers. Select it.
4. In the dialog box that appears, type the administrative user name and password for the server in the Connection Settings area and click OK.

To deploy the `EarthClientApp` application, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, select the URI for the remote system:  
`deployer:Sun:S1AS::system-name:4848`
4. Type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

To deploy the `MarsMDBApp` application, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, choose the URI for `localhost` from the menu.
4. Type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client

Perform the following steps:

1. In the `deploytool`, select the server node.

2. Select `EarthClientApp` from the list of deployed objects, then click `Client Jar`.
3. Choose `Browse` to navigate to the directory on the remote system from which you will run the client. When you reach the directory, click `Select`, then click `OK`. Click `OK` in the information dialog. You will find a file named `EarthClientAppClient.jar` in the specified directory.

To run the client,

1. Go to the directory on the remote system where you created the client JAR file.
2. Use the following command:  
`appclient -client EarthClientAppClient.jar`

On earth, the output of the `appclient` command looks something like this:

```
INFO: Binding name: 'java:comp/env/jms/QueueName'
Sending message: This is message 1
Sending message: This is message 2
Sending message: This is message 3
```

On mars, the output in the server log looks like this:

```
In MessageBean.MessageBean()
In MessageBean.setMessageDrivenContext()
In MessageBean.ejbCreate()
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 1
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 2
MESSAGE BEAN: Message received: This is message 3
```

## Undeploying and Removing the Applications

To undeploy and remove the applications, perform the following steps:

1. Select `localhost`.
2. Select `MarsMDBApp` in the server pane and click `Undeploy`.
3. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose `File→Close`.
4. Repeat steps 1-3 for `EarthClientApp` on the remote system.
5. Remove the `build` directory:  
`asant clean`

6. If you wish, stop the server:

```
asadmin stop-domain
```

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

## An Application Example that Deploys a Message-Driven Bean on Two J2EE Servers

This section, like the previous one, explains how to write, compile, package, deploy, and run a pair of J2EE applications that use the JMS API and run on two J2EE servers. The applications are slightly more complex than the ones in the first example.

The applications use the following components:

- An application client that uses two connection factories—one ordinary one and one that is configured to communicate with the remote server—to create two publishers and two subscribers and to publish and to consume messages
- A message-driven bean that is deployed twice—once on the local server and once on the remote one—to process the messages and to send replies

In this section, the term *local server* means the server on which both the application client and the message-driven bean are deployed. The term *remote server* means the server on which only the message-driven bean is deployed.

The section covers the following topics:

- Overview of the Applications
- Writing the Application Components
- Creating and Packaging the Applications
- Deploying the Applications
- Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client
- Undeploying and Removing the Applications

You will find the source files for this section in `<INSTALL>/j2eetutorial14/examples/jms/sendremote/`. Path names in this section are relative to this directory.

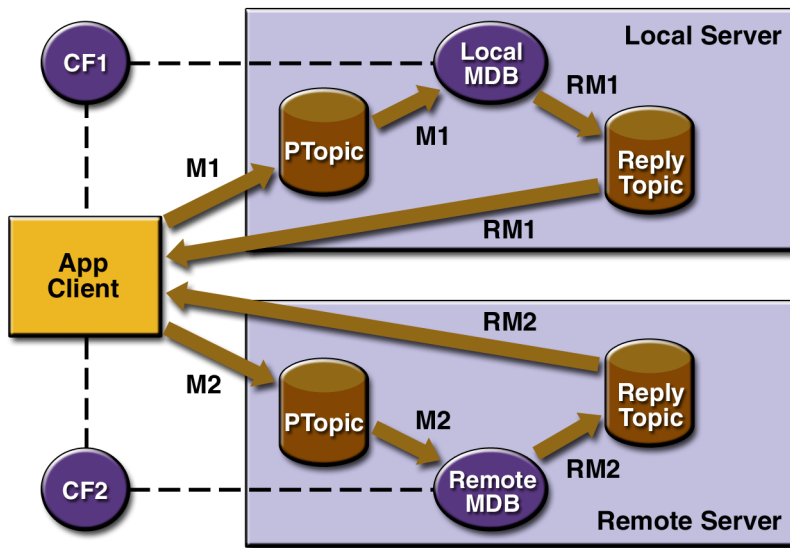
## Overview of the Applications

This pair of applications is somewhat similar to the applications in An Application Example that Consumes Messages from a Remote J2EE Server (page 790) in that the only components are a client and a message-driven bean. However, the applications here use these components in more complex ways. One application consists of the application client. The other application contains only the message-driven bean and is deployed twice, once on each server.

The basic steps of the applications are as follows.

1. The administrator starts two J2EE servers, one on each system.
2. On the local server, the administrator creates a connection factory to communicate with the remote server.
3. The application client uses two connection factories—an ordinary one and the one just created—to create two connections, sessions, publishers, and subscribers. Each publisher publishes five messages.
4. The local and the remote message-driven beans each receive five messages and send replies.
5. The client's message listener consumes the replies.

Figure 21–5 illustrates the structure of this application.



**Figure 21–5** A J2EE Application that Sends Messages to Two Servers



# Writing the Application Components

Writing the components of the applications involves

- Coding the Application Client: `MultiAppServerClient.java`
- Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `ReplyMsgBean.java`

## Coding the Application Client: `MultiAppServerClient.java`

The application client class, `multiclient/src/MultiAppServerClient.java`, does the following.

1. It uses the JNDI naming context `java:comp/env` to look up two connection factories and a topic.
2. For each connection factory, it creates a connection, a publisher session, a publisher, a subscriber session, a subscriber, and a temporary topic for replies.
3. Each subscriber sets its message listener, `ReplyListener`, and starts the connection.
4. Each publisher publishes five messages and creates a list of the messages the listener should expect.
5. When each reply arrives, the message listener displays its contents and removes it from the list of expected messages.
6. When all the messages have arrived, the client exits.

## Coding the Message-Driven Bean: `ReplyMsgBean.java`

The `onMessage` method of the message-driven bean class, `reply-bean/src/ReplyMsgBean.java`, does the following:

1. Casts the incoming message to a `TextMessage` and displays the text
2. Creates a connection, session, and publisher for the reply message
3. Publishes the message to the reply topic
4. Closes the connection

On both servers, it will consume messages from the topic `jms/Topic`.

## Creating and Packaging the Applications

This example uses the connection factory named `jms/TopicConnectionFactory` and the topic named `jms/Topic`, both of which you created in *Writing Simple JMS Client Applications* (page 705). It uses an additional connection factory, `jms/RemoteTopicConnectionFactory`, that communicates with the remote system.

Creating and packaging this application involve several steps:

1. Starting the J2EE Application Server and Compiling the Source Files
2. Creating the Connection Factory
3. Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Applications
4. Packaging the Application Client
5. Packaging the Message-Driven Bean
6. Verifying and Updating the JNDI Names

## Starting the J2EE Application Server and Compiling the Source Files

You need to start the J2EE Application Server on both the local and remote systems. You can perform all other tasks on the local system.

1. Start the J2EE Application Server on the local system, if it is not already running.
2. Start the J2EE Application Server on the remote system, if it is not already running.
3. On the local system, go to the directory `multiclient`. Compile the source files:  
`asant build`
4. Also on the local system, go to the directory `replybean`. Compile the source files:  
`asant build`

## Creating the Connection Factory

To create a connection factory that will communicate with the remote server, perform the following steps:

1. Use the following command, replacing *sys-name* with the name of your remote system:

```
asadmin create-jms-resource --resourcetype  
javax.jms.TopicConnectionFactory --property  
imqAddressList=sys-name jms/RemoteTopicConnectionFactory
```

2. Reconfigure the server:

```
asant reconfig_common
```

3. To verify that the factory was created, use the following command:

```
asadmin list-jms-resources --user admin
```

For this example, the remote server must have the `TopicConnectionFactory` and topic you created in *Writing Simple JMS Client Applications* (page 705). If you have not run any of the tutorial examples on the remote system, run the following `asant` targets on it:

```
asant create-tcf  
asant create-topic  
asant reconfig_common
```

## Starting the J2EE Deploytool and Creating the Applications

You can perform all the packaging and deployment tasks on the local system.

Do the following to create the application for the client:

1. Start the deploytool.
2. Choose **File→New→Application EAR**.
3. Click **Browse** next to the **Application File Name** field and use the file chooser to locate the directory `multiclient`.
4. In the **File Name** field, type `MultiClientApp`.
5. Click **New Application**.
6. Click **OK**.

Do the following to create the application for the message-driven bean:

7. Choose File→New→Application EAR.
8. Click Browse next to the Application File Name field and use the file chooser to locate the directory replybean.
9. In the File Name field, type ReplyBeanApp.
10. Click New Application.
11. Click OK.

## Packaging the Application Client

Perform the following steps to create and package the application client:

12. Select MultiClientApp and choose File→New→Application Client JAR to start the Application Client Wizard.
13. In the JAR File Contents screen:
  - a. Verify that Create New AppClient Module in Application is selected and that the application is MultiClientApp.
  - b. In the AppClient Display Name field, type MultiAppServerClient.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the multiclient/build/ directory. Select MultiAppServerClient.class and MultiAppServerClient\$ReplyListener.class from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
14. In the General screen, select MultiAppServerClient in the Main Class combo box.
15. In the Message Destination References screen, click Add. In the dialog box:
  - a. Type `javax/TopicName` in the Coded Name field.
  - b. Choose `javax.jms.Topic` from the Destination Type menu.
  - c. Choose Produces from the Usage menu.
  - d. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field.
16. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `javax/TopicConnectionFactory1` in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.

- d. Type `jms/TopicConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `jms/TopicConnectionFactory2` in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose `javax.jms.ConnectionFactory` from the Type menu.
  - d. Type `jms/RemoteTopicConnectionFactory` in the JNDI name field and `j2ee` in both the User Name and Password fields.
17. Click Finish.
18. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
- a. Click Add.
  - b. Type `PhysicalTopic` in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and `MultiAppServerClient` appears in the Producers area.
  - c. Type `jms/Topic` in the JNDI Name field.

## Packaging the Message-Driven Bean

Perform the following steps to package the message-driven bean:

1. Select `ReplyBeanApp` and choose `File→New→Enterprise JavaBean JAR` to start the Enterprise Bean Wizard, then click Next.
2. In the EJB JAR screen:
  - a. Select `Create New JAR Module in Application` and verify that the application is `ReplyBeanApp`.
  - b. In the JAR Display Name field, type `MDBJAR`.
  - c. Click the Edit button next to the Contents text area.
  - d. In the dialog box, locate the `replybean/build/` directory. Select `ReplyMsgBean.class` from the Available Files tree area and click Add, then OK.
3. In the General screen:
  - a. Choose the Message-Driven radio button.
  - b. From the Enterprise Bean Class menu, choose `ReplyMsgBean`.
  - c. In the Enterprise Bean Display Name field, accept the default name, `ReplyMsgBean`.
4. In the Configuration Options screen, check the Resource References and Transaction Management boxes.

5. In the Message-Driven Bean Settings screen:
  - a. Click Add in the Activation Configuration Properties area.
  - b. Type destination in the Property Name field and PhysicalTopic in the Value field.
  - c. Click Add again.
  - d. Type destinationType in the Property Name field and javax.jms.Topic in the Value field.
  - e. Choose javax.jms.Topic from the Destination Type menu.
  - f. Type PhysicalTopic in the Destination Name field.
  - g. Click Deployment Settings. In the dialog box, type jmsra in the Resource Adapter field and click OK.
6. In the Transaction Management screen, choose Container-Managed.
7. In the Resource References screen:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type jms/TopicConnectionFactory in the Coded Name field.
  - c. Choose javax.jms.ConnectionFactory from the Type menu.
  - d. Type jms/TopicConnectionFactory in the JNDI name field and j2ee in both the User Name and Password fields.
8. Click Finish.
9. Click the Message Destinations tab. In the inspector pane:
  - a. Click Add.
  - b. Type PhysicalTopic in the Destination Name field. When you press Enter, this name appears in the Display Name field, and ReplyMsgBean appears in the Consumers area.
  - c. Type jms/Topic in the JNDI Name field.

## Verifying and Updating the JNDI Names

You need to update the JNDI name for the RemoteMDBApp application and verify it for the MultiClientApp application.

1. Select the ReplyBeanApp application and click the JNDI Names tab.
2. Type jms/Topic in the JNDI Name field for ReplyMsgBean.

The Application Pane for ReplyBeanApp should appear as shown in Table 21–10.

The References Pane for ReplyBeanApp should appear as shown in Table 21–11.

**Table 21–11** References Pane for ReplyBeanApp

|          |              |                             |                             |
|----------|--------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Resource | ReplyMsgBean | jms/TopicConnection-Factory | jms/TopicConnection-Factory |
|----------|--------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|

Select the MultiClientApp application and click the JNDI Names tab.

The JNDI names for the application should appear as shown in Table 21–12. Only the References Pane has any content.

**Table 21–12** References Pane for MultiClientApp

|          |                       |                              |                                  |
|----------|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Resource | MultiAppServer-Client | jms/TopicConnection-Factory1 | jms/TopicConnection-Factory      |
| Resource | MultiAppServer-Client | jms/TopicConnection-Factory2 | jms/RemoteTopicConnectionFactory |

## Deploying the Applications

To deploy the MultiClientApp application and the ReplyBeanApp application on the local server, perform the following steps for each application:

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, choose the URI for localhost from the menu:  
deployer:Sun:S1AS::localhost:4848
4. Type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

Before you can deploy the ReplyBeanApp application, you must add the remote server, if you did not do so before. Perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→Add Server.

2. Type the name of the server in the Server Name field and click OK.
3. The server appears in the tree under Servers. Select it.
4. In the dialog box that appears, type the administrative user name and password for the server in the Connection Settings area and click OK.

To deploy the ReplyBeanApp application on the remote server, perform the following steps:

1. Choose File→Save to save the application.
2. Choose Tools→Deploy.
3. In the dialog box, choose the URI with the name of the remote system from the menu.
4. Type your administrative user name and password (if they are not already filled in) and click OK.
5. In the Distribute Module dialog box, click Close when the process completes.

## Saving the Client JAR and Running the Application Client

Perform the following steps:

1. In the deploytool, select localhost.
2. Select MultiClientApp from the list of deployed objects, then click Client Jar.
3. Choose Browse to navigate to the directory from which you will run the client. Specify the sendremote/multiclient/ directory. When you reach the directory, click Select, then click OK.
4. Click OK in the information dialog. You will find a file named MultiClientAppClient.jar in the specified directory.
5. To run the client, use the following command:  
`appclient -client MultiClientAppClient.jar`

On the local system, the output of the appclient command looks something like this:

```
Binding name: 'java:comp/env/jms/TopicName'
Sent message: text: id=1 to local app server
Sent message: text: id=2 to remote app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=1, text=ReplyMsgBean
```



```

processed message: text: id=1 to local app server
Sent message: text: id=3 to local app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=3, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=3 to local app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=2, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=2 to remote app server
Sent message: text: id=4 to remote app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=4, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=4 to remote app server
Sent message: text: id=5 to local app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=5, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=5 to local app server
Sent message: text: id=6 to remote app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=6, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=6 to remote app server
Sent message: text: id=7 to local app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=7, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=7 to local app server
Sent message: text: id=8 to remote app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=8, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=8 to remote app server
Sent message: text: id=9 to local app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=9, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=9 to local app server
Sent message: text: id=10 to remote app server
ReplyListener: Received message: id=10, text=ReplyMsgBean
processed message: text: id=10 to remote app server
Waiting for 0 message(s) from local app server
Waiting for 0 message(s) from remote app server
Finished
Closing connection 1
Closing connection 2

```

On the local system, where the message-driven bean receives the odd-numbered messages, the output in the server log looks like this:

```

In ReplyMsgBean.ReplyMsgBean()
In ReplyMsgBean.setMessageDrivenContext()
In ReplyMsgBean.ejbCreate()
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=1 to local app server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=3 to local app server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=5 to local app server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=7 to local app server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=9 to local app server

```

On the remote system, where the bean receives the even-numbered messages, the output in the server log looks like this:

```
In ReplyMsgBean.ReplyMsgBean()
In ReplyMsgBean.setMessageDrivenContext()
In ReplyMsgBean.ejbCreate()
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=2 to remote app
server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=4 to remote app
server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=6 to remote app
server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=8 to remote app
server
ReplyMsgBean: Received message: text: id=10 to remote app
server
```

## Undeploying and Removing the Applications

To undeploy and remove the applications, perform the following steps:

1. Select `localhost`.
2. Select `MultiClientApp` in the server pane and click `Undeploy`.
3. Select the application in the left-hand pane and choose `File→Close`.
4. Repeat steps 1-3 for `ReplyBeanApp` on the local system.
5. Repeat steps 1-3 for `ReplyBeanApp` on the remote system.
6. Remove the `build` directory:  
`asant clean`
7. If you wish, stop the server.

If you wish, you can manually delete the EAR and client JAR files.

---

# Java Encoding Schemes

This appendix describes the character-encoding schemes that are supported by the Java platform.

## **US-ASCII**

US-ASCII is a 7-bit encoding scheme that covers the English-language alphabet. It is not large enough to cover the characters used in other languages, however, so it is not very useful for internationalization.

## **ISO-8859-1**

This is the character set for Western European languages. It's an 8-bit encoding scheme in which every encoded character takes exactly 8-bits. (With the remaining character sets, on the other hand, some codes are reserved to signal the start of a multi-byte character.)

## **UTF-8**

UTF-8 is an 8-bit encoding scheme. Characters from the English-language alphabet are all encoded using an 8-bit bytes. Characters for other languages are encoded using 2, 3 or even 4 bytes. UTF-8 therefore produces compact documents for the English language, but for other languages, documents tend to be half again as large as they would be if they used UTF-16. If the majority of a document's text is in a Western European language, then UTF-8 is generally a good choice because it allows for internationalization while still minimizing the space required for encoding.

## **UTF-16**

UTF-16 is a 16-bit encoding scheme. It is large enough to encode all the characters from all the alphabets in the world. It uses 16-bits for most characters, but includes 32-bit characters for ideogram-based languages like Chinese. A Western European-language document that uses UTF-16 will be

twice as large as the same document encoded using UTF-8. But documents written in far Eastern languages will be far smaller using UTF-16.

---

Note: UTF-16 depends on the system's byte-ordering conventions. Although in most systems, high-order bytes follow low-order bytes in a 16-bit or 32-bit "word", some systems use the reverse order. UTF-16 documents cannot be interchanged between such systems without a conversion.

---

## Further Information

The character set and encoding names recognized by Internet authorities are listed in the IANA charset registry:

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets>

The Java programming language represents characters internally using the Unicode character set, which provides support for most languages. For storage and transmission over networks, however, many other character encodings are used. The Java 2 platform therefore also supports character conversion to and from other character encodings. Any Java runtime must support the Unicode transformations UTF-8, UTF-16BE, and UTF-16LE as well as the ISO-8859-1 character encoding, but most implementations support many more. For a complete list of the encodings that can be supported by the Java 2 platform, see:

<http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4/docs/guide/intl/encoding.doc.html>

# B

---

## HTTP Overview

*Stephanie Bodoff*

**M**OST Web clients use the HTTP protocol to communicate with a J2EE server. HTTP defines the requests that a client can send to a server and responses that the server can send in reply. Each request contains a URL, which is a string that identifies a Web component or a static object such as an HTML page or image file.

The J2EE server converts an HTTP request to an HTTP request object and delivers it to the Web component identified by the request URL. The Web component fills in an HTTP response object, which the server converts to an HTTP response and sends to the client.

This appendix provides some introductory material on the HTTP protocol. For further information on this protocol, see the Internet RFCs: HTTP/1.0 - RFC 1945, HTTP/1.1 - RFC 2616, which can be downloaded from

<http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc.html>

## HTTP Requests

An HTTP request consists of a request method, a request URL, header fields, and a body. HTTP 1.1 defines the following request methods:

- GET - retrieves the resource identified by the request URL.
- HEAD - returns the headers identified by the request URL.
- POST - sends data of unlimited length to the Web server.
- PUT - stores a resource under the request URL.
- DELETE - removes the resource identified by the request URL.
- OPTIONS - returns the HTTP methods the server supports.
- TRACE - returns the header fields sent with the TRACE request.

HTTP 1.0 includes only the GET, HEAD, and POST methods. Although J2EE servers are only required to support HTTP 1.0, in practice many servers, including the Java WSDP, support HTTP 1.1.

## HTTP Responses

An HTTP response contains a result code, header fields, and a body.

The HTTP protocol expects the result code and all header fields to be returned before any body content.

Some commonly used status codes include:

- 404 - indicates that the requested resource is not available.
- 401 - indicates that the request requires HTTP authentication.
- 500 - indicates an error inside the HTTP server which prevented it from fulfilling the request.
- 503 - indicates that the HTTP server is temporarily overloaded, and unable to handle the request.

# Glossary

---

**abstract schema**

The part of an entity bean's deployment descriptor that defines the bean's persistent fields and relationships.

**abstract schema name**

A logical name that is referenced in Enterprise JavaBeans Query Language queries.

**access control**

The methods by which interactions with resources are limited to collections of users or programs for the purpose of enforcing integrity, confidentiality, or availability constraints.

**ACID**

The acronym for the four properties guaranteed by transactions: atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability.

**activation**

The process of transferring an enterprise bean from secondary storage to memory. (See *passivation*.)

**admintool**

A tool used to manipulate the J2EE server while it is running.

**anonymous access**

Accessing a resource without authentication.

**Ant**

A Java-based, and thus cross-platform, build tool that can be extended using Java classes. The configuration files are XML-based, calling out a target tree where various tasks get executed.

**applet**

A component that typically executes in a Web browser, but can execute in a variety of other applications or devices that support the applet programming model.

**applet container**

A *container* that includes support for the applet programming model.

**application assembler**

A person that combines *components* and *modules* into deployable application units.

**application client**

A first-tier client component that executes in its own Java virtual machine. Application clients have access to some (JNDI, JDBC, RMI-IIOP, JMS) J2EE platform APIs.

**application client container**

A *container* that supports application client components.

**application client module**

A software unit that consists of one or more classes and an application client deployment descriptor.

**application component provider**

A vendor that provides the Java classes that implement components' methods, JSP page definitions, and any required deployment descriptors.

**archiving**

Saving the state of an object and restoring it.

**attribute**

A qualifier on an XML tag that provides additional information.

**authentication**

The process that verifies the identity of a user, device, or other entity in a computer system, usually as a prerequisite to allowing access to resources in a system. The J2EE platform requires three types of authentication: *basic*, *form-based*, and *mutual*, and supports *digest* authentication.

**authorization**

The process by which access to a method or resource is determined. Authorization in the J2EE platform depends upon the determination of whether the principal associated with a request through authentication is in a given security role. A security role is a logical grouping of users defined by the person who assembles the application. A deployer maps security roles to security identities. Security identities may be principals or groups in the operational environment.

**authorization constraint**

An authorization rule that determines who is permitted to access a Web resource collection.

**B2B**

Business-to-business.



**basic authentication**

An authentication mechanism in which a Web server authenticates an entity with a user name and password obtained using the Web application's built-in authentication mechanism.

**bean-managed persistence**

Data transfer between an entity bean's variables and a resource manager managed by the entity bean.

**bean-managed transaction**

A transaction whose boundaries are defined by an enterprise bean.

**binary entity**

See *unparsed entity*.

**binding**

Construction of the code needed to process a well-defined bit of XML data.

**build file**

The XML file that contains one project that contains one or more targets. A target is a set of tasks you want to be executed. When starting Ant, you can select which target(s) you want to have executed. When no target is given, the project's default is used.

**business logic**

The code that implements the functionality of an application. In the Enterprise JavaBeans model, this logic is implemented by the methods of an enterprise bean.

**business method**

A method of an enterprise bean that implements the business logic or rules of an application.

**callback methods**

Component methods called by the container to notify the component of important events in its life cycle.

**caller**

Same as *caller principal*.

**caller principal**

The principal that identifies the invoker of the enterprise bean method.

**cascade delete**

A deletion that triggers another deletion. A cascade delete may be specified for an entity bean with container-managed persistence.

**CDATA**

A predefined XML tag for Character DATA that means don't interpret these characters, as opposed to Parsed Character Data (PCDATA), in which the

normal rules of XML syntax apply (for example, angle brackets demarcate XML tags, tags define XML elements, etc.). CDATA sections are typically used to show examples of XML syntax.

**certificate authority**

A trusted organization that issues public key certificates and provides identification to the bearer.

**client certificate authentication**

An authentication mechanism that uses HTTP over SSL, in which the server and, optionally, the client authenticate each other with a public key certificate that conforms to a standard that is defined by X.509 Public Key Infrastructure (PKI).

**comment**

Text in an XML document that is ignored, unless the parser is specifically told to recognize it.

**content**

The part of an XML document that occurs after the prolog, including the root element and everything it contains.

**commit**

The point in a transaction when all updates to any resources involved in the transaction are made permanent.

**component**

An application-level software unit supported by a *container*. Components are configurable at deployment time. The J2EE platform defines four types of components: *enterprise beans*, *Web components*, *applets*, and *application clients*.

**component contract**

The contract between a component and its container. The contract includes: life cycle management of the component, a context interface that the instance uses to obtain various information and services from its container, and a list of services that every container must provide for its components.

**component-managed sign-on**

Security information needed for signing on to the resource to the `getConnection()` method is provided by an application component.

**connection**

See *resource manager connection*.

**connection factory**

See *resource manager connection factory*.

**connector**

A standard extension mechanism for containers to provide connectivity to enterprise information systems. A connector is specific to an enterprise information system and consists of a *resource adapter* and application development tools for enterprise information system connectivity. The resource adapter is plugged in to a container through its support for system-level contracts defined in the Connector architecture.

**Connector architecture**

An architecture for integration of J2EE products with *enterprise information systems*. There are two parts to this architecture: a resource adapter provided by an enterprise information system vendor and the J2EE product that allows this resource adapter to plug in. This architecture defines a set of contracts that a resource adapter has to support to plug in to a J2EE product, for example, transactions, security, and resource management.

**container**

An entity that provides life-cycle management, security, deployment, and runtime services to *components*. Each type of container (*EJB*, *Web*, *JSP*, *servlet*, *applet*, and *application client*) also provides component-specific services.

**container-managed persistence**

Data transfer between an entity bean's variables and a resource manager managed by the entity bean's container.

**container-managed sign-on**

Security information needed for signing on to the resource to the `getConnection()` method is supplied by the container.

**container-managed transaction**

A transaction whose boundaries are defined by an EJB container. An *entity bean* must use container-managed transactions.

**context attribute**

An object bound into the context associated with a servlet.

**context root**

A name that gets mapped to the *document root* of a Web application.

**conversational state**

The field values of a session bean plus the transitive closure of the objects reachable from the bean's fields. The transitive closure of a bean is defined in terms of the serialization protocol for the Java programming language, that is, the fields that would be stored by serializing the bean instance.

**CORBA**

Common Object Request Broker Architecture. A language-independent distributed object model specified by the Object Management Group (OMG).

**create method**

A method defined in the *home interface* and invoked by a client to create an *enterprise bean*.

**credentials**

The information describing the security attributes of a *principal*.

**CSS**

Cascading Style Sheet. A stylesheet used with HTML and XML documents to add a style to all elements marked with a particular tag, for the direction of browsers or other presentation mechanisms.

**CTS**

Compatibility Test Suite. A suite of compatibility tests for verifying that a J2EE product complies with the J2EE platform specification.

**data**

The contents of an element, generally used when the element does not contain any subelements. When it does, the more general term content is generally used. When the only text in an XML structure is contained in simple elements, and elements that have subelements have little or no data mixed in, then that structure is often thought of as XML data, as opposed to an XML document.

**DDP**

Document-Driven Programming. The use of XML to define applications.

**declaration**

The very first thing in an XML document, which declares it as XML. The minimal declaration is `<?xml version="1.0"?>`. The declaration is part of the document *prolog*.

**declarative security**

Mechanisms used in an application that are expressed in a declarative syntax in a deployment descriptor.

**delegation**

An act whereby one *principal* authorizes another principal to use its identity or privileges with some restrictions.

**deployer**

A person who installs modules and J2EE applications into an operational environment.

**deployment**

The process whereby software is installed into an operational environment.

**deployment descriptor**

An XML file provided with each module and application that describes how they should be deployed. The deployment descriptor directs a deployment tool to deploy a module or application with specific container options and describes specific configuration requirements that a deployer must resolve.

**destination**

A JMS administered object that encapsulates the identity of a JMS queue or topic. See *point-to-point messaging system*, *publish/subscribe messaging system*.

**digest authentication**

An authentication mechanism in which a Web application authenticates to a Web server by sending the server a message digest along with its HTTP request message. The digest is computed by employing a one-way hash algorithm to a concatenation of the HTTP request message and the client's password. The digest is typically much smaller than the HTTP request and doesn't contain the password.

**distributed application**

An application made up of distinct components running in separate runtime environments, usually on different platforms connected via a network. Typical distributed applications are two-tier (client-server), three-tier (client-middleware-server), and multitier (client-multiple middleware-multiple servers).

**document**

In general, an XML structure in which one or more elements contains text intermixed with subelements. See also *data*.

**document root**

The top-level directory of a WAR. The document root is where JSP pages, client-side classes and archives, and static Web resources are stored.

**DOM**

Document Object Model. A tree of objects with interfaces for traversing the tree and writing an XML version of it.

**DTD**

Document Type Definition. An optional part of the document prolog, as specified by the XML standard. The DTD specifies constraints on the valid tags and tag sequences that can be in the document. The DTD has a number of shortcomings however, which has led to various schema proposals. For example, the DTD entry `<!ELEMENT username (#PCDATA)>` says that the

XML element called `username` contains `Parsed Character DATA`— that is, text alone, with no other structural elements under it. The DTD includes both the local subset, defined in the current file, and the external subset, which consists of the definitions contained in external `.dtd` files that are referenced in the local subset using a parameter entity.

### **durable subscription**

In a JMS *publish/subscribe messaging system*, a subscription that continues to exist whether or not there is a current active subscriber object. If there is no active subscriber, JMS retains the subscription's *messages* until they are received by the subscription or until they expire.

### **EAR file**

Enterprise Archive file. A JAR archive that contains a J2EE application.

### **ebXML**

Electronic Business XML. A group of specifications designed to enable enterprises to conduct business through the exchange of XML-based messages. It is sponsored by OASIS and the United Nations Centre for the Facilitation of Procedures and Practices in Administration, Commerce and Transport (U.N./CEFACT).

### **EJB**

See *Enterprise JavaBeans*.

### **EJB container**

A container that implements the EJB component contract of the J2EE architecture. This contract specifies a runtime environment for enterprise beans that includes security, concurrency, life cycle management, transactions, deployment, naming, and other services. An EJB container is provided by an *EJB* or *J2EE* server.

### **EJB container provider**

A vendor that supplies an EJB container.

### **EJB context**

An object that allows an enterprise bean to invoke services provided by the container and to obtain the information about the caller of a client-invoked method.

### **EJB home object**

An object that provides the life cycle operations (create, remove, find) for an enterprise bean. The class for the EJB home object is generated by the container's deployment tools. The EJB home object implements the enterprise bean's home interface. The client references an EJB home object to perform life-cycle operations on an EJB object. The client uses JNDI to locate an EJB home object.

**EJB JAR file**

A JAR archive that contains an EJB module.

**EJB module**

A software unit that consists of one or more enterprise beans and an EJB deployment descriptor.

**EJB object**

An object whose class implements the enterprise bean's remote interface. A client never references an enterprise bean instance directly; a client always references an EJB object. The class of an EJB object is generated by a container's deployment tools.

**EJB server**

Software that provides services to an *EJB container*. For example, an EJB container typically relies on a transaction manager that is part of the EJB server to perform the two-phase commit across all the participating resource managers. The J2EE architecture assumes that an EJB container is hosted by an EJB server from the same vendor, so it does not specify the contract between these two entities. An EJB server may host one or more EJB containers.

**EJB server provider**

A vendor that supplies an EJB server.

**element**

A unit of XML data, delimited by tags. An XML element can enclose other elements.

**empty tag**

A tag that does not enclose any content.

**enterprise bean**

A component that implements a business task or business entity and resides in an EJB container; either an *entity bean*, *session bean*, or *message-driven bean*.

**enterprise bean provider**

An application programmer who produces enterprise bean classes, remote and home interfaces, and deployment descriptor files, and packages them in an EJB JAR file.

**enterprise information system**

The applications that comprise an enterprise's existing system for handling company-wide information. These applications provide an information infrastructure for an enterprise. An enterprise information system offers a well-defined set of services to its clients. These services are exposed to clients as local and remote interfaces or both. Examples of enterprise informa-

tion systems include: enterprise resource planning systems, mainframe transaction processing systems, and legacy database systems.

**enterprise information system resource**

An entity that provides enterprise information system-specific functionality to its clients. Examples are: a record or set of records in a database system, a business object in an enterprise resource planning system, and a transaction program in a transaction processing system.

**Enterprise JavaBeans™ (EJB™)**

A component architecture for the development and deployment of object-oriented, distributed, enterprise-level applications. Applications written using the Enterprise JavaBeans architecture are scalable, transactional, and secure.

**Enterprise JavaBeans Query Language (“EJB QL”)**

Defines the queries for the finder and select methods of an entity bean with container-managed persistence. A subset of SQL92, EJB QL has extensions that allow navigation over the relationships defined in an entity bean’s abstract schema.

**entity**

A distinct, individual item that can be included in an XML document by referencing it. Such an entity reference can name an entity as small as a character (for example, "&lt;", which references the less-than symbol, or left-angle bracket (<)). An entity reference can also reference an entire document, or external entity, or a collection of DTD definitions (a parameter entity).

**entity bean**

An enterprise bean that represents persistent data maintained in a database. An entity bean can manage its own persistence or can delegate this function to its container. An entity bean is identified by a primary key. If the container in which an entity bean is hosted crashes, the entity bean, its primary key, and any remote references survive the crash.

**entity reference**

A reference to an entity that is substituted for the reference when the XML document is parsed. It may reference a predefined entity like &lt; or it may reference one that is defined in the DTD. In the XML data, the reference could be to an entity that is defined in the local subset of the DTD or to an external XML file (an external entity). The DTD can also carve out a segment of DTD specifications and give it a name so that it can be reused (included) at multiple points in the DTD by defining a parameter entity.



**error**

A SAX parsing error is generally a validation error—in other words, it occurs when an XML document is not valid, although it can also occur if the declaration specifies an XML version that the parser cannot handle. See also: fatal error, warning.

**Extensible Markup Language**

A markup language that makes data portable.

**external entity**

An entity that exists as an external XML file, which is included in the XML document using an *entity reference*.

**external subset**

That part of the DTD that is defined by references to external .dtd files.

**fatal error**

A fatal error occurs in the SAX parser when a document is not well formed, or otherwise cannot be processed. See also: error, warning.

**filter**

An object that can transform the header and content or both of a request or response. Filters differ from *Web components* in that they usually do not themselves create responses but rather modify or adapt the requests for a resource, and modify or adapt responses from a resource. A filter should not have any dependencies on a Web resource for which it is acting as a filter so that it can be composable with more than one type of Web resource.

**filter chain**

A concatenation of XSLT transformations in which the output of one transformation becomes the input of the next.

**finder method**

A method defined in the *home interface* and invoked by a client to locate an *entity bean*.

**form-based authentication**

An authentication mechanism in which a Web container provides an application-specific form for logging in. This form of authentication uses Base64 encoding and can expose user names and passwords unless all connections are over SSL.

**general entity**

An entity that is referenced as part of an XML document's content, as distinct from a parameter entity, which is referenced in the DTD. A general entity can be a parsed entity or an unparsed entity.

**group**

An authenticated set of users classified by common traits such as job title or customer profile. Groups are also associated with a set of roles, and every user that is a member of a group inherits all of the roles assigned to that group.

**handle**

An object that identifies an enterprise bean. A client may serialize the handle, and then later deserialize it to obtain a reference to the enterprise bean.

**home handle**

An object that can be used to obtain a reference of the home interface. A home handle can be serialized and written to stable storage and deserialized to obtain the reference.

**home interface**

One of two interfaces for an *enterprise bean*. The home interface defines zero or more methods for managing an enterprise bean. The home interface of a session bean defines `create` and `remove` methods, while the home interface of an entity bean defines `create`, `finder`, and `remove` methods.

**HTML**

Hypertext Markup Language. A markup language for hypertext documents on the Internet. HTML enables the embedding of images, sounds, video streams, form fields, references to other objects with URLs, and basic text formatting.

**HTTP**

Hypertext Transfer Protocol. The Internet protocol used to fetch hypertext objects from remote hosts. HTTP messages consist of requests from client to server and responses from server to client.

**HTTPS**

HTTP layered over the SSL protocol.

**IDL**

Interface Definition Language. A language used to define interfaces to remote CORBA objects. The interfaces are independent of operating systems and programming languages.

**IIOP**

Internet Inter-ORB Protocol. A protocol used for communication between CORBA object request brokers.

**impersonation**

An act whereby one entity assumes the identity and privileges of another entity without restrictions and without any indication visible to the recipients

of the impersonator's calls that delegation has taken place. Impersonation is a case of simple *delegation*.

**initialization parameter**

A parameter that initializes the context associated with a servlet.

**ISO 3166**

The international standard for country codes maintained by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

**ISV**

Independent Software Vendor.

**J2EE™**

See *Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition*.

**J2ME™**

See *Java 2 Platform, Micro Edition*.

**J2SE™**

See *Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition*.

**J2EE application**

Any deployable unit of J2EE functionality. This can be a single module or a group of modules packaged into an EAR file with a J2EE application deployment descriptor. J2EE applications are typically engineered to be distributed across multiple computing tiers.

**J2EE product**

An implementation that conforms to the J2EE platform specification.

**J2EE product provider**

A vendor that supplies a J2EE product.

**J2EE server**

The runtime portion of a J2EE product. A J2EE server provides *EJB* or *Web* containers or both.

**JAR**

Java Archive. A platform-independent file format that permits many files to be aggregated into one file.

**Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE)**

An environment for developing and deploying enterprise applications. The J2EE platform consists of a set of services, application programming interfaces (APIs), and protocols that provide the functionality for developing multitiered, Web-based applications.

**Java 2 Platform, Micro Edition (J2ME)**

A highly optimized Java runtime environment targeting a wide range of consumer products, including pagers, cellular phones, screenphones, digital set-top boxes, and car navigation systems.

**Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE)**

The core Java technology platform.

**Java API for XML Processing (JAXP)**

An API for processing XML documents. JAXP leverages the parser standards SAX and DOM so that you can choose to parse your data as a stream of events or to build a tree-structured representation of it. The latest versions of JAXP also support the XSLT (XML Stylesheet Language Transformations) standard, giving you control over the presentation of the data and enabling you to convert the data to other XML documents or to other formats, such as HTML. JAXP also provides namespace support, allowing you to work with schema that might otherwise have naming conflicts.

**Java API for XML Registries (JAXR)**

An API for accessing different kinds of XML registries.

**Java API for XML-based RPC (JAX-RPC)**

An API for building Web services and clients that use remote procedure calls (RPC) and XML.

**Java IDL**

A technology that provides CORBA interoperability and connectivity capabilities for the J2EE platform. These capabilities enable J2EE applications to invoke operations on remote network services using the Object Management Group IDL and IIOP.

**Java Message Service (JMS)**

An API for using enterprise messaging systems such as IBM MQ Series, TIBCO Rendezvous, and so on.

**Java Naming and Directory Interface™ (JNDI)**

An API that provides naming and directory functionality.

**Java Secure Socket Extension (JSSE)**

A set of packages that enable secure Internet communications.

**Java Transaction API (JTA)**

An API that allows applications and J2EE servers to access transactions.

**Java Transaction Service (JTS)**

Specifies the implementation of a transaction manager which supports JTA and implements the Java mapping of the Object Management Group Object Transaction Service (OTS) 1.1 specification at the level below the API.

**JavaBeans™ component**

A Java class that can be manipulated in a visual builder tool and composed into applications. A JavaBeans component must adhere to certain property and event interface conventions.

**JavaMail™**

An API for sending and receiving e-mail.

**JavaServer Pages™ (JSP™)**

An extensible Web technology that uses template data, custom elements, scripting languages, and server-side Java objects to return dynamic content to a client. Typically the template data is HTML or XML elements, and in many cases the client is a Web browser.

**JavaServer Pages Standard Tag Library (JSTL)**

A tag library that encapsulates core functionality common to many JSP applications. JSTL has support for common, structural tasks such as iteration and conditionals, tags for manipulating XML documents, internationalization and locale-specific formatting tags, and SQL tags. It also introduces a new expression language to simplify page development, and provides an API for developers to simplify the configuration of JSTL tags and the development of custom tags that conform to JSTL conventions.

**JAXR client**

A client program that uses the JAXR API to access a business registry via a JAXR provider.

**JAXR provider**

An implementation of the JAXR API that provides access to a specific registry provider or to a class of registry providers that are based on a common specification.

**JDBC™**

An API for database-independent connectivity between the J2EE platform and a wide range of data sources.

**JMS**

See *Java Message Service*.

**JMS administered object**

A preconfigured JMS object (a *resource manager connection factory* or a *destination*) created by an administrator for the use of *JMS clients* and placed in a *JNDI* namespace.

**JMS application**

One or more *JMS clients* that exchange *messages*.

**JMS client**

A Java language program that sends or receives *messages*.

**JMS provider**

A messaging system that implements the *Java Message Service* as well as other administrative and control functionality needed in a full-featured messaging product.

**JMS session**

A single-threaded context for sending and receiving *JMS messages*. A JMS session can be non transacted, locally transacted, or participating in a distributed transaction.

**JNDI**

See *Java Naming and Directory Interface*.

**JSP**

See *JavaServer Pages*.

**JSP action**

A JSP element that can act on implicit objects and other server-side objects or can define new scripting variables. Actions follow the XML syntax for elements with a start tag, a body, and an end tag; if the body is empty it can also use the empty tag syntax. The tag must use a prefix.

**JSP action, custom**

An action described in a portable manner by a tag library descriptor and a collection of Java classes and imported into a JSP page by a `taglib` directive. A custom action is invoked when a JSP page uses a custom tag.

**JSP action, standard**

An action that is defined in the JSP specification and is always available to a JSP file without being imported.

**JSP application**

A stand-alone Web application, written using the JavaServer Pages technology, that can contain JSP pages, servlets, HTML files, images, applets, and JavaBeans components.

**JSP container**

A *container* that provides the same services as a *servlet container* and an engine that interprets and processes JSP pages into a servlet.

**JSP container, distributed**

A JSP container that can run a Web application that is tagged as distributable and is spread across multiple Java virtual machines that might be running on different hosts.

**JSP declaration**

A JSP scripting element that declares methods, variables, or both in a JSP file.

**JSP directive**

A JSP element that gives an instruction to the JSP container and is interpreted at translation time.

**JSP element**

A portion of a JSP page that is recognized by a JSP translator. An element can be a *directive*, an *action*, or a *scripting element*.

**JSP expression**

A scripting element that contains a valid scripting language expression that is evaluated, converted to a `String`, and placed into the implicit out object.

**JSP file**

A file that contains a JSP page. In the Servlet 2.2 specification, a JSP file must have a `.jsp` extension.

**JSP page**

A text-based document using fixed template data and JSP elements that describes how to process a request to create a response.

**JSP scripting element**

A JSP *declaration*, *scriptlet*, or *expression*, whose tag syntax is defined by the JSP specification, and whose content is written according to the scripting language used in the JSP page. The JSP specification describes the syntax and semantics for the case where the language page attribute is `"java"`.

**JSP scriptlet**

A JSP scripting element containing any code fragment that is valid in the scripting language used in the JSP page. The JSP specification describes what is a valid scriptlet for the case where the language page attribute is `"java"`.

**JSP tag**

A piece of text between a left angle bracket and a right angle bracket that is used in a JSP file as part of a JSP element. The tag is distinguishable as markup, as opposed to data, because it is surrounded by angle brackets.

**JSP tag library**

A collection of custom tags identifying custom actions described via a tag library descriptor and Java classes.

**JTA**

See *Java Transaction API*.

**JTS**

See *Java Transaction Service*.

**life cycle**

The framework events of a component's existence. Each type of component has defining events which mark its transition into states where it has varying availability for use. For example, a servlet is created and has its `init` method called by its container prior to invocation of its service method by clients or other servlets that require its functionality. After the call of its `init` method it has the data and readiness for its intended use. The servlet's `destroy` method is called by its container prior to the ending of its existence so that processing associated with winding up may be done, and resources may be released. The `init` and `destroy` methods in this example are *callback methods*. Similar considerations apply to all J2EE component types: enterprise beans, Web components (servlets or JSP pages), applets, and application clients.

**local subset**

That part of the DTD that is defined within the current XML file.

**message**

In the *Java Message Service*, an asynchronous request, report, or event that is created, sent, and consumed by an enterprise application, not by a human. It contains vital information needed to coordinate enterprise applications, in the form of precisely formatted data that describes specific business actions.

**message-driven bean**

An enterprise bean that is an asynchronous message consumer. A message-driven bean has no state for a specific client, but its instance variables may contain state across the handling of client messages, including an open database connection and an object reference to an *EJB object*. A client accesses a message-driven bean by sending messages to the destination for which the bean is a message listener.

**mixed-content model**

A DTD specification that defines an element as containing a mixture of text and one more other elements. The specification must start with `#PCDATA`, followed by alternate elements, and must end with the "zero-or-more" asterisk symbol (\*).

**MessageConsumer**

An object created by a *JMS session* that is used for receiving *messages* sent to a *destination*.



**MessageProducer**

An object created by a *JMS session* that is used for sending *messages* to a *destination*.

**method permission**

An authorization rule that determines who is permitted to execute one or more enterprise bean methods.

**module**

A software unit that consists of one or more J2EE components of the same container type and one deployment descriptor of that type. There are three types of modules: *EJB*, *Web*, and *application client*. Modules can be deployed as stand-alone units or assembled into an application.

**mutual authentication**

An authentication mechanism employed by two parties for the purpose of proving each other's identity to one another.

**namespace**

A standard that lets you specify a unique label to the set of element names defined by a DTD. A document using that DTD can be included in any other document without having a conflict between element names. The elements defined in your DTD are then uniquely identified so that, for example, the parser can tell when an element called <name> should be interpreted according to your DTD, rather than using the definition for an element called name in a different DTD.

**naming context**

A set of associations between unique, atomic, people-friendly identifiers and objects.

**naming environment**

A mechanism that allows a component to be customized without the need to access or change the component's source code. A container implements the component's naming environment, and provides it to the component as a *JNDI naming context*. Each component names and accesses its environment entries using the `java:comp/env` JNDI context. The environment entries are declaratively specified in the component's deployment descriptor.

**non-JMS client**

A messaging client program that uses a message system's native client API instead of the *Java Message Service*.

**normalization**

The process of removing redundancy by modularizing, as with subroutines, and of removing superfluous differences by reducing them to a common denominator. For example, line endings from different systems are normal-

ized by reducing them to a single NL, and multiple whitespace characters are normalized to one space.

### **North American Industry Classification System (NAICS)**

A system for classifying business establishments based on the processes they use to produce goods or services.

### **notation**

A mechanism for defining a data format for a non-XML document referenced as an unparsed entity. This is a holdover from SGML that creaks a bit. The newer standard is to use MIME data types and namespaces to prevent naming conflicts.

### **OASIS**

Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards. Their home site is <http://www.oasis-open.org/>. The DTD repository they sponsor is at <http://www.XML.org>.

### **one-way messaging**

A method of transmitting messages without having to block until a response is received.

### **ORB**

Object request broker. A library that enables CORBA objects to locate and communicate with one another.

### **OS principal**

A principal native to the operating system (OS) on which the J2EE platform is executing.

### **OTS**

Object Transaction Service. A definition of the interfaces that permit CORBA objects to participate in transactions.

### **parameter entity**

An entity that consists of DTD specifications, as distinct from a general entity. A parameter entity defined in the DTD can then be referenced at other points, in order to prevent having to recode the definition at each location it is used.

### **parsed entity**

A general entity that contains XML, and which is therefore parsed when inserted into the XML document, as opposed to an unparsed entity.

### **parser**

A module that reads in XML data from an input source and breaks it up into chunks so that your program knows when it is working with a tag, an

attribute, or element data. A nonvalidating parser ensures that the XML data is well formed, but does not verify that it is valid. See also: validating parser.

**passivation**

The process of transferring an enterprise bean from memory to secondary storage. (See *activation*.)

**persistence**

The protocol for transferring the state of an entity bean between its instance variables and an underlying database.

**persistent field**

A virtual field of an entity bean with container-managed persistence; it is stored in a database.

**POA**

Portable Object Adapter. A CORBA standard for building server-side applications that are portable across heterogeneous ORBs.

**point-to-point messaging system**

A messaging system built around the concept of message queues. Each *message* is addressed to a specific queue; clients extract messages from the queue(s) established to hold their messages.

**primary key**

An object that uniquely identifies an entity bean within a home.

**principal**

The identity assigned to a user as a result of authentication.

**privilege**

A security attribute that does not have the property of uniqueness and that may be shared by many principals.

**processing instruction**

Information contained in an XML structure that is intended to be interpreted by a specific application.

**programmatic security**

Security decisions that are made by security-aware applications. Programmatic security is useful when declarative security alone is not sufficient to express the security model of an application.

**prolog**

The part of an XML document that precedes the XML data. The prolog includes the declaration and an optional DTD.

**public key certificate**

Used in client-certificate authentication to enable the server, and optionally the client, to authenticate each other. The public key certificate is a digital

equivalent of a passport. It is issued by a trusted organization, called a certificate authority (CA), and provides identification for the bearer.

**publish/subscribe messaging system**

A messaging system in which clients address *messages* to a specific node in a content hierarchy. Publishers and subscribers are generally anonymous and may dynamically publish or subscribe to the content hierarchy. The system takes care of distributing the messages arriving from a node's multiple publishers to its multiple subscribers.

**queue**

See *point-to-point messaging system*.

**RAR**

Resource Adapter Archive. A JAR archive that contains a resource adapter.

**realm**

See *security policy domain*. Also, a string, passed as part of an HTTP request during *basic authentication*, that defines a protection space. The protected resources on a server can be partitioned into a set of protection spaces, each with its own authentication scheme or authorization database or both.

In the J2EE server authentication service, a realm is a complete database of roles, users, and groups that identify valid users of a Web application or a set of Web applications.

**RDF**

Resource Description Framework. A standard for defining the kind of data that an XML file contains. Such information could help ensure semantic integrity, for example by helping to make sure that a date is treated as a date, rather than simply as text.

**RDF schema**

A standard for specifying consistency rules that apply to the specifications contained in an RDF.

**re-entrant entity bean**

An entity bean that can handle multiple simultaneous, interleaved, or nested invocations which will not interfere with each other.

**reference**

See entity reference

**registry**

An infrastructure that enables the building, deployment and discovery of Web services. It is a neutral third party that facilitates dynamic and loosely coupled business-to-business (B2B) interactions.

**registry provider**

An implementation of a business registry that conforms to a specification for XML registries.

**relationship field**

A virtual field of an entity bean with container-managed persistence; it identifies a related entity bean.

**remote interface**

One of two interfaces for an *enterprise bean*. The remote interface defines the business methods callable by a client.

**remove method**

Method defined in the *home interface* and invoked by a client to destroy an *enterprise bean*.

**request-response messaging**

A method of messaging that includes blocking until a response is received.

**resource adapter**

A system-level software driver that is used by an EJB container or an application client to connect to an enterprise information system. A resource adapter is typically specific to an enterprise information system. It is available as a library and is used within the address space of the server or client using it. A resource adapter plugs into a container. The application components deployed on the container then use the client API (exposed by the adapter) or tool-generated high-level abstractions to access the underlying enterprise information system. The resource adapter and EJB container collaborate to provide the underlying mechanisms—transactions, security, and connection pooling—for connectivity to the enterprise information system.

**resource manager**

Provides access to a set of shared resources. A resource manager participates in transactions that are externally controlled and coordinated by a transaction manager. A resource manager is typically in a different address space or on a different machine from the clients that access it. Note: An *enterprise information system* is referred to as a resource manager when it is mentioned in the context of resource and transaction management.

**resource manager connection**

An object that represents a session with a resource manager.

**resource manager connection factory**

An object used for creating a resource manager connection.

**RMI**

Remote Method Invocation. A technology that allows an object running in one Java virtual machine to invoke methods on an object running in a different Java virtual machine.

**RMI-IIOP**

A version of RMI implemented to use the CORBA IIOP protocol. RMI over IIOP provides interoperability with CORBA objects implemented in any language if all the remote interfaces are originally defined as RMI interfaces.

**role (development)**

The function performed by a party in the development and deployment phases of an application developed using J2EE technology. The roles are: *application component provider*, *application assembler*, *deployer*, *J2EE product provider*, *EJB container provider*, *EJB server provider*, *Web container provider*, *Web server provider*, *tool provider*, and *system administrator*.

**role (security)**

An abstract logical grouping of users that is defined by the application assembler. When an application is deployed, the roles are mapped to security identities, such as *principals* or *groups*, in the operational environment.

In the J2EE server authentication service, a role is an abstract name for permission to access a particular set of resources. A role can be compared to a key that can open a lock. Many people might have a copy of the key, and the lock doesn't care who you are, only that you have the right key.

**role mapping**

The process of associating the groups and principals or both, recognized by the container to security roles specified in the *deployment descriptor*. Security roles have to be mapped by the deployer before a component is installed in the server.

**rollback**

The point in a transaction when all updates to any resources involved in the transaction are reversed.

**root**

The outermost element in an XML document. The element that contains all other elements.

**SAX**

Simple API for XML. An event-driven interface in which the parser invokes one of several methods supplied by the caller when a parsing event occurs. Events include recognizing an XML tag, finding an error, encountering a reference to an external entity, or processing a DTD specification.

**schema**

A database-inspired method for specifying constraints on XML documents using an XML-based language. Schemas address deficiencies in DTDs, such as the inability to put constraints on the kinds of data that can occur in a particular field. Since schemas are founded on XML, they are hierarchical, so it is easier to create an unambiguous specification, and possible to determine the scope over which a comment is meant to apply.

**Secure Socket Layer (SSL)**

A technology that allows Web browsers and Web servers to communicate over a secured connection.

**security attributes**

A set of properties associated with a principal. Security attributes can be associated with a principal by an authentication protocol or by a J2EE product provider or both.

**security constraint**

A declarative way to annotate the intended protection of Web content. A security constraint consists of a *Web resource collection*, an *authorization constraint*, and a *user data constraint*.

**security context**

An object that encapsulates the shared state information regarding security between two entities.

**security permission**

A mechanism, defined by J2SE, used by the J2EE platform to express the programming restrictions imposed on application component providers.

**security permission set**

The minimum set of security permissions that a J2EE product provider must provide for the execution of each component type.

**security policy domain**

A scope over which security policies are defined and enforced by a security administrator. A security policy domain has a collection of users (or principals), uses a well defined authentication protocol or protocols for authenticating users (or principals), and may have groups to simplify setting of security policies.

**security role**

See *role (security)*.

**security technology domain**

A scope over which the same security mechanism is used to enforce a security policy. Multiple security policy domains can exist within a single technology domain.

**security view**

The set of security roles defined by the application assembler.

**server certificate**

Used with HTTPS protocol to authenticate Web applications. The certificate can be self-signed or approved by a Certificate Authority (CA). The HTTPS service of the J2EE server will not run unless a server certificate has been installed.

**server principal**

The OS principal that the server is executing as.

**service element**

A representation of the combination of one or more Connector components that share a single engine component for processing incoming requests.

**servlet**

A Java program that extends the functionality of a Web server, generating dynamic content and interacting with Web applications using a request-response paradigm.

**servlet container**

A *container* that provides the network services over which requests and responses are sent, decodes requests, and formats responses. All servlet containers must support HTTP as a protocol for requests and responses, but may also support additional request-response protocols, such as HTTPS.

**servlet container, distributed**

A servlet container that can run a Web application that is tagged as distributable and that executes across multiple Java virtual machines running on the same host or on different hosts.

**servlet context**

An object that contains a servlet's view of the Web application within which the servlet is running. Using the context, a servlet can log events, obtain URL references to resources, and set and store attributes that other servlets in the context can use.

**servlet mapping**

Defines an association between a URL pattern and a servlet. The mapping is used to map requests to servlets.

**session**

An object used by a servlet to track a user's interaction with a Web application across multiple HTTP requests.



**session bean**

An enterprise bean that is created by a client and that usually exists only for the duration of a single client-server session. A session bean performs operations, such as calculations or accessing a database, for the client. Although a session bean may be transactional, it is not recoverable should a system crash occur. Session bean objects can be either stateless or can maintain conversational state across methods and transactions. If a session bean maintains state, then the EJB container manages this state if the object must be removed from memory. However, the session bean object itself must manage its own persistent data.

**SGML**

Standard Generalized Markup Language. The parent of both HTML and XML. However, while HTML shares SGML's propensity for embedding presentation information in the markup, XML is a standard that allows information content to be totally separated from the mechanisms for rendering that content.

**SOAP**

Simple Object Access Protocol

**SOAP with Attachments API for Java (SAAJ)**

The basic package for SOAP messaging which contains the API for creating and populating a SOAP message.

**SSL**

Secure Socket Layer. A security protocol that provides privacy over the Internet. The protocol allows client-server applications to communicate in a way that cannot be eavesdropped or tampered with. Servers are always authenticated and clients are optionally authenticated.

**SQL**

Structured Query Language. The standardized relational database language for defining database objects and manipulating data.

**SQL/J**

A set of standards that includes specifications for embedding SQL statements in methods in the Java programming language and specifications for calling Java static methods as SQL stored procedures and user-defined functions. An SQL checker can detect errors in static SQL statements at program development time, rather than at execution time as with a JDBC driver.

**SSL**

Secure Socket Layer. A security protocol that provides privacy over the Internet. The protocol allows client-server applications to communicate in a

way that cannot be eavesdropped upon or tampered with. Servers are always authenticated and clients are optionally authenticated.

**standalone client**

A client that does not use a messaging provider and does not run in a container.

**stateful session bean**

A session bean with a conversational state.

**stateless session bean**

A session bean with no conversational state. All instances of a stateless session bean are identical.

**system administrator**

The person responsible for configuring and administering the enterprise's computers, networks, and software systems.

**tag**

A piece of text that describes a unit of data, or element, in XML. The tag is distinguishable as markup, as opposed to data, because it is surrounded by angle brackets (< and >). To treat such markup syntax as data, you use an entity reference or a CDATA section.

**template**

A set of formatting instructions that apply to the nodes selected by an XPATH expression.

**tool provider**

An organization or software vendor that provides tools used for the development, packaging, and deployment of J2EE applications.

**topic**

See *publish-subscribe messaging system*.

**transaction**

An atomic unit of work that modifies data. A transaction encloses one or more program statements, all of which either complete or roll back. Transactions enable multiple users to access the same data concurrently.

**transaction attribute**

A value specified in an enterprise bean's deployment descriptor that is used by the EJB container to control the transaction scope when the enterprise bean's methods are invoked. A transaction attribute can have the following values: Required, RequiresNew, Supports, NotSupported, Mandatory, or Never.

**transaction isolation level**

The degree to which the intermediate state of the data being modified by a transaction is visible to other concurrent transactions and data being modified by other transactions is visible to it.

**transaction manager**

Provides the services and management functions required to support transaction demarcation, transactional resource management, synchronization, and transaction context propagation.

**Unicode**

A standard defined by the Unicode Consortium that uses a 16-bit code page which maps digits to characters in languages around the world. Because 16 bits covers 32,768 codes, Unicode is large enough to include all the world's languages, with the exception of ideographic languages that have a different character for every concept, like Chinese. For more info, see <http://www.unicode.org/>.

**Universal Description, Discovery, and Integration (UDDI) project**

An industry initiative to create a platform-independent, open framework for describing services, discovering businesses, and integrating business services using the Internet, as well as a registry. It is being developed by a vendor consortium.

**Universal Standard Products and Services Classification (UNSPSC)**

A schema that classifies and identifies commodities. It is used in sell side and buy side catalogs and as a standardized account code in analyzing expenditure.

**unparsed entity**

A general entity that contains something other than XML. By its nature, an unparsed entity contains binary data.

**URI**

Uniform Resource Identifier. A globally unique identifier for an abstract or physical resource. A *URL* is a kind of URI that specifies the retrieval protocol (http or https for Web applications) and physical location of a resource (host name and host-relative path). A *URN* is another type of URI.

Uniform Resource Identifier. A compact string of characters for identifying an abstract or physical resource. A URI is either a *URL* or a *URN*. URLs and URNs are concrete entities that actually exist; a URI is an abstract superclass.

**URL**

Uniform Resource Locator. A standard for writing a textual reference to an arbitrary piece of data in the World Wide Web. A URL looks like: proto-

`col://host/localinfo` where `protocol` specifies a protocol for fetching the object (such as HTTP or FTP), `host` specifies the Internet name of the targeted host, and `localinfo` is a string (often a file name) passed to the protocol handler on the remote host.

### **URL path**

The part of a URL passed by an HTTP request to invoke a servlet. A URL path consists of the Context Path + Servlet Path + Path Info, where

- Context Path is the path prefix associated with a servlet context of which the servlet is a part. If this context is the default context rooted at the base of the Web server's URL namespace, the path prefix will be an empty string. Otherwise, the path prefix starts with a / character but does not end with a / character.
- Servlet Path is the path section that directly corresponds to the mapping that activated this request. This path starts with a / character.
- Path Info is the part of the request path that is not part of the Context Path or the Servlet Path.

### **URN**

Uniform Resource Name. A unique identifier that identifies an entity, but doesn't tell where it is located. A system can use a URN to look up an entity locally before trying to find it on the Web. It also allows the Web location to change, while still allowing the entity to be found.

### **user (security)**

An individual (or application program) identity that has been authenticated. A user can have a set of roles associated with that identity, which entitles them to access all resources protected by those roles.

### **user data constraint**

Indicates how data between a client and a Web container should be protected. The protection can be the prevention of tampering with the data or prevention of eavesdropping on the data.

### **valid**

A valid XML document, in addition to being well formed, conforms to all the constraints imposed by a DTD. It does not contain any tags that are not permitted by the DTD, and the order of the tags conforms to the DTD's specifications.

### **validating parser**

A parser that ensures that an XML document is valid, as well as well-formed. See also: parser.

**virtual host**

Multiple “hosts + domain names” mapped to a single IP.

**W3C**

World Wide Web Consortium. The international body that governs Internet standards.

**WAR file**

Web application archive file. A JAR archive that contains a Web module.

**warning**

A SAX parser warning is generated when the document's DTD contains duplicate definitions, and similar situations that are not necessarily an error, but which the document author might like to know about, since they could be. See also: fatal error, error.

**Web application**

An application written for the Internet, including those built with Java technologies such as JavaServer Pages and servlets, as well as those built with non-Java technologies such as CGI and Perl.

**Web Application Archive (WAR)**

A hierarchy of directories and files in a standard Web application format, contained in a packed file with an extension *.war*.

**Web application, distributable**

A Web application that uses J2EE technology written so that it can be deployed in a Web container distributed across multiple Java virtual machines running on the same host or different hosts. The deployment descriptor for such an application uses the distributable element.

**Web component**

A component that provides services in response to requests; either a *servlet* or a *JSP page*.

**Web container**

A *container* that implements the Web component contract of the J2EE architecture. This contract specifies a runtime environment for Web components that includes security, concurrency, life-cycle management, transaction, deployment, and other services. A Web container provides the same services as a *JSP container* as well as a federated view of the J2EE platform APIs. A Web container is provided by a *Web* or *J2EE* server.

**Web container, distributed**

A Web container that can run a Web application that is tagged as distributable and that executes across multiple Java virtual machines running on the same host or on different hosts.

**Web container provider**

A vendor that supplies a Web container.

**Web module**

A unit that consists of one or more Web components, other resources, and a Web deployment descriptor.

**Web resource**

A static or dynamic object contained in a Web application archive that can be referenced by a URL.

**Web resource collection**

A list of URL patterns and HTTP methods that describe a set of resources to be protected.

**Web server**

Software that provides services to access the Internet, an intranet, or an extranet. A Web server hosts Web sites, provides support for HTTP and other protocols, and executes server-side programs (such as CGI scripts or servlets) that perform certain functions. In the J2EE architecture, a Web server provides services to a *Web container*. For example, a Web container typically relies on a Web server to provide HTTP message handling. The J2EE architecture assumes that a Web container is hosted by a Web server from the same vendor, so does not specify the contract between these two entities. A Web server may host one or more Web containers.

**Web server provider**

A vendor that supplies a Web server.

**Web service**

An application that exists in a distributed environment, such as the Internet. A Web service accepts a request, performs its function based on the request, and returns a response. The request and the response can be part of the same operation, or they can occur separately, in which case the consumer does not need to wait for a response. Both the request and the response usually take the form of XML, a portable data-interchange format, and are delivered over a wire protocol, such as HTTP.

**well-formed**

An XML document that is syntactically correct. It does not have any angle brackets that are not part of tags, all tags have an ending tag or are themselves self-ending, and all tags are fully nested. Knowing that a document is well formed makes it possible to process it. A well-formed document may not be valid however. To determine that, you need a *validating parser* and a *DTD*.

**Xalan**

An interpreting version of XSLT.

**XHTML**

An XML look-a-like for *HTML* defined by one of several XHTML DTDs. To use XHTML for everything would of course defeat the purpose of XML, since the idea of XML is to identify information content, not just tell how to display it. You can reference it in a DTD, which allows you to say, for example, that the text in an element can contain `<em>` and `<b>` tags, rather than being limited to plain text.

**XLink**

The part of the XLL specification that is concerned with specifying links between documents.

**XLL**

The XML Link Language specification, consisting of *XLink* and *XPointer*.

**XML**

Extensible Markup Language. A markup language that allows you to define the tags (markup) needed to identify the content, data, and text in XML documents. It differs from *HTML*, the markup language most often used to present information on the internet. HTML has fixed tags that deal mainly with style or presentation. An XML document must undergo a transformation into a language with style tags under the control of a stylesheet before it can be presented by a browser or other presentation mechanism. Two types of style sheets used with XML are *CSS* and *XSL*. Typically, XML is transformed into *HTML* for presentation. Although tags may be defined as needed in the generation of an XML document, a document type definition (*DTD*) may be used to define the elements allowed in a particular type of document. A document may be compared with the rules in the DTD to determine its validity and to locate particular elements in the document. J2EE *deployment descriptors* are expressed in XML with schemas defining allowed elements. Programs for processing XML documents use *SAX* or *DOM* APIs.

**XML registry**

*See registry.*

**XML Schema**

The W3C schema specification for XML documents.

**XPath**

See *XSL*.

**XPointer**

The part of the XML specification that is concerned with identifying sections of documents so that they can be referenced in links or included in other documents.

**XSL**

Extensible Stylesheet Language. Extensible Stylesheet Language. An important standard that achieves several goals. XSL lets you:

- a. Specify an addressing mechanism, so you can identify the parts of an XML file that a transformation applies to. (XPath)
- b. Specify tag conversions, so you can convert XML data into a different format. (XSLT)
- c. Specify display characteristics, such as page sizes, margins, and font heights and widths, as well as the flow objects on each page. Information fills in one area of a page and then automatically flows to the next object when that area fills up. That allows you to wrap text around pictures, for example, or to continue a newsletter article on a different page. (XML-FO)

**XSL-FO**

A subcomponent of XSL used for describing font sizes, page layouts, and how information “flows” from one page to another.

**XSLT**

XSL Transformation. An XML file that controls the transformation of an XML document into another XML document or HTML. The target document often will have presentation-related tags dictating how it will be rendered by a browser or other presentation mechanism. XSLT was formerly part of XSL, which also included a tag language of style flow objects.



---

# About the Authors

## Java API for XML Processing

**Eric Armstrong** has been programming and writing professionally since before there were personal computers. His production experience includes artificial intelligence (AI) programs, system libraries, real-time programs, and business applications in a variety of languages. He works as a consultant at Sun's Java Software division in the Bay Area, and he is a contributor to JavaWorld. He wrote *The JBuilder2 Bible*, as well as Sun's Java XML programming tutorial. For a time, Eric was involved in efforts to design next-generation collaborative discussion/decision systems. His learn-by-ear, see-the-fingering music teaching program is currently on hold while he finishes a weight training book. His Web site is <http://www.treelight.com>.

## Web Applications and Technology

**Stephanie Bodoff** is a staff writer at Sun Microsystems. In previous positions she worked as a software engineer on distributed computing and telecommunications systems and object-oriented software development methods. Since her conversion to technical writing, Stephanie has documented object-oriented databases, application servers, and enterprise application development methods. She is a co-author of *The J2EE™ Tutorial*, *Designing Enterprise Applications with the Java™ 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition*, and *Object-Oriented Software Development: The Fusion Method*.

## Security, J2EE RI Server Administration Tool

**Debbie Bode Carson** is a staff writer with Sun Microsystems, where she documents the J2EE, J2SE, and Java Web Services platforms. In previous positions she documented creating database applications using C++ and Java technologies and creating distributed applications using Java technology. In addition to the chapters in this book, she also currently writes about the CORBA technologies Java IDL and Java Remote Method Invocation over Internet InterORB Protocol (RMI-IIOP), various topics in Web services, and several Java platform tools.

### **SOAP with Attachments API for Java, Introduction to Web Services**

**Maydene Fisher** has documented various Java APIs at Sun Microsystems for the last five years. She authored two books on the JDBC API, *JDBC™ Database Access with Java: A Tutorial and Annotated Reference* and *JDBC™ API Tutorial and Reference, Second Edition: Universal Data Access for the Java™ 2 Platform*. Before joining Sun, she helped document the object-oriented programming language ScriptX at Kaleida Labs and worked on Wall Street, where she wrote developer and user manuals for complex financial computer models written in C++. In previous lives, she has been an English teacher, a shopkeeper in Mendocino, and a financial planner.

### **Java API for RPC-based XML, Enterprise JavaBeans Technology**

**Dale Green** is a staff writer with Sun Microsystems, where he documents the J2EE platform and the Java API for RPC-based XML. In previous positions he programmed business applications, designed databases, taught technical classes, and documented RDBMS products. He wrote the Internationalization and Reflection trails for *The Java™ Tutorial Continued*, and co-authored *The J2EE™ Tutorial*.

**Ian Evans** is an editor and writer at Sun Microsystems, where he edits the J2EE platform specifications and documents the J2EE platform. In previous positions he has documented programming tools, CORBA middleware, and Java applications servers, and taught classes on UNIX, web programming, and server-side Java development.

### **Java API for XML Registries, Java Message Service API**

**Kim Haase** is a staff writer with Sun Microsystems, where she documents the J2EE platform and Java Web Services. In previous positions she has documented compilers, debuggers, and floating-point programming. She currently writes about the Java Message Service, the Java API for XML Registries, and SOAP with Attachments API for Java. She is a co-author of *Java™ Message Service API Tutorial and Reference*.

### **Security**

**Eric Jendrock** is a staff writer with Sun Microsystems, where he documents the J2EE platform and Java Web Services. Previously, he documented middleware products and standards. Currently, he writes about the Java Web Services Developer Pack, Java Architecture for XML Binding, and J2EE platform and Web security.

### **J2EE Connector Architecture**

**Beth Stearns** is the president of Computer Ease Publishing, a computer consulting firm she founded in 1982. Her client list includes Sun Microsystems Inc., Silicon Graphics Inc., Oracle Corporation, and Xerox Corporation,

among others. Her *Understanding EDT*, a guide to Digital Equipment Corporation's text editor, has sold throughout the world. She received her B.S. degree from Cornell University and a master's degree from Adelphi University. Beth wrote the JNI trail for *The Java™ Tutorial Continued*. She is a co-author of *Applying Enterprise JavaBeans™: Component-Based Development for the J2EE™ Platform*.



---

# Index

## A

- abstract document model 258
- acknowledge method (Message interface) 725
- acknowledging messages. See message acknowledgment
- activation configuration properties
  - for message-driven beans 756
- AdapterNode class 202
- adapters 201
- addChildElement method (SOAPElement interface) 357
- addClassifications method 413
- addExternalLink method 417
- address book, exporting 276
- addServiceBindings method 414
- addServices method 414
- addTextNode method (SOAPElement interface) 357
- administered objects, JMS 695
  - J2EE applications and 744
  - See also connection factories, destinations
- ANY 60
- applet containers 12
- applets 6, 8
- Application Deployment Tool
  - See deploytool
- applications
  - extending 227, 237
- applications, JMS
  - client 705
- apply-templates instruction 295
- archiving 32
- <article> document type 289
- asadmin command
  - creating destinations 696
  - creating JMS connection factories 695
  - starting the server 711
- asynchronous message consumption 693
  - JMS client example 715
  - See also message-driven beans
- AttachmentPart class 351, 367
  - creating objects 367
  - headers 367
  - setContent method 367
- attachments 350
  - adding 367
- attribute node 258
- Attribute nodes 213
- attribute value template 308
- attributes 25, 47, 231, 358
  - creating 246
  - defining in DTD 62
  - encoding 27
  - standalone 27

- types 63
- version 27
- attribute-specification parameters 64
- authentication 646, 662, 679
  - for XML registries 411
  - J2EE application clients
    - configuring 674
  - Web resources
    - configuring 658
    - digested password 657
    - form-based 658
    - HTTP basic 657
    - SSL protection 659
- authentication mechanisms
  - configuring 658
- authorization 646, 679
- AUTO\_ACKNOWLEDGE mode
  - Session interface field 724

## B

- Base64 encoding 658
- basic logic 189
- bean-managed transactions 749
- binding 32
- binding templates
  - adding to an organization with JAXR 413
  - finding with JAXR 410
- boolean 263
  - functions 266
- boolean function 267
- BufferedReader 454
- businesses
  - contacts 411
  - creating with JAXR 411
  - finding

- by name with JAXR 406, 425
  - using WSDL documents with JAXR 426
- finding by classification with JAXR 407, 426
- keys 411, 415
- removing
  - with JAXR 415, 426
- saving
  - with JAXR 414, 425
- BusinessLifeCycleManager interface 398, 405, 410
  - See also* LifeCycleManager interface
- BusinessQueryManager interface 398, 405
- BytesMessage interface 704

## C

- CA certificate
  - installing 666
- Call 339
- call method (SOAPConnection class) 360
- call method (SOAPConnection interface) 352, 353
- capability levels 396
- CBL 45
- CCI
  - See* J2EE Connector technology, CCI
- CDATA 220, 231
  - versus PCDATA 58
- CDATA node 220
- ceiling function 266
- Certificate Signing Request

- security
  - certificates
    - digitally-signed 665
- certificates
  - importing 666
  - installing 666
- chained filters 318
- character events 130
- characters method 125
- child access
  - controlling 225
- classes
  - AdapterNode 202
  - ConnectionFactory 401
  - Document 190
  - javax.activation.DataHandler 367, 368
  - JEditorPane 196, 232
  - JEditPane 199
  - JPanel 197
  - JScrollPane 199
  - JSplitPane 196, 200
  - JTree 195, 232
  - JTreeModel 195
  - SAXParser 126
  - TreeModelSupport 211
- classification schemes
  - finding with JAXR 412
  - ISO 3166 406
  - NAICS 406, 426
  - postal address 417, 426
  - publishing 417, 426
  - removing 428
  - UNSPSC 406
  - user-defined 416
- classifications
  - creating with JAXR 412
- client
  - authentication 657
  - JAXR 397
    - implementing 399
    - querying a registry 405
  - standalone 360
  - client applications, JMS 705
    - compiling 711, 717
    - running 714, 718
    - running on multiple systems 720
  - client ID, for durable subscriptions 731
  - CLIENT\_ACKNOWLEDGE mode
    - Session interface field 725
  - close method (SOAPConnection class) 360
  - Collection interface 325
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tp.proxyHost connection property 403
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tp.proxyPort connection property 404
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tps.proxyHost connection property 404
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tps.proxyPassword connection property 404
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tps.proxyPort connection property 404
  - com.sun.xml.registry.ht-tps.proxyUserName connection property 404
  - com.sun.xml.registry.useCache connection property 404

- `com.sun.xml.registry.userTaxonomyFileNames` system property 419, 427
- command line
  - argument processing 124
  - transformations 313
- commands
  - `asadmin` 695, 696, 711
- comment 46, 220, 231
  - echoing 174
  - node 258
- Comment nodes 213
- commit method (Session interface) 735
- compiling 133
- compression 239
- concat function 265
- concepts
  - in user-defined classification schemes 416
  - using to create classifications with JAXR 413
- conditional sections 73
- Connection 683
- connection
  - secure 662
- connection factories, JAXR
  - creating 401
- connection factories, JMS
  - creating 720
  - deployment descriptor elements 752
  - introduction 695
  - specifying for remote servers 720
- Connection interface 697
- Connection interface 398, 401
- connection properties
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyHost` 403
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPort` 404
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyHost` 404
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPassword` 404
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyPort` 404
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.http.proxyUserName` 404
  - `com.sun.xml.registry.useCache` 404
- examples 401
- `javax.xml.registry.lifecycleManagerURL` 403
- `javax.xml.registry.postalAddressScheme` 403, 420
- `javax.xml.registry.queryManagerURL` 402
- `javax.xml.registry.security.authenticationMethod` 403
- `javax.xml.registry.semanticEquivalences` 403, 420
- `javax.xml.registry.udi.maxRows` 403
- ConnectionFactory 683
- ConnectionFactory class 401
- ConnectionFactory interface 695
- connections, JAXR
  - creating 401
  - setting properties 401



- connections, JMS
    - introduction 697
    - managing in J2EE applications 744
  - connections, SAAJ 352
    - closing 360
    - point-to-point 360
  - connectors
    - See J2EE Connector technology
  - container, EJB 689
    - message-driven beans 745
  - container-managed transactions 749
  - containers 10
    - See also
      - applet containers
      - EJB containers
      - J2EE application clients, containers
      - Web containers
    - services 10
  - contains function 265
  - content events 128
  - ContentHandler interface 125
  - context 259
  - context roots 94
  - conversion functions 267
  - count function 265
  - country codes
    - ISO 3166 406
  - createClassification method 413, 417
  - createClassificationScheme method 417
  - createExternalLink method 417
  - createOrganization method 412
  - createPostalAddress method 421
  - createService method 414
  - createServiceBinding method 414
  - creating
    - JMS connection factories 695, 720
    - JMS destinations 711
    - queues 696, 711
    - topics 696, 711
  - CSR 665
  - custom tags
    - attributes
      - validation 588
    - bodies 558
    - cooperating 559
    - examples 596, 598
    - scripting variables
      - defining 559
      - providing information about 584, 593, 594
  - tag handlers 549
    - defining scripting variables 591
    - methods 612
    - simple tag 587
    - with attributes 588
    - with bodies 590, 614
  - tag library descriptors
    - See tag library descriptors
  - tutorial-template tag library 551
  - cxml 44
- D**
- data 182
    - element 62

- encryption 657
  - normalizing 82
  - processing 31
  - structure
    - arbitrary 275
  - types
    - CDATA 231
    - element 230
    - entity reference 230
    - text 230
- databases
  - clients 6
  - EIS tier 4
- DDP
- declaration 27, 46
- DefaultHandler method
  - overriding 152
- defining text 58
- deleteOrganizations method 415
- delivery modes
  - introduction 728
  - JMSDeliveryMode message
    - header field 703
- DeliveryMode interface 728
- deployer role 16
- deployment descriptors 13
  - JMS applications 751
  - web application 86
- deploytool
  - starting 91
- Destination interface 696
- destinations, JMS
  - See also queues, temporary
  - destinations, topics
  - creating 711
  - deployment descriptor elements 752
  - introduction 696
  - JMSDestination message
    - header field 703
    - temporary 730
  - destroy 473
  - detachNode method (Node interface) 356
  - Detail interface 377
  - DetailEntry interface 377
  - development roles 13
  - DII 338
  - distributed transactions, JMS 748
  - doAfterBody 615
  - DocType node 215, 231
  - document
    - element 62
    - events 128
    - fragment 231
    - node 231
    - type 289
  - Document class 190
  - DocumentBuilderFactory 221, 249
    - configuring 248
  - Document-Driven Programming
    - See DDP
  - documents 182
  - doFilter 459, 460, 465
  - doGet 453
  - doInitBody 615
  - DOM 35, 122
    - constructing 188
    - displaying a hierarchy 195
    - displaying ub a JTree 201
    - nodes 183
    - normalizing 242
    - SAAJ and 352, 366
    - structure 186
    - tree structure 181
    - versus SAX 121

- writing out a subtree 273
- writing out as an XML file 268
- dom4j 35, 123, 184
- domains, messaging 690
- doPost 453
- doStartTag 587
- downloading
  - J2EE SDK xxii
  - J2SE xxii
  - tutorial xxi
- DrawML 44
- DTD 27, 36, 38
  - defining attributes 62
  - defining entities 65
  - defining namespaces 76
  - factoring out 83
  - industry-standard 79
  - limitations 59
  - normalizing 83
  - parsing the parameterized 169
  - warnings 170
- DTDHandler API 178
- DUPS\_OK\_ACKNOWLEDGE
- mode (Session interface field) 725
- durable subscriptions
  - introduction 731
- dynamic attribute 557
- dynamic invocation interface
  - See DII
- dynamic proxies 335

## E

- EAR files 12
- ebXML 44
  - registries 396, 397
- EIS 10, 677, 682, 683
- EJB containers 12

- ejbCreate method 744
  - message-driven beans 746
  - session beans 770
- ejbRemove method (javax.ejb.MessageDrivenBean interface) 746
- element 47, 230, 240
  - content 229
  - empty 49, 160
  - events 129
  - nested 48
  - node 258
  - qualifiers 58
  - root 46
- eliminating redundancies 82
- EMPTY 60
- encoding 27
- endDocument method 125
- endElement method 125
- endpoint 360
- enterprise beans 8
  - development role 15
  - method permissions
    - See method permissions
  - propagating security identity 673
  - protecting 668
  - types 9
- Enterprise Information Systems
  - See EIS
- entities 27, 231
  - defining in DTD 65
  - external 82
  - included "in line" 29
  - parameter 71
  - parsed 68, 161
  - predefined 53
  - reference 82, 185, 230

- reference node 219
  - references 220
  - referencing binary 69
  - referencing external 67
  - unparsed 68, 161
  - useful 66
  - entity beans
    - sample JMS application 777
  - EntityResolver 253
    - API 179
  - environment variables, setting for J2EE applications 707
  - errors
    - generating 296
    - handling 164, 190
      - in the validating parser 168
    - nonfatal 151
    - validation 166, 194
  - events
    - character 130
    - content 128
    - document 128
    - element 129
    - lexical 171
  - examples
    - downloading xxi
    - location xxi
  - exception handling, JMS 705
  - exceptions
    - mapping to web resources 96
    - ParserConfigurationException 150
    - SAXException 148
    - SAXParseException 147
    - web components 96
  - expiration of JMS messages
    - introduction 729
  - expiration of messages
    - JMSEExpiration message header field 703
- F**
- factory
    - configuring 193
  - false function 266
  - Filter 459
  - filter chains 314, 460, 465
  - filters 458
    - defining 459
    - mapping to Web components 463
    - mapping to Web resources 463, 464, 465
    - overriding request methods 462
    - overriding response methods 462
    - response wrapper 461
  - findClassificationSchemeByName method 412, 417
  - findConcepts method 408
  - findOrganization method 406
  - floor function 266
  - for-each loops 312
  - forward 468
  - fully qualified names 357
  - functions
    - boolean 266
    - boolean 267
    - ceiling 266
    - concat 265
    - contains 265
    - conversion 267
    - count 265
    - false 266

- floor 266
- lang 266
- last 265
- local-name 267
- name 267
- namespace 267
- namespace-uri 267
- node-set 264
- normalize-space 266
- not 266
- number 267
- numeric 266
- position 265
- positional 265
- round 267
- starts-with 265
- string 265
- string 267
- string-length 265
- substring 265
- substring-after 265
- substring-before 265
- sum 266
- translate 266
- true 266
- XPath 264

## G

- GenericServlet 440
- getAttachments method (SOAPMessage class) 369
- getBody method (SOAPEnvelope interface) 356
- getCallerPrincipal 669
- getEnvelope method (SOAPPart class) 356
- getHeader method (SOAPEnvelope

- interface) 356
- getParameter 454
- getParser method 127
- getRemoteUser method 660
- getRequestDispatcher 466
- getRollbackOnly method (javax.ejb.MessageDrivenContext interface) 749
- getServletContext 469
- getSession 470
- getSOAPBody method (SOAPMessage class) 356
- getSOAPHeader method (SOAPMessage class) 356
- getSOAPPart method (SOAPMessage class) 355
- Getting 85
- getUserPrincipal method 660
- getValue method (Node interface) 361
- groups 647

## H

- headers, JMS message
  - introduction 702
- hierarchy
  - collapsed 234
- HTML 24
- HTTP 323, 324
  - over SSL 657
  - setting proxies 403
- HTTP protocol 813
- HTTP requests 454, 814
  - methods 814
  - query strings 455
  - See also requests
  - URLs 454

- HTTP responses 456, 814
  - See also responses
  - status codes 96, 814
    - mapping to web resources 96
- HTTPS 663, 667
- HttpServletRequest 440
- HttpServletRequest 454
- HttpServletRequest interface 660
- HttpServletResponse 456
- HttpSession 470

## I

- ICE 44
- identification 646
- ignored 152
- include 466, 513
- information model
  - JAXR 396, 397
- init 452
- inline tags 306
- instructions
  - processing 28, 50, 144
- interfaces
  - BusinessLifeCycleManager 398, 405, 410
  - BusinessQueryManager 398, 405
  - Collection 325
  - Connection 398, 401
  - ContentHandler 125
  - HttpServletRequest 660
  - javax.xml.transform.Source 365
  - LexicalHandler 171
  - Organization 411
  - RegistryObject 397

- RegistryService 398, 405
- XmlReader 284
- Internationalizing 619
- invalidate 472
- isCallerInRole 669
- ISO 3166 country codes 406
- isThreadSafe 494
- isUserInRole method 660

## J

- J2EE application clients 6
  - containers 12
  - examples 342
  - packaging 343
- J2EE applications 4
  - assembler role 15
  - deploying 632, 642
  - tiers 4
- J2EE clients 6
  - application clients 6
    - See also J2EE application clients
  - Web clients 6
    - See also Web clients
  - web clients 85
    - See also web clients
  - Web clients versus J2EE application clients 7
- J2EE components
  - defined 5
  - types 5
- J2EE Connector technology 677
  - architecture version 21
  - CCI 682
  - resource adapters
    - See resource adapters
- J2EE group 647, 648

- J2EE modules 13
- J2EE platform 1, 4
- J2EE SDK
  - downloading xxii
- J2EE security architecture 646
- J2EE server 12
  - starting and stopping 90
- J2EE Technology in Practice* 22
- J2SE
  - downloading xxii
  - required version xxii
- J2SE SDK 324
- JAAS 21
- JAF 19
- JAR files
  - See also
    - EJB JAR files
- Java 2, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) applications
  - JAXR example 429
  - JMS examples 760, 767, 777, 790, 799
  - running on more than one system 790, 799
  - running remotely 790, 799
- Java 2, Enterprise Edition (J2EE) platform
  - JMS API and 688
- Java 2, Enterprise Edition Application Server
  - starting 711
- Java API for XML Processing
  - See JAXP
- Java API for XML Registries
  - See JAXR
- Java Authentication and Authorization Service
  - See JAAS
- Java Message Service
  - See JMS
- Java Message Service (JMS) API
  - achieving reliability and performance 722
  - architecture 690
  - basic concepts 689
  - client applications 705
  - definition 686
  - introduction 685
  - J2EE applications 743, 760, 767, 777, 790, 799
  - J2EE platform 688
  - messaging domains 690
  - programming model 694
- Java Naming and Directory Interface
  - See JNDI
- Java Naming and Directory Interface (JNDI)
  - looking up JMS administered objects 695
  - naming context for J2EE applications 744, 762
- Java Servlet technology 17
  - See also servlets
- Java Transaction API
  - See JTA
- JAVA\_HOME environment variable 707
- JavaBeans Activation Framework
  - See JAF
- JavaBeans components 7, 326
  - creating in JSP pages 505
  - design conventions 503
  - in WAR files 91
  - methods 503
  - properties 503

- retrieving in JSP pages 508
- setting in JSP pages 506
- using in JSP pages 505
- JavaMail API 19
- JavaServer Pages (JSP) technology 17
  - See also JSP pages
- `javax.activation.DataHandler` class 367, 368
- `javax.servlet` 440
- `javax.servlet.http` 440
- `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext` 586, 612
- `javax.xml.registry` package 397
- `javax.xml.registry.infomodel` package 397
- `javax.xml.registry.lifeCycleManagerURL` connection property 403
- `javax.xml.registry.postalAddressScheme` connection property 403, 420
- `javax.xml.registry.queryManagerURL` connection property 402
- `javax.xml.registry.security.authenticationMethod` connection property 403
- `javax.xml.registry.semanticEquivalences` connection property 403, 420
- `javax.xml.registry.udi.maxRows` connection property 403
- `javax.xml.soap` package 347
- `javax.xml.transform.Source` interface 365
- JAXM
  - specification 347
- JAXP 19, 365
- JAXP 1.2 182
- JAXR 395
  - adding
    - classifications 412
    - service bindings 413
    - services 413
  - architecture 397
  - capability levels 396
  - clients 397
    - implementing 399
    - submitting data to a registry 410
  - creating
    - connections 401
  - defining taxonomies 416
  - definition 396
  - establishing security credentials 411
  - finding classification schemes 412
  - information model 396
  - J2EE application 429
  - organizations
    - creating 411
    - removing 415
    - saving 414
  - overview 395
  - provider 397
  - querying a registry 405
  - specification 396
  - specifying postal addresses 419
  - submitting data to a registry 410
- JAX-RPC
  - clients 332
  - defined 323



- JavaBeans components 326
  - specification 346
  - supported types 324
- JDBC API 17
- JDOM 35, 123, 184
- JEditorPane class 196, 232
- JEditPane class 199
- JMS 18
- JMS API. See Java Message Service (JMS) API
- JMSCorrelationID message header field 703
- JMSDeliveryMode message header field 703
- JMSDestination message header field 703
- JMSException class 705
- JMSExpiration message header field 703
- JMSMessageID message header field 703
- JMSPriority message header field 703
- JMSRedelivered message header field 703
- JMSReplyTo message header field 703
- JMSTimestamp message header field 703
- JMSType message header field 703
- JNDI 18
- JPanel class 197
- JScrollPane class 199
- JSP declarations 608
- JSP expressions 610
- JSP fragment 556
- JSP pages 477
  - compilation 489
    - errors 490
  - creating and using objects 494, 605
  - creating dynamic content 493
  - creating static content 492
  - declarations
    - See JSP declarations
  - error page 491
  - examples 88, 480, 482, 521, 550
  - execution 490
  - expressions
    - See JSP expressions
  - finalization 608
  - forwarding to an error page 491
  - forwarding to other Web components 514
  - implicit objects 493
  - importing classes and packages 607
  - importing tag libraries 509
  - including applets or JavaBeans components 515
  - including other Web resources 513
  - initialization 608
- JavaBeans components
  - creating 505
  - retrieving properties 508
  - setting properties 506
    - from constants 506
    - from request parameters 506
    - from runtime expressions 507
  - using 505

- life cycle 489
- scripting elements
  - See JSP scripting elements
- scriptlets
  - See JSP scriptlets
- setting buffer size 490
- shared objects 494
- specifying scripting language 607
- translation 489
  - enforcing constraints for custom tag attributes 588
  - errors 490
- JSP scripting elements 605
- JSP scriptlets 609
- jsp:fallback 515
- jsp:forward 514
- jsp:getProperty 508
- jsp:include 513
- jsp:param 514, 515
- jsp:plugin 515
- jsp:setProperty 506
- jspDestroy 608
- jspInit 608
- JSplitPane class 196, 200
- JTA 18
- JTree
  - displaying content 232
- JTree class 195, 232
- JTreeModel class 195

## K

- keystore 664
- keytool 663

## L

- lang function 266
- last function 265
- lexical
  - controls 220
  - events 171
- LexicalHandler interface 171
- linking
  - XML 40
- listener classes 446
  - defining 446
  - examples 447
- listener interfaces 446
- local name 363
- local transactions, JMS 735
- local-name function 267
- locator 142
- Locator object 148

## M

- MapMessage interface 704
- MathML 43
- message
  - integrity 657
- message acknowledgment
  - bean-managed transactions 750
  - introduction 724
  - message-driven beans 746
- message bodies, JMS
  - introduction 704
- message consumers
  - introduction 699
- message consumption
  - asynchronous 693, 715
  - introduction 693
  - synchronous 693, 707

- message-driven beans
  - coding 762, 770, 780, 801
  - introduction 745
- message headers, JMS
  - introduction 702
- message IDs
  - JMSMessageID      message
    - header field 703
- Message interface 704
- message listeners
  - examples 780, 801
  - introduction 700
- message producers
  - introduction 699
- message properties, JMS
  - introduction 703
- message selectors
  - introduction 701
- MessageConsumer interface 699
- message-driven beans
  - deployment descriptor elements 754
- MessageDrivenContext interface (javax.ejb package) 747
- MessageFactory class 354
- MessageListener interface 700
- MessageProducer interface 699
- messages, JMS
  - body formats 704
  - delivery modes 728
  - expiration 729
  - headers 702
  - introduction 702
  - persistence 728
  - priority levels 729
  - properties 703
- messages, SAAJ
  - accessing elements 355
  - adding body content 356
  - attachments 350
  - creating 354
  - getting the content 361
  - overview 348
- messaging
  - definition 686
- messaging domains 690
  - common interfaces 693
  - point-to-point 691
  - publish/subscribe 692
- method permissions
- methods
  - addClassifications 413
  - addExternalLink 417
  - addServiceBindings 414
  - addServices 414
  - characters 125
  - createClassification 413, 417
  - createClassificationScheme 417
  - createExternalLink 417
  - createOrganization 412
  - createPostalAddress 421
  - createService 414
  - createServiceBinding 414
  - deleteOrganizations 415
  - endDocument 125
  - endElement 125
  - findClassificationScheme-ByName 412, 417
  - findConcepts 408
  - findOrganization 406
  - getParser 127
  - getRemoteUser 660
  - getUserPrincipal 660
  - isUserInRole 660

- notationDecl 179
  - parse 281
  - saveOrganizations 414
  - setCoalescing 221
  - setExpandEntityReferences 221
  - setIgnoringComments 221
  - setIgnoringElementContent-Whitespace 221
  - setPostalAddresses 421
  - startCDATA 176
  - startDocument 125, 128
  - startDTD 176
  - startElement 125, 129, 132
  - startEntity 176
  - text 184
  - unparsedEntityDecl 179
- MIME**
- data 69
  - header 351
- mixed-content model 59, 183
- mode-based templates 312
- modes
- content 183
  - Text 213
- N**
- NAICS 426
- using to find organizations 407
- name function 267
- Name interface 356
- name, local 363
- names
- fully qualified 357, 359, 363
- namespaces 37, 357
- defining a prefix 77
  - defining in DTD 76
  - functions 267
  - node 258
  - prefix 358
  - referencing 77
  - target 253
  - using 76
  - validating with multiple 250
- namespace-uri function 267
- nested elements 58
- Node interface
- detachNode method 356
  - getValue method 361
- node() 262
- nodes 183
- Attribute 213
  - attribute 231, 258
  - CDATA 220
  - changing 247
  - Comment 213
  - comment 231, 258
  - constants 228
  - content 245
  - controlling visibility 224
  - DocType 215, 231
  - document 231
  - document fragment 231
  - element 240, 258
  - entity 231
  - entity reference 219
  - inserting 247
  - namespace 258
  - navigating to 186
  - notation 231
  - processing instruction 216, 231, 258
  - removing 247
  - root 240, 258
  - SAAJ and 349

- searching 244
- text 240, 243, 258
- traversing 244
- types 203, 258
- value 183
- node-set functions 264
- NON\_PERSISTENT delivery mode 728
- nonvalidating parser 145
- non-XSL tags 294
- normalize-space function 266
- normalizing
  - data 82
  - DTDs 83
- North American Industry Classification System
  - See* NAICS
- not clause 310
- not function 266
- notation nodes 231
- notationDecl method 179
- number function 267
- numbers
  - formatting 312
  - generating 312
- numeric functions 266

## O

- OASIS 79
- ObjectMessage interface 704
- objects
  - Locator 148
  - Parser 127
- objects, administered (JMS) 695
- onMessage method (MessageListener interface)
  - introduction 700

- message-driven beans 745
- operators
  - XPath 263
- Organization interface 411
- organizations
  - creating with JAXR 411
  - finding
    - by classification 407, 426
    - by name 406, 425
    - using WSDL documents 426
  - keys 411, 415
  - primary contacts 411
  - publishing 425
  - removing 426
    - with JAXR 415
  - saving
    - with JAXR 414

## P

- packages
  - javax.xml.registry 397
  - javax.xml.registry.infomodel 397
  - javax.xml.soap 347
- parameter entity 71
- parse method 281
- parsed
  - character data 58
  - entity 68, 161
- parser
  - implementation 162
  - modifying to generate SAX events 279
  - nonvalidating 145
  - SAX properties 164
  - using as a SAXSource 286

- validating 162
  - error handling 168
- Parser object 127
- ParserConfigurationException 150
- parsing parameterized DTDs 169
- passwords
  - encoded 657
- PATH environment variable 707
- pattern 257
- PCDATA 58
  - versus CDATA 58
- persistence, for JMS messages 728
- PERSISTENT delivery mode 728
- point-to-point connection 360
- point-to-point messaging domain
  - introduction 691
  - See also queues
- position function 265
- positional functions 265
- postal addresses
  - retrieving 421, 427
  - specifying 419, 427
- prerequisites xxi
- printing the tutorial xxiii
- PrintWriter 456
- priority levels, for JMS messages
  - introduction 729
- priority levels, for messages
  - JMSPriority message header field 703
- processing
  - command line argument 124
  - data 31
  - instruction nodes 216, 231, 258
  - instructions 28, 50, 144, 185
- processingInstruction 145

- programming model, JMS API 694
- properties. See message properties, JMS
- provider
  - JAXR 397
- proxies 323, 332
  - HTTP, setting 403
- public key certificates 657
- publish/subscribe messaging domain
  - durable subscriptions 731
  - introduction 692
  - See also topics

## Q

- QName 336
- Queue interface 696
- queues
  - creating 696, 711
  - introduction 696
  - temporary 730

## R

- RAR files 677
- RDF 42
  - schema 42
- realm 646
- realms 646
  - certificate 647
- recover method (Session interface) 725
- redelivery of messages
  - JMSRedelivered message header field 703
- registries

- definition 395
- ebXML 396, 397
- getting access to public UDDI registries 400
- private 396
- querying 405
- submitting data 410
- UDDI 396
- using public and private 423
- registry objects 397
  - retrieving 428
- RegistryObject interface 397
- RegistryService interface 398, 405
- RELAX NG 39
- release 615
- reliability, JMS
  - advanced mechanisms 731
  - basic mechanisms 724
  - durable subscriptions 731
  - local transactions 735
  - message acknowledgment 724
  - message expiration 729
  - message persistence 728
  - message priority levels 729
  - temporary destinations 730
  - transactions 735
- Remote Method Invocation (RMI) 686
- remote procedure calls 323
- request/reply mechanism
  - JMSCorrelationID message header field 703
  - JMSReplyTo message header field 703
  - temporary destinations and 730
- RequestDispatcher 466
- requests 454
  - appending parameters 514
  - customizing 461
  - getting information from 454
  - retrieving a locale 621
  - See also HTTP requests
- required software xxii
- Required transaction attribute 750
- resource adapter, JAXR 399
  - creating resources 431
- resource adapter, JMS
  - activation configuration properties 756
  - specifying runtime information 755
- resource adapters 677
  - archive files
    - See RAR files
  - CCI 682
  - security 672
- resource bundles 620
- resources, JMS API 744
- responses 456
  - buffering output 456
  - customizing 461
  - See also HTTP responses
  - setting headers 453
- roles 647
  - development
    - See development roles
  - security
    - See security roles
- rollback method (Session interface) 735
- root
  - element 46
  - node 240, 258
- round function 267

RPC 323

## S

SAAJ 347

- messages 348

- overview 348

- tutorial 353

SAAJ classes

- AttachmentPart 351, 367

- MessageFactory 354

- SOAPConnection 352, 359

- SOAPFactory 356

- SOAPMessage 349, 355

- SOAPPart 349, 352, 357, 364

SAAJ interfaces

- Detail 377

- DetailEntry 377

- Name 356

- SOAPBody 349, 359, 363

- SOAPBodyElement 356, 359, 363, 386

- SOAPElement 357, 387

- SOAPEnvelope 349, 356, 358

- SOAPFault 375, 390

- SOAPHeader 349, 362

- SOAPHeaderElement 357, 362

sample programs

- JAXR 421

  - compiling 424

  - editing properties file 422

  - J2EE application 429

JMS

- asynchronous message consumption 715

- J2EE applications 760, 767, 777, 790, 799

- synchronous message con-

- sumption 707

SAAJ

- DOMExample.java 391

- HeaderExample.java 389

- MyUddiPing.java 381

- SOAPFaultTest.java 390

saveOrganizations method 414

SAX 35, 121

- events 279

- parser properties 164

- versus DOM 121

SAXException 148, 150

SAXParseException 147, 149

- generating 148

SAXParser class 126

schema 38, 165

- associating a document with 249

- declaring

  - in the application 252

  - in XML data set 251

- default 252

- definitions 252

  - specifying 249

- RDF 42

- XML 39

Schematron 40

secure connections 662

security

- application client tier 670

- callback handlers 670

- login modules 670

- certificates

  - importing 666

- constraints 651

- credentials for XML registries 411

- declarative 645



- EIS tier 671
  - component-managed sign-on 672
  - container-managed sign-on 671
  - sign-on 671
- EJB tier
  - method permissions
    - See method permissions
  - programmatic 669
- groups 647
- programmatic 646, 660
- realms 646
- resource adapter 672
- roles 647
- users 646
- Web Services model 650
- Web tier
  - programmatic 660
- security constraint 651
- security identity 673
  - caller identity 673
  - propagating to enterprise beans 673
  - specific identity 673
- security role references 648
  - mapping to security roles 649
- security roles 647
  - creating 648
- selection criteria 260
- send method (MessageProducer interface) 699
- server
  - authentication 657
  - certificates 663
- servers
  - deploying on more than one 790, 799
  - running JMS clients on more than one 720
- service bindings
  - adding to an organization with JAXR 413
  - finding with JAXR 410
- service endpoint interface 327
- services
  - adding to an organization with JAXR 413
  - finding with JAXR 410
- Servlet 440
- ServletContext 469
- ServletInputStream 454
- ServletOutputStream 456
- ServletRequest 454
- ServletResponse 456
- servlets 439
  - binary data
    - reading 454
    - writing 456
  - character data
    - reading 454
    - writing 456
  - examples 88
  - finalization 473
  - initialization 452
    - failure 452
  - life cycle 445
  - life cycle events
    - handling 446
  - service methods 453
    - notifying 474
    - programming long running 475
  - tracking service requests 474
- session beans

- coding 769
- sample JMS application 767
- Session interface 698
- sessions 470
  - associating attributes 470
  - associating with user 472
  - invalidating 472
  - notifying objects associated with 471
- sessions, JMS
  - introduction 698
  - managing in J2EE applications 744
- setCoalescing method 221
- setContent method (AttachmentPart class) 367
- setContent method (SOAPPart class) 365
- setExpandEntityReferences method 221
- setIgnoringComments method 221
- setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace method 221
- setMessageDrivenContext method (javax.ejb.MessageDrivenBean interface) 747
- setPostalAddresses method 421
- setRollbackOnly method (javax.ejb.MessageDrivenContext interface) 749
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 347
- simple parser
  - creating 277
- SingleThreadModel 450
- SMIL 43
- SOAP 323, 324, 346, 347
  - body 359
    - adding content 363
    - Content-Type header 367
  - envelope 358
  - headers
    - adding content 362
    - Content-Id 367
    - Content-Location 367
    - Content-Type 367
    - example 389
- SOAP faults 375
  - detail 376
  - fault actor 376
  - fault code 376
  - fault string 376
  - retrieving information 378
- SOAP with Attachments API for Java
  - See* SAAJ
- SOAPBody interface 349, 359, 363
- SOAPBodyElement interface 356, 359, 363, 386
- SOAPConnection class 352
  - call method 360
  - close method 360
  - getting object 359
- SOAPConnection interface 352
  - call method 352, 353
- SOAPElement interface 357, 387
  - addChildElement method 357
  - addTextNode method 357
- SOAPEnvelope interface 349, 356, 358
  - getBody method 356
  - getHeader method 356
- SOAPFactory class 356
- SOAPFault interface 375, 390
  - creating and populating objects 377

- elements
    - detail 376
    - fault actor 376
    - fault code 376
    - fault string 376
  - SOAPHeader interface 349, 362
  - SOAPHeaderElement interface 357, 362
  - SOAPMessage class 349, 355
    - getAttachments method 369
    - getSOAPBody method 356
    - getSOAPHeader method 356
    - getSOAPPart method 355
  - SOAPPart class 349, 352, 357
    - adding content 364
    - getEnvelope method 356
    - setContent method 365
  - sorting output 312
  - SOX 40
  - specifications 27
  - SQL xxi, 17
  - SSL 657, 658, 662
    - verifying support 667
  - standalone 27
    - client 360
  - standalone JMS applications 705
  - startCDATA method 176
  - startDocument method 125, 128
  - startDTD method 176
  - startElement method 125, 129, 132
  - startEntity method 176
  - starts-with function 265
  - static stubs 332
  - StreamMessage interface 704
  - string function 267
  - string functions 265
  - string-length function 265
  - string-value 260, 263
  - stubs 332
  - stylesheet 29
  - subscription names, for durable subscribers 731
  - substring function 265
  - substring-after function 265
  - substring-before function 265
  - subtree
    - concatenation 228
    - writing 273
  - sum function 266
  - SVG 43
  - synchronous message consumption 693
    - JMS client example 707
  - system properties
    - com.sun.xml.registry.user-TaxonomyFileNames 419, 427
- T**
- tag file 560
  - tag handlers
    - life cycle 613
  - tag library descriptors 562, 576
    - attribute 582
    - body-content 565, 611
    - filenames 510
    - listener 578
    - mapping name to location 511
    - tag 581
    - taglib 576
    - variable 585
  - TagExtraInfo 588
  - taglib 509
  - tags 23, 25

- closing 25
  - content 306
  - empty 25
  - nesting 25
  - structure 306
  - target namespace 253
  - taxonomies
    - finding with JAXR 412
    - ISO 3166 406
    - NAICS 406, 426
    - UNSPSC 406
    - user-defined 416
    - using to find organizations 407
  - templates 259, 294
    - mode-based 312
    - named 309
    - ordering in a stylesheet 304
  - temporary JMS destinations 730
    - examples 780, 801
  - terminate clause 297
  - test document
    - creating 291
  - text 230, 240, 243
    - node 258
  - text method 184
  - Text nodes 213
  - TextMessage interface 704
  - timestamps, for messages
    - JMSTimestamp message header field 703
  - Tomcat
    - configuring
    - SSL support 662
  - Topic interface 696
  - topics
    - creating 696, 711
    - durable subscriptions 731
    - introduction 696
    - temporary 730
  - transactions
    - bean-managed 749
    - container-managed 749
    - local, JMS 735
    - Required attribute 750
    - resource adapters 679
    - Web components 452
    - XA 679
  - transactions, JMS
    - distributed 748
    - J2EE applications and 745
  - transformations
    - concatenating 314
    - from the command line 313
  - transformer
    - creating 270
  - translate function 266
  - tree
    - displaying 212
  - TreeModelSupport class 211
  - TREX 39
  - true function 266
- U**
- UBL 45
  - UDDI
    - accessing registries with SAAJ 381
    - getting access to public registries 400
    - registries 396
  - UnavailableException 452
  - Universal Resource Identifier
    - See URI
  - Universal Standard Products and Services Classification

*See* UNSPSC  
unparsed entity 68, 161  
unparsedEntityDecl method 179  
UNSPSC 406  
URI 659  
user authentication  
    methods 658  
users 646  
UserTransaction interface (jav-  
ax.transaction package) 749

## V

validate method 588  
validating  
    with multiple namespaces 250  
    with XML Schema 247  
validation errors 166  
value types 326  
variables 312  
    scope 313  
    value 313  
version 27

## W

W3C 39, 324, 346  
WAR files  
    JavaBeans components in 91  
warnings 152  
    in DTD 170  
Web clients 6  
    maintaining state across re-  
        quests 470  
web clients 85  
    configuring 86  
    internationalizing 619  
    J2EE Blueprints 626

    running 98  
    updating 99  
Web components 8  
    accessing databases from 451  
    applets 8  
    concurrent access to shared re-  
        sources 450  
    development role 15  
    forwarding to other Web com-  
        ponents 468  
    including other Web resources  
        466  
    invoking other Web resources  
        465  
    mapping filters to 463  
    scope objects 448  
    sharing information 448  
    transactions 452  
    types 8  
    utility classes 8  
    Web context 469  
web components 85  
    accessing databases from 102  
    JSP pages  
        *See* JSP pages 86  
    servlets  
        *See* servlets  
Web containers 12  
    loading and initializing serv-  
        lets 445  
Web module 91  
Web resource collections 651  
Web resources  
    authenticating 651  
    authenticating users 656  
    mapping filters to 463, 464,  
        465  
    protecting 651

- unprotected 661
- web resources 91
- Web Services Description Language
  - See* WSDL
- well-formed 49, 50
- whitespace
  - ignorable 158
- wildcards 261
- WSDL 324, 336, 346
  - using to find organizations 408, 426

## X

- X.509 certificate 657
- Xalan 255, 317
- XHTML 41, 48
- XLink 40
- XML 19, 23, 323, 324
  - comments 26
  - content 27
  - designing a data structure 79
  - documents 62, 141
  - documents, and SAAJ 348
  - elements 348
  - generating 275
  - linking 40
  - prolog 27
  - reading 268
  - registries
    - establishing security credentials 411
- XML Base 41
- XML data 62, 141
  - transforming with XSLT 289
- XML Schema 39, 163, 182
  - definition 163

- Instance 165
  - validating 247
- XmlReader interface 284
- XPATH 37
- XPath 255, 256, 257
  - basic addressing 259
  - basic expressions 260
  - data model 258
  - data types 263
  - expression 257
  - functions 264
  - operators 263
- XPointer 41, 257
- XSL 37
- XSL-FO 256
- XSLT 37, 255, 256, 289
  - context 259
  - data model 258
  - templates 259
  - transform
    - writing 292
- XTM 42